

A Chronology of the Crusades

TIMOTHY VENNING

with an introduction by Peter Frankopan



A Chronology of the Crusades

A Chronology of the Crusades provides a day-by-day development of the Crusading movement, the Crusades and the states created by them through the medieval period. Beginning in the run-up to the First Crusade in 1095, to the fall of Constantinople in 1453, and ending with the Turkish attack on Belgrade in 1456, this reference is a comprehensive guide to the events of each Crusade, concentrating on the Near East, but also those Christian expeditions sanctioned by the Papacy as 'Crusades' in the medieval era. As well as clashes between Christians and Muslims in the Latin States, Timothy Venning also chronicles the Albigensian Crusade, clashes in Anatolia and the Balkans and the *Reconquista* in the Iberian Peninsula. Both detailed and accessible, this chronology draws together material from contemporary Latin/Frankish, Byzantine and Arab/Muslim sources with assessment and explanation to produce a readable narrative which gives students an in-depth overview of one of the most fascinating periods in medieval history.

Including an introduction by Peter Frankopan which summarises and contextualises the period, this book is an essential resource for students and academics alike.

Timothy Venning is an independent scholar educated at the University of London, with thirty years' experience of historical research. His books include *Chronology of the Roman Empire* (2010) and *Anglo-Saxon Kings and Queens* (2011).

This page intentionally left blank

A Chronology of the Crusades

Timothy Venning

*with an introduction by
Peter Frankopan*

First published 2015
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN
and by Routledge
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2015 Timothy Venning

The right of Timothy Venning to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Venning, Timothy.

A chronology of the Crusades / Timothy Venning.
pages cm

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-138-80269-8 (hardback : alk. paper) –

ISBN 978-1-315-71293-2 (e-book : alk. paper)

1. Crusades–Chronology. I. Title.

D158.V45 2015

909.07–dc23

2014041631

ISBN: 978-1-138-80269-8 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-1-315-71293-2 (ebk)

Typeset in Sabon

by Florence Production Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon, UK

Contents

Introduction by Dr Peter Frankopan	1
1 Prelude to the First Crusade 1055–1094	5
2 The First Crusade 1095–1099	27
3 The Crusader states 1100–1144	49
4 The Second Crusade 1145–1149	119
5 The Crusader states 1150–1187	136
6 The Third Crusade 1188–1192	193
7 The Crusader kingdoms and the Fourth Crusade 1193–1204	220
8 The Crusading states to the Sixth Crusade 1205–1244	241
9 The Sixth Crusade and after 1245–1261	319
10 The Seventh Crusade and the end of Outremer 1262–1291	356
11 The Crusades after the loss of the Holy Land 1292–1456	413
<i>Bibliography</i>	538
<i>Index</i>	547

This page intentionally left blank

Introduction

On 15 July 1099, an army of western knights stormed the walls of Jerusalem. It brought to end many centuries of Muslim rule, and restored the Holy City to Christian hands for the first time since the 630s. Tens of thousands of men had set off from Western Europe to liberate the city where Jesus Christ lived, was crucified and rose from the dead. Galvanised by the charismatic preaching of Pope Urban II, they were responding to a sudden and dramatic collapse in the Eastern Mediterranean that closed long-established pilgrimage routes to Palestine and put the capital of the Byzantine Empire and its great capital city Constantinople under threat.

The expedition that made its way east at the end of the 1090s was astonishingly ambitious. Marching thousands of miles across terrain that was often inhospitable and frequently involved venturing into the unknown or fending off enemy attacks required resources, bravery and faith. Many who set out never made it. Those that did became heroes in their own time, fêted across Europe for their daring, celebrated in verse and song and commemorated in histories that became wildly popular as the 12th century wore on.

The success of the First Crusade shaped the Middle Ages. It expanded cultural horizons and introduced ideas, goods and technologies from the lands of Islam and from Byzantium to the west. It played a crucial role in the development of chivalry and knightly piety and, in doing so, helped establish the concept of violence as an expression of devotion. It laid the basis for the transformation of the papacy into an institution with genuine political power that dramatically expanded its traditional role as interpreters of religious doctrine. The new territories controlled by the Christians in the Levant needed supplies and reinforcements, which presented opportunities and rewards that maritime city-states like Pisa, Genoa and Venice were quick to recognise.

The establishment of Christian states in the east became Europe's first experience of colonialism – one reason why the Crusades received considerable attention from scholars in Britain in the 19th and 20th centuries, when the parallels of serving King and country sat neatly alongside concepts of duty and self-sacrifice. Despite the excitement of the conquest of Jerusalem in 1099, however, it quickly became clear that holding on to gains made by the golden generation of First Crusaders would be difficult. It took time to realise that Pandora's box had been opened – partly because it took time for the tides to turn, and for new realities to become apparent.

2 *Introduction*

Prior to the First Crusade, the Islamic world had been fractured and disjointed. The fall of Jerusalem proved to be a catalyst for consolidation that would eventually prove decisive. The Christians in the east became a lightning rod for ambitious Muslim rulers, keen to make a name for themselves with military success, either to win support of the local population or to catch the eye of powerful patrons. This tested the resolve of the kings, princes and barons of Europe who were appealed to repeatedly by the Christian communities in the Holy Land to provide men, supplies and leadership in what seemed to be increasingly uphill battle.

The problem was that while medieval kings and knights were enthusiastic to take part in expeditions east, it was not always clear what the precise goals of major campaigns were – or how (or even if) they could be deemed to be successful. For example, the Second Crusade, launched in the 1140s in the wake of the fall of the strategically important city of Edessa to the Muslims, suffered from a lack of a clearly defined target, despite attracting the participation of two of the most powerful men in Europe: Louis VII of France and the Conrad, Emperor-elect of Germany.

Things were no easier even after the catastrophic defeat of the Latin knights in 1187 at the Horns of Hattin and the surrender of Jerusalem, the crown jewel of the Crusader kingdom, to Saladin, perhaps the greatest military leader of the Middle Ages. Although the fall of the Holy City produced scenes bordering on the hysterical in Europe, and prompted the rulers of England, France and Germany to rush to restore and reinforce the Holy Land, defining what was desirable on the one hand with what was achievable on the other, proved all but impossible.

There was no lack of interest in the concept of Crusading, or in recovering the most important sites in Christendom – as subsequent events showed, for expeditions were launched with increasing regularity in the 13th century. They did not always go according to plan. In 1204, those attempting to head east found themselves drawn into the domestic politics of the Byzantine Empire and ended up camped not by the walls of Jerusalem but of Constantinople. In scenes that many contemporary commentators struggled to comprehend, the Crusaders ended up ransacking the city and seizing many of the most important holy relics of Christ's life and that of his disciples that had been collected by the Emperor Constantine and his mother Helena nine centuries earlier.

This spectacular disaster was borne of the problems of squaring motives of spiritual rewards with realities of financing expeditions that were expensive – and of supporting embattled communities whose prospects of survival never seemed to be getting better. To some, the best way to reconcile these competing issues was to change focus. In practice this meant keeping Jerusalem as an idealised final goal, but looking to first secure a series of stepping-stones that were deemed to be essential to the recovery of the Holy Land. Attention turned to Alexandria and the Nile delta ostensibly for strategic reasons, though in truth driven by the extensive trade links between Egypt and the Persian Gulf, India and beyond. Faith and commerce were silent partners in a story that sought to accentuate the virtue gained by the devout, rather than the profits on offer for the mundane.

Nevertheless, Crusade fever continued to burn in Christian Europe. There were moments that flattered to deceive, such as when the German Emperor Frederick

II swept all before him and recovered Jerusalem in 1229. He did so, some said at the time, to prove a point back home, for his expedition took place soon after he had been excommunicated by the Pope. Nevertheless, the hold over the Holy Places was precarious. One by one, towns and mighty castles were again picked off by enemy forces, pushing the Christians back to a handful of locations and finally to Acre alone. The fall of this city in 1291 brought nearly two centuries of western occupation to an end. Knights still held out on Cyprus, and then Rhodes, but it was the end of an era.

Despite the loss of the Holy Land, many of the lessons learned during the previous two hundred years continued to be practised – and not surprisingly. A major shifting of the sands in the east that brought the Mongols tearing across Asia set in motion a chain reaction that eventually saw resurgent Islamic armies under the Ottoman dynasty flood into Asia Minor and across the Bosphorus into Thrace and the Balkans. By the 14th century, the threat posed by infidel armies was increasingly real and worryingly close to home. Standing up to Islam no longer meant liberating Jerusalem, but protecting Europe.

Fighting for Christendom now took on a new meaning, as men were summoned to try to hold back the tidal wave threatening to overwhelm the defenders in the Balkans. Major campaigns were organised to hold back the Ottoman armies at Nicopolis in 1396 as the situation became increasingly bleak. By the middle of the 15th century all that remained of the great Byzantine Empire – the heir to Rome – was the city of Constantinople. Its vast land walls could not hold out forever, and in 1453 it too fell to the Turks. With Belgrade only just surviving a major siege three years later, Christianity had been driven onto the back foot.

Some held out hope: an ambitious and optimistic sea captain in the service of the Spanish King was convinced he had an answer at the start of the 1490s. If he could find a way to the markets of the east, it would be possible to produce great profits that would pave the way for an assault on Jerusalem and the re-establishment of Christian control of the Holy Land. The discovery of the New World by Christopher Columbus was driven by the desire to emulate the Crusades. Little wonder, then, that the small fleet of ships that crossed the Atlantic in 1492 bore a cross on their sails – the emblem that Pope Urban II had decreed that the soldiers of Christ should wear on their tunics four centuries earlier.

As this book shows, the Crusades were remarkably durable, spanning many centuries of competition, achievement and defiance. Although the dominant visual image in popular culture is that of a knight in shining armour, the impact of the Crusades resonated far beyond the world of Western Europe. As Timothy Venning makes so clear, reverberations and reactions were felt from Scandinavia to Baghdad, from Palermo to Cairo, from Portugal to Central Asia. This is just one reason why intense wars, fought in the name of religion, have fascinated readers for centuries.

Peter Frankopan

This page intentionally left blank

1 Prelude to the First Crusade 1055–1094

1055 | PERSIA

Fall of Baghdad, seat of the Abbasid Caliphate, and the Iraqi plains to the new steppe power which has overrun the Iranian plateau, the Seljuk/Saljuk Turks; their ruler Tughril Beg assumes the title of ‘Sultan’ (‘slave of the commander of the Faithful’). The Turks have recently started to pressurise the Byzantine frontier in Armenia with devastating ‘hit-and-run’ cavalry raids. The outmoded and underfunded Byzantine central army and frontier defence-system are not up to the task of defence.

1057 | BYZANTIUM

September. Accession of rebel general Isaac Comnenus (uncle of ‘First Crusade’ period Emperor, Alexius I) to the throne after a military revolt by aristocratic generals in Anatolia against the civil bureaucracy of the capital under the new, elderly civilian Emperor Michael VI Stratioticus. (The 190-year-old Macedonian dynasty ended in 1056 with the death of Empress Theodora, niece of Basil II.) Drastic military rearmament is undertaken against Turkish raiders of eastern Anatolia and the lower Danube valley.

ITALY

August. Robert ‘Guiscard’ (‘the Cunning’) assumes power as the new Duke of Apulia and Calabria (southern Italy), controlling emerging Norman principality in lands seized from Byzantine Empire and local Lombard principalities. He is the second-youngest son of a minor Norman knight, Tancred de Hauteville, whose sons have come out to Italy to lead mercenary bands of Normans in Byzantine and Lombard service and carve out a new state at their expense; his younger brother Roger will soon be installed as ruler of lands retaken from the Arabs in Sicily (from 1060). Robert has recently divorced the mother of his eldest son Bohemund (future Crusader Prince of Antioch) to marry the local Lombard heiress Sichelgaita, by whom he has son Roger ‘Borsa’.

1059 | BYZANTIUM

November. The sick Isaac I (aged c. 57) is induced to abdicate by civilian ministers and replaced by the ineffectual Constantine X Ducas (aged c. 54); military decline resumes. Constantine's brother John is the father of the later First Crusade era emperor, Alexius.

1064 | SPAIN

January. Siege and capture (*July*) of Coimbra (later part of Portugal) by the army of Castile under King Ferdinand I – first King of Castile (previously Count by maternal descent) and King of Leon from 1037, and younger son of King Sancho 'the Great' of Navarre. His brothers inherited Navarre and Aragon. The fall of Coimbra is the climax of the year's campaign down the river Mondego valley from the Castilian plains. The first significant advance of the Castilian frontier in the 'Reconquista', for which Ferdinand and later his sons recruit international knightly help for a series of campaigns promoted with Papal help as fighting for Christ.

1065 | SPAIN

Spring–Summer. Ferdinand I of Castile attacks the Moslem emirate of Valencia to his East, and defeats Emir Abd-al-Malik al-Muzaffar; he is given tribute by the neighbouring emirate of Zaragoza/Saragossa before he has to call off his campaign due to illness.

24 December. Death of Ferdinand I, aged around 51; he was married to Sanchia, heiress of Leon, whose brother Vermudo III he overthrew. His domains are divided between his sons Sancho (eldest), King of Castile, Alfonso, king of Leon and Garcia, Count of Galicia/Portugal. His daughter, Urraca, receives the city of Zamora.

1066 | ITALY/ENGLAND

14 October. Victory of the Papally-backed Duke William of Normandy, invader of the kingdom of Engand, against the usurper Harold II Godwinson at the battle of Hastings (or Senlac). Pope Alexander sent William a blessed banner as a Papal champion, implying a sacred element to his campaign against Harold who is claimed to have broken an oath to accept William as successor to the late King Edward.

1067 | BYZANTIUM

May. Constantine X dies aged c. 62; his eldest son succeeds as Michael VII, aged around 19; due to Michael's feeble character his mother Eudocia Macrembolitissa is effectively regent with the aid of Michael's tutor Constantine (monastic name 'Michael') Psellus, the era's most notable

historian and philosopher; she looks around for a strong military man to rely on against the rising number of Turkish raids in eastern Anatolia.

Summer. A Turkish horde ravages Cappadocia unopposed after bypassing frontier garrisons, and its mobile cavalry is not challenged by Byzantine forces; Caesarea is taken by surprise and sacked, the populace are massacred, and the rich shrine of St. Basil looted and desecrated. Eudocia seeks a husband to tackle Turks with full military power as Michael cannot do so; Eudocia calls the general Romanus Diogenes to Court and decides he is what the Empire needs.

1068 BYZANTIUM

1 January. Romanus Diogenes marries Eudocia and is crowned as Emperor Romanus IV, aged c. 45; he starts to reassert Imperial control and improve organisation on eastern military frontier, but cannot leave Constantinople till position secure from disgruntled civilian courtiers.

ITALY/SICILY

Summer. In Sicily, the North African Zirid emirate's general Ayyub gains control of the remaining territories of the local dynasty after killing aged Emir Ibn al-Hawwas in battle, and becomes Emir of Palermo; he leads army against the invading Normans under Roger, younger brother of Duke Robert 'Guiscard' of Apulia. Roger defeats him near Palermo; the Arabs are virtually wiped out. Ayyub flees in panic back to Africa with survivors, leaving Palermo and other Arab cities to defend themselves. Guiscard invades the remaining Byzantine territories in southern Italy, 'Langobardia'.

5 August. Guiscard commences siege of Byzantine capital, Bari, with first Norman fleet to cut off sea-link to Epirus.

1070 BYZANTIUM

Spring–Summer. Manuel Comnenus, eldest nephew of Constantine X's predecessor Isaac I and elder brother of future ruler Alexius I, leads Romanus' army to Sebastea; he is ambushed in his camp and kidnapped by Sultan Alp Arslan's general Chrysocule near Colonea. Manuel is ransomed, but while his army is leaderless a Turkish force strikes right across Anatolia into the unravaged western provinces and sacks the city of Chonae; the local shrine of St. Michael is principal target.

SYRIA

Turks overrun Syrian countryside, and start to pick off isolated cities; Fatimid resistance collapses and most of the cities that hold out, e.g. Tyre under Ibn Abi Aqil, are independent of their authority from now on.

1071 | **BYZANTIUM**

Spring. Romanus marches into Anatolia again with a massive army. Romanus' chief general Manuel Comnenus dies while army are in Bithynia, and Romanus refuses his younger brother Alexius (the future emperor) permission to join army as too young. Romanus marches on into Anatolicon via Dorylaeum, but many horses are killed in fire at camp.

SYRIA

Spring. Seljuk Sultan 'Alp Arslan' (sobriquet, 'Valiant Lion'; real name 'Mohammed', son of Tughril Beg's brother Chagri Beg) besieges Byzantine Edessa, famed seat of an ancient Christian community allegedly written to by Jesus Christ and former home of the 'Mandilion' image (portrait of Christ 'not painted by human hands') taken to Constantinople on the city's capture in 1032.

PALESTINE

The Seljuk general Atziz conquers Jerusalem from the Fatimid Caliphate of Egypt, which is regarded by the Sunni Moslems (including the Seljuks), loyal to the Caliph in Baghdad, as a 'heretic' state as it is Shi'a in religious orientation and has a rival Caliph from the Prophet's lineally-descended family. This leads to more harassment of Christian pilgrims by zealous Turks in Jerusalem than was the norm under the tolerant Fatimids, and growing Western resentment.

SPAIN

Sancho of Castile overruns Galicia and deposes his brother, Count Garcia, assisted by his brother King Alfonso of Leon; he then deposes Alfonso too by an invasion.

ITALY

16 April. Bari surrenders to Guiscard after his partisans in city seize one of the towers; end of Byzantine rule in Italy after over 530 years.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. Romanus' huge army of around 100,000 men, many Western and Balkan tribal mercenaries, marches into NE Anatolia; Romanus heads for Chliat that the Turks have captured, but faces a rebellion of disorderly and plundering German mercenaries at Cryapege; his army arrives safely at Theodosiopolis. Alp Arsian hastens north from Syria to assist his local forces; Romanus sends John Tarchaniotes and best troops to retake Chliat while he besieges Turkish-held Manzikert.

August. Romanus besieges and takes Manzikert; he hears of arrival of Turkish army nearby who have evaded his incompetent scouts, but does not realise its size or that Alp Arslan is in command; he sends out reconnaissance party under Nicephorus Bryennius, which is heavily defeated and call for reinforcements; Basilacius leads reinforcements but is captured, and the Byzantines hear of Sultan's arrival and start to panic.

Turks surround the Byzantine camp. The Balkan 'Uzes' Turkic mercenaries flee, and Romanus decides to break out towards Chliat; Tarchaniotes, in command at Chliat, abandons the town and retreats; Alp Arslan offers a truce to Romanus and peace terms based on no territorial concessions, but Romanus is determined to break up the massive, mobile Turkish army now he has it concentrated against him and demands that Turks abandon their camp to him and withdraw before any talks.

Battle of Manzikert: Romanus in Byzantine centre, Bryennius in command of left, and Andronicus Ducas (son of Constantine X's brother, 'Caesar' John Ducas) in command of rearguard; the Byzantines advance out of camp and after day of fighting are pressing Turks back to their camp but as darkness approaches Romanus requires his army to pull back to undefended Byzantine camp for night.

Andronicus Ducas turns his standard and leads men in hasty retreat, and panic spreads as other troops think he's been routed – it's later believed he deliberately sought this outcome to undermine Romanus' victory. The Turks see the panic and return to attack and Byzantine army crumbles; those who have not fled are killed or captured and Romanus is knocked off horse, wounded and captured.

The first Roman/Byzantine Emperor to fall into enemy hands since Valerian in AD 260, Romanus is taken before Alp Arslan but reassured and invited to dinner; he is required to pay tribute and sign a treaty of alliance, but is released after 8 (?) days and permitted to return home with his few surviving lieutenants.

The Byzantine army's virtual annihilation leaves Anatolia open to influx of raiding and later settling Turks; messengers reach Constantinople saying Romanus is dead or captured, and Imperial councillors decide to regard him as lost and try to persuade his stepson Michael VII to assert authority against Eudocia; he refuses, but his uncle John Ducas intrigues and the latter's son Andronicus returns to assist father. A letter from Romanus to Eudocia explaining his survival and peace terms is ignored as the Ducas family win over the capital's Guards regiments.

24 October. Romanus is deposed in Ducas-led coup, Eudocia is deported to a nunnery and Michael VII proclaimed sole ruler; Michael's uncle John Ducas and Michael's tutor Psellus are the real leaders of government. Romanus is besieged in Amasea, defeated in attempt to break out, but manages to flee.

Winter. Chataturius, Duke of Antioch, comes to Romanus' aid and persuades him to retreat to Cilicia

ITALY

Winter. Sicilian Arab towns and the Zirids of Tunisia send fleet to relieve Palermo, but it is defeated by Guiscard's navy; the Normans break through the harbour-chain of Palermo and burn ships in harbour, but Guiscard has to consider return to Italy as his ambitious nephews Abelard and Herman revolt, aided by Capua and Salerno.

1072 SPAIN

January. King Sancho defeats his fugitive brother Alfonso of Leon at the battle of Golpejera; *12 January* he is crowned king of Leon. He captures Alfonso and imprisons him in the monastery of Sahagun, but Alfonso escapes and flees to the emirate of Toledo, his former ally.

ITALY

5 January. Guiscard's forces storm Palermo; the citizens are granted quarter and free performance of their religion and possession of rights, property, and Islamic law provided they pay tribute; *10 January* Guiscard, brother Roger, and commanders enter Palermo in triumph, and re-consecrate ancient basilica of Santa Maria after 240 years as mosque.

Guiscard claims the overall fealty of all Sicily as invested as its Count by Pope in 1059, but will only rule Palermo, half Messina, and half the Val Demone directly and the rest goes to Roger, Great Count of Sicily, as his vassal; much of Sicilian strongholds still holding out surrender. Part of south coast (emirates of Taormina/Trapani) still resists.

TURKISH SULTANATE (PERSIA, SYRIA, ETC.)

Spring. Alp Arslan is called eastwards into Persia to deal with rebellion by his cousin the Emir Qaward of Kerman; he is successful, but is killed by treachery at parley with a rebel chieftain and his 18-year-old son Malik Shah succeeds as Sultan; the chief minister, or vizier, is the famous Nizam Al-Mulk, the learned Persian patron of culture who later founds the 'Nizamiyyah' academy at Baghdad.

BYZANTIUM

Spring. Andronicus Ducas, nephew of Constantine X, is sent against Romanus IV, and marches to Cilicia; Romanus is besieged in Adana, and Chataturius of Antioch and Crispin lead an unsuccessful sally; Romanus sends urgent envoys east to find Alp Arslan and beg for assistance but

his troops open the gates of Adana to besiegers and he dresses as a monk to show his abdication from power and is arrested.

Andronicus leads army back to Constantinople, and en route orders arrive to blind Romanus. 29 *June* Romanus blinded at Cotyaeum in defiance of original Ducas promises of no physical harm, and sentence carried out with deliberate brutality so that 4 *August*, soon after his arrival as prisoner on Island of Prote, Princes' Islands, he dies.

Isaac Comnenus, Manuel's next brother, appointed commander of Eastern armies to fight influx of Turks into Anatolia. Roussell of Bailleul (relative of Norman family of Balliol?) leads new body of French knightly mercenaries.

SPAIN

7 *October*. King Sancho is murdered (aged c. 34) while besieging his fugitive younger brother Alfonso in their sister Urraca's city of Zamora; he is stabbed by a local noble, Vellido Delfor, by his own sword, at a private interview near the walls (a trap?), and the murderer escapes into the city. His leaderless army accepts Alfonso (aged c. 32) as King of Castile. Alfonso has to swear an oath to the nobles of Castile that he had nothing to do with his brother's murder; later romance has it that 'El Cid' (Rodrigo Diaz of Bivar), a confidante of Sancho's and greatest knight in the kingdom, leads the demand for his oath and is not forgiven for this. Alfonso subsequently claims the rank of 'Emperor of Spain' rather than just a king (c. 1077), a psychological boost for his dynasty's role as leading the 'Reconquista'.

1073 ITALY

Robert Guiscard returns to Italy and advances on the rebels from assembly at Melfi; 2 *February* fall of Trani. Most towns in Apulia surrender, but when Cisternino refuses (*March*) Guiscard has its captive lord, Peter of Trani, tied to wattle screen and carried in front of his attackers to force them to submit.

Guiscard overcomes most of rebels except Richard of Capua but is delayed by serious illness.

Cardinal Hildebrand, aggressive promoter of the rights of the Holy See over secular rulers, is elected Pope after Alexander II and takes title of Pope Gregory VII (22 *April*).

Summer. Arrival of a letter from Michael VII asking for an alliance (including military aid) against the Turks – possibly the Empire is considering hiring Lombard or Norman troops sponsored by the Papacy. Gregory starts to send out letters to Western rulers warning them of how militant 'pagans' have taken the Holy Sepulchre and are massacring Christians and asking for volunteers to fight them.

BYZANTIUM

Roussell of Bailleul leads his mercenaries against Turks in Central Anatolia, but he is more interested in Byzantine weakness and the potential it offers for his own ambitions.

Autumn. Roussell launches rebellion, and starts to plunder Byzantine provinces in Central Anatolia; an imperial army is prepared to send against him, but Isaac Comnenus cannot assist as his depleted army is defeated by Turks and he is captured.

1074 ITALY

February. Pope Gregory writes to Count William of Burgundy proposing that he send troops to the East; by the Pope's own admission there is a concerted Papal drive to recruit an expedition for the East.

BYZANTIUM

Spring–Summer. Andronicus Ducas made 'Domestic of the Scholae' (supreme commander) under father John Ducas; they advance into Galatia to meet Roussell in the upper Sangarius valley.

Battle of the 'Zompus Bridge', where military road to Syria crosses Sangarius: Roussell routs Byzantines and John taken prisoner; Andronicus seriously wounded and captured trying to rescue prisoner father; Roussell advances unresisted into Bithynia and camps on Mount Sophon.

1075 ARAB CALIPHATE (BAGHDAD)

Death of Caliph Al-Qaim after rule of 44 years, succeeded by son Al-Muqtadi.

BYZANTIUM

Roussell proclaims John as his puppet-emperor, possibly with his victim's connivance, to help overthrow the rule of civilian (eunuch) chief minister Nicephoritzes in capital; Nicephoritzes sends money to the Turks in return for aid, and their general Artouch advances into Bithynia to force Roussell out; Roussell's camp on Mount Sophon is taken by surprise in lightning attack, army routed, and Roussell and John taken prisoner.

Roussell's wife ransoms him and he retreats with surviving troops into the 'Armeniacon' theme to rebuild rebel force as a brigand living off countryside. Michael VII ransoms John Ducas.

Alexius Comnenus sent against Roussell, and Isaac Comnenus to Antioch as Duke.

Autumn 1075 or Spring 1076. Alexius Comnenus cannot outfight Roussell as his army is too small, and many desert en route to Amasea; however Alexius bribes local Turkish tribesmen to abandon Roussell, harangues the citizens of Amasea to gain more funds, and establishes alliance with the Emir Tuctush; Roussell is harassed by Turkish cavalry and, his troops deserting him, surrenders to Alexius.

The captive Roussell is taken to Amasea and, as angry citizens demand vengeance on him, Alexius arranges a fake ‘blinding’ to satisfy them; he takes Roussell to Constantinople by sea due to Turks on land route.

1076 BYZANTIUM

? Michael VII’s alliance with Guiscard confirmed on basis of Prince Constantine’s betrothal to Guiscard’s daughter Helena, and the latter is sent to Constantinople to be educated ahead of marriage; Helena re-baptised into Orthodox Church.

1077 SYRIA

Emir Tuctush, younger brother of Malik Shah, becomes his viceroy of Syria and Palestine.

BYZANTIUM

After the death of Alexius Comnenus’ first wife, John Ducas arranges his marriage to c. 11-year-old grand-daughter Irene, daughter of Andronicus Ducas.

Rebel Armenian forces seize control of isolated Edessa from Byzantine garrison, and their leader Philaretus arrests Duke Leo and installs Basil Apocapes as his governor. The Armenians have been settling in this region to the south of their homeland since the Empire annexed their lands two generations previously and this accelerated once Turkish raids on the frontier-lands commenced.

October. Angry at Nicephoritzes’ control of government, aristocrat general Nicephorus Botaneiates revolts in Phrygia; the authorities in Constantinople are blamed for lack of action against Turks, and Nicephoritzes seemingly either can’t afford new army or fears its generals seizing power.

Nicephonus Bryennius, now governor of Dyrrachium, hears that fearful Nicephoritzes is planning to poison him; popular from defeating Serbs, he proclaims himself emperor too and his brother John and general Basilacius join him.

November–December. Botaneites and the rebel army face the Seljuk Turks’ local commander, Malik Shah’s cousin the Emir Sulaiman, who is occupying lands in Bithynia across their route from Cotyaeum in

Phrygia to Nicaea. In order to purchase safety from Turkish attack while he pursues the throne, Botaneites has to agree to let Sulaiman's troops garrison cities of Bithynia as far as the Bosphorus; he marches on to Chrysopolis to confront Michael VII's loyalists in capital.

1078 **BYZANTIUM**

7 January. Rioting in Constantinople, and the populace hails Botaneites as emperor; Nicephoritzes is lynched.

Bryennius' troops fail to achieve surrender of the capital, and he retires to Adrianople to await events.

March. Michael VII, still facing two rival enemy armies and giving up hope, accepts his uncle John Ducas' advice to abdicate (aged c. 30) and chooses brother Constantius as successor; Constantius refuses throne and proposes accepting Botaneites; *31 March* Michael abdicates, and retires to monastery of Studios and Alexius Comnenus and Constantius Ducas take control.

2 April. Botaneites ascends throne as Emperor Nicephorus III, aged c. 70, and (3 April) enters Constantinople.

Alexius Comnenus made 'Grand Domestic of the Scholae' (commander-in-chief) and is sent with army against Bryennius.

Sulaiman sends 2,000 Turks to assist Nicephorus III; ? he takes the title of 'Sultan of Rûm', i.e. the 'Roman' lands in Anatolia, and selects Nicaea as his capital.

Bryennius refuses negotiations, but is defeated by Alexius at battle of Halongus in Epirus, taken prisoner, and sent to Constantinople to be blinded.

1079 **BYZANTIUM**

Nicephorus III sends army into Bithynia against the Turks; Constantius, Michael VII's brother, is sent to Chrysopolis with command but proclaims himself emperor instead and his partisans win control of army after a brief fight; however, Nicephorus bribes the rebels to desert and sends another army over the Bosphorus, and Constantius's army crumbles; he surrenders and is sent to an island monastery.

SYRIA

Pro-Turkish Uqailid dynasty takes over Aleppo.

SPAIN

Battle of Cabra: 'El Cid', on a mission from King Alfonso of Castile to collect the tribute due from Emir al-Mutamid of Seville, assists him

to fight off an attack by Emir Abdullah of Granada and a body of Castilian mercenary knights. His unauthorised intervention against a partly Christian army annoys his king.

1080 BYZANTIUM

Nicephorus III adopts his nephew, Synadenus, as his son and heir, thus breaking his agreement with Empress Maria that her son Constantine succeeds him; renewed Ducas conspiracy, led by ‘Caesar’ John from nominal retirement and aiming in favour of his grand-daughter’s husband Alexius Comnenus.

Sultan Sulaiman’s Turks seize Cyzicus.

? Rupen the Armenian sets up separatist principality to resist both Byzantines and Turks in Taurus mountains of northern Cilicia, centred at Bardziberd castle.

ITALY

29 June. Pope Gregory reaches agreement with Guiscard at Ceprano and invests him with all the lands he received from predecessors – no mention of Amalfi and Salerno.

Guiscard plans invasion of Byzantium on excuse of breaking of Helena’s engagement, and announces support for a monk who arrives at Salerno claiming to be Michael VII.

BYZANTIUM

Winter. Nicephorus Melissenus, general in command in Phrygia, proclaims himself emperor and marches on Constantinople; however his use of local garrisons in army means that he has to let local Turkish bands replace them in command of his towns.

1081 BYZANTIUM

14 February. Alexius and Isaac Comnenus flee Constantinople and ride to headquarters of the Western armies where Alexius, though the younger of brothers (aged 25/26?), is proclaimed Emperor.

Alexius marches on the capital; Melissenus, his brother-in-law, arrives at Damalis on opposite shore of Bosphorus and offers division of empire, but this is rejected.

28/9 March. Alexius’ troops let in through the Charisius Gate in land-walls, and advance through the capital, looting en route; Nicephorus III thinks of sending for Melissenus.

Easter Sunday, 1 April. Fleet under George Palaeologus deserts Nicephorus for Alexius; Alexius refuses offer from Nicephorus to adopt

him as son and advances to Sacred Palace as Emperor flees to Hagia Sophia to seek sanctuary. Patriarch Cosmas persuades Nicephorus to abdicate, and Alexius becomes Emperor Alexius I and Nicephorus a monk.

Alexius sends envoys and money to German Emperor Henry IV for alliance against Robert Guiscard; the Emir Tzachas seizes Smyrna and soon sets up naval dominion including Samos; Alexius forms alliance with Sultan Sulaiman, establishing River Dracon in Bithynia as frontier and abandoning Nicaea etc. but some Byzantine governors remain in isolated inland areas as far away as Cappadocia. Alexius' loyalist writers, e.g. Bryennius, imply that Melissenus was the person who abandoned Nicaea/Bithynia to Sulaiman, but Alexius' responsibility is more probable and was probably 'written out' to hide the embarrassment.

17 June. Guiscard and his pretender, Michael VII, land in Epirus despite stormy crossing of Adriatic; the Norman army marches on and besieges Dyrrachium.

Alexius forms alliance with Venice, whose fleet comes to his aid and defeats Norman squadron under Bohemund at Pallio (*July*).

August. Alexius marches west with army including English refugees from 1066 in Varangian Guard, Tatcius and Turkish force, Armenians from Cilicia and Normans led by Humbertopulus; they assemble forces at Salonica and then cross the Pindus Mountains along Via Egnatia.

10 October. Alexius and army arrive outside Dyrrachium, and confront besiegers; *18 October* at the ensuing battle the Byzantines attack and defenders sally, but are heavily defeated. Robert's wife Sichelgaita rides in battle rallying Normans, and the English Varangian regiment are surrounded and overwhelmed.

Byzantines retire over mountains; Alexius retires to Ochrid, while Venetian navy leads resistance at Dyrrachium.

SPAIN

Alfonso of Castile exiles his most famous commander, 'El Cid', who goes into exile and offers his services to the twins, Counts Raymond Berengar and Berengar Raymond of Barcelona, but is turned down; he ends up in the service of the Emir of Zaragoza (Huddid dynasty).

1082 BYZANTIUM

Alexius signs treaty with Venetian representatives, allowing them very favourable tax-free concessions to trade in major Byzantine ports, in return for renewed naval alliance against Guiscard; however, *21 February* a Venetian in Dyrrachium opens the gates of the city to Guiscard.

Alexius' agents stir up rebellion in Apulia, and Guiscard's nephew Adelard and Hermann lead it again; at Alexius' instigation Henry IV invades Italy to attack the Pope and besieges Rome.

Guiscard marches east, and *April* his son Bohemund takes Castoria which 300 Varangians surrender; Guiscard reaches Castoria to hear of the crisis in Italy and decides he must return home, swearing oath to remain unshaved until he returns.

May. Alexius leaves Constantinople; Bohemund besieges Joannina, capital of Epirus, and Alexius attempts to relieve it but is defeated and retires to Ochrid, then on to Vardar valley to raise new troops; Alexius returns to Constantinople and Pacurianus abandons Ochrid to advancing Bohemund.

Bohemund advances to Veria, where he is repulsed, Servia, Bodena, and Moglena; Alexius tries to buy off Bohemund's subordinate commanders and Raoul of Pontoise takes Skopia but then defects to Alexius; Bohemund captures some other rebelling lords and blinds some and sends others to his father in Italy.

Autumn. Bohemund advances into Thessaly over the Pindus, takes Trikkala, and besieges capital, Larissa; Alexius receives 7,000 mercenaries from Sultan Sulaiman.

Guiscard returns to Apulia to suppress rebels.

1083 BYZANTIUM

Spring. Alexius leaves Constantinople with a new army, having dreamt of an icon of St. Demetrius (warrior-saint, patron of Thessalonica) promising victory; he marches into Thessaly and confronts Bohemund at Trikkala.

ITALY

Spring. Holy Roman (German) Emperor Henry IV invades Italy to besiege Rome; he takes the 'Leonine City' west of the Tiber, but Pope Gregory holds out in Castel St. Angelo and Henry and his 'anti-Pope' Clement face stalemate; *June* Robert Guiscard takes Canosa from nephew Herman to end rebellion but Norman army too small to go to Pope's assistance yet.

BYZANTIUM

Battle of Trikkala: Alexius gives Imperial standard to Melissenus and Bohemund chases him from battlefield but the rest of Byzantine force rallies and archers shoot down the Norman horses; the Norman camp is stormed and sacked, and Bohemund holds out on a nearby hill till he can

slip away in darkness; he returns to Epirus, installing garrison in Castoria under Count of Brienne en route.

October. Alexius besieges Castoria; Brienne surrenders after gates are stormed, in return for free passage providing he swears never to attack Empire again, and his second-in-command Peter Aliphas and a lot of his troops enter Byzantine service.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Sultan Sulaiman campaigns in south-east Anatolia and conquers Tarsus, Adana and Anazarbus.

Philaretus the Armenian takes control of the city of Edessa; other Armenians are settling on the upper Euphrates and in the Taurus mountains north of Cilicia, where a series of small principalities will shortly emerge. Alexius apparently loses out in a bid to secure Philaretus' loyalty as his local governor, and turns to the Seljuk Sultan of 'Rum', Sulaiman, as his potential ally instead.

1084 ITALY

March. Henry IV is marching on Apulia when the besieged citizens of Rome finally agree to surrender; he returns for 21 *March* ceremonial entry and Gregory is deposed by compliant Synod and replaced with Clement who 31 *March* crowns Henry in St. Peter's.

Gregory's envoys succeed in persuading Guiscard to help and he leads a large army on Rome; Henry withdraws to Lombardy and 27 *May* Guiscard sacks the city and rescues Gregory from Castel St. Angelo.

Guiscard turns his Saracen mercenaries on the Romans, and has to be rescued by son Roger Borsa from rioters; the city is burnt and Gregory is so unpopular that when Guiscard leaves *July* he accompanies him.

Venetian fleet in Adriatic defeats the Normans.

September. Guiscard and his sons Roger, Borsa and Guy return from Otranto to Dyrrachium with reinforcements; *October–November* they march south and besiege Butrinto; *November* Butrinto falls to Guiscard.

Guiscard defeats Byzantine and Venetian fleets in third attempt as the heavily-laden Venetian ships capsize and 13,000 allegedly drowned and 2,500 taken prisoner; he lands on Corfu and takes the eponymous capital, where he winters.

1085 TURKISH SULTANATE

January/February. Antioch surrenders to Sulaiman, whose expedition there has been backed by his ally Alexius (to save the city from the forces of

Malik Shah?); he quarrels with Emir Muslim ibn Quraysh of Aleppo and later in the year advances to besiege the city; Muslim appeals to Sultan Malik Shah in Persia, but Sulaiman ignores the latter's order to withdraw.

SPAIN

May. Capture of Toledo, capital of one of the Moslem successor-states to the defunct (1031) Ummayyad Caliphate of Cordoba, by King Alfonso VI of Castile. This is the first major success for the Spanish Christians' 'Reconquista', and takes on the same sense of Christian mission and duty for volunteers as the Crusade will a decade later.

ITALY

25 May. Death of Pope Gregory in exile at Salerno.

Spring. Roger of Sicily, Robert Guiscard's brother, and his son Jordan advance on and besiege Syracuse.

Guiscard heads for the Ionian Islands despite epidemic among troops on Corfu; Roger Borsa lands on Cephallonia but Guiscard falls sick as his ship approaches the northernmost headland and is carried ashore at Phiscardo Bay, where he dies, *17 July*, aged c. 70.

Guiscard's body is returned to Italy for burial at Venosa though temporarily lost overboard in storm; Roger Borsa succeeds as Duke of Apulia, and *September* his vassals swear allegiance to him, including Count Roger of Sicily. Bohemund refuses allegiance to his half-brother, raises rebellion in Apulia, and from his castle at Taranto seizes Brindisi and other towns which he forces Roger to accept as his new principality.

October. Syracuse surrenders to Count Roger.

BYZANTIUM

Autumn. Normans abandon Epirus.

1086 TURKISH SULTANATE

Malik Shah's brother Tuctush, ruler of Syria, leads expedition against their cousin Sultan Sulaiman of Nicaea, who is killed in battle outside Aleppo; Malik Shah lays claim to all his dominions in Anatolia and Syria, but it is impossible to enforce submission of many local Turkish rulers including Abdul Qasim at Nicaea and Tzachas of Smyrna, Tangipernes of Ephesus, Elkhan of West Bithynia, and 'Malik' (King) Danishmend of Amasea and other areas in Pontus.

ITALY

Easter. Abbot Desiderius of Benevento finally elected Pope in Rome after long stalemate, and takes title of Victor III, but the ex-imperial (German) ‘vicar’ of city who Guiscard captured in 1084 has been released by Roger Borsa and returns to prevent his ordination; he flees to Terracina and declares he prefers to abdicate and return to abbey and Gregory’s own preferences, Hugh of Lyons and Odo of Ostia, seek Roger’s support for own elections.

April. Count Roger of Sicily besieges Agrigento; 25 *July* fall of Agrigento, leaving Enna in interior the only major Arab town resisting but its ruler Ibn Hamud’s family captives.

Summer. Tuctush’s Seljuk army advances on Nicaea, and Alexius agrees alliance with Abul Qasim; Alexius sends Taticius with army against Tuctush’s general Bursuq, who withdraws leaving Nicaea unmolested, and Alexius invites Abul Qasim to Constantinople to seal alliance with festivities but builds new fortress on frontier before Abul Qasim aware of it.

SPAIN

The Moslem emirs of southern Spain, the ‘reynas de las taifas’ (‘petty kings’), led by Al-Mutamid of Zaragoza, fear Castilian expansionism so much that they call in the superior military power of the Moroccan Almoravid state, a desert-based emirate of aggressive, puritanical Moslem warriors under Yusuf ibn Tashufin. The Almoravids (Al-Murabitun) have been called in as mercenaries but soon start to dominate their allies. Alfonso of Castile is following up his 1085 conquest of Toledo with an attack on Valencia as the Almoravids land at Gibraltar, and returns home as the Moslem army heads into the west of Castile.

Castilian expansion is halted by defeat of Alfonso VI and his cousin/ally King Sancho Ramirez of Aragon at the hands of the Almoravids and the ‘reynas de las taifas’ at the battle of Sarajas (or Zallaqa, ‘slippery ground’), near Badajoz. The Christians have the larger army around 2,500 men including 700 knights, but are worn down in an initial clash with Al-Mutamid of Zaragoza leading the local Spanish Moslems and when they are exhausted, in mid-afternoon, Yusuf throws his fresh Moroccan warriors in a second division of the army into the battle to encircle the Christians. As the latter panic, the third Moslem division, less-well-armed, black Africans, join in to complete the rout. The Christians have heavy losses, but Yusuf does not retake Toledo. The local emirates are now at the mercy of Yusuf’s war-machine and are soon to be annexed (Granada in 1090, Seville and Almeria in 1091, Alpuente in 1092, Badajoz in 1094.)

1087 ITALY

March. Pope Victor announces at Capua that he is resuming Papacy, and Norman troops escort him back to Rome where the Imperial Vicar has been maintaining anti-pope Clement; they flee and 9 May Victor is installed in St. Peter's but the city remains hostile and he soon leaves again.

TURKISH SULTANATE

March. Edessa surrenders to the Turkish general Buzan.

ITALY

May–July. Victor III invited back to Rome by Countess Matilda of Tuscany who evicts anti-Pope Clement for him, but he falls ill and after 2 months withdraws to Monte Cassino where he dies 16 September; Clement's partisans regain Rome.

1088 ITALY

12 March. Cardinal Bishop Odo of Ostia elected Pope at Terracina as Clement still controls Rome; takes title of Urban II.

Fall of Butera, last Arab town in southern Sicily, to Count Roger.

Pope Urban visits Sicily to ask Roger for aid; November Roger's troops enter Rome, but Urban can only secure control of the Tiber Island as residence not enter Vatican where Clement's partisans hold out.

1089 ITALY/BYZANTIUM.

Pope Urban, now withdrawing from Rome again to live under Norman protection, sends legates to Constantinople; Alexius calls a synod, which approves closer links to Rome but condemns the Papal bureaucracy's omission of imperial name-list and non-use of Emperor's name in documents.

SYRIA

Fatimid forces retake most of coastal cities of Palestine from the Turks.

BYZANTIUM

Autumn. Robert, Count of Flanders (d. 1093, father of a First Crusade leader), calls in on Alexius while on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, meeting him on a Balkan campaign against Pechenegs; he promises 500 men on his return home – the nucleus of Alexius' idea for Western aid that leads to

Crusade. Alexius probably plays up the threat to holy Christian relics, the massacres of his Christian subjects, and the insults meted out to pilgrims to Jerusalem as he does in other contemporary contacts with Westerners, especially the German Emperor and Papacy. Some time around now the future Crusade leader, Peter ‘the Hermit’, is among those who have a traumatic pilgrimage to Jerusalem and develops indignation about the local Turks’ treatment of Christians.

1090 **BYZANTIUM**

The 500 Flemish knights promised by Count Robert to Alexius arrive in Constantinople, and are sent to Bithynia to hold Nicomedia against attack by Abdul Qasim.

ITALY

Bohemund rebels against half-brother Roger Borsa again, and seizes Bari to join principality.

SPAIN

Alfonso VI recalls ‘El Cid’ from Valencia to boost his shattered army.

ARMENIA

? Death of Philaretus, pre-eminent independent lord of Armenian lands in the Taurus; dominions split by his lieutenants.

ITALY

? *Autumn*. First Imperial embassy from Alexius to Pope Urban, calling for a force of Western Christians to be sent to fight the Turks and the Pechenegs.

1091 **BYZANTIUM**

Early. Tzachas takes Gallipoli; Tzachas is unable to defeat Byzantine fleet and retires to Aegean; Alexius can both send army to aid Abul Qasim in Nicaea against Malik Shah’s latest invasion and lead large army out into Thrace; the Pechenegs retire before him.

Cumans invade Thrace again, and advance to camp near the Pechenegs; Alexius recruits steppe aid from the Cumans and advances on the Pechenegs; he withdraws his Flemish garrison from Nicomedia, which falls to Abdul Qasim (embarrassing, as it was a former Roman capital city before Constantinople was built).

29 April. Battle of Mount Levunion – Alexius, Paleologus (right wing), Dalassenus (left wing), Monastras, and Humbertopulus lead Byzantines to crushing victory and Pechenegs nearly wiped out. Fearing revolt by captured Pechenegs at night, Alexius' general Synesius has them massacred and the Cumans take fright and leave Byzantine camp but Alexius sends promised gifts after them; May Alexius' triumphal entry to capital.

? Letter of Alexius to his ex-guest Count Robert of Flanders (or 1090), asking for a large mercenary force to help stop the tide of advancing Turks and citing atrocities; circulated after the First Crusade and so the extant text is believed by many historians to be a forgery justifying the Crusaders' actions, but possibly based on a genuine letter.

1092 BYZANTIUM

? As a sign of how bad the Turkish pirate problem is in the eastern Aegean, (St.) Christodoulus, the founder of the monastery of St. John on Patmos, has to flee to Euboea where he dies; the monastery is not safe until 1097.

Malik Shah's army under Buzun advances on Nicaea; Abul Qasim surrenders and is deported to Persia? Alexius sends a new army to recover Nicomedia and to fortify new positions on the adjacent Gulf.

Revolt by Rapsomates against the Empire in Cyprus.

SPAIN

October. The chief 'qadi' of Valencia leads a pro-Almoravid revolt in the city against the weak rule of the dynasty led by Al-Qadir, who is being hard-pressed by 'El Cid' and his son-in-law and ally Count Berengar Raymond of Barcelona; the Emir is expelled but the shaky new regime is soon attacked by 'El Cid'.

SYRIA AND TURKISH SULTANATE

18 November. Death of Malik Shah, aged c. 39, after a 20-year reign; succeeded by eldest son Barqiyaruq, probably aged around 12; Barqiyaruq's stepmother Kathun and her son Mahmud seize control of Baghdad, and he has to flee to Syria.

ANATOLIA

After 18 November. On the death of Sultan Malik Shah in Persia, Abul Qasim secures Nicaea as independent but is soon threatened by a Persian Seljuk attack.

1093 | SPAIN

‘El Cid’ besieges Valencia.

1094 | IRAQ

February. Barqiyaruq regains Baghdad with army from Syria led by local Emir Toghtekin; Mahmud is permitted principality of Isfahan.

ITALY

Spring. Pope Urban II finally gains control of Rome.

BYZANTIUM/TURKISH SULTANATE

Alexius’ general Taticius unsuccessfully besieges Nicaea; however the arrival of Barqiyaruq’s army under the ferocious Burzuq in Asia Minor en route to reconquer Nicaea leads Abul Qasim to appeal to Alexius for aid.

Alexius sends an expedition, which helps the city to hold out. Short of supplies, Burzuq retreats. However a second expedition is soon being prepared, and Abul Qasim appeals to Alexius again and apparently offers to act as his governor.

June? Alexius’ wife’s brother John Ducas, recalled from governing Dyrrachium, with a new fleet sails to assist Constantine Dalassenos who has landed on Lesbos to retake Mytilene from Tzachas.

Ducas takes Samos and other islands conquered by Tzachas. Byzantine forces retake Cius, Cibotus on the Gulf of Nicomedia, Cyzicus, and Apollonia to secure the Propontis coast. (This expedition was formerly assigned to 1092 by most historians, but is now thought more likely to be 1094 as Ducas had been in Dyrrachium for eleven years – since 1082.)

TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Caliph Al-Muqtadi in Baghdad; succeeded by son Al-Mustansir.

Tuctush, Turkish viceroy of Syria, revolts against his nephew Barqiyaruq; Aqsongor, governor of Aleppo, revolts in Tuctush’s rear as he sets off for Baghdad but Tuctush returns and kills him (*May*).

SPAIN

May. Surrender of Valencia to ‘El Cid’. He becomes its ruler, as an autonomous warlord technically vassal to his ex-patron King Alfonso of Castile.

Creation of the County of Portugal as a distinct entity, now separated from Galicia, as a fief for King Alfonso of Castile's illegitimate daughter Teresa, born 1080 (Countess), and her new husband, Henry of Burgundy (Count). Still officially part of Castile.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. During Alexius' Balkan campaign, he narrowly escapes from being assassinated by his trusted protégé Nicephorus Diogenes, son of the ex-emperor Romanus IV and aged in his mid-twenties. The latter hesitates when he has an opportunity to creep into the Emperor's tent unnoticed, and rumours of a widespread conspiracy lead to him being tortured into confessing. A large network of senior nobles and close Imperial associates is uncovered, including Diogenes' stepmother ex-Empress Maria and the Emperor's brother Adrian Comnenus, commander of the army in Europe. A purge of the governing elite follows, advancing more junior loyalists such as Western mercenaries.

Autumn. Alexius entertains his putative ally Abul Qasim in Constantinople; however, on the Emir's return home he is murdered by 'hard-line' Turkish officers who make his brother Buldaji their new ruler and defy the Emperor.

EGYPT

29 *December.* Death of 70-year-old Fatimid Caliph Al-Mustansir after 59-year reign, aged 65; succeeded by son Al-Musta'li (born *September* 1074).

Death of Vizier Badr al-Jamali, chief minister of Fatimid dynasty; succeeded by son Al-Afdal.

Sources

1055–94

Albert of Aix/Aachen, *Liber Christianae Expeditionis pro Ereptione, Emundatione et Restitutione Sanctae Hierosolymitanæ Ecclesiæ*, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. i, book ii, ch. xxviii on the loss of Nicaea c. 1081.

Michael Attaleiates, *Histoire*, ed. I. Bekker, in *Corpus Historia Studia Byzantina* (Bonn: Weber, 1853) pp. 183 ff. on 1071–81.

Nicephorus Bryennius, *Historia*, ed. A Meineke, in *CHSB* (Bonn, 1853) pp. 73–96 on the Empire 1071–8.

Claude Cahen, 'La campagne de Mantzikert d'après les sources musulmanes', in *Byzantion*, vol. ix (1934), pp. 625–37; 'La première pénétration turque en Asie Mineure (seconde moitié du XI^e siècle)', in *Byzantion*, vol. xviii (1948), pp. 5–67; *The Formation of Turkey: The Seljukid Sultanate of Rum: Eleventh to Fourteenth Centuries*, tr. P. M. Holt (London: Longmans, 1988), pp. 7–14.

- F. Chalandon, *Essai sur le regne d'Alexis Comnene Premier* (Paris: Picard, 1925), especially pp. 58–94 on the 1081–5 Norman war.
- P. Charanis, 'Byzantium, the West, and the Origins of the First Crusade', in *Byzantion*, vol. xx (1950), pp. 17–36.
- J. C. Cheynet, 'Mantzikert: un desastre militaire?' in *Byzantion*, vol. L (1980), pp. 410–38.
- Anna Comnena, *Alexiad*, tr. and ed. by E. R. Sewter (London: Penguin, 1969), pp. 31–72 (1071–8), 73–102 (1078–81), 103–34 (1081 politics), 135–93 (1081–5 Norman war), 196–308 (1085–94). See particularly book iii, ch. xi for the 1081/2 dealings between Alexius and Sultan Sulaiman; book vi, ch. ix for the loss of Nicaea; book vi, ch. x for the Flemish knights promised by Count Robert; book viii, ch. iii on Tzachas in NW Asia Minor; book vi, ch. x, xi, and xii on the early 1090s struggle over Nicaea; book vi, ch. viii on the expedition to Smyrna etc. vs Tzachas c. 1094 (originally thought to be 1092); book ix, ch. vi – book x, ch. vii on the 1094 Diogenes plot.
- P. Frankopan, 'The fall of Nicaea and the towns of western Asia Minor to the Turks in the later eleventh century: the curious case of Nicephoros Melissenos' in *Byzantion*, vol. 76 (2006), pp. 153–84.
- H. Gregoire, 'Notes sur Anna Comnene', in *Byzantion*, vol. 3 (Brussels, 1926).
- G. Kolias, 'Le motif et les raisons de l'invasion de Robert Guiscard en terre byzantine', in *Byzantion*, vol. xxviii (1956), pp. 424–30.
- W. B. McQueen, 'Relations between the Normans and Byzantium, 1071–1112', in *Byzantion*, vol. lvi (1986), pp. 427–76.
- Matthew of Edessa, *Chronicle*, tr. by E. Dulaurier (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1858) vol. ii p. 147 (ch. 78) on Antioch 1086.
- John Julius Norwich, *The Normans in the South* (London: Longmans, 1967).
- Papal Archives: Register of Pope Gregory VII, vol. i, nos. 46, 49, 51, 54–5 and vol. ii, no. 31 for relations between the Pope and Michael VII.
- A. Savvides, 'Can we refer to a concerted action among Rapsomates, Caryces and the Emir Tzachas between AD 1091 and 1093?' in *Byzantion*, vol. 70 (2000) pp. 122–34.
- G. Schulmberger, 'Des chefs Normandes des Armees Byzantines', in *Revue Historique*, vol. xvi (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1881).
- F. Sweetenham, 'Two letters calling Christians on Crusade' in *Robert the Monk's History of the First Crusade* (Aldershot: Ashgate, 2005).
- O. Wittek, 'Deuz chapitres de l'Histoire des Turcs de Roum', in *Byzantion*, vol. xi, pp. 285–319.
- John Zonaras, book xviii, ch. 20 (pp. 727–9) on the 1081 coup.

2 The First Crusade 1095–1099

1095 | BYZANTIUM/ARMENIA

Constantine I becomes Prince of the new Principality of Armenia in the Taurus, based on his Lordship of Vakha.

HUNGARY

Death of King (St.) Ladislav (acceded 1077); succeeded by nephew Coloman, son of elder brother and predecessor Géza.

TURKISH SULTANATE

28 February. Battle of Rayy (nr. Teheran): Tuctush defeated and killed by nephew Barqiyaruq. His young sons succeed to lands in Syria, Ridwan to Aleppo and Duqaq to Damascus, with the title of ‘Malik’ (King), under guidance of senior generals as ‘atabegs’ (guardians) – Toghtekin at Damascus.

ITALY

March. Alexius’ envoys join Pope Urban’s Council of Latin Church leaders at Piacenza and deliver appeal for military assistance; Urban calls for Western knights to go to aid of Eastern Christians.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Overthrow of Buldaji of Nicaea by Kilij Arslan, son of the late Emir Sulaiman; he secures the rule of Seljuk domains in western Asia Minor.

FRANCE

Summer. Urban goes to southern France to rally support for an expedition to the East; he enrolls Adhemar, Bishop of Le Puy, and Hugh, Archbishop of Lyon, to provide Church leadership and calls on secular rulers Count Odo of Burgundy and Count Raymond of Toulouse (the

latter of whom has succeeded his brother William, who died on pilgrimage to the Holy Land). In *September* he is in Provence, while his allies spread the word that he will deliver an important appeal at Clermont and encourage a lay gathering there to support him.

25 October. Urban carries out the consecration of the new basilica at the abbey of Cluny, headquarters of the Cluniac Order, where he was once Prior.

18–25 November. Urban presides at the Council of Clermont, with many Western secular lords present as well as clerics, and *27 November* calls at an open-air rally in the fields outside the cathedral for a Christian military expedition to deliver the Holy Sepulchre from the Turks. Adhemar of Le Puy leads the way in publicly promising the Pope to go on the expedition.

Launch of the First Crusade follows, under Bishop Adhemar of Le Puy as Papal Legate. Count Raymond of Toulouse is the first major potentate to take the Cross (*28 November*). Alexius is as yet unaware of the extent of enthusiastic Western response, from peasants to kings, and expects a normal-sized force of knights which he can control, to set out around *15 August* (Feast of the Assumption) *1096*.

At Christmas, Urban is recruiting in Poitou.

ITALY

22 December. Birth of Count Roger of Sicily's second son Roger, later first King of Sicily.

1096 ITALY

Vitale Michiel succeeds Vitale Falier as Doge of Venice.

FRANCE

March–April. Urban preaches in the Loire valley, at Le Mans in Maine, and then goes on to Toulouse and back to Provence for a Church Council at Nîmes (*July*). Meanwhile enthusiasm spreads as far as Flanders, where Urban sends letters, and southern Italy where Bohemund signs up.

Peter 'the Hermit' (from Picardy), a self-appointed organiser of the Crusade and enthusiast for mass-expedition to recover Jerusalem, claims that he has a letter from Heaven authorising him to lead an expedition to Jerusalem. He preaches in his homeland east into Lorraine; he leads a large force of volunteers east with him into the Rhineland. Both Raymond of Toulouse and Count Stephen of Blois apparently think that they are to be the military leaders of the expedition.

12 April. Peter ‘the Hermit’ enters Cologne with his co-leader, the knight Walter ‘the Penniless’. Around this time Volkmar leads around 10,000 volunteers from the Rhineland towards Bohemia and Hungary; Peter’s ally, the priest Gottschalk, assembles another disorderly horde in the Rhineland and follows his route, and the minor lord Emich of Leiningen (an ex-brigand) sets out with a third force including local lords. Emich’s army turns on the Jews at Spier (3 May?) as local ‘agents of the Antichrist’ and betrayers of Christ, killing those who will not convert, but most are saved by the bishop who takes them under his protection. The Church forbids the attacks and the local Prince-Archbishops of Mainz, Trier and Cologne aid the Jews under their protection.

25 May. Emich’s army arrives at Mainz to find the gates shut and the Jewish community sheltering in the Prince-Archbishop’s palace, and is sent a gift of money by the Jews’ leaders to leave them alone; *26 May*, sympathisers in the city open the gates and his ruffians storm the episcopal palace and carry out a pogrom; around a thousand people are killed and others are forced to convert to Christianity but later repent and kill themselves. The chief rabbi escapes to Rudesheim to seek the bishop’s help, and is told to convert to save himself but refuses so he is killed with his followers.

HUNGARY/BYZANTIUM

May. Peter ‘the Hermit’ and his expedition of Crusading irregulars, many unarmed peasants, reach Hungary on their way down Danube to Byzantine territory in the Balkans, plundering locals for supplies with resulting conflict.

Zemlin is looted after altercation in bazaar. Alexius hears what his daughter Anna Comnena later describes as news that all the nations of the West are on the move, and hastily arranges reception and food-depots en route to Anatolia.

GERMANY/BOHEMIA

Whit Sunday, 1 June. Local Christians in Cologne keep their Jewish fellow-citizens safe in hiding as Emich’s army passes through; the latter then head on to Hungary. More massacres break out on *1 June* at Trier in the Moselle valley as some of Emich’s men arrive looking for Jews and some throw themselves into the river, though most hide in the archbishop’s palace, and later killings take place at Metz. By the time the raiders return to the middle Rhine, Emich has left for Hungary, so (*24–7 June*) they turn on the Jews at Neuss, Weverlinghofen, Eller and Xanten.

30 June. Volkmar’s army carries out a pogrom in Prague despite the bishop’s protests. Later his unruly army is attacked and dispersed by the authorities in Hungary and probably breaks up.

HUNGARY

June/July. Gottschalk's army are attacked and disarmed by King Coloman and his troops at Stuhlweissenburg after starting to plunder the locals en route across the country. They promise to behave, but are soon robbing people again and this time are overrun and killed.

Emich and his army arrive and are refused permission to cross a tributary of the Danube at Wiesselburg; six weeks of clashes follow before the Crusaders storm the bridge and move their siege-engines up to attack the town. The attackers panic and flee (on a rumour that King Coloman has arrived?) and are routed by the defenders, the horsemen fleeing back up the Danube where some probably merge with other Crusading armies.

BYZANTIUM

Nicetas, Governor of Naissus, in charge of awaiting the pilgrims coming down the Danube, and John Comnenus at Dyrrachium and admiral Nicholas Mavrocatalon in Adriatic to await the army assembling in southern Italy; unfortunately, the Empire's arch-foe Bohemund (who invaded the Empire in 1081 with his father Robert 'Guiscard') is among the leaders of latter with his nephew Tancred.

July. Peter 'the Hermit' and 'army' are escorted by Nicetas across Bulgaria, but angry Hungarians pursue Peter's group over River Save into Byzantium seeking revenge for looting of Belgrade and they have to be rescued.

4 July. Advance-force under Walter 'the Penniless' burns down a mill outside Naissus and is attacked by Byzantines with some killed or arrested; *12 July* Walter's main force reaches Sofia to meet Byzantine military escort; the two forces of Walter and Peter reunite at Philippopolis to be welcomed and receive an Imperial message.

1 August. Crusaders reach Constantinople; Peter and other leaders are received by Alexius, but most are required to stay in camp outside the walls and some skirmishes with locals.

Alexius advises Peter to stay in Europe until heavier-armed knights arrive from Italy and to avoid provoking Turks, but he insists on going on and cannot control his men so as fighting worsens Alexius ships them over Bosphorus.

6 August. The Crusaders land in Anatolia, and take the road to Nicomedia; they camp at Cibotos on the Byzantine frontier at River Dracon, between Nicomedia and Nicaea, and plunder local (Christian) population.

A breakaway force of Germans under Rainald marches on ignoring Peter, and is surrounded by Sultan Kilij Arslan's army at Xerigordon *29 September*; *7 October* they are starved into surrender and killed or enslaved.

The Turks advance on Cibotus; while Peter is consulting Alexius the foolhardy Geoffrey Burel leads the crusaders out of camp; *21 October* they are ambushed and massacred in wooded valley 3 miles up road, and Cibotos camp is stormed; most defenders are massacred or enslaved, but survivors hold out in nearby fort until Byzantine fleet arrives to evacuate them.

October. King Philip of France's brother Count Hugh of Vermandois, Robert of Flanders, Count Stephen of Blois, and Duke Robert of Normandy assemble in southern Italy with Bohemund's forces. Their host is Bohemund's half-brother Roger 'Borsa', Duke of Apulia.

Hugh sets out from Bari to Epirus on his own ahead of others but is shipwrecked, taken to John Comnenus at Dyrrachium, and escorted to Constantinople by Manuel Boutumites but is kept away from his fellow-'Latins' who are crossing the Balkans. Alexius questions Hugh about who is coming and decides to require the leadership to swear a feudal oath of allegiance to prevent land-grabs such as Robert Guiscard's and Bohemund's in the 1080s.

Godfrey of Bouillon, younger brother of Count Eustace III of Boulogne (and son of Count Eustace II, brother-in-law of the late King Edward of England), lord of Lorraine as an Imperial vassal, and his brother Baldwin and cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg lead a force from the Rhineland and Low Countries (late August) to Hungary (early October). King Coloman insists on meeting Godfrey before he enters his lands, to ensure good behaviour, and having his brother Baldwin as a hostage en route. They meet Nicetas at the Byzantine frontier at Zemlin (November) and are escorted across Balkans.

Late November. Godfrey and Baldwin's army reaches Naissus and Philippopolis and *12 December* Selymbria on Propontis; their troops ravage the neighbourhood and Godfrey replies to Byzantine complaints that it is retaliation for Hugh being confined.

Bohemund and the two Roberts cross Adriatic to Dyrrachium (*late October*) and march along via Egnatia, Bohemund ahead of others; (*mid-December*) they arrive at Castoria, on the east side of the Pindus Mountains.

23 December. Godfrey arrives outside Constantinople; Hugh is sent to invite him into Constantinople, but he refuses; Alexius cuts off food-supplies so he loots countryside.

Bohemund winters at Castoria.

1097 BYZANTIUM

January. Stalemate between Alexius and Godfrey eventually resolved, and Godfrey encamps at Pera.

February. Count Raymond of Toulouse and Bishop Adhemar of Le Puy make way with another army down Dalmatian coast towards Dyrrachium and then continue along Via Egnatia; they are shadowed by Alexius' Pecheneg mercenaries, and Adhemar is wounded in a skirmish.

Bohemund loots a heretic 'Paulician' village in the mountains, and reaches Edessa/Aegae (capital of ancient Macedonia) and Thessalonica; Tancred distinguishes himself in skirmish with Pechenegs after they attack Norman rearguard during crossing of River Vardar, swimming over the river to help the vanguard.

March. Alexius cuts off supplies to Godfrey again after altercations about number of Crusaders arriving, and more skirmishes; Bohemund crosses Thrace and Raymond leaves Adhemar to recuperate at Thessalonica and follows.

2 April. Godfrey's army moves over Golden Horn to Philopation to threaten Alexius' nearby Blachernae Palace, but withdraw from near the city walls after they see Byzantine strength; a minor skirmish takes place.

3 April. Alexius sends Hugh to negotiate with Godfrey, who calls him a lackey and refuses to take men across Bosphorus; after defeat in skirmish by Byzantines he agrees to cross.

5 April, Easter Sunday. Godfrey and Baldwin swear to return all imperial territory they occupy to the Emperor, and are entertained at banquet; their army is shipped to Chalcedon.

Robert of Normandy and his brother-in-law, Count Stephen of Blois, embark at Brindisi the same day.

9 April. Robert arrives at Dyrrachium; Bohemund arrives outside Constantinople and is lodged at the monastery of Ss. Cosmas and Damian, while Tancred and the main army is a few miles behind.

10 April. Alexius receives Bohemund, who swears the oath to hand over all imperial territories but fails to get 'Domesticship of East' (military command over all Byzantine army in Asia); Alexius rewards him with a roomful of treasure.

Raymond's army crosses Thrace, with pillaging en route, as the more prudent Adhemar is still resting at Thessalonica; *21 April* they reach Constantinople, but Raymond refuses to swear the oath or obey Bohemund's authority; his men resume pillaging and are defeated by imperial troops.

26 April. Raymond swears modified oath; Bohemund crosses Bosphorus and Tancred does so without swearing.

28 April. Adhemar reaches Toulousan camp to calm soldiers, and Raymond leads them across Bosphorus.

6 May. Godfrey's army arrives outside Nicaea; 16 May Raymond joins them, followed by Bohemund and the Flemish contingent; Robert of Normandy and Stephen of Blois reach Constantinople.

21 (?) May. Kilij Arslan tries to break the siege of Nicaea, but as he attacks the main Crusader force to the south of the city he is ambushed round hills by Raymond and defeated.

3 June. Robert of Normandy reaches Nicaea; Crusaders besiege city while Boutumites brings Byzantine fleet into the Ascanian Lake to cut off exit by water. Afraid of pillage by Crusaders, the Turks open negotiations with Alexius.

19 June. As the Crusaders prepare assault, Turks let Byzantine Pechenegs into city from lakeside; Imperial standard is hoisted and the disappointed Crusaders are informed and are rewarded but forbidden to loot. Turks, including Kilij Arslan's wife (daughter of Emir Tzachas of Smyrna), escorted to Constantinople by Byzantines.

26 June. Bohemund leads the Crusader vanguard on to Leuce while Boutumites garrisons Nicaea; Alexius camps at Pelekanon and on Crusader lords' visit insists that Tancred swears the oath to return his lands.

30 June. Bohemund camps at Dorylaeum; Kilij Arslan brings up troops.

1 July. Battle of Dorylaeum: Sultan's army surrounds Bohemund, but Godfrey, Hugh and Raymond bring up the rearguard that he was not expecting and Bishop Adhemar attacks Turkish rear. Turks are heavily defeated and retreat into mountains, abandoning Phrygia; Byzantines follow the pursuing Crusaders and occupy Dorylaeum.

Crusaders proceed to Polybotus and Philomelium, and August occupy Iconium/Konya which the Turks abandon; Emir Danishmend, founder of a new Turkish emirate in Pontus, tries to bar their way with local emir Hasan but is defeated at Heraclea; Bohemund leads the successful attack.

SYRIA

Ridwan of Aleppo marches on his brother Duqaq's Damascus, aided by Yaghi-Siyan the governor of Antioch; at Shaizar they hear that the Crusaders are en route to Antioch and retreat to prepare defences.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius sends John Ducas and Caspax with fleet to besiege Smyrna and evict Tzachas; the ruler's captive wife is used as an incentive to surrender, and eventually Tzachas gives in and is allowed to leave unmolested. The Byzantines occupy Smyrna, but arriving governor Caspax is killed by an Arab prisoner and his troops slaughter the other prisoners: Hyaleas Duke of Smyrna and Petzeas Duke of Ephesus.

John Ducas marches on up Meander valley and retakes Pergamum, Sardes, and rest of the old 'Thraceion' theme that is re-constituted; he enters the upland plateau beyond and wins battle of Polybotus; Amorium and other key towns taken.

SYRIA

Summer. Ridwan's 'atabeg' Janah-al-Daula revolts against him at Homs.

Mid-September. With the Crusaders at Heraclea, the landless Tancred decides to explore the possibilities of gaining a lordship in the Armenian-settled lands of north-east Cilicia and the upper Euphrates. He is joined by Godfrey of Bouillon's also landless brother Baldwin, who is possibly acting on Alexius' behalf due to their good relations in Constantinople, as a potential and trusted Imperial agent to rule the district. Baldwin takes a local Armenian (Bagrat, brother of lord Kogh Vasil) in the Byzantine army into his service at Nicaea and so has local information. They head in two separate groups for the Cilician Gates pass ahead of the main army, Tancred a few days ahead, and Tancred enters Cilicia to attack Tarsus. Meanwhile, the main Crusader army marches to the main town of Cappadocia, Caesarea, defeating Hasan again en route at Augustopolis; they then march on to Armenian-held Comana, which the Danishmendids are besieging; the latter flee and the locals ask the Byzantine Imperial representative Taticius to nominate a governor – he chooses Alexius' Frankish mercenary officer Peter d'Aulps. Raymond sends Peter of Castillon and 500 knights ahead to check out a rumour that the Turks have abandoned Antioch, but they find this is false.

October. Baldwin and Tancred overrun Cilicia. Tarsus is abandoned by its Turkish occupiers as Baldwin arrives to reinforce Tancred's siege, but the garrison surrenders to Tancred who claims it for himself. Baldwin, who has more men, orders him to hand it over, which he does unwillingly; and while Tancred moves on to take Adana Baldwin refuses to let some arriving (Naples/Sicily) Normans from the main army in lest they retake it for Tancred. They are told to camp outside, and are attacked and slaughtered by some Turks for which Baldwin is blamed. Tancred has now taken Mamistra/Mopsuestia, uses the resentment at his comrade's behaviour as an excuse to attack his camp when he arrives en route to rejoin the main army, but a truce is patched up. Tancred joins an arriving Crusader fleet under Guynemar of Boulogne to take Alexandretta.

Baldwin meets the other Crusading leaders at Mar'ash/Germanicea and stays on in Cilicia after his wife dies in the camp, to move east towards the Euphrates and create a new principality for himself, probably with Imperial backing as 'dux'/duke. Joined by the future historian Fulcher of Chartres as his chaplain, he takes over Armenian-settled lands west of the Euphrates and drives out local Turks, basing his rule on the fortresses

of ‘Ravendel’ and ‘Turbessel’ (really Ruwandun and Tel-Bashir). He grants out fiefs and presents himself to the Crusaders as protecting their eastern flank from an Iraqi attack on Antioch, while Tancred goes on to Syria. Baldwin appoints his Armenian lieutenant Bagrat to govern Ravendel, but soon arrests him on a report of intended treachery from the Armenian governor of Turbessel, Fer, and he flees to Kogh Vasil to denounce the Crusaders.

The main crusading force halts at Germanicea/Mar’ash; *20 October* they cross the River Orontes at the Iron Bridge; *21 October* they reach Antioch and besiege Yaghi-Siyan there.

Bohemund and Tancred raid ahead up the Orontes valley, and defeat Duqaq and his general Toghtekin at Shaizar.

Late. Baldwin is invited to Edessa by local Christians to help defend them from Emir Balduk of Samosata; he takes towns on Euphrates.

25 December. The Crusader leaders decide on a raid up the Orontes valley to collect supplies; *28 December* Bohemund and Robert of Flanders leave with their troops. After their departure the garrison of Antioch sallies, chasing the besiegers back over the Orontes to their camp and killing Adhemar’s standard-bearer in a skirmish. Bohemund’s force raids to Shaizar and defeats a Damascene contingent there.

1098 SYRIA

Bishop Adhemar of Le Puy corresponds with the refugee Orthodox Patriarch Simeon of Jerusalem, now in Byzantine-held Cyprus, who sends shiploads of food to the Crusader camp; he also sends a legatine letter to the Western nations in Simeon’s name summoning help to the siege as a Christian duty, without apparent reference to the Pope.

January. Peter ‘the Hermit’ sneaks out of the camp at Antioch as supplies dwindle, but is caught and brought back by Tancred; William of Meulan is also caught deserting and upbraided by Bohemund.

ARMENIA

Early. Baldwin campaigns in the Euphrates valley among welcoming Christians; *February* ‘Curopalatus’ (a Byzantine title) Thoros/Theodore, the Armenian ruler of Edessa, adopts Baldwin as his son and heir. A plot is formed against Thoros, led by local Armenians such as the lord Constantine of Gargar, who resent his Orthodox religion (they are Monophysites) and Byzantine loyalties; sources differ on whether Baldwin inspired or just benefited from this. *7 March* Baldwin is involved in a riot in the city and crowds storm Thoros’s officials’ homes and attack his fortified palace. Besieged in the palace, Thoros is advised by Baldwin to surrender to him and agrees to leave for his wife’s father’s lordship

of Melitene if he is spared; 9 *March* Thoros is lynched by a mob as he leaves palace. 10 *March* Baldwin becomes Prince of Edessa, forming first independent Crusader principality in a Byzantine city. He later marries a local Armenian lady (daughter of the chieftain Taphnuz?).

SYRIA

February. Byzantine representative Taticius leaves the main Crusader army as Ridwan of Aleppo approaches their base outside Antioch, probably to try to find supplies; he is accused of desertion by Bohemund who implies that now there is no need to hand Antioch to the Emperor, but Anna Comnena implies that on his return to Constantinople he said Bohemund had threatened his life so possibly Bohemund 'set him up'.

8 *February.* After dark, as Ridwan approaches, the Crusaders slip out of Antioch over their bridge of boats opposite the city, to head upstream on the east of the Orontes towards the Moslem army which is camped at the Iron Bridge.

9 *February.* The Crusaders ambush and defeat Ridwan's army in a surprise attack at daybreak; the garrison of Antioch sallies into the camp but is defeated.

4 *March.* The Crusader fleet from Italy, having called in at Constantinople en route, arrives at St. Simeon at mouth of Orontes; its commanders include Edgar 'Atheling', rightful Saxon King of England and great-nephew of Edward 'the Confessor'. Raymond and Bohemund go to meet it. It brings supplies from Byzantine-held Laodicea, so probably Taticius arranged that – but he is not given any credit and is still called a deserter by Bohemund (and by Count Raymond(?)) as the latter's chaplain's account of the events denounces Taticius).

6 *March.* The returning convoy of supplies is ambushed en route to the camp, and panicking refugees flee to the camp to say their commanders have been killed; the Crusaders hold their nerve and defeat a sally by the garrison which is trying to distract them from the returning ambushers and the supplies the latter have seized. Bohemund and Raymond return chasing the ambushers, and the latter and the sortie are destroyed; around 1,500 Turks and 9 emirs are killed.

Antioch besieged tightly and castle of 'La Mahomerie' built outside the walls; meanwhile the Turkish garrison of Jerusalem is denuded by troops sent to aid Malik Shah's relief-force for Antioch which Emir Kerbogha of Mosul gathers; Egyptian Vizier Al-Afdal invades Palestine and takes Jerusalem as governors Sulaiman and Ilghazi ibn Ortoq flee north. Ilghazi is later settled in the 'Jazirah' as a Seljuk viceroy, and founds an 'Ortoqid' dynastic state there.

Al-Afdal sends ambassadors to Crusaders to propose to divide Turkish dominions; no reply.

SYRIA

Spring. Emir Balduk of Samosata offers his realm to Baldwin for 10,000 bezants rather than be attacked and enters his service as a mercenary commander; however, when the Moslem citizens of Saruj, south-west of Edessa, are facing attack from Baldwin and offer to surrender, they secretly ask Balduk to come and occupy their town instead. He slips out of Edessa to do so, but Baldwin pursues him and brings up siege engines to force him to surrender; he apologises and is invited back to Edessa and speedily executed, and from now on Baldwin only employs Christian vassals.

May. Kerbogha, en route to Antioch, unsuccessfully besieges Baldwin in Edessa for three weeks.

BYZANTIUM

June. Alexius sets out from Constantinople with army to assist Crusaders, and advances into Central Anatolian plateau as far as Philomelium; other forces retake Laodicea and Attalia to reach southern coast, but Turkish tribes still hold the inland route from Maeander valley south-east to Pamphylia.

SYRIA

2 June. Stephen of Blois flees the Antioch siege along the road north to Alexandretta, en route to the Imperial army. Bohemund's contact in Antioch, Firuz, sends a message to him saying that he has been put in command at the 'Tower of Two Sisters' and will let the Crusaders in; in the evening the main army ostentatiously sets out eastwards and the garrison of the city relaxes, thinking that they have gone to intercept Kerbogha.

3 June. Early in the morning before dawn, the Crusaders return and Fulk of Chartres leads 60 knights to climb a ladder into the 'Tower of Two Sisters'. Firuz meets them, and they charge along the walls seizing other towers and then go down to open the gates.

Antioch falls to the Crusaders, apart from the mountain citadel; governor Yaghi-Siyan is killed in flight as he is thrown from his horse and attacked by local Armenians, and his son Shams-at-Daula holds citadel. The Orthodox Patriarch John is released from prison and restored to his see, and the churches are handed back to local Christians.

5 June. Kerbogha arrives at the Iron Bridge.

7 June. He reinforces the citadel and besieges city.

10 June. William and Aubrey of Grantmesnil and Lambert of Clermont evade besiegers and sail from St. Simeon to Attaleia where they meet up

with fleeing Count Stephen of Blois; they go to Philomelium to report Crusaders' desperate position to Alexius and ask for him to relieve Antioch. A Norman lord in the Byzantine army, Bohemund's half-brother Guy, also asks Alexius to help the Crusaders.

10 June. A peasant, Peter Bartholomew, tells Count Raymond that the 'Holy Lance' used to pierce Christ's side at the Crucifixion is buried under the floor of the Cathedral; he has been having visions of St. Andrew to this effect since the earthquake on *30 December*. The leading Crusade cleric, Adhemar, is not impressed but a search is planned and after the priest Stephen announces that he has had a vision of Christ promising support to the Crusade while asleep in a church in the city the leaders are enthused. They swear an oath on the Holy Sacrament not to flee Antioch, at Adhemar's suggestion.

14 June. A meteor falls on the Turks' camp; the Crusaders take it as a sign of Divine wrath.

15 June. A lance is discovered under the floor of the Cathedral by Peter Bartholomew shortly after Count Raymond has left as his day-long 'dig' has found nothing. It is hailed as the 'Holy Lance' amidst scenes of jubilation; the later historian Raymond of Aguilers is a witness of the discovery.

27 June. Peter 'the Hermit' and a Persian-speaking envoy, Herluin, are sent to Kerbogha to tell him to leave or face destruction.

28 June. Battle of Antioch. The Crusaders emerge from the city onto the north bank of the Orontes to confront Kerbogha, with Hugh of Vermandois and Robert of Flanders leading the French in the van, followed by Godfrey's Lorrainers, Duke Robert's Normans, the Toulousans under Adhemar (Raymond is ill), and the Italians under Bohemund and Tancred. The Moslems are driven back in a massive attack by the zealous Crusaders, inspired by their finding of the 'Holy Lance', and their camp is looted; Kerbogha flees.

Ahmed ibn Merwan, commanding citadel, sees the disaster and sends envoys into the city to surrender; Count Raymond receives them and sends his banner to be planted on the citadel walls, thus claiming its command, but Ahmed refuses to accept it and waits until Bohemund returns from the battle and can be informed and send his banner.

BYZANTIUM

July/August(?) Alexius, facing Kilij Arslan who has regrouped his forces at Iconium barring the road to Cilicia, does not continue campaign. He maintains existing garrisons as far as Philomelium, but returns to Constantinople giving up on relief-plans – which the Crusader leaders hold against him when they find out.

ITALY

5 July. At Capua, Urban grants Count Roger full legatine authority over the Sicilian Church. It is a personal grant, but later Kings of Sicily use it as evidence to stop Papal interference in their Church too.

Urban goes on to Bari, and holds Synod with Byzantine and local Greek representatives; advised by Archbishop Anselm of Canterbury, leading theologian from Bec in Normandy, he persuades local Greek prelates to accept the controversial ‘filioque’ (double procession of Holy Spirit from Father and Son), but no progress with Alexius’ envoys.

SYRIA

Count Raymond is furious with Bohemund over the banner incident; Hugh of Vermandois is sent to inform Alexius, and Bohemund becomes Prince of Antioch with no mention of Byzantine rights.

1 August. Death of Adhemar in epidemic; Peter Bartholemew has a vision of him roasting in Hell, allegedly for doubting the provenance of his vision of the ‘Holy Lance’.

Godfrey rides north-east to Turbessel to secure it and the surrounding area, west of the Euphrates, to establish a link with Edessa; Robert of Normandy joins Edgar ‘Atheling’, his old friend from the 1070s at the Anglo-Norman court, and the fleet at Lattakieh/Laodicea.

11 September. A leadership council meeting in Antioch agrees to write to Pope Urban asking him to send out a new legate to replace Adhemar as their leader, or preferably come himself.

October. Raymond overruns the Lower Orontes valley and installs Peter of Narbonne, his subject in Toulouse, as Bishop of Albara.

5 November. The leadership hold council at the Cathedral over their next move. Bohemund presses his claim to rule Antioch as the Emperor is not coming, and is defied by Raymond who insists on Alexius’ rights; the ordinary soldiers prefer to head on to Jerusalem. Eventually Raymond agrees to abide by a majority decision of the other leaders, and Bohemund swears to accompany them south and not impede their campaign.

Early November. Most Crusaders march on southwards up Orontes, but Bohemund stays in Antioch; *27 November–11 December* siege of Ma’arat al-Numan, led by Count Raymond and Robert of Flanders; *11 December*, when the town is forced to negotiate its surrender after a siege-tower is wheeled into place and used to protect miners who undermine a wall which collapses, it is offered to Bohemund by private negotiation with the citizens. Next morning the attack resumes and all who cannot reach the ‘safe house’ indicated as a refuge by Bohemund are massacred. Raymond is annoyed at Bohemund’s claim to the town as his men did most of the fighting there, and it is handed to the neutral Bishop of Albara

instead; Raymond's men lead pressure on the squabbling leaders to march on quickly and a general offer of overall leadership of the army is made to him by the 'grass roots', which he accepts; Bohemund returns to Antioch.

PERSIA/IRAQ

Sultan Barqiyaruq faces rebellion by younger brother Mohammed and cannot send new army from Persia; after civil war the Turkish lands are divided between them, Mohammed gaining land in Iraq – their younger brother Sanjar confirmed as ruler of Khorasan.

SPAIN

Autumn. Almoravid siege of 'El Cid' in Valencia.

ITALY

Late. Pope Urban's nominee to be Patriarch of Jerusalem, Archbishop Daimbert of Pisa, sets out for Syria with a Pisan fleet; the Crusaders are unaware of his nomination.

1099 SYRIA

Raymond offers money to the other Crusade leaders to accept him as leader at a meeting at Rugia (the most to Godfrey and to Robert of Normandy), but Bohemund is not included; the ordinary troops, angry at delays, start pulling down the walls of Ma'arat al-Numan to force a move.

13 January. The Crusaders' first force, under Raymond, Robert of Normandy and Tancred, march on from Ma'arat al-Numan; *early February.* Godfrey and Robert of Flanders follow with the second force.

22 January. The main force reaches Masyaf, whose lords sign up to a treaty of alliance to be rid of them.

23–5 January. They halt at the abandoned Rafaniya, taking supplies, and then enter the Beqa'a valley past the site of the future 'Krak des Chevaliers' where the fortress of Hosn al-Akrad is abandoned to them. They halt there for three weeks. Jalal al-Mulk, lord of Tripoli, sends envoys to invite Raymond to send him an embassy as a potential ally, which is done; the embassy is impressed by the riches of Tripoli and advises Raymond to blackmail it by attacking one of its fortresses.

Mid-February. Local Moslem lords let the main Crusader force under Raymond pass through the territory of Shaizar (domain of the Ibn Munqidh dynasty) and Hama and travel south-west back to the coast near Tripoli, where Raymond intends to attack a border fortress.

17 February, early hours. The harbour town of Tortosa is evacuated by its garrison as Raymond's troops arrive and light a large number of fires to imply that their army is larger than in reality.

Raymond besieges Arqa; Godfrey and Robert of Flanders (in Antioch until recently) arrive when Raymond hears they are not far away at Jabala and sends the bishop of Albara to invite them to help, so as not to miss out on any loot, but Bohemund halts at Lattakieh/Laodicea.

April. Crusaders receive message from Alexius promising to join them in June; they decide not to wait despite Raymond's advice, but are held up at siege of Arqa. Peter Bartholemew announces another vision with saintly advice to attack Arqa at once, but a group of northern French led by Robert of Normandy's chaplain claim he is a fake and angry Provençals defend him.

Good Friday, 8 April. Peter Bartholemew accepts 'ordeal by fire', i.e. walking over hot coals, to prove the validity of his visions which are being doubted; he is badly burnt and *20 April*, dies in the charge of Raymond, who takes over possession of the 'Holy Lance' from him.

May/June. Boutumites lands from Byzantine fleet at Lattakieh to meet Bohemund, who is suspicious of intentions and temporarily detains him; on way home fleet damaged by storm off Cilicia.

13 May. Crusaders abandon the siege of Arqa and march on, supplied with food, money and released Christian prisoners by the Emir of Tripoli in return for leaving him alone. *16 May* they leave Tripoli.

19 May. Crusaders cross the Fatimid frontier near Beirut, which pays tribute. *20 May* sortie from Sidon defeated.

23 May. Crusaders pass Tyre.

24 May. The Crusaders pass Acre and head for Jerusalem, by-passing coastal cities.

PALESTINE

26–30 May. Crusaders camp at Caesarea; they march inland towards Jerusalem. *3 June* they enter the abandoned Ramleh and install a Latin Christian priest in the church of St. George, plus a garrison.

6 June. They reach Emmaus and receive an embassy from the 'Eastern rite' Christians of Bethlehem, who are sent back with troops under Tancred and Godfrey's cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg.

Tuesday 7 June. The Crusaders arrive at Jerusalem and open siege, with Fatimid commander Iftihar-al-Daula in command inside.

SPAIN

10 June. Death of ‘El Cid’, probably in his late 60s, during the Almoravid siege of Valencia. This is probably due to an epidemic not wounds as in the later literary myth, and ‘El Cid’s body is probably not mounted on a horse to lead a charge against the Moslems either.

PALESTINE

12 June. Pilgrimage to the Mount of Olives, where a holy hermit urges an attack on the morrow.

13 June. Assault on the walls fails due to lack of siege-engines; this has to be remedied and is helped by the arrival of six ships at Jaffa that day with supplies of wood.

Raymond Pilet rescues the supply-train from ambush en route to Jerusalem, at Ramleh; the Egyptian fleet arrives at Jaffa. Tancred and Robert of Flanders take men to the forests of Samaria to collect more wood.

Friday, 8 July. Barefoot procession around the walls, as advised by the priest Peter Desiderius who claims Adhemar has spoken to him in a vision, and sermons on the Mount of Olives by Peter ‘the Hermit’ and Arnulf of Roches, Count Robert’s chaplain. According to Peter Desiderius’ vision, the attack should take place nine days later.

The siege-engines are completed.

13 July. Assault on the east section of the north wall and Mount Zion, with the first use of the siege-towers; driven back.

14 July. Fierce assault all day; the siege-towers are placed along the walls.

15 July. Crusaders storm Jerusalem as Godfrey of Bouillon and his brother Eustace get siege-towers’ ramps onto the northern wall and Gilbert of Tournai and Litold lead a Lotharingian contingent onto the walls, followed by Godfrey. The Crusaders overrun the city, and indiscriminately massacre inhabitants including local Christians and Jews; Tancred’s men hurry to the Dome of the Rock so that the Temple Mount cannot be barricaded, and accept the surrender of the refugees in the Al-Aqsa Mosque who are promised safe passage and raise Tancred’s banner to show that they are under his protection. The arriving Crusaders storm the mosque and kill everyone, and the chief synagogue is burnt down with its Jewish occupants inside. Raymond of Aguilers, Count Raymond’s chaplain, later recalls that the Crusaders waded up to their knees in blood.

The ‘Tower of David’ holds out under Ifthihar, and the garrison surrenders on terms to Count Raymond and are allowed to leave with their treasure.

17 *July*. The leaders hold a thanksgiving service at the Church of the Holy Sepulchre. They meet and quarrel over who is to be King of Jerusalem; Raymond rejects the crown and the two Roberts lead the election of Godfrey, who refuses a Royal title as unseemly in Christ's city but will be 'Defender of the Holy Sepulchre'. Raymond is jealous of Godfrey, and tries to keep the Tower of David as his residence as an implicit threat until his reluctant nominee to hold it until a council decision, the bishop of Albara, hands it to Geoffrey. Raymond moves to Jericho.

1 *August*. A Western Patriarch (Amulf of Rohes) and canons are installed in Church of Holy Sepulchre to follow rites of Western Church, and Orthodox clerics evicted. The Crusaders are unaware that the Pope has nominated Daimbert of Pisa for the see. The local Christians are forced to reveal the hiding-places of the greater part of the 'True Cross', and Tancred and Eustace of Boulogne leave to take Nablus.

Vizler Al-Afdal arrives at Ascalon with army from Egypt and demands Crusaders' surrender; Godfrey and Robert of Flanders lead the main army down to Ramleh where (9 *August*) Tancred's contingent rejoins them.

12 *August*. Al-Afdal routed in battle of Ascalon as the Crusaders attack him before he expects; he flees and his camp is looted.

13 *August*. The leaders of the Crusade return to Jerusalem; the garrison of Ascalon offers to surrender to Raymond but Godfrey insists that he must have the town so Raymond turns down the offer and the two Roberts quarrel with Godfrey. Raymond is also offered Arsuf by its garrison, and Godfrey insists that it then be handed to him so Raymond abandons the plan.

ITALY

29 *July*. Death of Pope Urban II, unaware of fall of Jerusalem.

13 *August*. Paschal II elected Pope.

SYRIA

Late August. Count Raymond and others, including the two Roberts, leave Jerusalem, and return to Tortosa where Raymond intends to set up coastal principality.

Eumathius Philocales and Byzantine fleet retake Corycus, Cilicia, from Bohemund's men; Strategius Strabo installed at Seleucia to bar Bohemund's further advance.

Eumathius sails to Lattakieh, which Bohemund is besieging on his own behalf; however Raymond, Duke Robert of Normandy and Count Robert of Flanders arrive to Bohemund's annoyance and when the town falls. Raymond hoists his and Alexius' standards.

Eumathius transports the two Roberts to Constantinople on his return there.

Late Autumn. Bohemund leaves Syria to visit Jerusalem with Baldwin of Edessa and Archbishop Daimbert of Pisa who is enthroned as Patriarch (Western rite); Bohemund's nephew Tancred creates principality of Galilee; Godfrey of Bouillon becomes 'Defender of the Holy Sepulchre' but not King of Jerusalem and Daimbert apparently secures a promise from him to move to Ascalon once it is conquered and hand over Jerusalem to him.

IRAQ

Autumn. Al-Harawi, chief qadi of Damascus, leads a mission of exiles from Palestine to Baghdad to seek the Caliph's help and plead for a military expedition to reconquer Jerusalem.

Sources

1095

Bernold of Constance, *Die Chronicon Bertholds von Reichenau und Bernolds von Konstanz*, ed. I. Robinson (Hanover: Hahnsche Buchhandlung, 2003): ann. 1095.

F. Chalandon, *Essai sur la regne d'Alexis Ier Comnene* (Paris: Picard, 1900).

Anna Comnena, *Alexiad*, pp. 308–9.

D. C. Munro, 'Did the Emperor Alexius I ask for aid at the Council of Piacenza?' in *American Historical Review*, vol. xxvii (New York, 1922).

Council of Clermont and Urban's speech: Baldric of Dol, vol. iv, pp. 15–16.

Baudis, *Historia Jerosolimitana*, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iv, book i, ch. iv, pp. 12–15; book iv, pp. 12–15.

A. Fliche, 'Urban II et la Croisade' in *Revue de l'Histoire de l'Eglise de la France*, vol. xiii (Paris: Fayard, 1927).

Fulcher of Chartres, ed. H. Hagenmeyer (Heidelberg: Winter, 1913) vol. i, book iii, pp. 130–8.

Guibert of Nogent, 'Gesta Dei per Francos', in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iv, book ii, ch. iv, pp. 137–40; also later edition of this, ed. R. Huygens (Turnhout: Brepols, 1986).

H. Hagenmeyer, *Chronologie de la Premiere Croisade* (Paris: E. Leroux, 1902).

D. C. Munro, 'The Speech of Pope Urban II at Clermont' in *American Historical Review*, vol. xi (New York, 1906).

Robert the Monk, 'Historia Hierosolimitana' in *RHC Occidental* vol. iii: book i, ch. i–iii, pp. 727–9; ch. ii–iii, pp. 15–16; also tr. by Carol Sweetenham, in *Crusades Texts in Translation*, vol. xi (Ashgate, 2005).

William of Malmesbury, *Gesta Regnorum*, ed. W. Stubbs (London: Rolls Series, 1887–9, 2 vols), vol. ii, pp. 393–8.

Adhemar of Le Puy: Guibert, book ii, ch. v, p. 140; Robert, book i, ch iv, p. 731.

Raymond of Toulouse: Baudis, book i, ch. v, p. 16.

1096

Hagenmeyer, op. cit.

Preparations, and Peter the Hermit's expedition: Albert of Aix/Aachen, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iv: book i, ch. ix; Ekkehard of Aura, *Hierosolymita*, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. v, part i, pp. 18–19; Guibert, book i, ch. vii, p. 142; Orderic Vitalis, *Historia Ecclesiastica*, ed. A. Le Prevost and L. Delisle, in *Societe de l'Histoire de la France* (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1838–55, 5 vols), vol. iii p. 477; book ix, ch. iv.

Byzantine alarm at Crusade: Anna Comnena, book x, ch. vi.

Peter's Crusade in the East: Albert of Aix/Aachen in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iv: book i ch. vii, p. 276; ch. viii, p. 278; ch. ix–xii (in Bulgaria), ch. xiii–xv (Constantinople), xv (Asia minor); Anna Comnena, *Alexiad*, book x, ch. v–vi (tr. Sewter, pp. 309–13); Gesta Francorum: Anonymi Gesta Francorum et Aliorum Hierosolimitorum, ed, L. Brehier (Paris, 1924): book i, ch. ii (Peter's forces march over Europe) and iii–v (in Asia Minor); Guibert in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iv: book ii, ch. viii, pp. 142–3; Robert the Monk, book i, ch. vii, pp. 85–6.

Germany and the massacres of the Jews: Albert of Aix, book i, ch. xxiii, xvii, xviii, xxiii–xxiv, xxviii–xxix; Cosmas of Prague, *Chronicon*, in MGH Scriptores, vol. vii: book iii, ch. iv. Ekkehard, pp. 20–1; A. Neuberger and M. Stern, *Quellen zur Geschichte der Juden* (Berlin: Leonhard Simeon, 1892, 2 vols), vol. ii; Anonymous of Mainz-Darmstadt, pp. 172, 178–80; Eliezer bar Nathan, pp. 155–8; Saloman bar Simeon, pp. 84, 87–91.

The leaders set out: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. i–ix; Chronicle of Zimmern, tr. Hagenmeyer, in Archives de l'Orient Latin, vol. ii pp. 21–2; Anna Comnena, *Alexiad*, book x ch. vii–x; Fulcher of Chartres, pp. 144–5; Gesta Francorum, p. 14; Robert the Monk, book ii.

Hugh of Vermandois and Alexius: Anna Comnena, book x, ch. vii.

Bohemund arrives in the Empire: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xviii; Anna Comnena, book xiii, ch. iv–v; Gesta Francorum, ch. iv, pp. 18–20 (arrival in Greece), 20–2 (Macedonia), 24–8 (Constantinople); ch. vi; ch vii (Tancred); A. C. King, 'A Neglected Passage in the Gesta', in L. J. Paetow, ed., *The Crusades and Other Essays Presented to D.C. Munro* (New York: Crofts, 1928); See also R. B. Yewdale, *Bohemund I, Prince of Antioch* (Princeton: Princeton UP, 1924).

Raymond of Toulouse: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xxii–xxiii; Raymond of Aguilers, *Historia Francorum qui ceperunt Jerusalem*, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iii: book i–ii, pp. 235–8.

Robert of Normandy and Robert of Flanders: Fulcher, book i, ch. vii, pp. 163–8; Raymond of Aguilers, book ii, p. 238.

Stephen of Blois and co.: Fulcher, book ii, ch. viii, pp. 168–76.

The leaders meet Alexius: Anna Komnenos, book x, ch. 7; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. ix; Gesta Francorum, book i, ch. viii; Raymond of Aiguliers, book i, p. 18; J. Shepard, "Father" or "Scorpion"? Style and substance in Alexius' diplomacy', in M. Mullett and D. Smythe, eds, *Alexios Komnenos – Papers* (Belfast: Byzantine Texts and Translations, 1996), pp. 80–2.

Alexius and Bohemund: Anna Comnena, book x, ch. xi.

Alexius vs Godfrey of Bouillon: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xvi; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. ix; Robert the Monk, book ii, ch. ix.

1097

Robert the Monk, book iii (April to October 1097).

Oaths made to Alexius: Anna Comnena, book x, ch. ix and book xiii, ch. xii; Gesta Francorum, book ii pp. 11–13; Raymond of Aiguliers, book ii pp. 22–4;

See also J. Pryor, 'The oaths of the leaders of the Crusade to the Emperor Alexius Comnenus: Fealty, Homage' in Pargon, New Series, vol. ii (1984) pp. 111–41.

Siege of Nicaea opens: Albert of Aix, book ii ch. xxxiii; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. i–ii; Gesta Francorum, book ii ch. vii.

- Turkish attempt to relieve Nicaea: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xxv–xxvi, xxvii; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. v; *Gesta Francorum*, book ii, ch. viii; Raymond, book iii, p. 239.
- Siege and surrender of Nicaea: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xxxi; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. i–ii (tr. Sewter, pp. 333–9); *Gesta Francorum* p. 40; Orderic Vitalis, book ix ch. viii.
- After surrender: Fulcher, book i, ch. x; *Gesta Francorum*, book ii, ch. viii; Raymond, book iii, pp. 239–40;
- See also Anna Comnena book xi, ch. iii; and Radulph of Caen, book xviii on Tancred trying to avoid taking oath to Alexius.
- The march into Asia Minor: Anselm of Ribemont, letters viii and xv in H Hagenmeyer, *Dies Kreuzzugsbrief*, p. 145; Fulcher, book i, ch. xi; *Gesta Francorum* book iii, ch. ix; Raymond, book iii, p. 240.
- Battle of Dorylaeum: Albert of Aix, book ii, ch. xxxix–xlii; Fulcher, book i, ch. ii, vii–ix; *Gesta Francorum*, book iii, ch. xviii–xx; Raymond, book iv, pp. 240–1.
- After the battle: *Gesta Francorum*, book iii, ch. ix; book iv, ch. x.
- Byzantine reconquest of Lydia: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. v (tr. Sewter pp. 347–8).
- Iconium: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. i–iii; Fulcher, book i, ch. xiii; *Gesta Francorum*, book iv, ch. x.
- Godfrey's accident: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. iv.
- Cilicia etc: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. iii–xvii (Tarsus), xix; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. iii; *Gesta Francorum*, book iv, ch. xi.
- Expedition to Armenian lands in the upper Euphrates region: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. v–xvii.
- Gesta Francorum*, book iv, ch. x; Matthew of Edessa, *Chronicle*, book ii, ch. cliv; Radulph of Caen, *Gesta Tancredi Sciliae Regis in Expeditione Hierosolymitana* in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iii: books xxiii–xxvii, pp. 629–41; William of Tyre, *History*, in *RHC Occidental*, vol. i: book vii, ch. v.
- Baldwin at Edessa: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. xxi–xxiii, also ch. xxv (Saruj) and book iv, ch. x–xii (Birejik); Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xiii–xiv (Edessa) and xix (Birejik); Guibert of Nogent, book vii, ch. xxxix; Matthew of Edessa, book ii, ch. civ, pp. 167–8; cxvii–xviii and cliv, pp. 168–70 and 218–21 (Edessa); clv (Birejik); Orderic Vitalis, book ix, ch. xi; Raymond of Aguilers, book iv ch. xxxvii.
- Siege of Antioch: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. xxviii–xxxv, xxxviii–xxxix; Fulcher, book i, ch. xv and xvi; *Gesta Francorum*, book v, ch. xii; Raymond, book v–vi, pp. 41–9; Abu'l Fedā, 'Annales', tr. into French in *RHC Occidental*, vol. i; Ibn al-Athir, 'Kemal al-Tawarikh', tr. as 'History of the Atabegs of Mosul' in *RHC Occidental*, vol. ii, part 2: p. 192; Kemal al-Din, 'Chronicle of Aleppo', tr. into French in *RHC Occidental*, vol. iii, pp. 578–9.
- Fall of Harenc: *Gesta Francorum*, book v, ch. xii.
- St. Simeon: *Gesta Francorum*, book v, ch. xiii; Raymond, book v, p. 242.
- 29 December Moslem sortie: *Gesta Francorum* book vi, ch. xiv; Raymond, book v, pp. 243–4.

1098

- Robert the Monk: book iv (to February 1098); book v (February–June), book vi (June), book vii (June–October), book viii (to December).
- Cyprus help to siege of Antioch: Albert of Aix, book vi, ch. xxxix.
- Peter the Hermit tries to desert: *Gesta Francorum*, book vi, ch. xv.
- Taticius leaves: Albert of Aix, book iv, ch. xl; *Gesta Francorum* book vi, pp. 34–5; Raymond of Aguilers, book iv, p. 37.

- Defeat of relief-force led by Ridwan: *Gesta Francorum*, book vi, pp. 36–7; Raymond, book vi, pp. 246–8.
- Edgar's fleet arrives and 6 March sortie defeated: Albert of Aix, book iii, ch. liii–lv; *Gesta Francorum*, book vii, ch. xviii; Radulph of Caen, book lviii; Raymond, book vi–viii, pp. 248–9.
- Bohemund's plan: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. iv (tr. Sewter, pp. 342–4); *Gesta Francorum*, book viii, ch. xx.
- Agreement to give Antioch to Bohemund in default of Alexius: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. iv (tr. Sewter, p. 344); *Gesta Francorum*, book viii, ch. xix.
- Stephen flees: Fulcher, book i, ch. xvi; *Gesta Francorum*, book ix, ch. xxvii; Raymond, book ix, p. 258.
- Fall of Antioch: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. iv–v (tr. Sewter, pp. 345–6); Fulcher, book i, ch. i–viii, xvii; *Gesta Francorum*, book vi, p. 44–book viii, ch. xx; Ibn al-Athir, p. 193; Matthew of Edessa, book ii, ch. clxx p. 170; Radulph of Caen, book lvi, p. 254; Raymond, book ix, pp. 251–3; William of Tyre, book v, ch. xviii–xxiii.
- Kerbogha starts siege: *Gesta Francorum*, book xxi, ch. 21–book xxiii; Raymond, book xi, pp. 256–8; William of Tyre, book vi, ch. iv.
- Alexius halts at Philomelium: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. vi (tr. Sewter, pp. 348–50).
- Discovery of the Holy Lance: Albert of Aix, book iv, ch. xlv; *Gesta Francorum*, book ix, ch. xxxv; Raymond, book x, pp. 253–5.
- See also: Thomas Asbridge, 'The Holy Lance of Antioch: Power, devotion and memory on the First Crusade' in *Reading Medieval Studies*, vol. xxxiii (2007) pp. 3–36; Steven Runciman, 'The Holy Lance Found at Antioch' in *Analecta Bollandiana*, vol. lxxvii (Brussels: Société des Bollandistes, 1950).
- Preparations for battle: Raymond, pp. 257–9.
- Battle with Kerbogha: Albert of Aix, book iv, ch. xlv–lvi; Fulcher, book i, ch. xxi and ch. xxii–xxiii; *Gesta Francorum*, book ix, ch. xxviii–xxix; Ibn Al-Athir, pp. 195–6; Raymond, book xi–xii, pp. 259–61.
- Hugh sent to Alexius: Albert of Aix, book v ch. iii; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xxiii; *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. lxxii.
- After the battle, quarrels: *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. lxxv–lxxvi, lxxx–lxxxi; Raymond, book x, ch. lxxiv–lxxv.
- Death of Adhemar: Fulcher, book i, ch. xxiii; *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. xxx; Raymond, book xiii, p. 262.
- Lattakieh: Albert of Aix, book vi, ch. xlv.
- Campaigns after the fall of Antioch: Albert of Aix, book v, ch. iv–xiii; *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. xxxi; Raymond, books xiii–xiv, pp. 262–6.
- Maarat an-Numan: *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. lxxxii–lxxvi; Raymond, book xiv, pp. 267–8.
- Raymond vs Bohemund quarrel: *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. xxxiii–xxxiv; Raymond, book xiv, pp. 267–8.

1099

- Robert the Monk, book viii (to June)
- March on Jerusalem: Albert of Aix, book v, ch. xxii–xxxiii (Arqa); *Gesta Francorum*, book x, ch. xxxiv, xxxv (Arqa), xxxv–vi (Tripoli); Raymond, book xiii, ch. cv (Arqa), xiv–xviii, pp. 273–86.
- The end of Peter Bartholemew: Albert of Aix, book v, ch. xiii; Fulcher, book i, ch. xviii; Radulph of Caen, book cviii, p. 682; Raymond, books xvii–xviii, pp. 279–81.

- To Jaffa: Fulcher, book i, ch. xxv; Gesta Francorum, book x, ch. xxxvi; Raymond, books xviii–xix.
- Ramleh: Raymond, book xix, pp. 291–2; William of Tyre, book vii, ch. xxii.
- Arrival at Jerusalem: Albert of Aix, book v, ch. xlv; Radulph of Caen, book cxx.
- Siege of Jerusalem: Albert of Aix, book v, ch. xlv–xlv; Gesta Francorum, book x, ch. xlvii–xc; Radulph of Caen, book cxxiv; Raymond, book xx, pp. 293–300, book xxiv, pp. 324–30; Robert the Monk, book ix.
- Conquest: Albert of Aix, book vi, pp. 19–28; Fulcher, book i, ch. xxvii–xxviii; Gesta Francorum, book x, ch. xxxviii; Ibn al-Athir, p. 21; Raymond, book xxiv; Robert, book ix.
- Massacre: Gesta Francorum, book x, ch. xxxviii; Raymond, book xx, p. 300.
- See also: J. France, ‘The destruction of Jerusalem and the First Crusade’ in *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, vol. xlvii (1996) pp. 1–17; B. Kedar, ‘The Jerusalem Massacre of July 1099 in the Western Historiography of the First Crusade’ in *Crusades*, vol. iii (2004) pp. 15–75.
- Choice of Godfrey as ruler: Fulcher, book i, ch. xxix–xxx; Gesta Francorum, book x, ch. xxxviii; Raymond, book xx–xxi, pp. 301–2.
- Battle of Ascalon: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xliv–l; Fulcher, book i, ch. xxxi; Ibn al-Athir, p. 202; Raymond, book xxi, pp. 302–4.
- Bohemund and Daimbert at Lattakieh: Albert of Aix, book vi, ch. xlv; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. x.
- Bohemund and Baldwin head for Jerusalem: Albert of Aix, book vi, ch. lvi–lx; Fulcher, book i, ch. xxxiii; Orderic Vitalis, book iv, pp. 70–2.
- Tancred in Galilee: Radulph of Caen, book cxxxix, pp. 703–4; William of Tyre, book ix, ch. xiii.
- Investitures by Daimbert: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. vii; William of Tyre, book ix, ch. xv.

3 The Crusader states 1100–1144

1100 | PALESTINE

6 January. Bohemund and Baldwin spend Epiphany at the River Jordan with Godfrey and Daimbert.

March. Godfrey blockades Arsuf on coast into surrender; he and Tancred then raid eastwards over the Jordan. Bohemund returns to Antioch, and Baldwin to Edessa.

Godfrey goes down to the coast to meet an arriving Venetian fleet and visit the Emir of Caesarea; he collapses at Jaffa and is taken back to Jerusalem. Daimbert hopes to secure the Holy City if Godfrey dies and prepares a campaign against Acre, and (*13 July*) leaves for Acre with Tancred when Godfrey rallies.

18 July. Death of Godfrey, aged around 44; Patriarch Daimbert prefers Bohemund of Antioch as next ruler to the stronger local support for Godfrey's next brother, Baldwin of Edessa; based at Haifa, Daimbert plans to invite Bohemund to take over the kingdom. The Patriarch's envoys are seized en route to Bohemund by Raymond's men at Lattakieh and not allowed to proceed, Raymond himself having gone to Constantinople to meet Alexius.

SYRIA

Bohemund, unaware of the crisis, is campaigning north into Anatolia against Emir Danishmend after installing Bernard of Valence as the new Latin Patriarch of Antioch and driving the Greek Orthodox Church and its Patriarch John out of the cathedral; he is ambushed near Melitene and taken prisoner to Danishmend's capital, Sebastea (Sivas).

Baldwin, relieving Danishmend siege of Melitene, hears that he is needed in Jerusalem and hastens south; he defeats the intercepting army of Duqaq of Damascus at the Dog River on the coastal road near Tripoli.

PALESTINE

31 October. Baldwin arrives at Haifa.

9 November. Baldwin enters Jerusalem; *Sunday 11 November* Daimbert crowns him King of Jerusalem.

SYRIA

Baldwin's cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg succeeds to Edessa.

Autumn. With Bohemund a prisoner awaiting ransom, Alexius sends army under Monastras into Cilicia; they retake most of Bohemund's acquisitions, while 'Great Drungharius' Eumathius' fleet retakes the coast. Tancred returns from Galilee to govern Antioch.

BYZANTIUM

Autumn. Archbishop Anselm of Milan, Count Albert of Biandrate and Guibert of Parma lead a Lombard Crusade (200,000 according to Albert of Aix, probably a tenth of that) through Carniola into Coatia. They descend the Save valley to enter Byzantium from Hungary at Belgrade; they pillage local villages en route to the three camps Alexius has designated for them over the winter at Philippopolis, Adrianople, and Rhaedestus; meanwhile Alexius receives Count Raymond.

1101 FRANCE

February. William, Count of Nevers, and another northern French contingent leave home to march to the east; also en route are Duke William IX of Aquitaine, a leading chivalric troubadour and the greatest lord in south-western France, and a body of Germans under Duke Welf of Bavaria, Archbishop Thiemo of Salzburg, and Dowager Margravine Ida of Austria (the first female to lead a Crusader contingent, the second being William IX's grand-daughter Eleanor in 1147); William's army heads for Brindisi and (*March*) the Aquitaine army crosses southern Germany to Hungary to link up with Welf's force.

BYZANTIUM

March. The Lombards arrive outside Constantinople, but they refuse Alexius' order to proceed quickly across Bosphorus on news that disgraced Count Stephen of Blois, allegedly sent back on Crusade by his wife Adela (daughter of William 'the Conqueror'), and Stephen of Burgundy will arrive soon by sea with more Crusaders.

Alexius cuts off supplies to Lombards; skirmishes follow, and once a group of Lombards breaks into palace courtyard at Blachernae and kill one of Emperor's pet lions; Archbishop Anselm and Count of Biandrate mediate peace and Raymond takes command of Lombards to march them into Bithynia.

PALESTINE

Early Spring. King Baldwin raids a passing Bedouin tribe in Oultrejordan and seizes much loot and many prisoners, and his courtesy to a shaikh's wife who is about to give birth (and is released with her servants and supplies) leads to alliance with her impressed husband.

March. Arsuf, Caesarea, Tyre, and Acre send embassies with gifts to Jerusalem; Duqaq of Damascus offers 50,000 bezants to ransom prisoners from the battle of Dog River.

15 April. Genoese fleet arrives at Jaffa, with Papal legate Cardinal Maurice (Bishop of Porto) on board; Baldwin welcomes them, escorts the Legate to Jerusalem and agrees alliance with the Genoese who are to receive a third of loot and a street in every conquered town. The joint army and fleet besieges Arsuf which surrenders on terms allowing for peaceful evacuation. Baldwin accuses Daimbert of planning to assassinate him, and shows Maurice a letter which the Patriarch wrote to Bohemund asking him to stop Baldwin coming from Edessa to take up the throne in 1100.

Maurice investigates the charges against Daimbert, and suspends him from officiating at the Easter ceremonies; afterwards he holds official enquiry and declares him innocent, but Baldwin will not accept this until Daimbert promises him a large sum of money for his army.

After trouble with Patriarch Daimbert over his evictions of the local 'Eastern rite' communities from their monasteries and churches in Jerusalem, the latter organise a protest at Easter involving the dowsing of the lights in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre which do not light up until the locals pray for the Franks to be forgiven for their oppression; King Baldwin, alarmed at the disaffection, orders the keys of the Holy Places to be returned to the 'Eastern rite' Churches.

2 May. Siege of Caesarea; *17 May* the town is stormed and the inhabitants are massacred to encourage other towns to surrender.

BYZANTIUM

May. The two Stephens arrive in Constantinople, with Bishop Hugh of Soissons, Hugh of Broyes, Baldwin of Grandpre, and other north-central French lords plus a small German contingent under the Imperial Constable Conrad; they join Raymond and the Lombards to take the road to Nicomedia with a Byzantine force under Tsitas including 500 Turkish (Pecheneg?) mercenaries. The leadership agrees to rescue Bohemund en route to Syria at the Lombards' request (Bohemund is Italian) despite Stephen of Blois' advice to head for Iconium/Konya, so they head east into Paphlagonia to head for Danishmend Emirate. Raymond and Stephen of Blois are not pleased, but are talked round by the Archbishop.

PALESTINE

May. Sa-ad ed-Daula es-Qawasi leads an Egyptian army to Ascalon; they advance to Ramleh but retire to Ascalon when Baldwin arrives with his army from Caesarea. Baldwin sets up his base at Jaffa and a stalemate follows as the Egyptians wait for reinforcements.

Summer? Baldwin is furious when he interrupts the reputedly embezzling Daimbert and the Legate at a sumptuous banquet, and complains that Churchmen are supposed to live in holy austerity and they are wasting money while his troops are starving for lack of supplies.

BYZANTIUM

The Crusaders besiege Gangra (*early July*) and Castamona and are harassed by local Turks while the Danishmends send to Kilij Arslan and Ridwan for help. The Stephens accept Raymond's suggestion of using the safer route to the coast of the Black Sea and sailing from a Byzantine port there round via Constantinople to the Levant, and they struggle on across the uplands, short of water and harassed by 'hit-and-run' attacks. The Lombard advance-guard flees a Turkish attack and is massacred until Stephen of Burgundy rescues them; the army crosses the River Halys into Danishmend lands, keeping inland not heading north to the coast despite Raymond's advice; the German vanguard is routed as it arrives at Mersivan, halfway to the main Danishmend town of Amasea, and Raymond prepares the rest of the army for battle.

Battle of Mersivan: the Turks launch cavalry charges to discharge arrows and then retire out of range, and after repeated failures to come to close combat the Crusaders panic; the Lombards flee, followed by the Pechenegs, and Raymond retreats onto a hill with his bodyguard; the two Stephens fight their way through to him, while the Germans retire to defend the civilians in the camp. At nightfall Raymond flees with the remaining Byzantines, abandoning the camp which the Turks storm next day before chasing the escapees. The cavalry outpace them, but the infantry are slaughtered; Raymond reaches the mouth of the Halys and the main Western cavalry contingent reaches the port of Sinope. The survivors straggle back to Constantinople, led by Raymond who is blamed for deserting the army to its fate.

June? William, Count of Nevers, and another Crusade arrive in Constantinople via Via Egnatia from Dyrrachium; the survivors of Raymond's force join them, and they decide to march on, not wait for the Aquitaine-German army (Raymond and Duke William of Aquitaine are old enemies and Count William wants to march with Stephen of Burgundy). They struggle across Anatolia via Ancyra (*late July*), where they decide to head south to Iconium/Konya and have no idea where the Turks are. Kilij Arslan's Seljuks and the Danishmends, a far larger army, ambush and rout them at Heraclea; only William and a few knights reach Byzantine

Germanicopolis, where the Byzantines give them a Pecheneg escort, and later Antioch; William's group are without weapons and mail and claim that the survivors were robbed by their escorts.

ITALY

22 June. Death of Count Roger of Sicily at Mileto, S. Italy, aged c. 80; succeeded by 8-year-old elder son Simon under regency of mother Adelaide, Roger's third wife.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. William, Duke of Aquitaine, and Welf, Duke of Bavaria, arrive in Thrace with latest army of Crusaders; they fight the intercepting Byzantine troops outside Adrianople sent to block their progress, but eventually peace restored by William and Welf. The leaders are coldly received by Alexius on their arrival at Constantinople.

Aquitaine-Bavarian Crusade follows the Nivernais road east, but the latter have taken supplies; they pillage abandoned Philomelium, enter Iconium/Konya which Kilij Arslan has evacuated, and *early September* Heraclea; while troops are drinking at nearby river the Turks hidden on the far bank attack, and although William and Welf escape, Hugh of Vermandois is mortally wounded, rescued by his knights and (*18 October*) dies at Tarsus and most of army and Archbishop Thiemo are killed. The main body of survivors reaches Cilicia safely, but Margravine Ida is never found and is reputed to have ended up in a harem.

Summer. Tancred retakes Mamistra, Adana, and Tarsus from Byzantines; he surrounds Lattakieh, held by Raymond's men and Byzantines.

PALESTINE

4 September. After Egyptian reinforcements arrive at Ascalon, the army (c. 11,000 cavalry and 22,000 infantry) moves on to Ramleh. Baldwin has only around 260 cavalry and 900 infantry, but (*6 September*) he decides to take the enemy by surprise. The Crusaders march to Ramleh.

7 September. At dawn the Crusaders attack, but the vanguard under the knight Bervold are overwhelmed as they charge into the Egyptian lines. Geldemar Carpenel, lord of Haifa, with the second 'wave' follows to be destroyed too, and then the new lord of Galilee, Hugh of St. Omer, charges with the third grouping to no effect and retreats towards Jaffa. The Egyptian left wing chases them off the battlefield, but Baldwin leads a charge into the over-confident enemy and smashes their centre; the Egyptian right wing panics too, and Baldwin triumphs despite his vastly inferior numbers and chases the enemy back to Ascalon. Meanwhile Hugh has arrived at Jaffa to report disaster, and the Queen sends to Tancred for help.

8 September. Baldwin arrives at Jaffa triumphant to reassure his wife and the civilians, and sends to Tancred to tell him that there is no need to march south.

Autumn. Patriarch Daimbert is accused of embezzlement after he keeps a large legacy promised to the Holy Places and the King by Duke Roger of Apulia; Baldwin protests to the Papal legate Maurice, who has to abandon the Patriarch and agree to his deposition; Daimbert leaves for Antioch to seek support from Tancred.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

Late Autumn? Alexius gives Raymond and the two Stephens ships to sail to Syria; Raymond is blown off-course to the port of Tarsus and arrested by Tancred's governor, Bernard 'the Stranger', for alleged treachery to the Crusaders at Mersivan. He is taken to Antioch, where Patriarch Bernard is angry at this arrest of a Crusading hero and tries to arrange Raymond's release.

EGYPT

8 December. Death of al-Musta'li, Fatimid Caliph, aged 27, after a reign of 6 years and 11 months; succeeded by 5-year-old son Al-Amir.

1102 SYRIA/PALESTINE

Early. Tancred's fellow-commanders and bishops persuade him to release Raymond, once he has promised to keep out of northern Syrian affairs and evacuate Lattakieh which he does en route to Tortosa.

Tancred besieges Lattakieh, but the Byzantine garrison holds out.

Bishop Manasses takes letter from King Baldwin to Alexius, asking for full assistance to future Crusades and complaining of his lack of help to those crossing his territory in 1101; Alexius tells his side of story to Manasses, who is unconvinced and on arrival in Italy tells Pope Paschal that Alexius betrayed Crusaders to Turks.

Spring. William of Aquitaine, the two Stephens and the main Aquitaine-German army arrives at Beirut and Baldwin sends an escort to accompany them to Jerusalem for Easter.

Spring. Death of the Papal legate Maurice, who is acting as 'emergency' Patriarch until an election can be held; Baldwin is delaying the latter, technically so he can get Papal advice, and is using Daimbert's treasury to supply his troops.

SPAIN

5 May. Fall of Valencia to the Almoravids, after King Alfonso of Castile has evacuated 'El Cid's widow Countess Ximena and her forces to safety

in Castile – where ‘El Cid’ is reburied at Burgos Cathedral as a national hero. The Christian presence in Valencia is not restored for over 120 years.

PALESTINE

May. Around 20,000 Egyptians under Al-Ashraf’s son Sharaf al-Ma’ali arrive at Ascalon; their numbers are underestimated by Baldwin, who thinks that the 500 or so men he has at Jerusalem are adequate to drive off this raid and does not bother to wait to link up with the main Christian army at Jaffa. Stephen of Blois advises sending scouts to check the size of the enemy but is ignored.

17 May. Baldwin leaves Jerusalem, and later reaches the enemy force near Ramleh to be appalled at its size; it is too late to flee as the enemy light cavalry is approaching him fast, so he proposes charging through their ranks to get to safety in Jaffa, but his force is overwhelmed, his cousin Hugh of Le Bourg and a few men reach Jaffa, but most are killed. Baldwin and the leadership manage to get into the small castle at Ramleh, which is surrounded.

At night, the sheikh, whose wife Baldwin looked after in *1101*, arrives at Ramleh to tell him to flee before a massive attack due at dawn; Baldwin and his groom with three companions ride to safety and a few others slip out unnoticed too, and the wounded Gothman of Brussels reaches Jerusalem to raise the alarm.

18 May. The Egyptians storm Ramleh castle and set fire to the main tower, and the remaining Crusader leaders have to try to fight their way out; Stephen of Burgundy, Stephen of Blois, and Hugh of Lusignan are killed, but the Imperial Constable Conrad is captured and held for ransom by Egyptians impressed with his bravery.

18–19 May. Baldwin rides carefully through the deserted hills, and finally arrives at Arsuf late on *19 May* to join governor, Roger of Haifa. Hugh of St. Omer and 80 knights from Galilee arrive there a few hours later.

The Queen and the Court, at Jaffa, are joined by Roger of Rozoy and other escapees who warn of the disaster and have no idea if Baldwin has reached safety; *20 May* the Egyptian army and fleet arrive separately to besiege Jaffa, but before they can start blockade Baldwin arrives by sea from Arsuf on the ship of the English adventurer Goderic. He rallies the defence with news that Hugh of St. Omer is en route, and a few hours later spots Hugh coming on the land-route and rides out to bring him to safety. After dark a local monk takes a message to Jerusalem for help.

23 May. The monk arrives in Jerusalem and confirms that Baldwin is alive; a rescue-force is organised.

Around 90 knights, with a piece of the ‘True Cross’, break through to Jaffa a few days later, and (c. *26 May*) c. 200 English ships arrive at Jaffa

with a mixed Anglo-French-German force of pilgrims. They evade the Egyptian navy thanks to the wind and reach the harbour.

27 May. Reinforced by the new arrivals, Baldwin leads a counter-attack on the surprised Egyptians; he avoids a feigned retreat, and after a few hours they break and flee to Ascalon; he loots their camp.

June? Hearing the appeal for help from Jaffa, Tancred arranges an expedition to Palestine; with him is Duke William of Aquitaine, who had been on his way home when he heard of the disaster at Antioch.

August? A second Egyptian army, under eunuch Taj al-Ajam, arrives at Ascalon; the fleet is offshore again, but Al-Ajam quarrels with its commander, qadi Ibn Qudus, and refuses to advance any further. The campaign fizzles out, and when the forces return to Egypt Al-Ajam is arrested.

August? Tancred's army marches south via the upper Orontes to Homs and the upper Jordan; the local Moslems dare not intercept them. Daimbert accompanies them, expecting to get his Patriarchate back.

Baldwin of Le Bourg, ruler of Edessa, allegedly extorts 30,000 bezants to pay men from his new father-in-law Gabriel, Armenian ruler of Melitene and father of his wife Morphia, by pretending he has sworn to shave his beard off (humiliating to Eastern, Orthodox Christians) if he cannot pay them; he is driven out of Saruj by the attacking Soqman ibn Ortoq, lord of nearby Mardin, but the citadel holds out under Archbishop Benedict of Edessa and Baldwin collects reinforcements from Antioch and returns to retake the town.

Alexius offers 260,000 bezants to Emir Danishmend if he will hand over Bohemund to him; Kilij Arslan persuades Danishmend against it.

Autumn? Danishmend besieges Melitene; Gabriel is captured and then executed after his orders fail to make citadel surrender.

Late September. Tancred and his army arrive at Jerusalem to reinforce Baldwin; Daimbert, his restoration demanded by Tancred, is foiled as a new Papal legate (Cardinal Robert of Paris) arrives in Palestine. A synod is called, and Tancred cannot object so he agrees not to keep his threat to avoid fighting until Daimbert is restored and joins Baldwin to briefly besiege Ascalon.

On the army's return, a synod is held and Arnulf of Rohes, as Baldwin's ally, organises the list of charges which the Bishops of Caesarea, Bethlehem, and Ramleh make; Robert agrees to Daimbert's deposition for embezzling pilgrims' money and trying to cause a war between Baldwin and Bohemund in 1099–1100, and he is forced to retire to Antioch with Tancred.

An elderly priest from Therouanne, Evremar, who accompanied the First Crusade and is known for his piety and morals, is elected Patriarch; Arnulf

remains powerful at Court and probably expects the next vacancy of the see.

Death of Kerbogha, Turkish governor of Mosul; successor Jekermish fights Soqman ibn Ortoq of Mardin, who wanted own candidate installed.

? Qaraja, the Seljuk general who is governing Harran (Carrhae), principal Moslem city to the east of the lands of Edessa, is forced to hand over power to Mohammed of Isfahan by a popular revolt; the disorders encourage the Crusaders to contemplate an attack.

PALESTINE/BYZANTIUM

Baldwin sends a conciliatory embassy to Alexius asking for military help, with rich gifts including two lions; good relations are restored, probably based on the opposition of both to Tancred's pretensions.

Eric 'the Evergood', King of Denmark, arrives at Constantinople with a Crusader fleet, having sailed via Baltic and journeyed across Russia to Black Sea; Alexius fears that his countrymen among Varangian Guard could plot with Danes to seize city and insists that only a few supervised Danes at a time are allowed into city; he entertains Eric and gives him relics and other gifts; Eric leaves for Palestine.

1103 BYZANTIUM

Spring? Eric of Denmark dies on Cyprus; buried at Paphos Cathedral.

SYRIA

Spring. Tancred captures most of garrison of Lattakieh in ambushed sortie outside walls; the town surrenders.

Spring. Bohemund handed over to his envoys at Melitene in return for 100,000 bezants, raised by Patriarch Bernard, his Armenian ally Kogh Vasil of Kaisun, and the Norman Princes of Southern Italy and Sicily; he returns to Antioch, and refuses Alexius' envoys' demands to return Cilicia. Tancred sulks at having to hand over those lands he took while he was regent.

Summer. Bohemund and Baldwin's assistant Joscelin of Courtenay raid Aleppo; they take Muslimiye and then move into Cilicia to take Byzantine cities. Alexius sends Boutumites to Cilicia with army to retake cities, and he probably drives them back from attack on the Imperial governor Thatoul of Marash.

Summer? Raymond launches a surprise attack on Tripoli with Genoese ships to blockade the port; it fails so he moves off to take Jebail (Byblos); *autumn*, Raymond commences the siege of Tripoli.

Autumn. Bohemund returns to Cilicia to confront Boutumites, who relieves his siege of Germanicea (Marash) in Taurus Mountains to north. Boutumites returns to Constantinople, leaving Monastras in charge in Cilicia.

BYZANTIUM

? Revolt of Gregory Taronites, the new Duke of Trebizond, who arrests imperial loyalists; Alexius plans campaign.

1104 IRAQ

January. Treaty between Seljuk Sultan Barqiyaruq and his rebel brother Mohammed ends their civil war; Barqiyaruq keeps Baghdad and western Persia, Mohammed keeps western Iraq.

SYRIA

Spring. Bohemund and Joscelin take Marash from Alexius' governor, Thatoul the Armenian, then raid Aleppo but fail to take Kafarlata.

Kilij Arslan fights Emir Danishmend and takes Melitene.

Count Raymond besieges Tripoli with the Genoese fleet.

June. Death of Duqaq of Damascus; young son Tuctush II, aged one, succeeds under regency of 'atabeg' Toghtekin.

BYZANTIUM

Hungarian Princess Pirosaka, cousin of King Coloman and daughter of late King (St.) Ladislav, comes to Constantinople under Byzantine-Hungarian alliance treaty and married to Prince/co-Emperor John.

Genoese fleet of 70 ships in Byzantine waters, en route to Syria; Alexius sends out fleet under Landulph, and they clash at sea; Landulph defeated but keeps the 18 seaworthy vessels afloat, and follows the Genoese to Syria where they land at Lattakieh/Laodicea.

Cantacuzene's land-force shadows Genoese along Anatolian coast, then joins Monastras in Cilicia to retake cities.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

April. Genoese fleet arrives at Haifa and its commanders agree terms with Baldwin for the siege of Acre; they are to receive a third of the loot and a district in the town of Acre.

May. As Soqman of Mardin and Jekermish of Mosul lead army on Edessa and set up camp at Ras al-Ain, Baldwin of Le Bourg tries to pre-empt them and gets Bohemund and Joscelin to agree to attack on the city of

Harran (Carrhae), which is under new governor Jawali after overthrow of Mohammed of Isfahan. Patriarchs Bernard and (ex') Daimbert of Jerusalem join them. Their full strength of c. 3,000 assembles near Harran and open siege, but there is no quick assault as Baldwin and Bohemund quarrel over who should have the city. Soqman and Jekermish hurry to the rescue, and catch the invaders outside the city. The Christians are routed as the Edessans, who are to lure the enemy into a trap where Bohemund and most of the Antiochenes are waiting behind a low hill, find an easy success and chase the enemy across the river. They fall into a Moslem ambush and flee, and Bohemund emerges from his ambush-site to find a mass of fleeing Edessans and tries to rescue as many as possible but has to flee; the garrison of Harran join in the attack. Bohemund extricates his Antiochene troops, but most of the Edessan knights are killed and Baldwin and Joscelin are captured; Archbishop Benedict of Edessa is also captured but is rescued and joins Bohemund and Tancred to defend Edessa.

Tancred regent of Edessa; Soqman deserts Jekermish after the latter's men abduct Baldwin for their sole ransom, and Jekermish fails in siege of Edessa, which Bohemund relieves; Tancred's desperate defenders mount a surprise attack on Jekermish's camp which causes chaos, and as the besiegers flee Bohemund arrives to complete the success. A Seljuk princess is captured and Jekermish offers to pay 15,000 bezants or hand over Baldwin to get her back, but despite King Baldwin's advice Bohemund and Tancred prefer to haggle; while Baldwin of Le Bourg is kept waiting for release (*June*) the Aleppo Moslems retake Artah, Maarat, and Misrin and the Antiochenes have to evacuate Albara and Kafartab.

Genoese fleet joins King Baldwin for siege of Acre (commences 6 *May*).

Al-Juyushi, the Egyptian (Turkish) commander, receives no support from his masters and after 20 days agrees to surrender if he is allowed to evacuate his troops and those citizens who wish to leave and those who do not can stay. Baldwin agrees; the leaving inhabitants are however robbed and many are killed by greedy Genoese sailors and Patriarch Evremar has to persuade the angry Baldwin not to break his treaty. Acre becomes the principal port of the Kingdom.

June–July. Bohemund fights the invading Ridwan of Aleppo, while his isolated garrison at Albistan arrests the local Armenians to stop them handing the town over to the Turks; the Byzantine fleet under Cantacuzene reoccupies the town of Lattakieh, as Monastras brings troops overland to join them, but Bohemund reinforces the citadel.

Autumn. Bohemund decides to return to Italy and raise more troops; he sails, leaving Tancred as Regent of Antioch and cousin Richard 'of the Principate' (Salerno) at Edessa, and Tancred promises to hand Edessa to Baldwin once he is ransomed.

Byzantine masons assist Count Raymond with building his new castle outside Tripoli, ‘Mount Pilgrim’ (‘Qalat Sanjil’ i.e. ‘St. Gilles’).

Duqaq replaces Tutush II as titular ruler of Damascus by his uncle, Duqaq’s younger brother Irtash, aged 12; Irtash soon flees to the ‘Hauran’ with fears of deposition, and seeks aid from Emir Aytekin of Bosra.

SYRIA AND TURKISH SULTANATE

22 December. Death of Seljuk Sultan Barqiyaruq, aged probably in early 20s; succeeded by his younger full brother Mohammed.

1105 SYRIA

(OR
1106)

28 February. Death of Raymond of Toulouse after injuries received during siege of Tripoli, aged around 63; succeeded by infant son Alfonso Jordan, under regency of his cousin, Count William-Jordan of Cerdagne, who does feudal homage for Principality of Tripoli to Eumathius Philocales of Cyprus as Alexius’ representative.

Byzantines send supplies from Cyprus to assist siege; governor Fakhr-al-Mulk of Tripoli appeals to Soqman for aid, but Soqman dies en route and campaign abandoned.

April. Tancred besieges Artah and (*20 April*) defeats a relief-force under Ridwan of Aleppo, who is persuaded by his belligerent general Sabawa to fight, not negotiate, at Tizin. The Moslems’ attempted feigned retreat fails and the Christians break up their cavalry, and Ridwan flees with his bodyguard leaving the infantry to be slaughtered. Tancred advances to take Artah and reach the walls of Aleppo, and Ridwan agrees to cede the lower Orontes valley and pay tribute.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius recalls Cantacuzene from Lattakieh and Monastras from Cilicia as preparations begin to resist a major attack from Bohemund, which Alexius believes will come in Epirus; Oshin, Armenian lord of Lampron, in charge of Cilicia.

(OR 1104) TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of ‘Malik’ (King) Danishmend, founder of the eponymous dynasty ruling north-east Anatolia; succeeded by his son, ‘Ghazi’ (‘Holy Warrior’) Gumushtekin.

PALESTINE

August. Egyptian Vizier Al-Afdal sends his son Sena al-Mulk Husain to Ascalon to assemble an army to reconquer Palestine; c. 5,000 cavalry and

Sudanese infantry move into Palestine, joined by 1,300 men sent by Duqaq who refuses to come himself but sends general Sabawa; the Egyptian fleet sails parallel offshore. Baldwin waits for them at Ramleh with the refugee Damascus prince Irtash and the largest army the King can collect, around 500 cavalry and 2,000 infantry. Patriarch Evremar brings the 'True Cross'.

27 August. The Franks attack after blessing by the Patriarch, and are thrown back by the Damascenes; Baldwin leads a counter-charge and the Egyptians, short of troops after their left wing dashed off to try to surprise Haifa earlier, are driven back. The battle lasts all day, and the Moslems have the worst of it and Sabawa flees the field; Baldwin pillages the enemy camp. After the Damascenes go home the Egyptians withdraw to Ascalon. The Egyptian fleet retires, some leading emirs taken prisoner in the battle have to be ransomed, and Irtash gives up hopes of Christian help to take Damascus and leaves for his Seljuk dynasty's lands on the Euphrates.

ITALY

September. Bohemund goes to Rome to meet Pope Paschal and launch a propaganda campaign against Alexius for betraying Crusaders as he gathers recruits for invasion of the Empire.

Ex-Patriarch Daimbert, who has arrived earlier in Rome, is able to secure Paschal's support and an order for Baldwin to send an explanation of his deposition; the King takes no notice. Paschal proclaims Daimbert's reinstatement but cannot enforce it; Evremar remains in office.

28 September. Death of Simon, young Count of Sicily; succeeded by 9-year-old brother Roger II, mother Adelaide remaining Regent.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius ransoms 300 Frankish prisoners taken in Palestine by Al-Afdal from captivity in Egypt, and receives them with honour in Constantinople; this is used as a counter to Bohemund's accusations of his treachery to West.

September. Alexius moves to Thessalonica to await Bohemund; his nephew John Comnenus of Dyrrachium fights rebel Bolkan of Zeta, is defeated but regains upper hand and receives hostages.

PALESTINE

Completion of the new castle of Toron (Tibnin) in Galilee, to defend the route from Tyre to Damascus, by the fief's lord Hugh of St. Omer (successor of Tancred); late in the year Hugh is ambushed by Toghtekin's army en route with loot from a raid to his other new castle, al-Al (SW of Sea of Galilee) and mortally wounded; his brother Gerard soon dies and Baldwin gives Galilee to Gervase of Basoches.

SYRIA

Completion of 'Kitab al-Jihad', the first literary and theological reply to the Crusaders and call for a counter-offensive, written in Damascus by the theologian Ali ibn Tahir al-Salami (*d.* 1106). It dates the start of the Christian offensive to the fall of Toledo in 1085 and assures that the Prophet said that Jerusalem would only be lost temporarily and that Constantinople would be conquered.

IRAQ

Death of Soqman, son of Ortoq and ruler of Mardin in the 'Jazirah'; succeeded by son Ibrahim in (Amida and) Mardin. His brother Ilghazi continues as ruler of Mayyafariqin

1106 FRANCE/SYRIA

February. Emir Khalaf ibn Mula'ib of Apamea is assassinated by Ismailis from Aleppo(?); they assist his successor Abu'l Fath but after a quarrel with him ask Ridwan for assistance. Tancred is invited in by the local Armenians, but Abu'l Fath holds the town against his siege and he has to retire after three weeks as Hama and Shaizar threaten to relieve the siege.

April. Bohemund visits Paris to solicit aid from King Philip I, and then visits King Henry I of England in Normandy; he later marries Philip's daughter Constance and secures betrothal of her half-sister Cecilia to Tancred.

PALESTINE

Spring. Baldwin persuades a large party of visiting English, Danish, and Flemish pilgrims to join his army for an attack on Sidon; the governor sends a large sum of money for a two-year truce.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius amasses troops in Epirus and ships in Adriatic, and replaces John Comnenus at Dyrrachium with brother Alexius.

SYRIA

Tancred launches second siege of Apamea at the request of late ruler Khalaf's exiled son Musbih.

14 September. Tancred takes Apamea, executes Abu'l Fath, and installs Frankish governor; Musbih gives local lands. Later Kafartab is taken also.

PALESTINE

Baldwin repels a Damscene raid into Galilee, aimed at Toron; as he advances to confront a simultaneous raid on Tiberias the Moslems send envoys for a truce; his honourable treatment of the envoys impresses them and a truce is made.

Autumn. While Baldwin is campaigning in Galilee, an Egyptian army attacks and massacres a large encampment of pilgrims between Arsuf and Jaffa; they take the poorly-defended Ramleh; Roger of Rozoy, governor of Jaffa, tries to intervene but is ambushed and has to flee to his town. They advance quickly on Jerusalem and take the unfinished castle of ‘Chastel Arnaud’, capturing and executing the workmen and taking their commander Geoffrey for ransom, but Baldwin arrives with his army in time to force them to retreat; they return to Ascalon.

SPAIN/MOROCCO

2 September. Death of Yusuf Ibn Tashufin, co-creator and first ruler of the Almoravid (really ‘Murabitun’) state which now rules all Morocco, most of Algeria, and ‘Al-Andalus’ in the south of Spain. Aged over 80, this archetype of the ferocious desert warrior is succeeded by his more pacific and civilised son Abu’l Hassan Ali (born *1084*), under whom the military decline of the state begins.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Ghazi the Danishmend’s brother Sangur is driven out of his principedom of Melitene by Kilij Arslan.

Kilij Arslan invades the territory of his cousin, Sultan Mohammed, in northern Mesopotamia after appeals to him by rebellious vassals; (*1106* or early *1107*) he sends a contingent of troops to aid Alexius against Bohemund according to previous arrangement.

Sultan Mohammed replaces Jekermish, governor of Mosul, with the Turkish officer Jawali; the latter marches on Mosul and defeats and captures Jekermish, but the city’s inhabitants refuse to admit him and install Jekermish’s young son Zengi as their nominal ruler; they also appeal to Kilij Arslan for aid.

Late. Kilij Arslan takes Mosul, where inhabitants resent Mohammed replacing Jekermish with Jawali and are suspicious over the ex-ruler’s sudden death in Jawali’s custody.

1107 ITALY

Bohemund gathers army in Apulia, and joined by ex-Patriarch Daimbert of Jerusalem as Papal representative; *15 June* Daimbert dies at Messina before he can sail to Palestine to demand his Patriarchal office back.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Jawali moves to the Euphrates valley to gain help from Ridwan of Aleppo to attack Mosul.

June. Sultan Mohammed's forces under Jawali defeat Kilij Arslan in battle on the River Khabur east of Mosul; Kilij Arslan is drowned in the river as he tries to escape. Kilij Arslan's son and heir Malik Shah is taken prisoner, but Malik Shah's half-brother Toghril Arslan and latter's mother hold out against Mohammed's forces in Melitene.

Distant Seljuk cousin, Hassan, becomes Regent of Iconium and the leaderless sultanate of 'Rûm'.

SYRIA

Joscelin of Courtenay is ransomed from Ilgazi, who needs his money and troops to attack his nephew Ibrahim at Mardin; he goes to Mosul to ransom Baldwin of Le Bourq from Jawali.

BYZANTIUM

'Megadux' Isaac Contostephanus, in command of fleet in Adriatic, crosses to besiege Otranto but is tricked by Tancred's mother(?) into a truce until Norman relief-force arrives; Contostephanus leaves fleet to deputy Landulf due to 'illness'.

9 October. Bohemund and 34,000 men land at Avlona in Epirus; *13 October* they open siege of Dyrrachium; *November* Alexius leaves capital and heads for Thessalonica, leaving Eustathius Ciminianus ('Great Drunghaire') and Nicephorus Decanus as Regents.

Alexius winters at Thessalonica.

1108

BYZANTIUM

Spring. Alexius arrives outside Dyrrachium and begins blockade of Bohemund's army by land and sea – Cecaumenus at Avlona, Cabasilas at Petroula, Nicerites at Devra, and Camtyzes commanding the passes into Pindus Mountains. Camtyzes is defeated in skirmish, but Cantacuzene retrieves situation and takes crucial position at Mylos; in psychological offensive, Alexius has forged letters from Bohemund's lieutenant Guy of Conversano to him 'betrayed' to Bohemund to sow suspicion, and sends money to Bohemund's lieutenants to induce them to consider negotiation as conflict turns to stalemate but the Normans are slowly starved out.

TURKISH SULTANATE/SYRIA

Afer Jawali is expelled from Mosul by the Sultan's agent Mawdud, he takes Baldwin with him to Qalat Jabar in the 'Jazirah'. Jawali ransoms

Baldwin to Joscelin for what Joscelin can quickly deliver of the promised 60,000 dinars; Joscelin stays on with Jawali as security for the rest of the money, but Jawali releases him before it arrives as he trusts him. Baldwin and Joscelin return to Edessa, but Tancred's governor Richard of the Principate refuses them admission.

Baldwin and Joscelin ask Jawali for assistance against Richard; they are attacked at Turbessel by Tancred, who comes to Richard's aid, but a truce is patched up. They eventually get assistance from Kogh Vasil, Armenian lord of Kaisun, and 300 Pechenegs from Alexius' governor of Cilicia, Oshin, and Tancred agrees to make Richard leave Edessa at the Patriarch of Antioch's insistence.

Spring. Fakhr-al-Mulk of Tripoli secretly leaves Tripoli with a bodyguard of 500 to go to Toghtekin in Damascus for aid, en route to Baghdad; William-Jordan gives him safe passage, presumably hoping he will not get aid and his departure will dishearten the Tripolitans. Toghtekin receives him with honour and his son Buri escorts Fakhr to Caliph in Baghdad; Fakhr's cousin Abu'l Manaqib governs Tripoli.

Both the Caliph and Sultan Mohammed receive Fakhr with ceremony as a sovereign prince but deny him immediate assistance; the Sultan says he has to deal with Jawali of Mosul first.

Summer. Tripolitans admit a relief-force sent by Al-Afdal and accept his nominee, Sharaf ad-Daula, as governor; Fakhr's loyalists are sent to Egypt, and Sharaf hears the news en route home at Damascus and retires to his coastal town of Jabala.

PALESTINE

Spring. The Papal adjudicator, Gibelin of Sabran (Archbishop of Arles), arrives to sort out the rival claims of Arnulf and Evramar to the Patriarchate; he holds a synod and decides that Evramar is ineffective and disliked so will be unacceptable, and as the synod declares the see vacant Baldwin nominates Gibelin as his candidate in the next election; he is elected and Evramar is given the see of Caesarea.

Spring. Gervase of Basoches, lord of Galilee, is captured in a raid by Toghtekin on Tiberias; the latter sends demand to Baldwin for the surrender of Tiberias, Acre and Haifa as the ransom; this is refused and Gervase is executed.

August. Baldwin besieges Sidon, aided by a mixed Italian fleet; the commander hires Turkish mercenaries from Damascus for 30,000 bezants, and appeals to the Fatimids; the Egyptian fleet arrives and defeats the Italians, so supplies can be ferried in and Baldwin abandons the siege; the relieved Sidonians refuse to admit the arriving Turks lest they hand Sidon over to Toghtekin of Damascus, so the Turks threaten to desert to Baldwin; the Sidonians pay them 9,000 bezants to go home.

BYZANTIUM

September. After Contostephanus burns the Norman fleet and Byzantine commanders Marianus and Mavrocatalon drive off relief-fleet, Bohemund accepts his lieutenants' advice to negotiate his surrender; he is escorted to the Imperial camp at Devol/Diabolis and 5 *October* signs the terms offered after abrupt reminder of his weak position from Alexius' son-in-law, 'Caesar' Nicephorus Bryennius.

Treaty of Devol: Bohemund to become Alexius' vassal and hold Antioch, St. Simeon and Syrian lands from him for his lifetime as the Imperial governor, but is to return Lattakieh/Laodicea and all Cilicia; the Latin Patriarch of Antioch is to be replaced with a Greek one, and Bohemund to force Tancred and others' compliance. Bohemund can be deposed if he breaks his oath to be loyal to the Emperor.

Bohemund is given gifts, and evacuates surviving troops to Italy; he does not return to Antioch, where Tancred takes no notice of treaty.

Autumn. Raymond of Toulouse's illegitimate son Bertrand, en route to Tripoli with 4,000 men and 40 ships to claim lordship after probable agreement with Raymond's widow Elvira to abandon his claim on Toulousan lands, secures backing of and ships from Genoa en route; he is driven into Gulf of Volos (Thessaly) by adverse weather; he treats Byzantine inhabitants properly, rare for a passing Crusader; he is treated honourably by Alexius on visit to Constantinople, and swears to hold Tripoli as his vassal.

? The governor of Arqa, a loyalist of Fakhr al-Mulk, defects to Toghtekin rather than accept Fatimid rule.

TURKISH SULTANATE/SYRIA

September. War between Jawali and Ridwan, with the latter robbing a convoy bringing some of Baldwin's ransom money to Jawali; Jawali overruns Ridwan's town of Balis on the Euphrates, and Ridwan asks Tancred for help.

October. Baldwin and Joscelin bring 500 knights to aid Jawali's advance on Aleppo, and join him at Menbij. Tancred brings 1,500 men to aid Ridwan, and in the resultant battle two mixed-religion armies fight each other. Jawali's Bedouin allies of the 'Banu Mazyad' tribe leave the battle to loot some of Baldwin's spare horses, and this loses Jawali the battle; around 2,000 Christians are killed, and Baldwin and Joscelin retreat to their bases of Dulak and Turbessel; Tancred briefly attacks Dulak, and when Baldwin reaches Edessa he has the Armenian community purged with executions over fears of their disloyalty.

IRAQ

Death of Ibrahim the Ortoqid, ruler of Mardin; succeeded by brother Da'ud.

1109 SYRIA

Early. Bertrand arrives at St. Simeon, the port of Antioch, and requests return of Count Raymond's former part of principality; Tancred will only give it to him in return for assistance against Byzantium in Cilicia and he refuses and offers to take Jabala for him instead. Tancred orders him to leave and refuses supplies; Bertrand goes on to Tortosa to claim principality of Tripoli and confront the Regent William-Jordan, who has recently defeated the army of Damascus in an ambush during Toghtekin's visit to the Buqaia and then defeated the army of Shaizar and taken Arqa.

? Jawali transferred from Mosul to Persia by Sultan Mohammed; replaced by Mawdud.

May. Tancred arrives at Jabala and Fakhr surrenders in return for promise that he can stay on as Antiochene vassal; once Tancred has possession of the town he evicts Fakhr, who goes to Damascus.

William-Jordan denies Bertrand any rights to Tripoli, and goes to Tancred for help in return for doing homage to him; however Bertrand appeals to King Baldwin as supreme Crusader lord of the reconquests and offers him homage in return for Tripoli. Bertrand blockades William-Jordan's headquarters at 'Mount Pilgrim', but his target has left for Tortosa to await Tancred's army.

Eustace Garnier and Pagan of Haifa arrive at Tortosa just after Tancred and summon him to appear before the 'High Court' of the Kingdom at the Tripoli siege to sort out the claims to Tripoli.

June. King Baldwin reconciles the Crusading leaders as they all assemble to besiege Tripoli, and a council is held at 'Mount Pilgrim' castle; Bertrand acquires rights to the city as his vassal with no mention of fealty to Alexius; William-Jordan gets Tortosa and Arqa, and young Alfonso-Jordan, Raymond's son who is still in Toulouse, is excluded but has all Raymond's lands in France.

Adverse winds keep the Egyptian relief-fleet becalmed in the Nile delta; food starts to run out in Tripoli, the Italian fleets blockade the town, and Sharaf ad-Daula sends to Baldwin for his terms.

12 July. Surrender of Tripoli; Crusaders have promised no sack and the garrison leaves unmolested, but the Genoese start pillaging and the famous library of the 'Banu Ammar' dynasty burnt; William-Jordan mysteriously murdered and Bertrand takes lands. The Genoese receive a quarter in Tripoli, plus two-thirds of Jebail where they install Hugh Embriaco as vassal.

William-Jordan is assassinated by a mystery archer; Bertrand takes his lands and is blamed for arranging the murder.

SPAIN

1 July. Death of King Alfonso VII of Leon and Castile, aged around 69, with no sons by his four marriages; as his intended heir, his illegitimate son Sancho, was killed at the battle of Ucles in 1108 his daughter Urraca (born *April 1079*) succeeds. The widow of Raymond of Burgundy (died 1107) by whom she has a son, Alfonso (later VII, born 1105), she is currently engaged against her will to King Alfonso I of Aragon (acceded 1104) as per her father's arrangements. He father intended a 'union of crowns' and military resources between the two kingdoms, but many nobles oppose this and Aragonese influence at court; the marriage soon breaks down.

Portugal remains with Alfonso's illegitimate daughter Countess Teresa and her husband, Henry of Burgundy.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Sultan Mohammed allows Kilij Arslan's son Malik Shah to return to Iconium/Konya, probably as his vassal, after request from Hanafi qadis for him to lead their war against infidels; he executes his cousin Hassan and takes control of Sultanate.

BYZANTIUM

Eumathius Philocales transferred from Cyprus to take charge of forces in western Asia Minor, based at Attaleia; he restores fortifications of Adramyttium in the Troad, and defeats Turkish raiders at battle of Lampe.

1110 SYRIA

? Tancred takes Tarsus from Byzantines thanks to Oshin's incompetence.

Early. Count Bertrand of Tripoli sends troops to assist King Baldwin's siege of Beirut (begins in *February*); Genoese and Pisan ships assist the siege and drive off Egyptian ships from Tyre.

13 May (Fulcher of Chartres)/*27 May* (Albert of Aix). Fall of Beirut to Crusader assault after the governor flees to Byzantine Cyprus; it is sacked and occupied.

Returning to Acre, Baldwin is joined by the arriving King Sigurd of Norway and escorts him to Jerusalem on his pilgrimage; Sigurd is treated with great honour and in return allows his ships to assist Baldwin's immanent siege of Sidon.

Baldwin marches to relieve Mawdud's siege of Edessa.

Baldwin leads coalition against Mawdud, who retires to Harran, and forces Tancred to join them; they cannot bring Moslems to battle, and on King Baldwin's advice the Armenian and Syrian Christian peasantry east of Euphrates are permanently evacuated to safer lands west of the river; Mawdud carries off many as slaves in surprise attack en route, and principality of Edessa is permanently weakened.

Toghtekin sends his son Taj al-Mulk Buri to take over control of Baalbek from the untrustworthy governor, Gumushtekin, who could be planning to admit the Franks.

October. Baldwin commences siege of Sidon.

Failure of plot by the defenders of Sidon to have King Baldwin assassinated in the besiegers' camp, as a Christian defender shoots a message out on an arrow warning him.

4 December. Surrender of Sidon to Crusaders; the notables are allowed to leave with their possessions for Damascus. The town is handed to Eustace Garnier, lord of Caesarea. Baldwin marches on Ascalon, but governor Shams al-Din Khilafa buys him off with a truce.

Alexius sends envoys to Caliph Al-Mustazhir at Baghdad to encourage joint action against Tancred.

SYRIA/IRAQ

A Syrian delegation arrives at Baghdad to call for Al-Mustazhir to organise an attack on Jerusalem by a Moslem coalition; it is led by a Shi'a theologian who heads local Order. They stage a noisy demonstration at the main mosque with local Shi'a help to whip up popular support for an expedition and channel feelings of humiliation at the insult to Islam in the loss of Jerusalem; later they disrupt the State entry of the Caliph's wife to Baghdad.

BYZANTIUM

After fall of Beirut, the crusading King Sigurd of Norway (ruled 1103–30), known as 'Jerusalem-Farer' in sagas, winters on Cyprus.

1111 BYZANTIUM

Early. Sigurd of Norway visits Constantinople en route home, and is magnificently entertained and given chests of gold; in return he presents Alexius with a longship with gold figurehead.

ITALY

February. Death of Roger Borsa, Norman ruler of southern Italy, at Salerno; succeeded by young son William, whose mother Alaine of Flanders is regent.

12 February. German Emperor Henry V's coronation-service in St. Peter's, Rome, abandoned after protests at his acceptance of Pope Paschal's terms for solution of 'Investiture Controversy'; he arrests Paschal, and threatens to install his anti-Pope Silvester II; *12 April* Paschal accepts Henry's revised terms; *13 April* the coronation proceeds, but Paschal's submission leads to unpopularity in Rome.

Death of Bohemund (probable; some sources claim as early as *1108*), aged around 53; his lands in Italy pass to his nephew William, and Tancred inherits Antioch; no mention of Tancred accepting terms of Treaty of Devol with Alexius.

IRAQ

Early. Arrival of a delegation from Aleppo at Baghdad requesting an expedition against the Franks, in defiance of their sovereign Ridwan who is accused of subservience to Tancred and favouring 'Ismaili' heretics; the Caliph fails to respond so the envoys stir up a riot in the city's principal mosque. The arrival of a Byzantine embassy is used as evidence that the Caliph is a traitor to Islam.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius plans campaign in Anatolia and on to Antioch, and sends Boutumites with fleet to Cyprus; Boutumites goes on to Tripoli to hold talks with Bertrand and offer him money and supplies.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Shams ed-Din Khilafa, governor of Ascalon, asks Baldwin for help against the suspicious Fatimids, whose 'reinforcements' he has refused to let into the town; he admits a garrison of 300 Franks to the citadel to help his Armenian mercenaries.

Caliph Al-Mustazzhir asks his father-in-law Sultan Mohammed the Seljukid for help, and is told to show his Islamic zeal to his disaffected citizens by helping a new 'jihad' in Syria; Mohammed tells Mawdud of Mosul to organise a coalition for war, and Soqman of Mayyafariqin, Ilghazi of Mardin (via his son Azaz), Emir Ahmed-II of Maragha, and Bursuq the governor of Hamadan are called on to join in.

July. The inhabitants of Ascalon revolt against Shams ed-Din Khalifa and the Frankish alliance with Egyptian help, take the citadel and kill Shams and Baldwin's garrison; the King hears and hurries to the area with an army, but arrives too late and the Fatimids secure the town.

July. Mawdud's expedition invades Edessa and besieges Turbessel; Ridwan and Emir Sultan Ibn Munqidh of Shaizar send to Mawdud asking for aid, and Mawdud agrees to go to Aleppo – aided by Ahmed-II, whose

secret ally Joscelin of Turbessel has asked him to help lift the siege. Mawdud marches to Shaizar, where attacking Tancred withdraws and Toghtekin of Damascus arrives to ask Mawdud to attack Tripoli.

Tancred (at Apamea) asks Baldwin I for help, and he brings a large army with Patriarch Gibelin; Bertrand comes from Tripoli, and Baldwin of Edessa and Joscelin come from the north with the Frank lords Guy of Tarsus, Richard of Marash, and Pagan of Saruj; the Armenian princes (including Kogh Vasil of Kaisun and Hethoum of Lampron, Byzantine ally) also send troops. Their c.16,000-strong army marches on Shaizar, and Mawdud refuses to fight and is besieged; Soqman dies (and Ilghazi tries to loot his cortege of treasure as it returns home), Ahmed-II returns home, and Toghtekin will not send help unless Mawdud promises to come to help him afterwards.

Autumn. Mawdud withdraws to Mosul; the Christians are encouraged to attack Tyre by the governor's hiring 500 mercenary archers from Toghtekin. The latter agrees that the notables of Tyre can store their treasures safe in Damascus in case of a siege, but as the caravan is en route to the city from Tyre it is betrayed by a local Frankish knight, Reynald, who is supposed to have been bribed to take it safely through Christian territory but informs King Baldwin; Baldwin attacks and takes the convoy, and (*late November*) opens the siege of Tyre.

November. Boutumites and 12 Byzantine warships join Crusader siege of Tyre, but give no significant assistance as Tyre is allied to Byzantine ally, Fatimid Caliphate, and King Baldwin is not assisting Alexius against Tancred.

1112 BYZANTIUM

Malik Shah invades western Anatolia, but is defeated by Gabras at battle of Celbianum; he sues for peace and receives Alexius' ambassadors with honour.

PALESTINE

Death of Patriarch Gibelin; Armulf is finally elected undisputed as Patriarch and proves strong and shrewd leader of the Church (though he is disparaged in retrospect by the historian William of Tyre in the 1180s).

SYRIA

April. Toghtekin, 'atabeg' of Damascus, arrives to relieve Tyre and besieges Crusader camp; King Baldwin abandons siege.

Boutumites and Byzantine fleet escorts Baldwin's army to Acre; at Acre the King quarrels with Butumites over lack of Byzantine support and is offered money but shows no willingness to reciprocate.

Toghtekin allies with Ridwan of Aleppo despite the latter's recent efforts to get the 'Assassins' to murder him.

Early Spring. Death of Bertrand of Tripoli, succeeded by son Pons; he realigns Tripoli with Antioch as he does not share his father's distrust of Tancred. The Byzantine naval commander in eastern waters, Butumites, calls on Pons on return voyage to request return of unused subsidy given to Bertrand to fight Tancred, and on eventual agreement gives him gifts.

Tancred attacks the Armenian lord Kogh Vasil of Kaisun and takes the fortress of Raban; his target sues for peace before Kaisun can be attacked.

SPAIN/PORTUGAL

22 May. Death of Count Henry of Portugal (cadet of the ducal house of Burgundy), co-ruler with his wife Countess Teresa; their son Afonso (born 1109?) is now titular co-ruler as Count but does not achieve real power until his nobles use him to politically neutralise his mother in 1126.

SYRIA

Summer. Mawdud of Mosul raids into Edessan territory, an Armenian plot to hand over Edessa to him fails due to vigilance and quick action by Baldwin's chief lieutenant and vassal, Joscelin of Turbessel.

Deaths of Richard of the Principate and *12 October* Kogh Vasil of Kaisun. The latter's widow sends the Franks gifts to secure peace for her son, Vasil Dgha, but Tancred plans invasion.

Autumn? Joscelin is arrested on a visit to Baldwin at Edessa, having been summoned to discuss the succession with Baldwin pretending he is ill; he is accused of seeking to overthrow his lord, with his friendly relations with the local Armenians arousing distrust, and of not sending enough supplies to beleaguered Edessa during Mawdud's raid. He is eventually released and allowed to go to Jerusalem in return for handing over Turbessel.

ITALY

Autumn. Roger II of Sicily is knighted at Palermo and assumes authority over the territories; his mother Adelaide is offered marriage by King Baldwin of Jerusalem after he divorces his third, Armenian wife.

SYRIA

12 December. Unexpected death of Tancred at Antioch, aged 36, while preparing attack on the new regime at Kaisun; he names Roger, son of Richard of the Principate, as his successor providing he abdicates if Bohemund's young son, Bohemund II, should come to claim principality; Tancred's widow, Cecilia of France, marries Pons of Tripoli.

1113 | PALESTINE

Baldwin I makes Joscelin of Courtenay the new lord of Galilee.

ITALY/PALESTINE

Papal Bull authorises the foundation of the fledgling organisation that will become the Order of the Knights Hospitaller – initially the small group of knights serving the (*pre-1099*) ‘Hospital of St. John’ in Jerusalem, founded by the Amalfitans to look after pilgrims. Their first leader, who has been recruiting among knights visiting or living in Palestine and collecting endowments from the secular lords, is Brother Gerard.

BYZANTIUM

Archbishop Peter of Milan comes to Constantinople as Papal representative to investigate theological settlement with Eastern church; he holds talks with Alexius’ theologians and reaches agreement on some issues with Bishop Eustathius of Nicaea.

Alexius prepares for a new Seljuk invasion but falls ill at Damalis on east side of Bosphorus and cannot lead army so Eustathius Camytzes, governor of Nicaea, does so; Malik Shah invades ‘Thrace’ theme and takes Pergamum, while Emir Mohammed takes Poimamenon and a large Turkish force invades Bithynia; Camytzes besieged in Nicaea while raiders ravage Bithynia and besiege Lopadion, and Emir Manalough/Monolyk loots Abydos.

Camytzes breaks out of Nicaea, defeats Mohammed’s army, and pursues Turks up onto the Anatolian plateau but is captured in ambush; the recovered Alexius leads army into Bithynia, rounds Mount Olympus near Prusa to outflank Turks, and drives Turks back into Phrygia where he routs them at Cotyaeum.

Alexius, Gabras and Monastras pursue the Turks back across Anatolia and Mohammed attacks rearguard but is driven off; much loot is recovered and Camytzes escapes captors.

Alexius returns to Constantinople.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Spring? Baldwin I attacks Toghtekin, who seeks help from Mawdud of Mosul and from Ilghazi of Mardin who sends his son Ayaz to help; Baldwin is lured into battle at Sennabra on the upper Jordan and defeated but is rescued by the arrival of Pons of Triplois and Roger of Antioch. The Christians retreat to Tiberias, and the allied Moslem army under Mawdud and Toghtekin follows them but has to retire as they avoid battle.

Mawdud goes to Damascus to confer with his ally Toghtekin.

August. Adelaide of Sicily arrives at Acre in great state to marry King Baldwin; her ten ships are laden with treasures, which Baldwin quickly takes over to pay his soldiers and pay for fortifications across his kingdom.

Late September. Mawdud of Mosul, visiting Toghtekin in Damascus, is murdered in mosque by an Ismaili ‘Assassin’, allegedly at instigation of his host. Toghtekin executes the murderer and assures his innocence.

13 December. Death of Ridwan of Aleppo; weak and vicious son Alp Arslan, aged 16, succeeds under guardianship of eunuch minister Lu’lu, and Sultan Mohammed forces them to root out local castles of the heretic Ismaili ‘Assassins’, Ridwan’s protégés, who resist.

SPAIN

Count Raymond Berengar III of Provence and Count William of Montpellier join a Crusading expedition by the northern Italian port city-states to attack the Balaeric Islands, which overruns most of Majorca; other leaders include Ugo da Parlsacio Embriaco of Genoa and archbishop Pietro Morisani of Pisa. It has allegedly 420 ships and has some of the attributes of a Crusade, e.g. the leaders wearing the Cross on their garments.

1114 SYRIA/ARMENIA

Spring. Attacked by Aleppan troops, the ‘Assassins’ have to flee into the remote west Syrian mountains south of Antioch, home of the ‘Nosairi’ sect, or hold out in outlying areas; they fail to take Shaizar by surprise attack while the Ibn Munqidh dynasty are out of their citadel watching the local Christians celebrating Easter.

Alp Arslan visits Damascus to confirm alliance with Toghtekin.

Vasil Dgha, son and successor of Kogh Vasil of Kaisun, allies with Aqsonqor Il-Bursuqi, new Seljuk viceroy in the ‘Jazirah’ and based at Mosul, against Baldwin of Edessa; he is encouraged by Armenians among the population of Edessa who Baldwin expelled from city on suspicion of disloyalty and has just allowed to return. Aqsonqor sends him troops.

May. Aqsonqor il-Bursuqi launches unsuccessful two-month siege of Edessa on Seljuk Sultan Mohammed’s behalf, joined by the Sultan’s son Mas’ud and by Emir Temurek of Sinjar. (This is also the first campaign in the area of a junior Seljuk officer, Imad ed-Din Zengi, later the ruler of Aleppo and conqueror of Edessa in 1144.) Ilghazi of Mardin refuses to join the campaign, so Aqsonqor attacks Mardin en route and make him send his son Ayaz and a contingent of troops.

July. Aqsonqor arrests Ayaz, whereupon Ilghazi marches on Edessa with Turcoman mercenaries to attack the Seljuk army; short of supplies, Aqsonqor withdraws but is caught and defeated and has to return to Mosul.

Baldwin attacks the Armenians of Kaisun to drive out Vasil Dgha's new Moslem military assistant, Aqsonqor's general Sonqor 'the Long'.

September. Alp Arslan of Aleppo is killed by Lu'lu, who fears for his life; his 6-year-old brother Sultanshah appointed nominal ruler. Short of troops and relying on the city notables to keep the populace quiet, Lu'lu does not attack the Franks.

November. Serious earthquake in Syria damages walls of Antioch, Edessa, and other fortifications; campaigns postponed while repairs are made (into 1115).

Berengar, Bishop of Orange, arrives in Jerusalem as Papal emissary with accusations of simony against Patriarch Arnulf; he also hears complaints that Arnulf married the King to Adelaide of Sicily in 1113 without checking that he had divorced his previous wife, about which rumours are circulating. He holds a Church synod and has Arnulf deposed, but the latter has enough influence to see that no election for a successor is held.

SPAIN

Divorce of King Alfonso I of Aragon and Queen Urraca of Castile; the kingdoms separate.

The war on the Balaerics continues.

1115 PALESTINE

Egyptian attempt to surprise Jaffa is defeated.

Baldwin marches through Idumea and the Hebron area, and decides to found a major new fortress to protect it from an Egyptian attack and extend Christian power; he founds 'Krak de Montreal' ('Fortress of the Royal Mountain').

SYRIA

Sultan Mohammed plans to reassert his power in western Iraq and Syria and drive out the Franks. He sends his son Mas'ud to Mosul, and governor Bursuq of Hamadan into Syria with army including Mosul's ex-governor Juyush-Beg and Emir Temurek of Sinjar.

Emir Ibn Qaraja of Homs and the Ibn Munqidh dynasty of Shaizar back the Seljuk Sultan, but Toghtekin of Damascus resists and the alarmed Ilghazi of Mardin goes to the city to reaffirm their alliance. En route home

he is captured by Ibn Qaraja but persuades him to let him go after threats by Toghtekin; Ilghazi leaves his son Ayaz in Homs as surety for no attack. Lu'lu, governor of Aleppo, fears deposition by the Sultan and joins Ilghazi and Toghtekin; Toghtekin allies with Roger of Antioch against Bursuq, and Roger marches to Apamea to await the Seljuk army.

Bursuq decides not to attack Aleppo yet, and heads for Hama, Toghtekin's army's base, where he sacks the town and pillages Toghtekin's headquarters and baggage; he attacks Antiochene fortress of Kafartab, and Roger appeals to Baldwin, who brings 500 knights and 4,000 infantry, and Count Pons, who brings 200 knights and 2,000 infantry.

The Christian army enters Hama as Bursuq, who has moved on to his allies' town of Shaizar, retires north; Baldwin and Pons treat the campaign as over and go home, but Bursuq quickly marches back when he hears this and takes Kafartab by surprise.

Lu'lu submits and asks Bursuq to send a garrison to occupy Aleppo, and Bursuq sends Juyush-Beg there; Roger sends to Baldwin and Pons but cannot wait and (*12 September*) leaves Antioch to link up with Baldwin of Edessa. He arrives at Chastel Rouge, and next day the armies are marching parallel without knowing each other's position when the Antiochene knight Theodore Berneville locates the Seljuk army marching through forest towards the hill of Tell-Danith.

14 September. Roger attacks and routs Bursuq at Tel-Danith near River Orontes in a surprise attack; the Moslems are caught unprepared on the march with some setting up the midday camp and others away foraging and Bursuq has to rally his most disciplined troops on the hill as the rest flee. His lieutenants persuade him to retreat not fight to the end, and the Sinjar contingent are overwhelmed by Guy Fresnel, lord of Harenc.

End of the Sultanate's attempts to assert authority in Syria; Roger retakes Kafartab and Toghtekin sends envoys to the Sultan to apologise and submit but receives no help.

SPAIN

Having neutralised the potential maritime threat to western Mediterranean shipping from the Balaerics, the Crusade returns home to northern Italy, Catalonia, and Provence; the islands are left to the shattered local Moslems and are soon overrun by the Almoravids.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

? Vasil Dgha holds out against an Edessan siege of his capital, Raban but then seeks aid from his fellow-Armenian and local rival, Thoros the Rupenid, and visits him to be kidnapped.

Autumn. Patriarch Arnulf goes off to Rome to secure his restoration to his see, and succeeds that winter in persuading the Pope to restore him; in return he promises to see that King Baldwin expels his illegal wife, Queen Adelaide.

Winter. Death of Bursuq in the ‘Jazirah’, his army and morale shattered.

SPAIN

The Crusade sacks Palma, and completes its conquest of Majorca.

1116 BYZANTIUM

Alexius sets out for campaign as Malik Shah invades western Anatolia, but falls seriously ill at Damalis; the Turks ravage Bithynia and besiege Nicaea.

Byzantine army at Lopadium advances, and defeats Turks; they retire onto the plateau, and recovered Alexius leads the pursuit in person; Alexius advances to Dorylaeum, while other bands of raiding Turks are driven back.

Alexius’ army relieves Philomelium, but the Turks have melted into the hills and he cannot protect the local Christian populace so he orders their evacuation to safer lands in western Anatolia; on their return march Malik Shah returns to offensive and pursues Alexius.

Alexius defeats Malik Shah in battle near Ampoun, though his second son Andronicus is killed; Malik Shah requests a truce and comes to personal interview, where he agrees to become Alexius’ ally and vassal and recognise his suzerainty over all lands taken from Byzantines since 1071 – according to Anna Comnena, Malik Shah agrees to evacuate territories too.

Alexius warns Malik Shah against treachery by his brother Mas’ud; on his return to Sultanate Malik Shah faces rebellion. His troops desert, and he flees towards Byzantine territory seeking aid; he reaches Byzantine fortress at Tyragion, but Mas’ud’s troops surround the place and Malik Shah blinded and deposed. Mas’ud becomes Sultan.

SYRIA

Thoros hands Vasil Dgha over to Baldwin of Edessa, who takes his lands (including Raban and Kaisun) and lets him leave for Constantinople.

Baldwin of Edessa also seizes Moslem principality of Birejek, and Armenian principality of Khoros.

PALESTINE

Baldwin marches as far south as Aqaba and founds a citadel at Aila (near Eilat) to command the head of the Gulf; he also takes the offshore island of Jesira't Farun ('Graye') and founds a castle there. These fortresses give the Kingdom control of the route from Egypt and Sinai to Arabia and Damascus.

HUNGARY

King Coloman is succeeded by his son Stephen II, who blinds his father's brother Almos, lord of Croatia; Almos and his son Béla flee to Constantinople.

1117 TURKISH SULTANATE

Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium has imprisoned brother Malik Shah strangled.

PALESTINE

Spring. Patriarch Arnulf of Jerusalem persuades the ill King Baldwin to divorce and expel Queen Adelaide to save himself from damnation as his marriage is illegal; he sends her back to Sicily (without her dowry treasure, which he has spent), though his Armenian ex-wife refuses to return from Constantinople as Arnulf wishes her to do. Roger II is so furious at his mother's treatment that it affects Sicilian relations with Jerusalem for decades.

SYRIA

May. Eunuch chief minister Lu'lu of Aleppo murdered in a plot by the Turkish garrison, and Ridwan's son Sultanshah is made nominal ruler by them; real power is seized by the Armenian eunuch Yaruqtash; he cedes to Roger the fortress of al-Qubba, on the crucial Aleppo-Damascus road, and its right to levy tolls on pilgrims en route to Mecca. Sultanshah is persuaded by the Turkish officers to refuse to support Yaruqtash, who appeals to Ilghazi for help but is overthrown before Ilghazi's troops arrive. Sultanshah's new minister Ibn al-Milhi, a Seljuk dynastic loyalist, refuses to admit Ilghazi but allows his son Kizil to reside in the city as his representative in alliance. Ilghazi is given the fortress of Balis on the Euphrates as an incentive to help Sultanshah's government should the Caliph's nominee as governor of Aleppo, Aqsonqor Il-Bursuqi, attack.

Autumn? Ibn al-Milhi re-aligns himself with Emir Khirkan of Homs, and hands over Kizil to him; Khirkan's troops at Aleppo; Ilghazi plans with Toghtekin of Damascus to confront this alliance.

Baldwin of Edessa expels Abu Igharib, lord of Birejik, his vassal from c. 1100, as unreliable ally and replaces him with his own cousin, Waleran

of Le Puiset, who marries the ex-emir's daughter; he also drives out Baghrat of Khoros, client from c. 1099 of his predecessor Baldwin I, and deposes and imprisons Constantine of Gargar. This ends the non-'Rupenian' Armenian dynastic mini-states of the upper Euphrates valley.

AFRICA

? Return home to Morocco of the ascetic wandering theological scholar Mohammed Ibn Tumart, from the village of Igliz in the High Atlas south-west of Marrakesh, after a sojourn in Damascus.

1118 ITALY

21 January. Death of Pope Paschal; *24 January* Gelasius II (John of Gaeta) elected Pope.

PALESTINE

March. King Baldwin invades Egypt on a raid with 216 cavalry and 400 infantry, backed by local Bedouin with provisions, and crosses the Sinai, avoiding the coastal fortresses; he reaches Farama, near Pelusium at the mouth of the Nile, and takes the locals by surprise causing panic. He attacks Pelusium as the garrison flee, and marches to the Nile, but he has to return early to Palestine ill.

2 April. Baldwin dies en route, aged around 60; the Council sends to his brother, Count Eustace of Boulogne, as heir but his cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg is the choice of the leading baron Joscelin of Courtenay, lord of Galilee, and Patriarch Arnulf backs him.

Baldwin of Le Bourg arrives from Edessa to claim throne as nearer to hand and a veteran of First Crusade, on the day of Baldwin I's funeral; he is elected as King and Eustace hears the news as he reaches Apulia and gives way.

Easter Sunday, 14 April. Coronation of King Baldwin II.

16 April. Death of Queen Adelaide in Sicily.

21 April. Death of Patriarch Arnulf. Gormond of Picquigny (Picardy) elected Patriarch.

June? Baldwin leads the army to Ashdod to confront an invading Egyptian army, which has sent to Toghtekin for help; the latter demands the cession of all land east of the Jordan as his price for peace but the Christians refuse. After a three-month stalemate the Egyptians return home and the crisis ends.

Baldwin II grants Edessa to his ally Joscelin of Courtenay; until the latter arrives at Edessa Baldwin's wife Queen Morphia takes charge.

SYRIA

Summer. Ilghazi occupies Aleppo, while its current overlord Khirkan of Homs is occupied trying to fight off an attack by Toghtekin at home; Ilghazi relieves Antiochene siege of Balis en route to Aleppo, and at the latter he arrests the new chief minister, the eunuch Qaraja, and the Seljuk prince Sultanshah; meanwhile Toghtekin, as Ilghazi's ally, forces Khirkan to abandon his claim to Aleppo.

Roger of Antioch takes advantage of the crisis to occupy Azaz.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius' condition deteriorates, and *Summer* he is taken to Monastery of Mangana on the Bosphorus; Irene and their daughter Anna Comnena spend time while nursing him trying to persuade him to disinherit eldest son John in favour of Nicephorus Bryennius.

15 August. Alexius, dying, smuggles his signet-ring to John while Irene and Anna are not looking and he hurries out to announce the Imperial wishes to the Guards regiments but needs proclamation accepted by Patriarch to win them over; as their shouts of acclamation are heard in bedchamber Irene tells Alexius that he cannot give up deceiving even on deathbed.

Alexius dies, aged probably 62 or 63, after a 37-year reign; John II succeeds (aged 30) and Alexius buried at Church of Pantocrator Monastery.

TURKISH SULTANATE

6 August. Death of Caliph al-Mustanzir at Baghdad after 24-year reign, probably in his late 40s; succeeded by son Al-Mustarshid.

SYRIA

5 August. Death of Sultan Mohammed; his son Mahmud succeeds to rule Iraq but Mohammed's brother Sanjar of Khorasan becomes de facto independent in Persia.

Mahmud's brothers succeed, Mas'ud to Fars (Isfahan etc.) and Tughril to Qazvin, under Mahmud's overlordship.

SPAIN

Reconquest of Saragossa (Zaragoza), dominating the Ebro valley, by the Kingdom of Aragon under the militantly expansionist Catholic warrior King Alfonso I (r. 1104–34), first major patron of the Crusading ideal and Military Orders in the peninsula. Saragossa replaces Huesca as the capital of Aragon.

This secures the Ebro valley and sets Aragon on the road from being a minor Pyrenean kingdom to the dominant power of the region.

1119 ITALY

29 January. Death of Pope Gelasius at Cluny, France; *9 February* Guido of Burgundy elected Pope Callistus II.

BYZANTIUM

John and his ‘Grand Domestic’ Axuch, a Turkish ex-prisoner and his boyhood friend, lead Byzantine army from Constantinople to the plateau east of Maeander valley where they retake Sozopolis, Sublaeum and Apamea; at Laodicea John is recalled by news of a conspiracy in Constantinople, and returns to punish conspirators; his sister Anna Comnena is discovered to be involved and has to retire to a nunnery where she later starts to write her father’s biography, the ‘Alexiad’.

John returns to his army, going via Sozopolis and advancing into Pamphylia; the land-routes from Maeander valley and Constantinople to Attalia are reopened, but some nomad Turks still remain in Caria. This will prove crucial to the problems the Second Crusade encounters there in 1148 and so poison Byzantine-‘Frank’ relations.

SYRIA

Spring. Joscelin and the brothers Godfrey and William of Bures, leading Galilee barons, are defeated attacking an Arab nomad tribe near the River Yarmuk to steal their flocks; Joscelin loses his way to the ambush-site and Godfrey is killed. Joscelin has to ask Baldwin to use his army to force the Bedouin to pay compensation, and leaves for Edessa to take over the government from Baldwin’s Queen Morphia (a local) and Waleran of Birejik.

Ilghazi of Mardin raises a large army to recover Biza’a and attack Antioch, and (*late May*) invades Edessan territory en route; Roger is advised by Patriarch Bernard to ask Baldwin and Pons for help and Baldwin, at Tiberias after helping Joscelin in Galilee, asks him to wait for his arrival.

Mid-June. Ilghazi crosses the Euphrates; he camps at Qinnasrin near Aleppo to await Toghtekin’s army from Damascus; *20 June* Roger leaves Antioch and encamps at Tell Aqibrin to wait in open country for Baldwin’s arrival. Ilghazi’s scouts locate his camp without being spotted.

27 June. Ilghazi sends part of his army to besiege Athareb; Roger discovers the proximity of the main Moslem army and sends his treasure to safety at Artah.

Saturday, 28 June. Roger attempts to break out, unnerved by strong southerly wind which exacerbates his men’s lack of water; Archbishop

Peter of Apamea preaches to the army beforehand. Roger's men are beaten back except for a few detachments which break the Moslem lines, and the wind turns to the north and blows dust in their faces. Reynald Mazoir escapes to Sarmeda and c. 100 cavalry reach Robert of Vieux-Point's attempted rescue-party from Athareb, but Roger is killed and his army virtually wiped out ('Field of Blood').

Reynald surrenders Sarmeda, and his troops are put to death in Aleppo as part of the celebrations by the citizens; he is held to ransom. Artah surrenders.

Ilghazi fails to follow up victory, and returns to Aleppo; at Antioch Patriarch Bernard takes charge and disarms native Greek and Armenian citizens; Baldwin (at Lattakieh when he is told of the disaster) reaches Antioch and assumes government till 10-year-old Prince Bohemund can come out from his current home in southern Italy with his father's kin.

Pons arrives next day, and Joscelin follows; *11 August* Ilghazi resumes campaign to force surrender of Athareb; *12 August* Zerdana surrenders and the garrison are killed in defiance of Ilghazi's promises by his Turcoman levies.

13 August. Baldwin arrives at Tel-Danith, too late to save Athareb; he camps at Hab but Ilghazi fails to arrive in time for intended night attack.

14 August. Baldwin moves back towards Antioch as he hears that Zerdana has fallen; Ilghazi intercepts him and a clash follows, but the Christians hold off the stronger Moslem army. Ilghazi and Toghtekin have to retire, but have taken enough prisoners (including Robert 'the Leper', lord of Zerdana) to be able to pronounce it as a victory on their arrival at Aleppo. Robert is personally killed by Toghtekin despite Ilghazi's promise of ransom.

Baldwin reassures his government that he has won the battle, and recovers Maarat-an-Numan and Rusa once Ilghazi has retired; he returns to Antioch and sends the 'True Cross' back to Jerusalem (*early September*).

December. Baldwin returns to Jerusalem, bringing his wife Morphia who *25 December*, is crowned at Bethlehem.

Ilghazi's disorderly Turcoman mercenaries go home with their loot, and he has to postpone any further attacks.

25 December. The Champagne knight Hugh of Payens, a vassal of Count Hugh who probably came out to Palestine with him on pilgrimage in *1114*, and seven other knights take vows (to the Patriarch) at the Church of the Holy Sepulchre as a small 'Order' to live as monks but also to protect pilgrims in the Holy Land. This is the foundation of the 'Order of the Poor Fellow-Soldiers of Jesus Christ', i.e. the Templars, so-called from the quarters that King Baldwin gives them in the Mosque of Al-Aqsa which the Crusaders believe is the Temple of Solomon. The idea of the Order apparently originates with Hugh and is suggested by him to

King Baldwin and the Patriarch to augment the Kingdom's permanent manpower. The first knights include Godfrey of St. Omer, Archimbauld of St. Aignan, Payn of Montdidier, and Geoffrey Bissot. They adopt the methods of organisation of the 'Hospitallers', who in turn start to sideline their work caring for pilgrims to fight like the Templars do.

PERSIA/TURKISH SULTANATE

August. War between Sultans Mahmud of Mesopotamia and Sanjar of Khorasan ends with Mahmud having to accept Sanjar's suzerainty.

1120 PALESTINE/SYRIA

Baldwin makes William of Bures lord of Galilee.

January. Council held at Nablus. This endorses the creation of the Templar Order.

June. Baldwin returns to Antioch on the summons of Patriarch Bernard as Ilghazi is raiding again, taking the 'True Cross' with Patriarch Gormond; Ilghazi retires before he arrives as the Turcomans start to desert and the Aleppans call on Toghtekin to send help against Baldwin.

Indecisive campaign between Baldwin and Toghtekin ends in a truce, and Ilghazi agrees to one too; the frontier is formally delineated and Zerdana is demolished.

Death of Brother Gerard, founder of the Knights Hospitallers (Order of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem); succeeded by the French knight Raymond of Le Puy, traditionally a veteran of the First Crusade. He expands their military role.

1121 BYZANTIUM

John campaigns against the Pechenegs' invasion of the Balkans and winters at Stara Zagora.

SYRIA

Spring. Baldwin leaves Antioch for Jerusalem after Toghtekin raids into Galilee.

Ilghazi's son Sulaiman, his governor of Aleppo, rebels against him and hands over territory to Baldwin in return for peace.

Ilghazi marches north at invitation of Toghrul, ruler of Arran in east Armenia, to campaign against King David 'the Builder' of Georgia.

July. Baldwin raids Damascus territory and demolishes a fortress which Toghtekin has built at Jerash.

AFRICA

In the High Atlas, Ibn Tumart announces that he is the ‘Mahdi’, the ‘Expected One’ who will bring justice to the world, and founds the sect of the ‘Muwwahidun’ (‘Those who affirm the Unity of God’) which is known to Europeans as the ‘Almohads’. He soon founds an ascetic monastery community (‘ribat’) nearby at Tinnel, and his militant followers grow to encompass most of six of the Masmula tribes of the Atlas range. In due course a sporadic guerrilla war is launched against the Almoravid government in Marrakesh.

GEORGIA

August. King David III of Georgia wipes out Ilghazi and Toghrul’s army; he takes the city of Tiflis/Tbilisi which resumes ancient rôle as Georgian capital. Ilghazi flees back to Mosul and his son Sulaiman, governor of Aleppo, revolts and asks Baldwin for help; he cedes the recent conquests of his father, Athareb and Zerdana. Ilghazi defeats him and reconquers Aleppo but confirms the treaty; Baldwin returns to Jerusalem.

EGYPT

December. Vizier al-Afdal assassinated.

1122 BYZANTIUM

John wins crushing victory over the Pechenegs at Eski Zagra in Thrace, using the Varangian Guard with their axes to force way into fortified enemy camp through barricade of waggons; end of Pecheneg threat to Balkans.

SYRIA

Early. Pons of Tripoli refuses to renew homage to Baldwin, who invades; he surrenders.

Ilghazi invades Edessa again, breaking treaty at instigation of his nephew Balak, lord of Khanzit; Baldwin is reluctant to accept that he would break the treaty so quickly but marches north as Zerdana is besieged.

Baldwin relieves Zerdana, and Ilghazi avoids battle; Baldwin refuses to be lured into pursuing his light Turcomen horsemen into an ambush and the Moslems give up waiting for him to fight. The campaign peters out, but *13 September* after Baldwin’s departure Count Joscelin is ambushed near Saruj with Waleran of Birejik by Balak. They charge, but their horses slip in a rainstorm and the leaders and c. 60 men are captured by Balak; Joscelin is offered freedom if he tells Edessa to surrender but refuses and is taken to Kharput.

Baldwin becomes regent of Edessa.

November. Death of Ilghazi at Mayyafariqin; sons Sulaiman inherit Mardin and Timurtash Mayyafariqin; nephew Sulaiman inherits Aleppo and Balak Harran; nephew Dau'd (son of Soqman) rules Amida.

1123 GEORGIA

? King David crosses the southern Caucasus range into the Araxes/Aras valley, and retakes Ani (ancient capital of Armenia and his own Bagratid dynasty) from Moslems.

ITALY

First Lateran Council; Pope Callistus formally approves of war against the infidel in the Iberian peninsula as equal to that in the Holy Land and deserving of Crusading privileges for participants.

SYRIA

Baldwin retakes recently-lost Birejik, and installs Geoffrey 'the Monk', Western lord of Mara'ash, as regent of Edessa; *23 April* he is ambushed and captured by Balak at Gargar near the Euphrates while en route to try to rescue Joscelin, and is sent to Kharpurt to join Joscelin; Patriarch Bernard rules Antioch as regent. Rumours reach Jerusalem that Baldwin is dead, but his captivity is confirmed by the time that the Council assembles at Acre at the orders of Patriarch Gormand. Eustace Garnier, lord of Sidon and Caesarea, is made regent of Jerusalem.

May. An Egyptian army raids from Ascalon towards Jaffa, and Eustace Garnier confronts it with a large force and the 'True Cross'; *29 May* he meets the invaders at Ibelin and after a brief confrontation they withdraw, leaving their camp to be plundered.

An Egyptian fleet arrives at Ascalon just as the Venetian fleet arrives at Acre; the latter moves swiftly to intercept and destroy the attackers, and the Egyptians are virtually annihilated.

June. Balak conquers Aleppo; in his absence Joscelin smuggles a message to Armenian allies, who come to rescue and infiltrate Kharpurt to rescue him and Baldwin and seize town; Joscelin is escorted to the Euphrates by Armenians and as he cannot swim is paddled across on inflated wine-skins. Next day he is found by one of his peasants and taken to Turbessel, whence he hurries to Antioch; Patriarch Bernard says the army is too small to hold Kharpurt and sends him on to Jerusalem for reinforcements; he tells an emergency Council what has happened and they send a force with the 'True Cross'.

Baldwin defends Kharpurt from Balak but the Ortoqids break walls down and Baldwin is recaptured and taken to Harran; the Armenians helping

to defend the castle, most of Baldwin's fellow-ex-captives, and their local women helpers are all executed.

Joscelin has to call off the Kharput campaign and stalemate follows; Balak's governor of Aleppo tries to stir up Moslem zeal in the city by confiscating all the (Eastern rite) churches.

Death of Eustace Garnier; his widow Emma marries the younger Hugh (II) of Le Puiset, lord of Jaffa and the son of Baldwin's first cousin Hugh (I) who came out to Jerusalem c. 1119 after forfeiting his French lands for rebellion against King Louis VI. Hugh (II), left behind ill in southern Italy by his parents at the time, has recently come to the Kingdom; he is regent of the Garnier fiefs for Emma's under-age sons Walter and Eustace.

William of Bures becomes Constable and regent of the Kingdom. The Venetians debate with the nobles of the Kingdom about whether to attack Moslem-held Ascalon or Tyre; the nobles with lands in the hinterland of each favour the reduction of that port.

ITALY

July. Roger of Sicily sends his fleet under Admiral Christodulus to attack Mahdiya on the African coast in reprisal for raids; his lieutenant George of Antioch, a Greek formerly in Arab service, successfully captures the castle of ad-Dimas outside walls but the 14-year-old Emir Hassan proclaims holy war and his enthusiastic troops drive the Sicilians back to ships; garrison of ad-Dimas starved out and killed in sortie.

PALESTINE

December. The Venetian commanders and the Kingdom's authorities agree on the siege of Tyre; the commanders are entertained at Jerusalem and attend the Christmas service at Bethlehem.

1124 PALESTINE

January. Treaty between the Kingdom (led by Patriarch Gormand, Constable William and Chancellor Pagan of Oultrejordan) and Venice; the Venetians receive a street in each town in the Kingdom, freedom from all customs-duties, a third each of Tyre and Ascalon when captured, and 300 bezants per annum; they will pay a third of the fares of all pilgrims on their ships to the Kingdom and must be consulted before the customs-duties paid by all other nationals are altered.

15 February. Siege of Tyre by land (led by Patriarch Gormand) and (Venetian fleet) sea. The Fatimid Caliph Al-Amir tells Toghtekin that he cannot defend it as he has no fleet left after the 1123 defeat and Toghtekin sends in 700 Turkish mercenaries. The Christians cut the aqueduct, but enough rain has fallen recently to replenish the cisterns.

Count Pons arrives to join the siege of Tyre.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

The governor of Menbij revolts against Balak, and is captured as the town is stormed by Balak's cousin Timurtash; his brother Isa holds out in the citadel and appeals to Joscelin.

Balak defeats Joscelin's force and kills Geoffrey 'the Monk', but 6 May is killed by an arrow as he attacks Menbij. He has recently received an appeal to help Tyre. Timurtash succeeds to Aleppo; Queen Morphia (an Armenian) arrives in Antioch to help Joscelin with negotiations to ransom Baldwin from him. The Emir of Shaizar (Ibn Munqidh) mediates at Timurtash's request.

Al-Amir sends a raiding army to draw the Christians back into Judaea, and they approach Jerusalem; the citizens man the walls and the enemy retreats into the Sinai; later there is a raid on and massacre at Belin (La Mahomerie). Toghtekin reaches Banyas with a relief-army, but waits for news that an Egyptian fleet is sailing to help him and none does; the Patriarch sends William of Bures and Pons to confront him and he retires to Damascus.

June. Baldwin is ransomed for 80,000 dinars and frontier fortresses (Athareb, Zerdana, Azaz, and Kafaratab); 20,000 to be paid at once and Baldwin's daughter Jovieta and Joscelin's son Joscelin (II) are to head a list of hostages for the rest.

Late June. Warned by Tyre emissaries that food and water are running out, Toghtekin opens negotiations for surrender; the rights of its citizens to leave or stay unmolested are guaranteed despite the disappointment of the Christian soldiers and sailors.

7 July. Surrender of Tyre; those of the inhabitants wanting to leave are allowed to do so, and the King's flag is hoisted over the main gate.

The first instalment of the ransom is paid and Baldwin is escorted from Harran to Shaizar where he thanks the Emir; he hears of the fall of Tyre; as the hostages arrive he is allowed to go on (*August*) to Antioch. He later goes back on surrender of fortresses claiming he cannot hand over Bohemund II's territory without his permission.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Toghril Arsian, Seljuk prince ruling Melitene, besieged by the Danishmend ruler, Emir Ghazi Gumushtekin.

MOROCCO

The decline in central control of the Almoravid state within Morocco begins in earnest, as the new Atlas Mountains-based religio-military movement of the Almohads (really 'Al-Muwahiddun') repeats the breakaway achievements of the early Almoravids. Led by the Imam

Muhammad ibn Tumart (in power since 1121), it seizes the isolated town of Tinmel as its first headquarters. In succeeding years it extends its control, across the Atlas and evicts the Almoravid authorities there.

BYZANTIUM

June. John sends Pope Callistus letter on reopening negotiations for Church union.

Autumn. After assisting Crusader conquest of Tyre, Venetian fleet returns to Byzantium in pursuit of commercial dispute, raids Rhodes, and winters on Chios.

SYRIA

October. Baldwin's Antiochene troops and Joscelin's Edessan army join Dubais, the local Bedouin chieftain, to attack Aleppo; Sultanshah the Seljukid arrives to claim the Aleppo throne and Timurtash does not leave Mardin as his brother Sulaiman of Mayyafariqin is dying and he wants that city.

TURKISH SULTANATE

December. After Toghril Arslan's departure from Melitene to seek King Baldwin's aid, citizens open gates to Danishmend army; Toghril Arslan joins Baldwin at siege of Aleppo.

ITALY

14 December. Death of Pope Callistus; *16 December(?)* Cardinal priest Teobaldo elected Pope Celestine II, but *21 December* his inauguration is stopped by armed Roman faction who make cardinals elect Cardinal Lambert of Ostia as Pope Honorius II.¹¹

SYRIA

January. Aqsonqor il-Bursuqi, 'atabeg' of Mosul, accepts an invitation from desperate Aleppo emissaries to take over the city's defence; his troops hurry to reinforce the citadel, and as he approaches with the main army Baldwin and Joscelin retire; Baldwin waits at Athareb until it is clear that Aqsonqor will not attack and then returns to Antioch.

BYZANTIUM

Venetians attack Lesbos, and Andros and *April(?)* sail back via Dalmatia to Venice.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium/Konya faces rebellion by his brother Arab, and flees siege of his capital by Arab's army to Constantinople to get Byzantine assistance.

SYRIA

March? Aqsonqor Il-Bursuqi visits Shaizar and insists that the Ibn Munqidites hand over the Jerusalem and Edessan hostages to him.

April. Baldwin returns to Jerusalem, and prepares army to intercept Aqsonqor's assault on the Antiochene frontier.

May. Aqsonqor takes Kafartab and besieges Zerdana; Baldwin leads a large army of c. 1,100 cavalry and 2,000 infantry from Jerusalem, Antioch, and Edessa to relieve the siege. Aqsonqor is defeated at Azaz by the combined armies of Jerusalem, Antioch, and Edessa and enough prisoners are taken for Baldwin to ransom them at a price sufficient to ransom Jovieta and her fellow-hostages (and those hostages who Aqsonqor did not bother to take from Shaizar).

Truce allows Aqsonqor to keep Kafartab.

GEORGIA

Death of King David III 'the Builder', one of greatest rulers of Georgia; buried at his foundation, Gelati monastery, and succeeded by son Demetrius I

1126 PALESTINE/SYRIA

January. Baldwin invades the Hauran, and Toghtekin marches to rescue it; they clash at Tel es-Saquab, 20 miles south-west of Damascus, and the Turcomans reach Baldwin's camp before they are driven back. Baldwin wins the battle and penetrates close to Damascus but avoids attacking the city and retires.

March. Pons of Tripoli attacks Rafaniya, overlooking the Buqaia, and asks Baldwin for help as the defenders send to Aqsonqor and Toghtekin. The Jerusalem army arrives first, and after an 18-day siege the fortress surrenders.

SPAIN

8 March. Death of Queen Urraca of Castile and Leon, aged nearly 47, first Queen Regnant in the Western European world; succeeded by her son by Raymond of Burgundy, Alfonso VII, ruler of Galicia since 1111.

BYZANTIUM

Venetian fleet returns to Byzantine waters and raids Cephallonia; *August* Byzantine-Venetian peace-treaty restores earlier Venetian commercial privileges based on the 1082 treaty.

IRAQ

Seljuk Sultan Mahmud sends an army to Baghdad to reassert authority over the restive Caliph Al-Mustarshid; it is led by his new protégé Imad-ed-Din Zengi, son of the 1090s Aleppo governor Aqsonqor.

SYRIA

Autumn. The Egyptian fleet raids the Lebanese coast, and while the defenders are busy Aqsonqor Il-Bursuqi invades to besiege Athareb; Baldwin marches north to relieve Athareb, joined by Joscelin, as the Moslem fleet retires instead of linking up with the land-attackers as planned; Baldwin and Aqsonqor avoid battle and agree truce.

Early October. Bohemund II arrives in Antioch from southern Italy to take up rule of principality, with 24 ships; Baldwin hands over control and marries him to his second daughter Alice. Bohemund attacks Kafartab.

26 November. Returning to Mosul from installing his son Mas'ud in Aleppo, Aqsonqor il-Bursuqi is killed by an 'Assassin'; his overlord Sultan Mas'ud of Mesopotamia appoints Imad ad-Din Zengi, who is now warden of Baghdad, as successor in Mosul, ruling as 'atabeg' for the Seljuk prince Alp Arslan.

November. A refugee group of 'Assassins' under the Persian Bahram, welcomed to Damascus by the Vizier Al-Mazdahgani after leaving first base at Aleppo due to local hostility, are granted the frontier fortress of Banyas as a new base due to hostility in the city by the Sunni population; they start to terrorise the local residents.

SPAIN

Foundation of the Military Order of 'Monreal del Campo' by the Crusading enthusiast King Alfonso I of Aragon, on the model of the Templars and Hospitallers. It only lasts four years, when the local branch of the Templars supersedes it.

1127 TURKISH SULTANATE

Refugee Seljuk prince Arab invades the Danishmend territories and takes Gumushtekin's son Mohammed prisoner; Gumushtekin defeats Arab at Comana and rescues Mohammed.

Arab flees to Constantinople; Gumushtekin invades Pontus and Paphlagonia and the governor of the latter, Alexius Kasianos, deserts to him; Gumushtekin takes Castamona, original estate of the Comnenus family in 11th century.

SYRIA

Bahram the ‘Assassin’ leader is killed in a local feud; succeeded by Ismail.

Death of Mas’ud of Aleppo, probably of poison; internecine struggles follow between his nominee Tuman, the Seljuk Sultan’s nominee Kuluh, and Badr ed-Din Sulaiman the Ortoqid.

ITALY

25 July. Death of childless Count William of Apulia; Roger II of Sicily lays claim to his dominions and *August* sails to capital, Salerno, and blockades it until Archbishop Romuald opens the gates; Roger unites the Norman lands in Italy and Sicily for the first time.

IRAQ

The new ‘atabeg’ Zengi rebuilds army at Mosul ready to attack his Christian neighbours.

PALESTINE

Baldwin raids into Oultrejordan.

SYRIA

Autumn. Joint action against weakened Aleppo by Bohemund II and Joscelin breaks down as they quarrel, partly over Bohemund refusing to hand over Azaz, the dowry of Joscelin’s second, Antiochene wife, Maria (sister of the late Roger ‘of the Principate’), on the grounds that Roger was only a regent not a sovereign and had no right to alienate territory; they raid each other’s lands instead.

ITALY

Pope Honorius, alarmed at Roger II’s power, travels to Benevento and orders him to abandon Apulia; Roger arrives in person to meet him and politely refuses, then *September* progresses to Troia, Melfi, and Reggio; *November* after his departure Honorius arrives at Troia to join a meeting of disgruntled barons led by Roger’s brother-in-law Count Rainulf of Alife, and rebellion follows.

December. New Count Robert II of Capua joins rebels in person, and Honorius attends his inauguration.

1128 PALESTINE

Early. Death of Patriarch Gormond; succeeded by the Frenchman Stephen of La Ferte, abbot of St.Jean-en-Vallee at Chartres, a kinsman of King Baldwin. He claims the lordship of Jaffa as promised to his predecessor Daimbert by Godfrey of Bouillon, and the rule of Jerusalem once Ascalon is conquered; Baldwin resists and legal dispute follows.

BYZANTIUM

Spring. King Stephen II of Hungary invades Byzantium over the Danube, in dispute with (his cousin) Emperor John over latter's protection of refugee rival claimant to throne Prince Almos; Stephen takes Naissus and Sofia. John defeats the Hungarians outside Philippopolis and pursues them back to Danube; Stephen falls ill and John wins battle of Haramvár, invading Hungary to take Sirmium and Barancs.

SYRIA

12 February. Death of Toghtekin of Damascus, succeeded by son Taj al-Mulk Buri. Baldwin sends Grand Master Hugh of Payens of the Templars to Europe to collect volunteers for an attack on Damascus.

Baldwin arrives in Antioch to require Bohemund II and Joscelin to agree to a truce and resume co-operation as Joscelin is taking no notice of an interdict put on Edessa by Patriarch Bernard of Antioch. Joscelin falls ill, sees it as a Divine warning, and agrees to give in; he probably receives Azaz.

April. Hugh of Payens in Anjou, and meets Count Fulk – Baldwin's future son-in-law and successor – at Le Mans. Given this fact and Fulk's previous service as a Templar 'lay associate' in 1120, it is possible that Hugh is canvassing Fulk for his availability as Baldwin's successor.

ITALY

May. Roger returns to Calabria from Sicily and marches north; Brindisi, Taranto, and other rebel towns surrender; Pope Honorius leads an army into Apulia after relieving Benevento, but meets Roger on unfavourable terrain near Bari and decides to negotiate; he agrees in secret to invest Roger as Duke of Apulia and abandon allies, and Roger follows him to Benevento for 23 August investiture (outside walls as Roger insists on it being in his territory).

SYRIA

28 *June*. Fed up with feuding rival claimants, the citizens of Aleppo welcome the arrival of Zengi with army claiming to be the heir of Ibn Bursuqi's lands; he makes 2-year truce with Joscelin and receives the submission of Shaizar and Homs, but Hama resists him.

PALESTINE

Baldwin sends envoys, William of Bures (lord of Galilee) and Guy Brisebarre (lord of Beirut), to King Louis VI of France to seek his choice of a husband for Baldwin's eldest daughter and heiress, Melissende; Louis recommends Count Fulk of Anjou, who has visited Jerusalem on pilgrimage in 1120 (and served briefly there as a Templar 'lay brother') and is proposing to abdicate and go out to the Holy Land to fight the infidel. Fulk agrees to take up the offer and thus become co-heir to the Kingdom. His adult son by first marriage, Geoffrey 'Plantagenet', will succeed to Anjou.

ENGLAND

Foundation of first Templar base in the country, at Holborn in the London suburbs, by visiting Grand Master Hugh of Payens.

1129 FRANCE

January. Church Council of Troyes in Champagne, hosted by its Count Theobald (son of Stephen of Blois the Crusader and Princess Adela of England). Hugh of Payens, Grand Master of the Templars, attends to seek official Church recognition and support for the Order, which is forthcoming; Abbot (St.) Bernard of Clairvaux, dynamic chief organiser of the new Cistercian Order, is there with the Order's head, (St.) Stephan Harding, and agrees to draw up the Order's official rules which he bases on a militarised version of those of the Cistercians and that of St. Benedict of Nursia.

BYZANTIUM

Death of Thoros the Armenian, ruler of principality in Taurus; succeeded by son Constantine.

Gumushtekin abandons campaign in Pontus to invade Armenian territories in Cilicia.

ITALY

Death of Doge Domenico Michiel of Venice; succeeded by Peter Polani.

May. Roger II brings new forces from Sicily to Apulia; Brindisi holds out but *August* rebel governor Grimoald of Bari surrenders his city to naval blockade by George of Antioch, now Roger's 'Emir Al-Bahr' ('Commander of the Sea', soon known as 'Admiral' in first use of the term in Europe).

Rainulf answers appeal of Troia to take control of defence, but soon surrenders and is allowed to retain it as vassal.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

May. Count Fulk of Anjou, father of Geoffrey 'Plantagenet' to whom he has handed his domains, arrives at Jerusalem with Baldwin's ambassadors William of Bures and Guy of Brisebarrel *late May*. He marries King Baldwin's eldest daughter Melissende and becomes his heir to kingdom with her.

ARMENIA

Murder of Constantine of Armenia in a palace power-struggle; succeeded by brother Leo.

ITALY

September. Roger II holds a grand assembly of all his secular and clerical vassals at Melfi and makes them swear allegiance to him, as Duke of Apulia, and to his sons Roger and Tancred; the legal right of feud is abolished by personal oath to the Duke.

SYRIA

September. Buri of Damascus has his father's Vizier Al-Mazdaghani, chief protector of the unpopular 'Assassins', murdered at a council and arranges the massacre of all 'Assassins' in the city by the willing populace. Their commander Ismail, governor of Banyas, expects attack next and sends to Baldwin for help and offers to cede the fortress; a Christian army takes over, the 'Assassins' move into the territory of Jerusalem where Ismail soon dies, and (*November*) Baldwin personally leads army and recently-arrived recruits from the West to reinforce Banyas. They move on to besiege Damascus, but before they reach the city William of Bures is defeated by a sally as his badly-disciplined party of newcomers is collecting supplies; then heavy rain swamps the Christian camp, and Baldwin soon retreats to Banyas.

1130 PALESTINE

Early. Death of Patriarch Stephen, ending tension with the King; his successor is the less ambitious or worldly William, Prior of the Holy Sepulchre.

SYRIA

February. Bohemund II of Antioch, hoping to take advantage of Armenian weakness under new ruler Leo, invades Cilicia to besiege Anazarbus.

Leo appeals for help to Gumushtekin and Bohemund is ambushed marching up the river Jihan by Danishmend troops, unaware that they had joined his foes. He is killed, unrecognised in rout until afterwards; his head is sent to the Caliph. The Byzantines in the Taurus intervene to save Armenia and Antioch from immediate attack by threatening the Danishmends from the west.

Bohemund's daughter Constance succeeds to Antioch, aged two; his widow Alice of Jerusalem, declaring herself regent without waiting for her father (and overlord) Baldwin's permission and needing a military commander, does not want to seek Baldwin's assistance; she appeals to Zengi at Aleppo instead and offers homage as she hears that Baldwin is en route. Her messenger is captured by Baldwin who is hastening towards Antioch with Fulk; she shuts the gates of Antioch in her father's face but after Joscelin's arrival with troops the bribed citizens change their minds about defiance and the knight Wiliam of Aversa and the monk Peter 'the Latin' open the Gate of St. Paul. Next day Baldwin enters, and Alice is banished to her dower-town of Lattakieh; Baldwin becomes regent for her daughter Constance and makes the feudatories and citizens take an oath to the two of them.

ITALY

13/14 February. Dying Pope Honorius is carried off to the Frangipani family's quarter on Caelian Hill in Rome, so on death their partisan, chancellor Almeric, can organize secret election by supporting cardinals; Gregorio Papareschi elected Pope Innocent II. On hearing the news, the excluded majority of cardinals elect Peter Pierleoni as rival Pope Anacletus II, and wealth of converted Jewish Pierleoni family helps Anacletus to secure control of Rome.

BYZANTIUM

John invades Danismend dominions while their army is in Cilicia, and builds new fortress on the river Rhyndacus; his younger brother Isaac Comnenus, with son John, flee to Turkish territories and go on to Sultan Mas'ud in Mesopotamia.

John invades Paphlagonia and retakes Castamona; he celebrates triumph at Constantinople.

AFRICA

April. Ibn Tumart and the 'Almohads' attack the Almoravid capital, Marrakesh, but are driven back in a battle centred on the al-Buhayra gardens. This weakens their army for some years.

SYRIA

Zengi arrests Emir Khirkan of Homs, but the city holds out against him.

EGYPT

7 October. Al-Amir, Fatimid Caliph, dies aged 34 after a 28-year reign; succeeded by his cousin Al-Hafiz.

ITALY

September. With Innocent securing support in Germany, Anacletus travels to Avellino to meet Roger II and win support; *27 September* he issues bull at Benevento granting Roger the crown of Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily as new kingdom and overlordship of Naples, Capua, and in wartime Benevento.

MOROCCO

27 September. Death of Muhammad ibn Tumart, founding Imam of the Almohad religio-military movement now overrunning the Atlas and restricting Almoravid control of Morocco. Succeeded by his lieutenant Abu Mohammed Abd-al-Mumin.

PORTUGAL

11 November. Death of Countess Teresa, daughter of King Alfonso VI of Castile, aged 50; her son Count Afonso is now sole ruler.

ITALY

25 December. Coronation of Roger II at Palermo by its Archbishop.

1131

ITALY

February. Roger is refused the keys of Amalfi as token of submission and crosses to Italy; Amalfi is besieged by Emir John by land and George of Antioch by sea and surrenders; Sergius VII surrenders Naples and accepts Roger as overlord; *Summer* he returns to Sicily.

HUNGARY

Death of the childless Stephen II of Hungary; Prince Béla, son of Almos, returns from Constantinople as new king by permission of his cousin the Emperor, who retains a refugee Hungarian prince (or pretender) called Boris as potential rival in case he is needed and marries him to niece.

SYRIA

Leo of Armenia takes Mopsuestia, Taurus, and Adana from weakened Antiochene regency government.

Joscelin of Edessa falls down a collapsed mine in siege north-east of Aleppo and is confined to bed, badly injured; he asks his son Joscelin (II) to march to the rescue of Kaisun, which Gumushtekin the Danishmend is attacking, but the prince will not do it as his army is too small; *late September(?)* the elder Joscelin has himself carried in a litter to Kaisun where Gumushtekin withdraws when he hears that he is coming; Joscelin hears the news that the town is safe and dies, aged around 60; succeeded by son Joscelin (II).

BYZANTIUM

Danishmend army retakes Castamona.

TURKISH SULTANATE/PERSIA

Death of Sultan Mahmud of Iraq; succeeded briefly by his son Da'ud who is overthrown by his uncle, Mahmud's brother Tughril of Qazvin, who is backed by their distant cousin and overlord Sultan Sanjar of Hamadan.

Da'ud and Tughril's brother, Seljuk Shah of Azerbaijan, visits Baghdad and secures Caliph Al-Mustarshid's backing to take the Sultanate; their brother Mas'ud of Fars calls in Zengi from Mosul, and Zengi marches on Baghdad; Al-Mustarshid and Tughril defeat him near Tekrit but he is rescued and helped to cross the Tigris to safety by Ayyub, the Kurdish governor of Tekrit (and later the father of Saladin).

SYRIA/PALESTINE

August. Baldwin II falls ill in Jerusalem, and has himself moved from the palace to the Patriarchal residence so that he can die close to Calvary.

Friday, 31 August. Death of Baldwin II shortly after donning the robe of a canon of the Holy Sepulchre, probably in early sixties; eldest daughter Melissende and son-in-law Fulk joint sovereigns.

14 September. Coronation of Melissende and Fulk. Alice, Dowager Princess of Antioch, the Queen's sister, tries to argue that she should be regent of Antioch as it is normal practice to grant the title to a child-ruler's mother in Byzantium (overlord of Antioch) and in the West, and also to resist continuing the vassalage that Bohemund II paid to her father Baldwin II of Jerusalem. Joscelin II of Edessa and Pons of Tripoli (a lord of Antioch as his wife Cecilia received the castles of Chastel Rouge and Arzghan from her first husband Tancred) back her and assert their right

to end homage to Jerusalem too, arguing that their fathers only paid it to Baldwin I and II as personal concession not legal requirement. Most of the lords of Antioch oppose Alice and her allies, and send a warning to Fulk; he arrives with an army at the Tripoli border to be refused safe passage by Pons (and by his own half-sister, Pons' wife Cecilia) and sails from Beirut to St. Simeon instead.

Fulk marches south to defeat Alice's allies, the Antiochene contingent led by the brothers William and Garentan of Sahyun castle (near Alice's Lattakieh) and the Tripolitans by Pons, in a skirmish near Chastel Rouge; they surrender and are pardoned, and their backer Joscelin surrenders later. It is unclear if the two princes do homage to Fulk.

Late 1130 or early 1131. Constable Raymond of Mazoir assumes the government of Antioch as Fulk's nominee.

ITALY

Autumn. Tancred of Conversano and Grimoald of Bari revolt against Roger.

1132 SYRIA

William of Sahyun is killed in a Moslem raid on his castle of Zerdana; his widow Beatrice marries Joscelin of Edessa who thus acquires an Antiochene fief.

Buri of Damascus dies; succeeded by debauched son Abu'l Fath Ismail.

PALESTINE

Summer. Rumours spread about Melissende's relationship with the handsome young Hugh (II) of Le Puiset, lord of Jaffa since c. 1120 and husband of the older Emma Garnier, niece of late Patriarch Arnulf; her sons by her first marriage to Eustace Garnier of Sidon and Caesarea, Eustace (heir of Sidon) and Walter (heir of Caesarea), hate their young stepfather and stir up Fulk's jealousy. Walter accuses Hugh of plotting against the King and challenges him to single combat; this is agreed, but Hugh stays away on the day of the judicial 'trial by combat' and is declared guilty of the crime by default.

Hugh flees Jaffa to Ascalon to appeal to Egypt for help, and returns with an Egyptian garrison to take the town over in rebellion; he raids the Plain of Sharon but is opposed by his leading vassal, Balian (I) of Ibelin, and (*early December*) the Royal army advances on Jaffa.

As the Royal army leaves the central highlands of Judaea, (*11 December*) Damascene troops suddenly attack and take Banyas; a few days later Jaffa surrenders on the King's arrival, and Hugh hands himself in; Patriarch Arnulf and Emma appeal for mercy and Fulk exiles him for three years.

BYZANTIUM

John invades Paphlagonia and besieges Castamona; while he is busy in Anatolia, Seljuks take Sozopolis and Isaac's partisans start a plot in Constantinople.

John takes Castamona and marches east into the Halys valley, lost to Byzantium since mid-1070s.

IRAQ

June. Zengi attacks Baghdad again, aided by the Bedouin chief Dubais; they are defeated in person by the Caliph and Zengi retreats to Mosul.

ITALY

Roger quarrels with Count Rainulf of Alife, as Rainulf's wife Matilda leaves him for her brother Roger's court and Rainulf refuses to return her dower lands; Rainulf and Count Robert of Capua rebel and take Benevento, and *July* Roger is defeated at Nocera in attempt to suppress revolt; Bari and other towns join in.

August. German 'Holy Roman Emperor' Lothair and army arrive at Placenza on promised expedition to Italy to aid Innocent, who joins them; Roger sends troops to Rome to aid Anacletus.

1133

BYZANTIUM

With Emperor John back in Constantinople (c. *January*), Gumushtekin the Danishmend invades Paphlagonia again, storms Castamona, and massacres garrison; John prepares large expedition.

PALESTINE

New Year. Hugh of Le Puiset, about to go into exile, is attacked and badly wounded in the 'Street of the Furriers' in Jerusalem one evening; the King is suspected of organising it out of revenge on his wife's lover but calls a judicial investigation and the would-be assassin, a knight, is sentenced to have his limbs and head removed in public. During the execution the accused confesses that he acted alone in the hope of winning the King's favour, but there is still tension at Court over Melissende's suspicions and Hugh's enemies have to use bodyguards. Hugh retires to the Kingdom of Sicily, where Roger II gives him the lands of Gargano.

ITALY

Spring. Roger returns to Apulia and lets ‘Saracen’ (Arab) troops from Sicily loose on the rebel towns, relying on terror to induce surrenders; Tancred of Conversano besieged in Montepoloso and surrenders but town still sacked, and Trani and Melfi razed to ground.

Anacletus proposes to allow a panel of arbitrators to decide on Papacy, but Lothair and Innocent refuse; however Anacletus’ partisans withstand German siege in the Leonine City (Vatican), and *June* Innocent has to perform Lothair’s promised coronation in the Lateran Basilica; Lothair grants him the lands of the late Countess Matilda of Tuscany for Papal state.

SYRIA

Spring. Zengi faces the invading armies of Seljuk Sultan Tughril of Iraq and the Caliph; he lets them besiege Mosul while he harasses their besiegers from the countryside, and after a three-month siege they retire.

In the following months ex-Sultan Mas’ud the Seljuk commences a military revival of his power in northern Iraq at the Caliph’s expense.

Spring. Sawar, Zengi’s governor of Aleppo, attacks Antioch; Fulk comes from Jerusalem to the rescue and is held up at Sidon by the arrival of Countess Cecilia of Tripoli telling him that Pons has been ambushed by some Turcomans and is besieged in Montferrand castle; Fulk advances and the Turcomans retire, restoring his relations with Pons who soon agrees to marry his son Raymond to Queen Melissende’s sister Hodierna.

Fulk storms Sawar’s camp at Qinnasrin at night to send him fleeing; he is welcomed in Antioch but after his departure raids resume.

MOROCCO

Abd-al-Mumin, the Almohad leader, assumes the title of ‘Caliph’ to challenge the rule of the Almoravids; his new realm overruns much of central Morocco in the next decade or so, restricting the Almoravids to the major cities.

ITALY

August. As Lothair returns to Germany, Innocent flees Rome for Pisa.

Autumn. Roger returns to Sicily leaving Apulia quiet but Robert of Capua resisting him with a Pisan fleet.

1134 ITALY

Spring. Roger returns to Italy and Campanian towns surrender and are spared; Robert of Capua flees to Pisa and Rainulf of Alife surrenders in return for pardon; Sergius of Naples to Roger’s camp to submit.

BYZANTIUM

Death of Patriarch John IX Agapetus; succeeded by Leo Stypes.

John sets out with expedition to Paphlagonia, but 13 *August* Empress Irene dies in Bithynia; John returns to Constantinople for funeral, but his army continues campaign and besieges Gangra.

September. Death of Gumushtekin; succeeded by son Nasr al-Din Mohammed, whose younger brothers Yaghi-Basan and Ain al-Daula rebel; John hears of these events en route to resume campaign, and resumes siege of Gangra which holds out; his army winters in River Rhyndacus valley.

SPAIN

8 *September.* Death of the Crusading enthusiast King Alfonso I of Aragon, aged 59/60, after a 30-year reign; he leaves a third of his estates and revenues to the Templars to finance their wars. He is succeeded by his brother Ramiro 'the Monk', last male of the dynasty, who has received a Papal dispensation to marry so he can have an heir.

PERSIA/TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Sultan Tughril II of Iraq; succeeded by elder brother and predecessor Mas'ud, who closes in on his foe Caliph Al-Mustarshid at Baghdad.

1135 BYZANTIUM

Early. Fall of Gangra to Byzantines, followed later by Castamona.

SYRIA

Early. Struggle for power between the brutal young 'atabeg' Ismail of Damascus and his mother Princess Zumurrud; the latter defends her lover and adviser Yusuf, Buri's ex-minister, from Ismail's plots and Ismail appeals to Zengi for military assistance, saying he will hand the city over to the Crusaders if no assistance given.

February. Zengi marches on Damascus and takes Hama en route; Ismail is assassinated by plotters alerted by his mother and replaced by brother Shihab al-Din Mahmud; Zengi arrives five days later but cannot storm the walls and an embassy from Caliph Al-Mustarshid arrives asking him to respect its independence. He agrees and withdraws.

Zengi takes Antiochene eastern frontier fortresses (Kafartab, Maarat, Zerdana, and Athareb) while Sawar attacks Turbessel, family home of Joscelin of Edessa; Fulk answers an appeal to come to Antioch with assistance.

Early Summer. Death of Patriarch Bernard of Antioch; succeeded by Radulph of Domfront, Bishop of Mamistra, an ambitious cleric who opposes the influence of Fulk over the city.

ITALY

April. Robert of Capua arrives at Naples with Pisan fleet to renew rebellion; *June* Roger arrives at Salerno to besiege Naples and creates his eldest son Roger as Duke of Apulia to provide closer Sicilian control of the turbulent barons, son Tancred Prince of Bari, and son Alfonso Prince of (confiscated) Capua.

Roger besieges Naples.

EGYPT

Caliph Al-Hafiz has to execute his son and Vizier Hassan after riots against his severity; the Armenian Vahram takes office and pursues passive policy towards the Crusaders.

BYZANTIUM

John sends envoys to Germany to encourage Lothair to attack Roger; Lothair is interested and sends Bishop of Havelburg to Constantinople.

SYRIA

Summer. New Patriarch Radulph of Antioch secures Alice's return to resume regency government of Antioch so she can help him keep Fulk from interfering; she sends envoys to Constantinople to suggest her daughter Constance's betrothal to John's younger son Manuel in order to solve Byzantine threat to reconquer city by making it Manuel and Constance's fief. Radulph, who fears Byzantine connections as threatening to supplant his own Catholic hierarchy in power by the Greek Orthodox Church, alerts the barons.

Barons who are suspicious of Byzantine alliance send hastily to Fulk to ask him to speed up his plans to find a candidate to marry Constance; he sends to France to warn a rival suitor for Constance's hand, Raymond of Poitiers (younger son of Duke William of Aquitaine, a neighbour of Fulk's ex-County of Anjou, and at the court of Fulk's son Geoffrey's wife Matilda's father Henry I of England).

Raymond sets off for Syria, but has to elude King Roger's agents as Roger sees the betrothal of Constance as chance to claim Antioch for his family (he is descended from the uncle of the Principality's founder Bohemund I).

PERSIA/TURKISH SULTANATE

Abbasid Caliph Al-Mustarshid is defeated in battle (*June*) by Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud, captured, sentenced to deposition (*26 August*), and exiled to Azerbaijan, and later murdered in his tent; succeeded by son Al-Rashid, agd 28, as Mas'ud's puppet.

1136 BYZANTIUM

John prepares a grand expedition to Cilicia to expel the Armenians from towns and hopefully go on to Antioch.

SYRIA

Bisikra'il castle, in the mountains south of Antioch, is recovered from recent seizure by a Turcoman adventurer, for its lord Raymond Mazoir.

April. Raymond of Poitou arrives in Antioch and is married to Constance by Patriarch Radulph, hoodwinking Alice who was told he was only on a visit and is after her own hand; Raymond pays homage to the Patriarch in return for his assistance. Alice is waiting in the palace when his allies seize Constance and take her to the cathedral; Alice is sent back to her 'dower'-town, Lattakieh, and Raymond is the effective ruler.

April? Zengi's general Sawar's raiders under Afshin penetrate as far as Lattakieh on the coast, and then raid Baldwin of Mar'ash's lands as far as Kaisun.

Raymond and Baldwin of Mar'ash march against Leo the Armenian in Cilicia, but Leo's relative Joscelin of Edessa does not join in; Leo defeats Antiochenes, but Baldwin lures Leo to a truce-meeting and kidnaps him.

Danishmend tribesmen take various Cilician towns as Leo's sons quarrel, but Leo promises Crusaders to surrender fortresses in return for release and after achieves freedom does not do so.

ITALY

Naples holds out against Roger, and Robert ex-ruler of Capua goes to get help from Lothair.

IRAQ

Caliph Al-Rashid fails to win Zengi's backing for a war against Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud; the latter occupies Baghdad and secures a decision from the qadis deposing the Caliph after a reign of 357 days (*18 August*); Al-Muqtafi, aged 40, appointed his successor.

BYZANTIUM

Autumn. John's army advances from Attaleia along coast into western Cilicia, and Danishmends abandon conquests there to them.

SYRIA

Chief minister Yusuf of Damascus, lover of the 'atabeg' Mahmud's mother, is murdered in sudden attack on the city's main square by his companion, ambitious general Barzawash, who seizes power and starts an aggressive anti-Crusader policy.

PALESTINE

The castle of Bethgibelin, between Hebron and Ascalon, is handed over to the Hospitallers – the first fortress to be assigned to one of the Military Orders.

Death of Hugh of Payens, founder of the Templar Order.

1137 PALESTINE

Robert of Craon, an Angevin subject, elected as the second Grand Master of the Templars at a general assembly of the knights at Jerusalem.

BYZANTIUM

John sends envoys to meet Lothair as he marches into Italy to aid rebels against Roger; he and his four sons go to Attaleia and thence accompany army along coast into Cilicia, escorted by fleet; Leo abandons siege of Seleucia and John enters the Cilician plain unopposed; Tarsus, Adana, and Mopsuestia surrender and Anazarbus bombarded into submission after 37 days; Leo flees into Taurus and John annexes Cilicia.

ITALY

February. Lothair and Duke Henry of Bavaria reach Tuscany and head into southern Italy, *April* Monte Cassino monastery besieged but surrenders in return for autonomy; Sicilians retreat and Robert is restored to Capua; 23 *May* Benevento surrenders; Lothar invades Apulia along eastern route while Henry marches to south inland, and meet at Bari where 30 *May* Innocent addresses them in cathedral.

Roger sends envoys to offer Lothair that his son Roger will hold Apulia as German fief, but Lothair proclaims rebel Rainulf of Alife as Duke instead.

Lothair's army becomes restive in difficult summer conditions, and he marches back to Salerno where Robert of Capua is besieging Sicilian

governor, the Englishman Robert of Selby; en route he storms Melfi and massacres garrison; 8 *August* blockaded by Pisan fleet, Salerno surrenders but citadel holds out; the Pisan fleet leaves and Lothair invests Robert as Duke of Apulia but is annoyed at uninvited Innocent joining in ceremony to assert Papal suzerainty.

SYRIA

Summer. Raiding Damascenes sent by the aggressive new chief minister Bazawash cross the mountains to raid the plain of Tripoli, with local 'Eastern rite' Christian guides; Count Pons hurries to intercept them with a small force but is killed in a skirmish in the mountains and Bishop Gerard of Tripoli is captured but keeps his identity secret and is ransomed in return for Moslem prisoners, unrecognised; Pons' son and successor Raymond II is married to Fulk's wife's sister Hodierna and the latter proceeds to massacre the local Christians as traitors and sell the survivors into slavery.

Late June. Zengi besieges Homs, whose elderly Emir Unur is loyal to Damascus; Count Raymond II comes to intervene and he moves to attack Raymond; Raymond retreats and sends for help to Fulk, as Zengi pauses to besiege the castle of Montferrand overlooking the Buqaia passes. Fulk arrives to aid Raymond, but their exhausted army is ambushed as they approach Montferrand and routed by Zengi; Raymond is captured and Fulk reaches safety in the castle.

The Byzantine army approaches Antioch; Raymond of Antioch has to go south with Joscelin to relieve Zengi's siege of the castle of Montferrand and rescue Fulk, and Patriarch William brings the remaining troops in the Kingdom and the 'True Cross'. After the army has left, Bazawash raids into Judaea and sacks the unwallled town of Nablus.

Late July. Unable to wait any longer for relief, Fulk sends out for Zengi's terms and is only told to cede Montferrand; he accepts and leads the garrison out to be treated with honour and escorted to safety. A few miles down the road they meet the relief-army, and return to Jerusalem; Raymond hurries back to Antioch.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

29 *August.* John arrives on north bank of Orontes just as Raymond returns and enters the city via the south gate; Raymond offers to become John's governor of Antioch, but John demands unconditional surrender; Fulk tells Raymond he cannot help, and John demands that Raymond come to camp and hand over Antioch in return for Homs and Aleppo when taken from Moslems.

Raymond comes to John's camp and does homage, and Imperial Standard is raised over the citadel of Antioch.

With Leo the Armenian's sons still holding out, John leaves Antioch *Autumn* to campaign in the Taurus against them; they are hunted down, and Leo, Rupen and Thoros captured and sent to Constantinople (Rupen executed) but Mieħ, Stephen, and Constantine flee to cousin Joscelin of Edessa.

SPAIN

13 November. Having had a daughter, Petronilla (born *29 July 1136*) to secure the succession, Ramiro of Aragon abdicates and she succeeds under a regency. Her titular husband, the kingdom's neighbour and ally Count Raymond Berengar IV of Barcelona, governs in her name.

ITALY

October? Lothair takes leave of the Apulian barons at Aquino and sets off back to Germany; after his departure Roger lands at Salerno and advances to sack Capua. *30 October* Rainulf of Alife defeats Roger and his son Roger at Rignano; *November/December* Innocent's and Anacletus' partisans debate their masters' claims to Papacy at Salerno in front of Roger, and Innocent gets the better of argument thanks to eloquence of Abbot Bernard of Clairvaux.

December. Death of Emperor Lothair in Tyrol.

BYZANTIUM

John winters in Cilicia.

1138 ITALY

25 January. Death of Anacletus, still holding Rome; most of supporters desert to Innocent, but *March* his partisans in Rome elect Gregorio Conti as Pope Victor IV with Roger's support.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

February. The authorities in Antioch arrest all visiting Moslem merchants so they cannot take news of the preparations for the campaign to Aleppo.

Late March. John and his army return to Antioch to join Raymond, and combined army marches up Orontes into Moslem territory to take Homs as Raymond's replacement fief; *1 April* they reach Balat.

3–8 April. Siege of Biza'a; while Zengi is besieging independent Moslem city of Hama, John marches on Aleppo where Zengi's general Sawar arrives with reinforcements in time.

20 April. John arrives at Aleppo; he fails to storm the city; he marches south to Maarat-al-Nuuman; 25 April. 28 April John attacks Shaizar, where the commander is the head of the Ibn Munqidh family, Abu'l Asakir Sultan. (His nephew, the historian Usama, is a witness of the siege.) The lower town is soon stormed, and the upper town is bombarded; Raymond shirks the fighting to sit in his tent playing dice, not wanting to have to leave Antioch and rule in this outpost, and Joscelin does not help the Emperor either.

Zengi abandons the siege of Hama and advances to relief, and sends successful emissaries to Danishmend ruler Mohammed and Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud at Iconium/Konya; mid-May the exasperated John accepts rich gifts (including loot taken from Romanus IV at Manzikert 1071) and offer of vassalage from Emir Abu'l Asakir Sultan of Shaizar.

21 May. John starts march back to Antioch; he enters the city on horseback accompanied by Raymond and Joscelin on foot, and attends Mass at the Cathedral before taking up residence in Palace; he demands surrender of citadel to be Byzantine garrison, but the princes prevaricate and Joscelin slips out of the Palace to start a riot with a rumour that the Frankish population are to be expelled; fearing for his safety, John has to leave the city and then hears that Seljuks have invaded Cilicia at Zengi's instigation.

John retires into Cilicia and thence returns to Constantinople while his nephew, Nicephorus Bryennius and Anna Comnena's son Alexius Bryennius Comnenus, leads a force to punish the Seljuks; Alexius goes on to drive Turkish raiders out of Sangarius valley in north Phrygia.

Zengi resumes siege of Hama once the Byzantines have left Syria, and sends a demand to Damascus for the hand of 'atabeg' Mahmud's mother, Zumurrud, with Homs as her dowry; the government complies and sends her to Zengi's camp; June. Zengi enters Homs. He hands over his new acquisition of Montferrand to the governor of Homs, Unur.

Around this time, the Templars are invited to Antioch to take over the fortresses of Baghras, guarding the 'Syrian Gates' pass, and later nearby Darbsaq and 'La Roche de Roussel'.

ITALY

29 May. Pope Victor IV abdicates at Bernard of Clairvaux's instigation; end of the long schism, and Innocent returns to Rome.

Roger starts prolonged reconquest of rebel Apulia.

1139

ITALY

8 April. Innocent renews Roger of Sicily's excommunication.

30 *April*. Death of Apulian rebel leader, Rainulf of Alife, at Troia; Pope Innocent comes to the aid of rebels and marches into southern Italy.

May. Mount Vesuvius erupts to add to turmoil in southern Italy.

SYRIA

22 *June*. Atabeg Mahmud, ruler of Damascus, murdered in bed by three of his pages; Unur, ex-‘Atabeg’ of Homs, currently in Damascus, seizes control of city in defiance of his overlord Zengi’s claims. Jamal al-Din Mohammed of Baalbek, Mahmud’s half-brother, is summoned to Damascus to rule as Unur’s protégé, and hands over Baalbek to Unur who marries his mother.

Unur sends the historian Usama ibn Munqidh, of the local dynasty of Shaizar, to Jerusalem to discuss alliance.

PALESTINE

Summer. Fulk and his son-in-law Count Thierry/Theobald of Flanders, husband of his daughter by first marriage, raid Gilead and occupy a fortress near Ajlun.

A Moslem raid across the Jordan, north of the Dead Sea, on Judaea leads to their shock defeat of a band of Templar knights sent to intercept them; this shows the need for greater security in ‘Oultrejordan’ and is probably a stimulus for building new castles there.

ITALY/PALESTINE

Papal Bull ‘Omne Datum Optimum’ grants the Templars exemption from all jurisdiction except that of the Pope.

ITALY

22 *July*. Pope Innocent’s army is defeated at battle of the River Garigliano by Roger’s son Roger of Apulia; he has to surrender to Normans and 25 *July* at Mignano confirms the investiture of Roger’s sons with their fiefs of Apulia, Capua etc. and abandons the rebels.

PORTUGAL

26 *July*. Formal creation of the Kingdom as a fully independent entity equal to its progenitor Castile, no longer as just a County – coronation of Count Afonso I, maternal cousin of King Alfonso VII of Castile, as King.

ITALY

Autumn. Trani surrenders to Roger and is reprieved, but its prince, Jacquintus, is executed and other surrendered rebels blinded or imprisoned on pretexts.

SYRIA

Zengi declares war on Unur, encouraged by his wife Zumurrud (rival of Jamal al-Din Mohammed's mother, Unur's new wife) and by Mohammed's brother Bahram Shah; (*late August/early September*) he besieges Baalbek.

10 October. Baalbek falls to Zengi; *21 October* the citadel also surrenders; the Kurdish general Ayyub, father of Saladin (b. 1137?), appointed as the new governor.

December? Zengi advances on Damascus and offers Mohammed the rule of Baalbek or Homs if he will hand the city over; Unur persuades Mohammed to refuse.

1140 SYRIA

Zengi besieges Damascus.

29 March. Death of Jamal al-Din Mohammed of Damascus; Unur proclaims his young son, Mujir ed-Din Abak, as ruler and sends embassy (led by the historian Usama ibn Munqidh) to Jerusalem for aid. He offers 20,000 bezants per month and the return of Banyas; and the council called by Fulk accepts it. Unur sends hostages for the performance of treaty.

April. Fulk and his army march to Tiberias and send scouts ahead; Zengi advances to block his route, and when he does not move Zengi returns to besiege Damascus; Fulk advances on the city and as he links up with Unur's army near Lake Huleh (*early June*) Zengi retires to Baalbek. Zengi's general Ibrahim ibn Turgut leaves the defence of Zengi's Banyas against Unur's men to raid the Lebanese coast around Tyre; he is caught and killed by Prince Raymond of Antioch, on his way home from the Damascus campaign; Fulk and Raymond are joined to besiege Banyas by Unur, and the Papal legate Alberic arrives too; the garrison of Banyas surrenders to Unur and he evacuates them to his lands while the Christians install a garrison under Rainier of Brus.

Autumn? Unur visits Acre to cement his alliance with Jerusalem.

ITALY

Princes Roger and Alfonso restore Sicilian authority in the Abruzzi; Robert of Selby appointed governor of Apulia and Calabria; *August* Roger II issues legal constitution for his vassals, 'Assize of Ariano'.

1141 | BYZANTIUM

Leo, the ex-ruler of Armenian principality, dies as a prisoner in Constantinople; Thoros, eldest son, titular claimant to throne.

? Conrad of Germany sends his chaplain Albert and Count Alexander of Gravina to Constantinople over proposed marriage-alliance with John; Bertha of Sulzbach, Conrad's sister-in-law, proposed as wife for John's fourth son Manuel and accepted, possibly linked to John's concept of Manuel inheriting principality in Cilicia and Antioch so close Western link advisable.

John retakes Sozopolis and the Lake Karalis area from Turks to secure the safety of Constantinople-Attaleia-Cilicia road.

PALESTINE

Papal Legate Alberic attends synod in Jerusalem, and is at the dedication of a new church at the site of the 'Dome of the Rock'.

Egyptian 'hit-and-run' raid from Ascalon on the Plain of Sharon; a small intercepting Christian force is defeated.

(OR 1142) | TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Mohammed the Danishmend; son and successor Dhu'l-Nun fights his uncles Yaghi-Basan Yaqub Arslan of Sebastea and Ayn al-Daula of Melitene; Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium/Konya supports Dhu'l-Nun.

HUNGARY

Death of Béla II of Hungary; regency for son and successor Géza II.

PERSIA

Khitay Tatar nomads defeat Seljuk Sultan Sanjar in Khorasan and end Seljuk power over River Oxus area; probable source of rumours in Europe that Christian Asian ruler 'Prester John' has attacked Moslems in the rear.

1142 | BYZANTIUM

Bertha of Sulzbach arrives in Constantinople to marry Manuel; *Spring* John and his four sons set out for Cilicia, driving out Turkish tribesmen from Phrygia and going on to Attaleia; at the latter Prince Alexius dies suddenly leaving only a daughter, and brother Andronicus becomes John's heir; John sends Andronicus and younger brother Isaac back to Constantinople with Alexius' body, but Andronicus dies too en route – uncertain if his young sons, John and Alexius, or Isaac are now heirs.

John invades Cilicia, announcing he intends to campaign against the Danishmends to north-east; he enters Taurus mountains, then suddenly swings south into Edessan territory and *September* arrives outside Turbessel; Joscelin does homage and hands over daughter Isabella as hostage.

25 *September*. John arrives at Baghras near Antioch, and repeats 1137 demand that Raymond hand over Antioch in return for a new principality carved out of Moslem Syria; Raymond consults vassals who allege he cannot surrender territory as (i) he is only regent for Constance; (ii) feudal law requires their consent and they refuse it.

Raymond's envoy, the Bishop of Jabala, informs John and offers him a State entry into Antioch as suzerain instead of direct rule; John pillages around Antioch and retires to Cilicia for winter. He sends a message to Fulk announcing his intention to come to Jerusalem as a pilgrim and lead a campaign against the local Moslems; Fulk sends Bishop of Bethlehem, the Jerusalem Castellan Rorard, and Abbot Geoffrey of the Temple to John to regret that there are not enough supplies in Palestine for John's large army so he cannot invite him there.

PALESTINE

Foundation of the important fortress of Kerak, overlooking Petra in Oultrejordan, by the latter fief's lord Pagan, the 'Chief Butler' of the Kingdom; designed to control the lands south-east of the Dead Sea and the routes from Arabia to Sinai and Egypt, and the new chief seat of the lords of Oultrejordan.

1143 MOROCCO/SPAIN

27 *January*. Death of the second Almoravid ruler, Abu'l Hasan Ali, aged 58/9; his regime's power is already crumbling at the hands of the Almohads in inland Morocco. Succeeded by his son Tashufin, under whom the dynasty's power continues to collapse.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

John prepares to return to Antioch, but *March* is wounded by an allegedly poisoned arrow while out hunting in Cilician mountains; uncertain if it is accident or a conspiracy. The wound turns septic and he falls seriously ill, but he refuses advice of 'Grand Domestic' Axuch and others to nominate his eldest surviving (third) son Isaac as successor and chooses younger Manuel who he announces to a Council of generals and personally crowns.

8 *April*. Death of John II, aged 55; Manuel succeeds, aged probably 24, and sends Axuch to Constantinople post-haste to get there ahead of news and arrest Isaac to pre-empt coup; Isaac arrested unsuspecting and sent

to Pantocrator monastery, John's brother Isaac and son-in-law 'Caesar' John Roger (a Norman) are arrested too, and imperial treasure distributed to courtiers to win them over.

Manuel marches back to Constantinople, abandoning Syrian campaign.

Basil Xerus sent to Roger II on unsuccessful mission; it appears to be Manuel rather than Roger who backs out of agreement.

Thoros II of Armenia returns to lands after escaping from Manuel's custody, either in Constantinople or with army, and starts to rebuild principality and take Byzantine fortresses.

ITALY

Pope Innocent expelled from Rome by rioting citizens objecting to his leniency towards Tivoli in civic dispute; 24 *September* he dies; 26 *September* Guido of Costello elected Pope Celestine II.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Raymond of Antioch and Joscelin of Edessa march to the Biza'a area, with Raymond annexing territory; Joscelin's unexpected agreement of truce with governor Sawar of Aleppo ends his participation and Raymond is annoyed at his 'desertion'.

Melissende buys the village of Bethany from the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, and founds a convent dedicated to Ss. Lazarus, Mary and Martha; it is endowed with the town of Jericho. As the principal Royal religious foundation it comes under the Queen's personal patronage, and when the first abbess dies within months Melissende appoints her unmarried youngest sister, 24-year-old Jovieta, as Abbess.

7 *November*. The Court, at Acre, goes out for a picnic; Fulk's horse stumbles while pursuing a hare, and he is flung off and the saddle comes loose and hits him on the head; he is carried back to Acre unconscious.

10 *November*. Death of Fulk of Jerusalem at Acre, aged around 53; Queen Melissende and eldest son Baldwin III (aged 13) co-rulers, assisted by Melissende's cousin Constable Manasses of Hierges (from southern Flanders), son of Baldwin II's sister Hodierna of Rethel.

Autumn. Raymond of Antioch defeated invading Byzantine Cilicia by the Contostephanus brothers and Turkish general Bursuq on land and Demetrius Branas with fleet; the Byzantines pursue him as far as the walls of Antioch.

25 *December*. Joint coronation of Melissende and Baldwin III at Jerusalem by Patriarch William.

SPAIN

First grant of lands in Aragon (especially the castles of Monzon, Monjoy, and Barbera) to the Templars, by its Queen Petronilla's consort Count Raymond Berengar IV of Barcelona – a lay associate of the Order since 1131. They also receive a tenth of the rents from reconquered Saragossa and a fifth of all lands and loot recovered from the Moslems.

1144 BYZANTIUM/ARMENIA

Irene, widow of Manuel's late brother Andronicus, arrested in Palace for plotting (with 'Caesar' John Roger's supporters?) and exiled to Princes' Islands, soon allowed to return.

? Thoros the Armenian defeats Manuel's cousin Andronicus, now governor of Cilicia, and retakes Anazarbus, Adana, Tarsus, and Mopsuestia.

ITALY

Celestine II refuses to ratify Treaty of Mignano; Sicilian army besieges Benevento and Pope sends Census Frangipani and Cardinal Octavian to Palermo to negotiate; 8 March Celestine dies and 12 March Gerardo Caccianemaici elected Pope (Lucius II).

June. Roger and Lucius meet at Ceprano but no agreement; Roger' son Prince Alfonso killed during raid in Abruzzi, *October* seven-year truce agreed.

SYRIA

Autumn. Zengi attacks Joscelin of Edessa's ally, Kara Arslan of Diyarbekir; Joscelin comes to his aid and moves to the Euphrates to cut off his supply-route to Aleppo. Zengi evades him and besieges Edessa, but Zengi's ally Yaghi Siyan fails in his orders to hurry to Edessa while Joscelin is absent and surprise it as he gets lost en route in the dark.

28 November. Zengi arrives at Edessa to meet Yagh-Siyan. Joscelin waits at Turbessel for assistance while Bishop Hugh leads the defence, and the Jacobites fail to revolt as Zengi had hoped. Joscelin sends to Jerusalem and Melissende holds a council and sends an army under Manasses, Constable Philip the lord of Nablus, and Elinand (of Bures) lord of Galilee. Raymond refuses to help Joscelin.

24 December. A wall at Edessa near the 'Gate of the Hours' collapses after pounding by Zengi's siege-engines, and the city is stormed; the population are massacred or enslaved and Bishop Hugh is killed trying to calm the panicking populace; the citadel holds out under a Jacobite priest, Barsauma.

26 December. The citadel surrenders, end of Frankish rule east of Euphrates.

Count Raymond of Tripoli gives the crucial fortress of the ‘Krak des Chevaliers’, overlooking the Buqaia-coastal passes, and surrounding forts to the Hospitallers who have more manpower than him to defend the area.

IRAQ

Da’ud the Ortoqid of Amida succeeded by son Qara Arslan.

Sources

1100

Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. i–vi, xii, xiv, xv–xvii; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xxxiii; William of Tyre, book ix, ch. xx.

Death of Godfrey: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xviii–xxi; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xxxvi; Matthew of Edessa, book ii, ch. clxv; William of Tyre, book ix, ch. xvi–xvii, xxiii.

Aftermath: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xxii–xxv, xxvii–xxx; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. vii; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xxxii; William of Tyre, book x, ch. iii–iv.

Daimbert’s arrival and after: Albert of Aix, book x, ch. xxx.

Bohemund’s capture and after: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xxvii–xxviii, xxix–xxxii; Fulcher of Chartres, book i, ch. xxxv; Matthew of Edessa, book clxcvii–cxxxiv; Radulph of Caen, book cxli.

Baldwin in Jerusalem: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xxxvi, xliii–xlv; Fulcher, book ii, ch. iii; William of Tyre, book x, ch. vii.

1101

Crusading expedition to Mersivan: Albert of Aix, book viii, ch. i–xiv; Jonathan Riley-Smith, *The First Crusade*, pp. 120–34.

Nevers/Aquitaine expedition: Albert of Aix, book viii, ch. xxxiv–xlii.

Capture of Caesarea: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. lv–lvi; Fulcher, book ii, ch. i–ix; William of Tyre, book x, ch. xvi.

First battle of Ramleh: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. lxvi–lxx; Fulcher of Chartres, book ii, ch. xi–xv.

1101–4

Palestine events: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. xlv–li, liv–lvi, lviii–lxx; Fulcher, book i, ch. vii, xix; book ii, ch. xxiii, xxiv, xxxi; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 213–16, 221–3, 228–9; Ibn Al-Qalanisi, *Damascus Chronicle*, pp. 50–2, 60–7; Matthew of Edessa, books clxviii, clxxxii, clxxxvi, clxxxix; William of Tyre, book x, ch. xvi, xx–xxi, xxiv, xxvi–xxvii.

1102

Daimbert’s downfall: Albert of Aix, book vii, ch. lxii–lxiii.

Second battle of Ramleh: Albert of Aix, book ix, ch. i–vi; Fulcher, book ii, ch. xv.
Embassy to Alexius: Albert of Aix, book viii, ch. xlv–xlviii

1103–4

Siege of Tripoli: Albert of Aix, book ix, ch. xxvi, xxxii; Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. viii;
William of Tyre, book x, ch. xvii.
Bohemund vs Alexius: Fulcher, book ii, ch. xxvii; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 178–9.

1104

Battle of Harran campaign: Matthew of Edessa, pp. 192–3; Radulph of Caen, ch. cxlviii.
Bohemund leaves for Italy: Anna Comnena, book xi, ch. xii.

1105

Third battle of Ramleh: Albert of Aix, book ix, ch. xlviii–l; Fulcher, book i, ch. xxxiii and
book ii, ch. xxxi.

1105–7

Bohemund in the West: *Gesta Francorum*, ch. lxv; Orderic Vitalis, book xi, ch. xii; William
of Tyre, book xi, ch. i.

1106

Palestine: Albert of Aix, book x, ch. x–xiv.

1106–10

Palestine: Albert of Aix, book ix, ch. xvii–xxiii, xlvii; book x, ch. iv–vii, x–xiv, xxxii (death
of Raymond of Toulouse 1105); xxxiii, xlviii–li; book xi, ch. i–xiii, xv–xviii, xx–xxiv,
xxx–xxxvii.
Fulcher, book ii, ch. xxviii, xli–xliv.
Kemal al-Din, pp. 593–5, 694.
Ibn al-Athir, pp. 225–30, 255–7, 259–61, 265–74.
Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 69–70, 73, 75, 83–90, 99–104.
Matthew of Edessa, books clxxxix, cxciv, cxcvi, cciv.
Michael the Syrian, book iii, pp. 192–6.
Radulph of Caen, book cliv.
William of Tyre, book x, ch. xxiii; book xi, ch. ii, vii, xiv.

1107

Bohemund invades the Byzantine Empire: Anna Comnena, book xii ch. i–iv (tr. Sewter,
pp. 369–72); book xiii, ch. ii–xi (campaign) (tr. Sewter pp. 398–423); book xiii ch. xi–xiii
(tr. Sewter, pp. 424–34) (Treaty of Devol); Orderic Vitalis, book xi, ch. iv; William of
Tyre, book xi, ch. i.
Seljuks and Iraq, battle of River Khabur: Matthew of Edessa, book cxcvi.

1107–8

Iraq: Edessa vs Moslems. Albert of Aix, book x, ch. xxxvii; Fulcher, book ii, ch. xxviii; Matthew of Edessa, book cxcix, p. 266; Michael the Syrian, book iii, pp. 195–6.

1108

Siege of Sidon: Albert of Aix, book x, ch. lxviii–li.

1108–9

Tancred vs Byzantine Empire: Anna Comnena, book xii, ch. ii; William of Tyre, book x, ch. xxiii.

1109

Fall of Tripoli: Albert of Aix, book xi, ch. xiii; Fulcher, book ii, ch. xli.

1110

Fall of Beirut: Albert of Aix, book x (dates it as 27 May); Fulcher, book ii, ch. xlii (dates it as 13 May).

Fall of Sidon: Albert of Aix, book xi, ch. xxvi, xxx–xxxiv; Fulcher, book ii, ch. xlv; William of Tyre, book xi, ch. xiv.

1110–11

Siege of Tyre: Albert of Aix, book xiii, ch. iii–vii.

1111

Siege of Ascalon: Albert of Aix, book xi, ch. xxxvi–xxxvii.

1110–1115

Albert of Aix, book x, ch. xxviii–xxix; book xi, ch. iii–vii; book xii, ch. xiii–xiv, xxi–xxii, xxxviii–xlvi.

Anna Comnena, book xiv, ch. i–ii, v–vi; book xv, ch i– vi.

Fulcher, book ii, ch. xlv, xlvii, li, liv.

Kemal al-Din, pp. 599–606.

Ibn al-Athir, pp. 229–30, 257, 279–80, 282, 292–8.

Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 72–5, 81–2, 112–19, 127, 131–6, 145–9.

Matthew of Edessa, books clxxxvii, ccvi, ccviii, ccix, ccx, ccxii–ccxiv.

Usama ibn Munquidh, ed. P Hitti, pp. 94–6, 102–6, 146, 153.

Walter the Chancellor, book i, ch. vi–vii.

1116–1120

Palestine: Albert of Aix, book xii, ch. xxiv–xxix; Fulcher, book ii, ch. lix, lxii–lxiv. Ibn al-Athir, pp. 292–3, 308–11.

Ibn Al-Qalanisi, pp. 156–7.

Kemal al-Din, pp. 610–15.

Matthew of Edessa, books ccxii, ccxvi–xxviii.

Michael the Syrian, book iii, pp. 193–4, 206–10, 216–17.

Death of Baldwin I, accession of Baldwin II: Albert of Aix, book xii, ch. xxx; Fulcher, book iii, ch. i–iii; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 314–23, 325–6. Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 157–70. Kemal al-Din, pp. 615–16. Walter the Chancellor, book ii, ch. i.; William of Tyre, book xii, ch. viii.

Death of Alexius I, accession of John II: Anna Comnena, book xv, ch. xi; Zonaras, book iii; also Chalandon, Alexis I Comnene, pp. 273–6 and Les Comnènes, pp. 1–11, 19.

Battle of the ‘Field of Blood’: Fulcher, book iii, ch. iii; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 159–61; Kemal al-Din, pp. 616–18; Matthew of Edessa, book ccxxvi; Michael the Syrian, book iii (p. 204); Walter the Chancellor, book ii ch. ii–vi; William of Tyre, book xii, ch. ix–x; Usama pp. 148–9.

1119–1120

Aftermath of battle: Abu’l Feda, pp. 15–16; Fulcher, book iii, ch. xi, xvi–xx, xxii–xxvi, xxx–xxxiv, xxxvi–xxxix; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 330–2, 349–50, 356–8; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 128–30, 142, 164–73; Kemal al-Din, pp. 628–34; Matthew of Edessa, books ccxi, ccxli, ccxlv, ccxlv.; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccxii, ccxx–ccxvii, ccxxxvii, ccxxxix, ccxliii; Orderic Vitalis, book xi, ch. xxvi; Usama, pp. 63, 76, 130, 133, 150.

Georgia: Georgian Chronicle, pp. 209–15.

Fall of Tyre: Ibn al-Athir, p. 356: dates it at 9 July, other sources say 7 July.

1126–30

Fulcher, book iii, ch. xlii–xliv, li, lii, lv–lxi (ends 1127); Kemal al-Din, pp. 651–4, 658–61, 665; Ibn al-Athir pp. 317–18, 382–6, 468; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 181–202, 574–8; Kemal al-Din, pp. 651–661; Matthew of Edessa, books ccxlvii, cclii; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccxxi–ccxxx; Orderic Vitalis, book xi, ch. x; Usama, pp. 133, 150; William of Tyre, book xiii, ch. xi, xvii–xvii; book xiv, ch. ii.

Also: Chalandon, *Les Comnènes*, pp. 35–48, 77–91.

1131–5

Abu’l Feda, pp. 21–3; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 389–90, 398–405; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs of Mosul’, pp. 88–91; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 125, 207–8, 211–36; Kemal al-Din, pp. 664–670; Michael the Syrian, book iii, p. 233; Orderic Vitalis, book xii, ch. xxiii; William of Tyre, book xiii, ch. xxviii (1131, death of Baldwin II), book xiv, ch. ii–iii (accession of Fulk and Melissende), iv–viii, xv–xvii.

1136–40

Gregory the Priest, Continuation of Matthew of Edessa’s Chronicle, in *RHC Arm*, volume i: p. 152; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 419–28; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 239–56, 260; Kemal al-Din, pp. 672–85; Matthew of Edessa, book ccliii; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccxxx–xxxiii, ccxlv, ccxlviii; Orderic Vitalis, book xiii, ch. xxxiv; Usama, pp. 93–4, 124, 143–4, 166–9, 226; William of Tyre, book xiv, ch. ix, xx, xxi, xxiii (Pons killed 1137), xxv–xxix, xxx (Byzantines at Antioch 1137); book xv, ch. i–ii (1138 Byzantines in Syria), iii–xi, xxiv–xxv.

Byzantine sources: John Cinnamus, *Epitome Historiarum*, in CSHB (Bonn 1836), pp. 16–17 (Constance marries Raymond 1136), 18–20 (Syrian expeditions 1137–8); Nicetas Choniates, *Historia*, CSHB edition (Bonn 1835), pp. 29–37 (1137 Syrian expedition), 37–41 (1138 Syrian expedition), 44–9 (1139–40 events).

Also: Chalandon, *Les Comnenes*, pp. 59–63, 70–1, 122–33, 158–61; Paul Magdalino, *The Empire of Manuel I Komnenos 1143–1180* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1993), pp. 37–8.

1140–4

Ibn al-Athir, pp. 443–6 (fall of Edessa 1144); Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 264, 266–8 (fall of Edessa 1144); Matthew of Edessa: books cclv, cclvii (fall of Edessa 1144); William of Tyre: book xv, ch. xix–xx, xxi (John Comnenus dies 1143), xxvi (Bethany convent foundation and death of King Fulk 1143), book xvi, ch. iii–iv (accession of Baldwin III and Melissende), iv (1144).

Byzantine Empire/Syria: Cinnamus, pp. 23–4 (1142), 26–9 (1143), 29–30 (accession of Manuel I), 33–4 (1143–4); Nicetas Choniates, 1835 edition: pp. 23–4, 52–64; ed. by Margouliath (1984), pp. 39–43.

Also: Chalandon, *Les Comnenes*, pp. 161–2, 171–2; Magdalino, pp. 39–41.

4 The Second Crusade 1145–1149

1145 | SYRIA

January. Fall of Saruj, main surviving fortress of Edessa east of the Euphrates; Zengi besieges Birejik but has to withdraw as Melissende's army approaches. He returns to Mosul on word of a plot by his titular sovereign, the young Seljuk prince Alp Arslan, who has executed his general Shajar. Zengi purges his opponents and deposes Alp Arslan, assuming full power and being accepted as ruler by the Caliph due to the boost in his reputation from the conquest of Edessa

ITALY

15 February. Rebels at Rome proclaim a Commune, led by late anti-Pope Anacletus' brother in defiance of Lucius; Lucius leads his forces in assault on rebels on Capitol but is mortally wounded; Bernado Pignateli elected (Eugenius III) and as rebels seize Rome is consecrated at Farfa and resides at Viterbo.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

Raymond of Antioch arrives to beg for aid and Manuel insists that he kneel at John II's tomb in contrition for his trickery at Antioch.

Joscelin holds out west of the Euphrates, with Turbessel as his new capital.

Manuel sends envoys to Emperor Conrad, demanding better terms before he marries Bertha of Sulzbach;? Conrad proposes to give Manuel back part of ex-Byzantine Apulia when he evicts Roger of Sicily.

MOROCCO/SPAIN

23 March. Death of Tashufin, the third Almoravid ruler, after a two-year reign; succeeded by his brother Ibrahim. He dies in June, as the dynasty's power in both continents collapses in chaos; the Almohads who already rule much of Morocco now extend their power to southern Spain too and Caliph Abd-al-Mumin becomes the ruler of 'Al-Andalus'. The last Almoravid ruler, Ishaq, holds out at Marrakesh.

ITALY

August? Bishop Hugh of Jabala arrives from Jerusalem at Viterbo to appeal to Pope Eugenius for aid; a Nestorian bishop arriving with his embassy brings distorted rumours of a Christian sovereign's victory over Moslems in Transoxiana that add to the 'Prester John' legend and the Pope considers using this unexpected ally against the Moslems; an Armenian 'Eastern rite' episcopal delegation from Cilicia also arrives seeking aid against Orthodox oppression by the Byzantine government and Church. This is interpreted by some (e.g. the historian Otto of Freising) as involving union of the Armenian Church with the Catholic Church under Papal suzerainty.

Bishop Hugh goes on to France and Germany to appeal for aid; *1 December* Eugenius writes to Louis VII of France asking him to lead a Crusade and go to the aid of the states of Outremer and his vassals to join him.

FRANCE

Louis holds his Christmas court at Bourges, and arranges a large attendance of his vassals so he can pressurise them to join him on Crusade – probably by arrangement with Pope Eugenius. There is not much enthusiasm.

1146 BYZANTIUM

January. Manuel finally marries Bertha of Sulzbach.

Seljuks raid again and Manuel gathers troops at Lopadium and heads for Seljuk heartland; he retakes and sacks Turkish-held Philomelium as garrison flees; defeats Turkish army near Hadrianopolis, and reaches Mas'ud's capital, Iconium, to start siege. Iconium holds out; his communications too stretched, Manuel retires into Byzantine territory; negotiations opened for peace.

FRANCE

Early. As his vassals are not enthusiastic for a Crusade, Louis summons an Easter meeting at Vézelay and writes to the Pope promising that he will try to rally support; Louis proposes that the task of preaching the Crusade be given to the most renowned orator in the Church, Abbot (St.) Bernard of Clairvaux (the mastermind behind the expansion of the Cistercian Order), and Bernard agrees to help.

31 March. Assembly of Louis VII, King of France, and his vassals in a field near the Cathedral at Vézelay, the shrine of St. Mary Magdalene; they are harangued in an open-air sermon by (St.) Bernard into mounting a new Crusade; the Second Crusade is agreed and Louis and his wife,

Duchess Eleanor of Aquitaine, take the Cross; those who join include Counts Thierry (Theobald) of Flanders, William of Nevers, Archimbald of Bourbon, and Alfonso-Jordan of Toulouse. Manuel is informed of Crusaders' plans to cross his territory by French envoys during the Iconium campaign.

Bernard goes on to preach in Flanders and Lorraine, and the archbishop of Cologne invites him to the Rhineland.

SYRIA

March. Zengi returns to Aleppo to plan new war against Antioch; he hears that his governor Kuchuk Ali has suppressed an Armenian plot in Edessa and orders some of the Armenian population there to be expelled; he replaces them with Jews who hate the persecuting Crusaders.

ITALY

Summer. Roger of Sicily's fleet takes Tripoli on north African coast as new base to prevent piracy and help dominate central Mediterranean.

PORTUGAL

Probable date of the foundation of the knightly 'Order of Aviz' (not called that until the capture of Aviz in the 1160s, when their headquarters was transferred there), in imitation of the Knights Templar who already have branches in the kingdom. They lead the 'Reconquista', and adopt the religious rule of St. Benedict.

FRANCE/FLANDERS

August. St. Bernard commences preaching for the Crusade at Ghent; (*early October*) on to Brabant and Liege.

GERMANY

Autumn. St. Bernard launches a preaching-tour to collect volunteers for the Crusade; Emperor-designate Conrad, who has visited the Holy Land in 1124, meets him at Frankfurt-am-Main (second week of November) but is not enthusiastic for immediate expedition. The fanatic monk Rudolf the Cistercian starts an anti-Jewish pogrom in the Rhineland, centred in the cities in early *Autumn*, and the Archbishops of Cologne and Mainz try to halt the massacres. As the senior Cistercian abbot, Bernard has the authority to order Rudolf back to his monastery; he confronts him at Mainz and sends him home.

Disappointed with Conrad, Bernard accepts the local bishops' pleas not to go back to France and moves on via Swabia to Lake Constance.

SYRIA

14 September. Zengi assassinated by a eunuch slave he has reproved for drinking wine, during his siege of the minor east Syrian town of Qalat Jabar whose ruler has refused homage; he is succeeded by quarrelling sons, Nur-ed-Din of Aleppo and Saif-ed-Din of Mosul; the latter deserts the army to hurry to Mosul and secure the city. Nur-ed-Din is left to organise the funeral and be proclaimed in Aleppo by the governor, the Kurdish general Shirkuh (uncle of Saladin). Unur of Damascus and the Ortoqids of Mardin and Mayyafariqin revolt, and Unur forces Yaghi-Siyan of Hama to accept his suzerainty.

Raymond of Antioch raids to the walls of Aleppo; *27 October* Joscelin enters Edessa, joined by Baldwin of Marash, but cannot storm citadel and (*2 November*) has to retreat as Nur-ed-Din arrives to camp outside the town. Joscelin's men sneak out of Edessa under cover of darkness;

3 November. Nur-ed-Din catches him up, Joscelin defeats the initial assault but then launches a rash charge, and in the resulting rout Baldwin of Marash is killed. Joscelin escapes wounded to Samosata, but the Christian refugees with his army are rounded up and massacred. Nur-ed-Din expels the Christian population of Edessa and neighbouring area, ending c. 800 years of Edessa as Christian bastion.

GERMANY

December. Conrad receives Manuel's ambassadors at Speyer; *25 December* Bernard preaches before the King again. *27 December* Conrad announces imminent departure on Crusade after pressure from Bernard.

1147 FRANCE

St. Bernard returns from Germany to Clairvaux after his preaching tour, *16 February.* Louis VII holds a council at Etampes to decide on his route to the Holy Land, and decides to travel by land via Constantinople. St. Bernard addresses the first meeting.

ITALY

Pope Eugenius sets out for France to help Bernard organise and inspire the Crusade, but is annoyed at news that the Abbot has persuaded Conrad to go too as he would prefer an undivided command – by Louis – and wants Conrad to come to Italy and help him against the Romans and King Roger.

GERMANY

March. The council called at Frankfurt to organise the Crusade launches another Crusade in the form of an expedition for the forced conversion

of the Slavs east of the Oder; Bernard is present and approves and Cardinal Theodwin, Bishop of Santa Rufina (who crowned Conrad in 1138), comes as Papal Legate.

MOROCCO/SPAIN

25 March. Killing of Ishaq, last Almoravid ruler, based at Marrakesh, in an attack on the city by Abd-al-Mumin's Almohad tribal army which has been overrunning the Atlas mountains; the city becomes the new capital of their successors the Almohads under Abd-al-Mumin as Caliph. The takeover of 'Al-Andalus' in Spain proceeds later that year, and most of the Almoravid princes ruling as governors there are killed; Mohammed ibn Ghaniya escapes to the Balearic Islands and sets up an emirate there.

Conquest of the castle of Calatrava (la Vieja), north-east of Cordoba, from the Moslems by Alfonso VII of Castile; handed to the Templars, but they prove too preoccupied elsewhere to be reliable custodians as reconquest threatens.

SYRIA

Early. Altuntash, the Armenian emir of Bosra and Salkhad in the Hauran, revolts against Unur of Damascus and seeks help from Jerusalem; he offers the two towns to the Christians in return for a principality in the rest of the Hauran, and as there is a large local Jacobite Christian population the council called at Tiberias considers the plan feasible. The barons inform their technical ally Unur that they are restoring Altuntash, and Unur complains that they are violating their own feudal laws by assisting an ally's rebel vassal. Queen Melissende sends her envoy Bernard Vacher to reiterate her support for Altuntash but promise to pay for any damage done to Unur's territory as the army crosses his lands, but Vacher is convinced by Unur to oppose the expedition and on his return he talks King Baldwin round. Baldwin convinces the next council to call off the expedition; the soldiers are angrily disappointed and force them to agree to try to take Bosra. *May* they attack the Deraa area, south-east of the Sea of Galilee, en route to Bosra.

FRANCE

30 March. The Pope meets Louis at Dijon, and proceeds to (6 *April*) Clairvaux (where he was once a monk) to meet Bernard. He refuses Conrad's invitation to join him at Strasbourg on 18 *April* as he intends to be in Paris for Easter (20 *April*) at St. Denis.

During the Papal visit to Paris, Abbot Peter 'the Venerable' of Cluny delivers the first extant Crusading sermon, 'De Laude Dominici Sepulchri'.

11 April. The Papal Bull ‘Divina dispensatione’ II approves of the campaign against the Wends in the Baltic as deserving full Crusading privileges for the participants.

27 April. The Pope attends the French Templars’ meeting at their headquarters outside Paris and authorises their Paris treasurer, Brother Aymar, to take charge of the income from a tax on 1/20th of all Church goods to pay for the Crusade.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Unur sends for help to Nur-ed-Din, who agrees to marry his daughter and in return has Hama returned; *late May* the army of Jerusalem arrives at Deraa, heading for Bosra, while Unur is forcing Altuntash’s men at Salkhad to surrender. Unur joins Nur-ed-Din and together they force Altuntash’s wife to surrender Bosra to them; the news reaches the Christians as they reach Bosra and they decide to withdraw as the joint Moslem army is too large to tackle. The army of Jerusalem struggles back to the Jordan but is not attacked by Unur who has no desire to see his usual ally weakened and Nur-ed-Din triumphant and turning on him. Once the Christians have left, Nur-ed-Din overruns the rest of the Hauran; Altuntash surrenders to Unur but is blinded.

ENGLAND/PORTUGAL

23 May. A fleet of English and Flemish ships sails from Dartmouth down the Channel and across the stormy Bay of Biscay to Portugal, with a Flemish/Rhineland contingent having arrived in *April*; Hervey de Glanville commands the Norfolk and Suffolk contingent, Andrew the Londoners, and Simon of Dover the Kent troops. Count Arnold of Aerschot, nephew of Godfrey of Bouillon, brings the Flemish contingent and Christian of Gistel the Frenchmen.

16 June. They are met by Bishop Peter at Oporto, requesting help to King Afonso in taking the local Moslem capital, Lisbon, and (sermon, *17 June*) arguing that war against any Moslems is a Crusade. The English hesitate, but their leader Hervey Glanville talks them round; they sail on to the Tagus estuary and (*28 June*) join in the Portuguese attack on Lisbon. The formal siege is opened on *1 July*. The English and Normans camp on the east bank of the Tagus, outside the west walls of the city; King Afonso is to the north and the Flemings/Germans are to the east.

FRANCE

8 June. Louis VII and his wife Eleanor of Aquitaine, with leading nobles, attend a service at the Abbey of St. Denis outside Paris at the start of their Crusade. Louis takes up the Oriflamme banner and commends his kingdom to his principal adviser, Abbot Suger.

11 June. The French royal party leaves St. Denis, on the patron saint's feast-day; Pope Eugenius sees them off.

GERMANY/HUNGARY

Louis and Conrad meet up at Metz; the two armies then prepare to march on different routes to Hungary, the French via Ratisbon.

The German army sets out first as it is nearer to the Danube; it is estimated by German and Byzantine forces to number c. 90,000 with non-combatants, but is probably about a third of that size. The French army is substantially smaller.

Conrad, Vladislav of Bohemia. King Boleslav of Poland, Frederick Duke of Swabia (Conrad's nephew), the Bishops of Metz and Toul with the Lorrainers, and others arrive in Hungary and receive supplies from King Géza; Manuel's envoy Demetrius Macrembolites meets Conrad who agrees to take oath never to do anything against Manuel's interests in return for aid.

29 June. Louis VII's army arrives at Worms, and Bishop Alvisius of Alsace and Abbot Leo of St. Bertin (Flanders) go to Ratisbon to check on the shipping which was promised by Conrad to take the army along the Danube. Bishop Arnold of Lisieux brings the Anglo-Norman contingent to join the French army.

Louis heads for Ratisbon where the French embark on ships to sail down the Danube; he meets Macrembolites and swears to restore all taken imperial territory and protect Manuel's interests.

June. Albert 'the Bear', Margrave of Brandenburg, and Conrad's rival Duke Henry 'the Lion' of Saxony lead expedition to attack the pagan Wends east of the River Oder, with Crusading privileges granted by the Pope. The assembly-date is *28 June*. Alarmed at the participation of his predatory neighbour Count Adolf of Holstein in the Crusade and fearing attack, the pagan 'Obodrite' tribal confederacy's leader Nikol attacks and takes the fortress of Dobin in a pre-emptive strike. The main army under Albert moves on and besieges Dobin and a Danish fleet sent by King Cnut V arrives to help them, but the fortress holds out aided by its marshy surroundings. The Danes are defeated by Slav ships sent from Rugen and leave. Nikol negotiates with the Saxons and agrees that he and his garrison there will be baptised; Duke Henry is satisfied and agrees peace with the Obrodites. Meanwhile, the army led by various German bishops has been besieging Demm unsuccessfully, but the new Margrave of the Northern Mark, Albert 'the Bear', regains Havelberg (lost in the 10th century) and duly negotiates his adoption as heir by the local Slav lord of Brandenburg, to which he will succeed in *1150*. The main force of Crusaders moves on to attack Stettin, and ravages in Pomerania.

SPAIN

July. Alfonso VII of Castile/Leon, aided by north Italian Crusaders from Genoa (63 galleys) who he has had to promise a share of the loot and quarters in captured towns, fails in his siege of Andujar, but takes Baeza.

BYZANTIUM

Late July. Conrad's army crosses Danube at Branicevo; they receive supplies from Michael Branas at Naissus, and receive official welcome from governor Michael Palaeologus at Serdica/Sofia; looting of countryside in Maritsa valley, and at Philippopolis Cumans in Conrad's army loot suburbs but are punished; near Adrianople peasants kill a sick baron, Frederick of Swabia burns monastery in reprisal, and Byzantines kill stragglers; Byzantine envoy Prosuch restores peace but Conrad refuses request to march to Hellespont and avoid Constantinople.

SPAIN

August. The Genoese join in the Castilian attack on the town of Almeria, in return for a promise of a third of the town once captured; King Garcia Ramirez of Navarre, Count Raymond Berengar of Barcelona, and Count William of Montpellier (France) also arrive with troops. Many of the Spanish Crusaders go home at the expiry of their contracted term of service while the siege is underway, but Almeria finally falls to an attack on *17 October*. The citadel surrenders next day, and the Genoese get a quarter in the city. The siege is counted by the Church as a Crusade.

BYZANTIUM

Louis' army takes fifteen days to cross Hungary (from c. *12 August?*).

Late August. Louis VII's army at Branicevo; they march on to Adrianople, and Louis also refuses to go to Anatolia via Hellespont and follows Conrad; *10 September* Conrad reaches Constantinople and is put up in Philopation palace outside walls, later transferred to Picidium over Golden Horn after vandalism; Byzantines and Germans skirmish in suburbs, but Bertha negotiates between Manuel and Conrad and the latter transfers army to Chalcedon; *4 October* Louis arrives at capital; he is put up at Philopation and *5 October* entertained by Manuel at Blachernae. The royal couple are present at a service at Hagia Sophia and at racing in the Hippodrome.

Roger of Sicily, intent on attacking Byzantium, unsuccessfully tries to win Louis over through envoys; *11 October* the French army goes on southwards towards the Ionian coast, avoiding the inland route (where Conrad's Germans will have taken the supplies), and after a five-day wait

for the Count of Maurienne and the Marquis of Montferrat to arrive from the west (16 *October*) Louis' royal party follows them to Chalcedon. There is a dispute over a Frenchman being 'cheated' over bought food, and Manuel cuts off supplies until Louis promises to restore all retaken Imperial lands to him.

26 *October*. After an eclipse, the French army leaves Chalcedon; Louis, waiting for news of Conrad's progress, consults Manuel who tells him he has heard that Conrad has routed the Turks inland. Relieved, Louis sets out to rendezvous with his army at Nicaea.

PORTUGAL

16 *October*. Around 200 feet of the eastern wall of Lisbon collapses as a mine underneath it is set on fire and the wooden supports burn through.

20–21 *October*. Crucial battle outside Lisbon, as a siege-tower is wheeled up to the south-western corner of the city walls and suddenly manoeuvred round from the tower adjacent to it to face a nearby gate. The defenders sally to try to destroy it, and fierce fighting follows but the Lotharingians hold out as most attackers flee. Reinforcements arrive to save the tower, and the city authorities open negotiations to avert a sack. Surrender of Lisbon to the Portuguese King, to avert a massacre; the garrison are promised their lives in return for surrender and the King promises safety for property too but the angry non-Portuguese troops demand that the city be looted to pay them for their help. The King changes his terms so only the chief citizens keep their property, but the Flemings want it all and (22 *October*) try to kidnap the hostages which the citizens have given King Afonso. The King is asked to stop an internecine clash between his men and the other Crusaders, and it is agreed that 140 Anglo-Normans and 160 Flemings/Rhinelanders will be allowed into the citadel under a truce at the surrender and the citizens will then bring their property up there for it to be divided up. The army can then check the rest of the city for any remaining loot. This is done, but the Crusaders (mostly the Flemings) get out of control and start to pillage houses and many people are massacred.

25 *October*. The surviving citizens start to evacuate city. 1 *November* the chief mosque is re-dedicated as cathedral. Some of the Crusaders go on to Palestine, and others stay to take up local lands.

SYRIA

Autumn. Fall of Artah and other outlying fortresses of Antioch to Nur-ed-Din. The latter now emerges as the strongest foe of the Christians, supported by his brothers Saif-ed-Din of Mosul and Nasr-ed-Din of Harran, and Prince Raymond accordingly seeks to turn the Crusade against him.

BYZANTIUM

Roger of Sicily's fleet attacks Corfu and takes the eponymous capital; admiral George of Antioch sails into the Gulf of Corinth and sends men overland to Thebes to carry off silk-weavers and deport them to Roger's capital; he raids round Peloponnesse to Corinth, which is sacked, and Athens, and after Crusaders' departure from capital they sail into Propontis; a Sicilian ship lands raiders to scale Manuel's palace walls and loot fruit from his gardens.

15 October. Conrad sets out from Nicaea onto the Anatolian plateau; his army is ambushed by Turks on the river Bathys near Dorylaeum and flees, and Conrad retires to Nicaea; *early November(?)* Louis arrives at Nicaea, and is startled to hear from retreating Germans of their defeat. Conrad joins his army a couple of days later to confirm the news and show his head-wound, and Louis blames Manuel for tricking him that the route was safe and not supplying help. Much of Conrad's force returns to capital; Louis and Conrad march south to the coast, avoiding the Turks, to Adramyttium and Pergamum; at Ephesus Conrad falls ill and returns to Constantinople, where Manuel acts as his doctor and persuades Conrad's brother Henry, Duke of Austria, to marry his niece Theodora.

Count Guy of Ponthieu, one of the French leaders, dies at Ephesus.

Louis ignores warnings of Turks waiting inland and marches up Maeander valley to spend Christmas at Decervium. After a morale-boosting victory in a skirmish with the Turks on *24 December*, Christmas Day is ruined by a storm flooding the camp.

c. 28 December. The French set out again.

1148 BYZANTIUM

1 January. Louis, taking the inland road to Attaleia, reaches Pisidian Antioch; Turks attack French on bridge and then retreat to Byzantine fortress; this is seen by the French as evidence of treachery by Manuel.

3/4 January. Louis enters evacuated Laodicea; the French are harassed by storms, snow, and Turks on the road and Louis blames Manuel as it is within imperial territory; during the march across Mount Cadmon the advance-guard under Geoffey of Rancon (from Maurienne in Aquitaine so a vassal of Eleanor), sent ahead to set up camp at the summit of a pass, disobeys Louis' orders to keep in close contact and stay at the summit and hurries on downhill (to a better camp-site?). The Turks attack the main army; many people are killed, the baggage-train is looted, and Louis loses his horse and has to scramble up a rock and fight off attackers. The King and the survivors are collected when Geoffrey arrives back a few hours later to see what is delaying the main army, and Louis blames him.

20 *January*. Louis reaches Attaleia to be received by governor, Landulph the Italian, but not much supplies and not enough ships for all army; the French are told that each passenger will have to pay four silver marks for a place on a ship and make accusations of extortion. While they are haggling over the price and waiting to embark storms flood the camp, and the Turks raid the French camp; it is noticed that the town's garrison do not come out to help. Louis leaves for Syria by sea, and Counts Archimbald of Bourbon and Thierry/Theobald of Flanders camp with the rest of army outside city until (next day) they are driven inside by Turks' raids. The two leaders sail with the cavalry when ships are ready, but most of the infantry and civilians have to straggle along coast to safety of Cilicia.

Up to 3,000 of this land-army give up and agree to convert to Islam when the Turks confront them and offer food for conversion.

March. Byzantine ships take Conrad to Palestine; 19 *March* Louis arrives at St. Symeon, port of Antioch to be greeted by Patriarch Aimery and a 'Te Deum'. The French infantry arrive a few weeks later, reduced by about half by losses to famine, weather, and Turks.

(The 'official' account of the French journey to the Holy Land is written up by Louis' secretary and companion Odo of Deuil, and blames the treacherous Byzantines for the difficulties en route; it halts at this point, probably on Louis' orders to avoid having to refer to the rumours about Queen Eleanor and Prince Raymond.)

Prince Raymond welcomes Louis and Eleanor to Antioch, and urges an attack on Aleppo to destroy the principal local threat, Nur-ed-Din; Louis prefers to go on to Jerusalem as he has vowed. Joscelin wants him to retake Edessa.

March. Manuel sends fleet against the Silicians on Corfu, and calls on Venetians for help; Stephen Contostephanus commands fleet and 'Grand Domestic' John Axuch (son of Axuch) leads army along Via Egnatia.

28 *March*. Late at night Eleanor is collected forcibly from the palace by her husband's guards and bundled into a litter, allegedly on the advice of Louis' eunuch treasurer Thierry Galan to teach her obedience. Once she is in the camp the waiting French army leaves for Palestine.

April. After Conrad's arrival at Acre by sea, the Patriarch is sent by the 'High Court' of Jerusalem to urge Louis to join him. He agrees, allegedly worried at the attention that his wife and her uncle, Prince Raymond of Antioch, are showing to each other. Eleanor backs an attack on Edessa, and when that is vetoed she prefers to stay at Antioch and apparently raises the issue of whether she and Louis are illegally married as they are fourth cousins.

ITALY

Early Summer. Doge Peter Polani of Venice dies en route to Corfu with fleet; succeeded by Dominico Morosini.

2 *May.* Death of Roger II's eldest son, duke Roger of Apulia; heirship and title to brother William.

SYRIA

May. Louis and his army arrive at Acre, and go on to Jerusalem; Prince Raymond and Joscelin do not accompany them, and Raymond of Tripoli is absent due to the sudden death of his cousin, the Crusader Alfonso-Jordan of Toulouse at Caesarea as their joint party was en route to Jerusalem. As Alfonso-Jordan (born near Tripoli as son of its first ruler Raymond I) has a claim to Tripoli his men, led by his son Bertrand, accuse Raymond of poisoning him and he leaves the expedition. Louis carries out his vow of pilgrimage to the Holy Sepulchre before discussing any warfare, and lays the French Oriflamme banner on the altar.

Conrad apparently agrees privately with Baldwin and the Templars that the Crusade should attack Damascus ahead of the official council-of-war; this abandons his earlier idea of retaking Edessa. It is probably stimulated by the offers from Unur's governor of the 'Hauran' to defect to the Christians and hand over Salkhad.

24 *June.* A council of the Crusader leaders is held at Palmares near Acre, with Queen Melissende and King Baldwin presiding; they decide to attack Damascus although Emir Unur is an ally of Jerusalem, partly due to its role in the Bible implying greater Christian right to it and partly due to local barons coveting its lands.

SPAIN

29 *June.* Opening of the siege of Tortosa, by a joint Genoese/Barcelona expedition, aided by William of Montpellier and the counts of Urgel and Toulouse, which sails to the mouth of the River Ebro to land and open attack. The Archbishop of Tarragona is the Church representative.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Mid-July. The army crosses Galilee to Banyas, and advances on Damascus; 24 *July* it encamps outside Damascus, at the village of Minna, as Unur sends to Nur-ed-Din for help. The Damascene army is driven back into the city and the local orchards are cleared of skirmishers, and trees are cut down for use in the siege. Apparently the Crusaders are confident that attack from the west will only need around fifteen days to drive the city to surrender, and have not brought any siege-engines.

Conrad leads an attack on the suburb of Radwa, close to the walls, and the citizens panic and barricade the streets ready for an assault.

25 July. Unur's reinforcements from his outlying fiefs arrive through the north gate, and rally the defence. He leads a counter-attack to drive the Christians back into shelter away from the walls.

27 July. With daily attacks on the camp and with guerrillas infiltrating the orchards and ambushing their men, the Crusaders move to the east side of the city where there is no cover. (This is not mentioned by all historians of the Crusade.) There is no water either, and the east walls are too strong to storm. The defenders reoccupy the abandoned orchards.

The attackers become demoralised, and their leaders quarrel over who is to have Damascus – the local barons and Queen Melissende have agreed on Guy of Brisebarre, lord of Beirut, but the Crusader Count Thierry of Flanders wants it as suitable for his elevated rank. Conrad, Louis, and Baldwin support him, and it is rumoured that angry Palestinian barons are in touch with Unur to thwart siege (and advised the *27 July* move to a poor position) so Thierry will not have the city.

Nur-ed-Din reaches Homs en route to Damascus, but tells Unur's envoys that he must have right to station troops in the city in return for aid.

28 July. The Christian leaders agree to abandon the siege, on the advice of the local barons who the zealous Crusader visitors think are cowards or traitors. Conrad and Louis are persuaded to retire, and the army moves back to the Sea of Galilee; Unur's Turcoman cavalry harasses them en route and many of the Crusaders are furious with the local barons for 'deserting' them. The latter are accused of being bribed by Unur.

8 September. Conrad leaves Acre for Thessalonica, to rendezvous with Manuel after his Cuman campaign. Louis stays on, intending to celebrate Easter in Jerusalem, while his brother the Count of Dreux leads the main army home by sea.

BYZANTIUM

Contostephanus killed during Byzantine-Venetian siege of Corfu by a rock hurled down from the hilltop citadel; Manuel winters at Thessalonica with Conrad, and Henry and Theodora married there.

SPAIN

30 December. Surrender of Tortosa to the Genoese/Barcelona expedition. The Genoese get a third of the city, Barcelona two-thirds.

1149 | BYZANTIUM/ITALY

February. Conrad leaves for Germany; Manuel goes on to join the siege of Corfu.

Sicilian garrison of Corfu runs out of supplies and negotiate their safe passage home; Manuel reoccupies Corfu and plans to invade Apulia to punish Roger II, sending 'Grand Domestic' John Axuch with army to Avlona ready to cross to Ancona.

June? Louis and Queen Eleanor are transported back to West by Sicilian squadron, each in a separate ship. They encounter a Byzantine fleet off the Peloponnese; the ship carrying Eleanor and baggage is temporarily detained, though Louis' ship hoists French flag and is not molested in the skirmish; Louis blames Manuel again. One of his ships is looted and it takes months to persuade Manuel to return the contents. Eleanor's ship is separated from Louis' in storm and does not join him in Calabria for around two months, possibly being blown to the African coast. King Roger locates it for him.

Landing at Potenza (29 *July*), Louis meets King Roger and they agree that the next Crusade should start soon and be aimed at Byzantium. Eleanor arrives and has to recuperate, and Louis' party then goes on to (4 *October*) Moonte Cassino. At Tusculum (9 *October*) they meet the Pope who is less sympathetic to war on the Byzantines. Cardinal Theodwin agrees to seek preachers to call for a new Crusade and Abbot Peter of Cluny lends his support.

Louis and Eleanor tour Rome and set out northwards for the Juran Alps.

Louis returns to France with his wife (*November*) and tells St. Bernard that the Byzantines betrayed the Crusade and deliberately let the Turks harass his troops in Anatolia; Bernard starts to spread anti-Byzantine propaganda and calls for Divine vengeance on the Greeks, but Conrad refuses a Papal call to assist the plan as Manuel is his ally against King Roger.

SYRIA

Bertrand of Toulouse heads north for Antioch once Louis has set sail from Palestine, but is plotting to advance his claim to Tripoli by force; en route across Tripoli lands he suddenly seizes the castle of Arima, dominating the route from Tripoli inland into the Buqaia, and resists a siege by Raymond's troops. Raymond appeals to Unur of Damascus, and he brings Nur-ed-Din to assist in a massive attack which soon prevails; Arima is stormed and sacked and the site is returned to Count Raymond, and Bertrand is carried off as Nur-ed-Din's prisoner to Aleppo; Raymond, rid of a rival, leaves him unransomed.

Spring. Nur-ed-Din defeats Raymond of Antioch at Baghras; he besieges the castle of Inab, east of the Orontes, and retreats as the Prince and his 'Assassin' ally Ali ibn Wafa arrive. Raymond believes his army of c. 5,000 is larger and decides to attack Nur-ed-Din despite Ali's warning; in fact Nur-ed-Din has 6,000 men and soon realises his advantage. He decides to ambush Raymond en route to Inab.

29 June. Raymond of Antioch and his Syrian 'Assassin' ally Ali are killed in battle at the 'Fountains of Murad' near Inab by Nur-ed-Din in sandstorm. Raymond is killed in combat by Nur-ed-Din's general Shirkuh (uncle of Saladin); Reynald of Marash, husband of Joscelin of Turbessel's daughter Agnes, also falls. Raymond's head is sent to the Caliph in Baghdad.

Nur-ed-Din takes Arzghan and Tel-Kashfahan, then Artah and Harenc; he surrounds Antioch while Joscelin leaves Antioch alone and concentrates on saving Marash (for himself); Joscelin secures the town before a Seljuk army arrives but after he leaves the Seljuks force their surrender and the evacuees are massacred as they are withdrawing to Turbessel. Mas'u'd pursues Joscelin but has to withdraw as Nur-ed-Din comes to his aid.

Nur-ed-Din has to postpone attack on Antioch as King Baldwin arrives with army from Jerusalem; Patriarch Aimery assumes the regency for Princess Constance's 5-year-old son Bohemund III but he cannot lead armies so Baldwin starts to seek for a suitable husband for her.

August. Death of Unur of Damascus of dysentery, shortly after agreeing a truce with Jerusalem; succeeded by Toghtekin's grandson Mujir-ed-Din.

November. Death of Nur-ed-Din's brother, Qutb-ed-Din of Mosul; succeeded by their brother Saif-ed-Din.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel abandons Italian plans after Serbs under the 'Grand Zupan' of Rascia revolt, encouraged by Roger; he defeats Serbs, who retreat into inaccessible forests, and celebrates Triumph in capital.

PALESTINE

Everard of Barres succeeds Robert of Craon as Grand Master of the Templars.

EGYPT

10 October. Death of Caliph Al-Hafiz after a 19-year reign; succeeded by his son Al-Zafir, aged 16.

Sources**1145**

In the West: Odo of Deuil, *De Profectione Ludovici VII in Orientem*, ed. H. Wacquet (Paris: Parigi, 1949), pp. 21–3; Odo of Freisingen, *Chronica*, ed. Hofmeister (*Monumenta Germanica Historica Series*, 1912) pp. 363–7; Vita Suger Abbatis, pp. 393 ff.

1145–6

Syria/Iraq: death of Zengi: Anonymous Syrian Chronicle, p. 291; Cinnamus, p. 35; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 270–1; Kemal al-Din, p. 288; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cclxvii; William of Tyre, book xv, ch. xvii.

1146–7

Syria/Iraq, after death of Zengi: Anonymous Syrian Chronicle, pp. 292–7; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 455–8; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 272–5; Matthew of Edessa, book cclviii; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cclxxii; William of Tyre, book xvi, ch. xiv–xvi.

1146–8

Spain: J. B. Williams, 'The making of a Crusade: the Genoese anti-Muslim attacks in Spain, 1146–1148' in *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. xxiii (1997), pp. 48–53.

1147

West/Byzantium: Cinnamus, pp. 67–9, 74–86 and (ed. Brand, 1976) pp. 67–72, 80–3; Nicetas Choniates, pp. 80–7 (1856 edition) and 60–6 (1984 edition); Odo of Deuil, pp. 24–44, 58–66; Otto of Freisingen, p. 354; Abbot Suger, *Gesta Ludovici*, pp. 158–60. Also: Chalandon, *Les Comnenes*, pp. 262, 266–7; Magdalino, pp. 46–50.

Syria/Palestine campaigns: Abu Shams, pp. 50–3; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 456–62; Ibn al-Athir, 'Atabegs of Mosul', pp. 152–8; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 256–9; Kemal al-Din, pp. 515–16; William of Tyre, book xvi, ch. viii–xiii, xxiii–xxiv.

Portugal: S. B. Edgington, 'The Lisbon Letter of the Second Crusade' in *Historical Research*, vol. lxix (1996) pp. 328–39; A. J. Forey, 'The Siege of Lisbon and the Second Crusade' in *Portuguese Studies*, vol. xx (2004) pp. 1–13; H. Livermore, 'The 'Conquest of Lisbon' and its author' in *Portuguese Studies*, vol. vi (1991) pp. 1–16.

1148

Abu Shams, *Book of the Two Gardens*, in *RHC Orientalis*, vols iv and v (incomplete): vol. iv, pp. 55–9.

Cinnamus, pp 87–8, and (1976 edition) pp. 67–83, 86; Nicetas Choniates (1984 edition), pp. 60–71.

Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 268, 282–6; Michael the Syrian, vol. iii p. 276; Odo of Deuil, pp. 67–80; Otto of Freisingen, *Gesta Frederici*, pp. 89–96; Otto of St. Blaise, *Chronica*, ed. Hofmeister (MGHS, 1912), p. 305; Suger, *Gesta Ludovici*, pp. 400–04; Usama, ed. Hitti, p. 124; William of Nangis, *Gesta Ludovici VII*, in RHF vol. xx: vol. i p. 43; William of Tyre, book xvi, ch. xxviii–xxix, book xvii, ch. i–viii.

Also: Magdalino, pp. 50–2.

1149

Cinnamus, p. 87; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 470–1; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs of Mosul’, p. 162; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 287–8, 295; Kemal al-Din, p. 517; William of Nangis, vol. i ch. xlvi. After the Crusaders left Palestine: Cinnamus, pp. 122–5; Chron. Anonymous Syrian, p. 296; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 288–92; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cclxxxviii–ix; William of Tyre, book xvii, ch. ix. Also: Magdalino, pp. 53–4.

5 The Crusader states 1150–1187

1150 | SYRIA

March. Nur-ed-Din advances on Damascus but is held up by heavy rain.

Baldwin is meanwhile encamped at Gaza, rebuilding its fortifications preparatory to an attack on the isolated Fatimid garrison at Ascalon. Ibn Sallah, vizier of Egypt, sends an embassy (including the historian Usama Ibn Munqidh from Shaizar, who has now entered Fatimid service) to ask Nur-ed-Din for help by attacking Galilee. Nur-ed-Din refuses, and Usama leaves the returning embassy at Ascalon where he assists the defence.

Mujir ed-Din sends to Jerusalem for help from Baldwin, and as Nur-ed-Din opens negotiations Mujir ed-Din agrees to put his name on the coinage and have the Friday prayers mention him after the Caliph (i.e. recognise him as suzerain); rather than provoke war with Jerusalem, Nur-ed-Din accepts these terms for the moment.

April. Joscelin captured by Turcoman brigands en route from Turbessel to Antioch, possibly to seek the regency for Princess Constance; they propose to ransom him but Nur-ed-Din sends cavalry to take him over. He is taken to Aleppo, blinded, and imprisoned; Patriarch Aimery leads the defence of Antioch and assures the advancing Nur-ed-Din he will surrender if Baldwin does not arrive in a fixed time, then sends urgently to Baldwin. The latter brings a small army while Nur-ed-Din is held up besieging Apamea, and Nur-ed-Din agrees to truce. Joscelin's followers successfully defend Turbessel and his wife Beatrice holds out with their son Joscelin (III); their daughter Agnes is widow of Reynald of Marash (k. 1149).

Beatrice needs long-term military support and the local Jacobite Christians are restive after persecution by Joscelin; she sends to Antioch for help; Manuel's envoys arrive there and offer to buy all that remains of Joscelin's principality (west of Euphrates). Thomas, governor of Cilicia, buys six remaining Crusader castles there (including Samosata, Aintab and Birejik) for Byzantium from Beatrice, and she keeps the castle of Ranculat/Rum Kalaat near Samosata which she hands to the Armenian Catholicos as his new seat. Baldwin escorts the refugees from the

Countess' lands who have fled to Antioch home and defeats an attack by Nur-ed-Din near Aintab, refusing his barons' suggestion to take over the latter before Manuel's troops arrive.

Baldwin accompanies Byzantine troops as they take over the fortresses; Joscelin's son Joscelin and daughter Agnes stay at Antioch, where Constance refuses to marry Baldwin's choices of husband – Yves of Nesle, Walter of Falconberg, and Ralph of Merle (Tripoli feudatory). She asks Manuel to choose a husband instead.

Nur-ed-Din marries the daughter of Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud and they agree to divide the remaining lands of Edessa between them when conquered.

1151 ITALY

Easter. Roger II crowns son William as successor at Palermo.

Pope Eugenius sends envoys to Conrad in Germany to assist Germans. Byzantine alliance against Roger II.

SYRIA/ARMENIA

Spring. Mas'ud and Nur-ed-Din invade the ex-Edessan fortresses east of Euphrates – Mas'ud gets Aintab and Nur-ed-Din gets Ravendel, and the Ortoqid prince Timurtash of Mardin takes Samosata and Birejik.

May. Nur-ed-Din attacks Damascus again, and the army of Jerusalem comes to its defence. They camp outside the city and are allowed in to visit the bazaars, and Mujir ed-Din visits Baldwin in the camp.

June. Nur-ed-Din retires to Baalbek, the governorship of his Kurdish general Ayyub (father of Saladin). Baldwin and Mujir ed-Din avoid direct confrontation, and instead attack Bosra whose Emir Sarkhak has transferred allegiance from Damascus to Nur-ed-Din. The town holds out, but after the army has left Sarkhak allies with Jerusalem and seeks their protection against Mujir-ed-Din. The latter has to ask Nur-ed-Din for help to force Sarkhak to abandon this alliance and submit.

Nur-ed-Din forces Sarkhak to submit; Mujir-ed-Din then visits him in Aleppo to confirm (brief) alliance.

July. Byzantine commander surrenders Turbessel as Prince Hassan of Menbij invades western part of principality, and most of garrisons flee; end of Christian presence in Edessan lands.

BYZANTIUM

July. Thoros of Armenia, now lord of the family castle of Vakha and ally of his Frank father-in-law, the local baron Simon of Raban, invades Cilicia; governor Thomas is killed outside Mopsuestia, and Manuel sends

cousin Prince Andronicus with army; he is routed besieging Mopsuestia and returns home.

Manuel sends his widowed Norman brother-in-law, John Roger, to Antioch to marry Constance; she refuses to have him.

SYRIA

December. A force of Turcoman nomads raids Banyas after passing through Ayyub's lands at Baalbek, and he is suspected of backing them; the garrison of Banyas raids Baalbek and Mujir-ed-Din denies inciting Ayyub to attack.

1152 BYZANTIUM/GERMANY

March. Birth of Manuel and Bertha/Irene's first (and only) child, Mary.

Plans for Byzantine/German/Papal coalition against Sicily postponed on death of Conrad (15 *March*) who is succeeded by nephew Frederick 'Barbarossa' of Swabia.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Early. After another quarrel between Count Raymond II of Tripoli and his wife Hodierna of Jerusalem (the paternity of their daughter Melissende is doubted), her sister Queen Melissende brings Baldwin to Tripoli for a family 'summit'. Constance is summoned from Antioch, but ignores her aunt's demands that she marry.

Hodierna and Raymond are reconciled; as Hodierna and Melissende are leaving Tripoli for a stay at Jerusalem Raymond, seeing them off at the south gate, is stabbed to death by a band of 'Assassins'. Ralph of Merle and other knights are killed trying to rescue him and Baldwin, who is staying on, hears the news in the castle and rushes to the scene too late while infuriated townsmen set on the local Moslems. The Count's son Raymond III, aged 12, succeeds with Hodierna as regent and Baldwin taking military command; Nur-ed-Din raids too and takes Tortosa but Baldwin drives his troops out and Hodierna offers it successfully to the Templars.

FRANCE

21 *March.* Annulment of the marriage of Louis VII and Queen Eleanor, their relationship never having recovered from the Second Crusade. Louis loses control of Eleanor's Duchy of Aquitaine, and to his fury she subsequently marries his younger arch-rival Henry, Count of Anjou and Maine (as of *December 1154*, Henry II of England).

PALESTINE

Easter Sunday, 30 March. Intended date for Baldwin to be crowned, with Melissende insisting on being re-crowned with him to show that she is still co-ruler (as hereditary heiress not consort). Patriarch Fulcher backs Melissende; Baldwin resists the plan and postpones the date.

2 April. Sole coronation of Baldwin as King of Jerusalem, thwarting plans of his mother Queen Melissende for double coronation by hurrying to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre before she is aware of it; Fulcher is forced to crown him and not wait for the Queen to arrive. Melissende is threatened with exclusion from power by her son but resists, backed by the Constable Manasses and the Ibelin clan and by mostly southern barons; Baldwin's main supporters are from Galilee.

A 'Great Council' of the realm is summoned, and the clergy back a compromise whereby Melissende keeps the government of Jerusalem and (her dower-town) Nablus, plus suzerainty over her younger son Amalric's County of Jaffa and Ascalon, and Baldwin rules Galilee and the north.

Late Summer? Baldwin demands that Melissende hand over Jerusalem; she refuses and fortifies the capital and Nablus against him. Her chief supporter Manasses is captured at his castle of Mirabel by Baldwin's troops and Baldwin orders him to leave the Kingdom for ever; Nablus surrenders to the King but Melissende, backed by the Patriarch, holds out in Jerusalem until the rioting citizens force her to negotiate a few days later. She opens the gates to her son's troops and is allowed to retire to Nablus; Baldwin takes full control of government and makes his principal Galilee baronial supporter, Humphrey (II) of Toron, the new Constable.

Autumn. During a council of the Kingdom at Nablus in the aftermath of the crisis, Emir Timurtash of Mardin arrives unexpectedly at Damascus with a horde of Turcoman raiders and asks for help to attack Jerusalem. Mujir-ed-Din sells him supplies but tries to talk him out of it and will not lend him troops; he moves on across the Jordan to camp on the Mount of Olives, and the city's garrison sallies to take the disorderly nomads by surprise and defeat them. They retreat to the Jordan, where the Kingdom's army arrives from Nablus and inflicts a serious defeat; Timurtash has to return home.

Bernard of Tremelay, a Burgundian, becomes Grand Master of the Templars as Everard resigns to retire to Clairvaux as a monk.

1153 EGYPT

Murder of the Vizier Ibn Sallah by the son of his stepson Ibn Abbas, with the support of Caliph Az-Zahir.

IRAQ

Seljuk Sultan Mahmud succeeded by his nephew Malik Shah. The latter is soon replaced by his brother Mohammed.

PALESTINE

25 January. Baldwin and the army of Jerusalem arrive at Ascalon to attack the fortress while Egypt is weakened by the recent coup; the Patriarch and the 'True Cross' are in attendance. The attackers have massive siege-engines, but the walls hold out.

Easter. The annual Western pilgrimage to Jerusalem brings reinforcements to the siege of Ascalon.

June. The Egyptian fleet of 70 ships brings supplies to Ascalon, and the Christian fleet of 20 ships dare not intervene.

ITALY

8 July. Death of Pope Eugenius at Tivoli; having concluded treaty with Frederick Barbarossa guaranteeing each other's territory and promising no territorial concessions to Byzantium; elderly Anastasius IV (Corrado) elected the same day and permitted to reside in Rome by 'commune'.

Alexander, Count of Gravina, and Anselm of Harelby act as Manuel's negotiators in new approach to Papacy against Sicily.

SYRIA

July. Constance of Antioch marries a rough young French baron, the adventurer Reynald of Chatillon (younger son of the Count of Gien), who came to Palestine in 1149 and accompanied King Baldwin to Antioch in 1151. He is opposed by the local barons, but goes to Ascalon to secure Baldwin's agreement and then returns to marry Constance. Manuel approves contingent on Reynald aiding him against Thoros the Armenian, and Reynald invades southern Cilicia as a Byzantine ally and hands reconquered Alexandretta over to the Templars. The latter then reconstruct Baghras castle, dominating the Amanus range.

PALESTINE

Late July. The garrison of Ascalon attack and set fire to a massive Christian siege-tower, overlooking and bombarding the streets, at night; the wind blows the flames onto the wall which cracks in the heat, and as the masonry crumbles 40 nearby Templar knights under Grand Master Bernard of Tremelay hurry to storm it – not informing any of the other attackers so as to secure the glory for their Order. They are surrounded

and killed, and the breach is repaired before the rest of the besiegers can be alerted.

The King holds a council, where the majority of the barons want to abandon the siege but the Patriarch and the Hospitaller Grand Master Roger want to continue and win the day; *19 August*, after another major attack is barely repulsed, the garrison sue for surrender and they and the citizens are allowed to leave with their valuables.

Ascalon is evacuated and the Christians enter; the city is given as a fief to Baldwin's brother Amalric and the main mosque is converted to a cathedral. Mujir-ed-Din, whose proposed joint campaign with Nur-ed-Din against Banyas has collapsed due to mutual suspicion, agrees to pay tribute to Baldwin and infuriates the populace of Damascus.

Andrew of Montbard, currently their Seneschal, becomes Grand Master of the Templars (to *1156*); he is uncle of the Order's chief Western ally and patron St. Bernard of Clairvaux (who dies in *August*).

IRAQ

Timurtash the Ortoqid of Amida succeeded by son Najm al-Din Ali.

1154 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

26 February. Death of Roger II of Sicily, aged 58/9; succeeded by youngest but only surviving son, William I (later nicknamed 'The Bad') whose stepmother Queen Beatrice unsuccessfully offers Manuel the return of loot and prisoners from Thebes as a peace-offering; new Grand Admiral Maio of Bari chief Minister and English minister William Brown dismissed.

Birth of Roger's posthumous daughter by Beatrice, Constance.

Byzantine admiral Constantine Angelus, commanding fleet at Monemvasia as ships assemble for Manuel's Silician campaign, exceeds orders in attacking a Norman convoy returning from Egypt and is captured.

BYZANTIUM

Alexander and Anselm arrive from Rome with Papal reply to Byzantine offers of alliance against Sicily.

SYRIA

Ayyub of Baalbek stirs up feelings in Damascus against Mujir-ed-Din as a traitor to Islam and a food-shortage is made worse by Nur-ed-Din not sending the promised convoys of supplies and is presented as Mujir-ed-Din's fault; Ayyub persuades his target to arrest a number of leading emirs for an alleged plot, thus alarming the rest and making them hostile to Mujir's government.

Ayyub's brother Shirkuh arrives at Damascus as ambassador from Nur-ed-Din, with a suspiciously large armed escort; Mujir-ed-Din will not let him into the city. Nur-ed-Din takes this as an insult and brings a large army, and Mujir-ed-Din sends to Jerusalem for help.

EGYPT

16 April. Vizier Ibn Abbas murders Caliph Al-Zafir (aged 20/1), massacres adult relations, and installs 4-year-old son Al-Faiz as puppet.

SYRIA

18 April. Nur-ed-Din besieges Damascus; *24 April.* A Jewish woman lets the attackers into the Jewish quarter, and the citizens then open the east gate. Mujir-ed-Din holds out in the citadel but capitulates later in the day as he is offered the emirate of Homs; he leaves for Homs but (*May/June*) is deposed by Nur-ed-Din for an alleged plot to regain Damascus and retires to Baghdad. Ayyub is appointed Nur-ed-Din's governor of Damascus as he returns to Aleppo.

ITALY

3 December. Death of Anastasius IV.

4 December. Nicholas Breakspear from Abbot's Langley elected the only English Pope (Hadrian IV).

1155 ITALY

January. Hadrian renews Anastasius' treaty with Frederick; he places Rome under interdict until it expels leader of the 'Commune', Arnold of Brescia; border-clashes with Silician troops.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium/Konya after 39-year reign; succeeded by son Kilij Arslan.

ITALY

Vitale II Michiel succeeds Domenico Morosini as Doge of Venice.

EGYPT

Ibn Abbas and associates lynched by Cairo populace; Ibn Ruzzik 'Vizier'.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

April. Frederick crowned King of Lombardy at Pavia; King William of Sicily at Salerno, and refuses to receive suspected plotter, cousin Robert of Loritello, who flees to start revolt.

May. Frederick advances on Rome for coronation as Emperor and meets Pope Hadrian at Sutri but refuses usual gesture of humility in leading his mule; the Romans refuse to let him into city so he seizes Vatican by surprise.

18 June. Pope Hadrian crowns Frederick but he still cannot capture main city and on his retiring Pope moves to Tivoli.

Michael Paleologus and John Ducas, Manuel's envoys to Frederick for Sicilian war, catch him up at Ancona on return journey to Germany and achieve nothing, so they take Ancona to use as base and send envoys and money to Apulian barons as Robert leads revolt; Byzantine troops land and seize Fano; ex-prince Robert of Capua reclaims his title, and his supporters join Byzantines to capture Trani.

29 September. Hadrian marches from Tusculum in Apulia to encourage rebels and *9 October* invests Robert of Capua with Capua; Paleologus and rebels besiege Bari, where citizens revolt and admit Byzantine troops and Robert of Loritello takes over citadel.

Count Richard of Andria, loyalist leader in Apulia besieged at Barietta, breaks out, and is killed in battle by Ducas and Robert of Loritello.

1156 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

Early. Revolt breaks out in Sicily, led by Bartholomew of Gassiliato; the rebels reassure William they are opposed to Maio's government not to him personally, and when William releases Maio's enemies as demanded and marches on Butera rebels submit.

William gathers his forces at Messina, and Paleologus falls ill and dies at Bari so Ducas recalled from campaign to take over; *April* Ducas advances to besiege Brindisi, but William arrives with army and Norman fleet cuts off communications by sea; Byzantine camp is surrounded and *28 April* as Normans attack most Byzantine troops surrender and Ducas and fellow-commander Alexius Bryennius Comnenus (son of Anna Comnena) are captured; Manuel sends urgent envoys to Frederick who refuses to receive them.

Bari surrenders to William who evicts citizens and razes it to the ground; Apulian barons mostly submit or flee, abandoning the Pope and his army, and Robert of Capua captured and blinded.

PALESTINE

Nur-ed-Din renews the truce between Damascus and Jerusalem and pays the 8,000 ducat tribute owed by his predecessor.

Bernard of Blanquefort becomes Grand Master of the Templars (to 1169).

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

Spring. Reynald of Chatillon, having tied Patriarch Aimery of Antioch on top of tower covered in honey to attract flies in a dispute over money, raids Cyprus in force; Thoros of Armenia joins him and governor Michael Branas and Manuel's nephew Prince John are captured attacking their camp on the shore. The Eastern coast cities are burnt and looted amidst pillage and rape, and the leading citizens carried off for ransom in Antioch.

ITALY

Surrounded in Benevento by William's army, Pope Hadrian opens negotiations and 18 *June* signs humiliating treaty granting King of Sicily full control of his own Church; *July* with Apulia subdued by ruthless campaign, William returns to Sicily and rounds up suspects including his late elder brother Roger's illegitimate son Tancred of Lecce.

1157 PALESTINE/BYZANTIUM

February. Baldwin breaks the truce with Nur-ed-Din to attack a large group of Moslem shepherds who have taken their flocks into frontier-territory near Banyas, and carried off their animals; Nur-ed-Din invades the Buqaia, via Baalbek where the governor defies him, and sends his brother Nasr-ed-Din and his general Shirkuh to raid ahead. He then leads his army from Damascus to (*May*) besiege Banyas, where the town falls but Humphrey (II) of Toron holds out in the hilltop citadel. He appeals urgently to Baldwin, who relieves the siege; Nur-ed-Din sets fire to Banyas and retreats, avoiding battle, but later ambushes the returning Baldwin north of the Sea of Galilee and forces him to flee to Safed.

Summer. Baldwin sends Archbishop Achard of Nazareth with an embassy to Constantinople requesting an Imperial bride; Manuel suggests his elder brother Isaac's daughter Theodora, and a dowry of 100,000 hyperpera plus 10,000 more for wedding-expenses. Acre is to be her dowry, and to be kept if she is widowed. Baldwin agrees to these terms on the embassy's return.

SPAIN

21 *August.* Death of Alfonso VII of Castile and Leon, aged 52; his domains are divided. Succeeded in Castile by his elder son, Sancho III (born 1134), and in Leon by his younger son, Ferdinand II (born 1137).

Foundation of the Military Order of Calatrava – a special ‘command’ of the lay brothers of the Cistercian abbey of Fitero, set up at the suggestion of one of the monks (Diego Velasquez) to take over the defence of Calatrava castle – which the King is offering to anyone who can defend it successfully against the Moslems. The warrior Brothers are soon at odds with those monks who feel that the Cistercians should all be men of peace, and after the abbot dies (1163) most of the monks will leave the abbey.

SYRIA

August. Serious damage at Aleppo, Ham, and Homs from an earthquake; at Shaizar the ruling Ibn Munqidh dynasty is caught celebrating a circumcision in the citadel and only one princess and the absent Usama, the historian, survive; both Christians and Moslems have to repair their fortresses.

September? Baldwin and the visiting pilgrim Count Thierry/Teobald of Flanders advance to besiege Shaizar, now held by a group of autonomous ‘Assassins’; the walls are still weak and the town falls, and the citadel is besieged; Baldwin promises Shaizar to Thierry but the arriving Reynald of Chatillon insists that Thierry must be his vassal as the Moslem ex-rulers paid him tribute; Thierry refuses to pay homage to a low-born adventurer and Baldwin has to abandon the siege; the army attacks Harenc instead.

October. Nur-ed-Din falls seriously ill at Sarmin, and is taken in a litter to Aleppo; he names his brother Nasr-ed-Din as successor with his general Shirkuh ruling Damascus, but as Nasr-ed-Din arrives at Aleppo to take charge the commander of citadel, Ibn ed-Daya, objects and the citizens riot; Nur-ed-Din summons the leading citizens to show that he is still alive and order calm; he slowly recovers.

PALESTINE

? Baldwin’s younger brother Amalric, Count of Jaffa and Ascalon, marries Agnes of Courtenay, his third cousin (Church doubts over legality) and sister of Joscelin of Turbessel, rightful lord of Edessa. This marriage will bring disastrous feuds to the Court.

1158 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

6 January. Andrew of Rupecanino defeats Silician army at San Germano; Frederick’s generals Otto of Wittelsbach and Reynald of Dassel lead German army to Ancona; *April* Alexius Axuch agrees to evacuate city and return home.

Pope Hadrian mediates between Byzantium and Sicily, aided by William’s prisoners Ducas and Bryennius Comnenus; 30-year peace signed.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

February. Fall of Harenc to Baldwin's army; it is given to Reynald of St. Valery as a fief of Antioch.

1 April. Baldwin and Thierry/Theobald of Flanders arrive at Damascus in surprise attack while Nur-ed-Din is absent ill; they besiege the fortress of Dareiya near the walls but (*7 April*) the convalescent Nur-ed-Din arrives back and they retreat.

Nur-ed-Din besieges the castle of Habis Yalduk, overlooking the Yarmuk valley south-east of the Sea of Galilee; Baldwin sends Count Thierry to relieve it, and himself marches round the north side of the Sea towards Damascus; Nur-ed-Din moves back to rescue his capital, and they clash at Butaiha; the Christians charge what they think is a smaller force only to realise the main Moslem army is there (reputedly as a mule Baldwin gave to one of Nur-ed-Din's lieutenants is recognised), but the enemy commander is still unwell and retires leaving his army to be routed; a truce is agreed.

SPAIN

31 August. Death of Sancho III of Castile after a reign of a year, aged 22/3; succeeded by his son by Blanche of Navarre, Alfonso VIII (born *11 November 1155*).

BYZANTIUM

13-year-old Princess Theodora leaves Constantinople to sail to Palestine, where *September* she marries Baldwin; Patriarch Aimery of Antioch conducts the service as the Pope has not yet confirmed the new Patriarch-elect Aimery of Jerusalem.

Autumn. Manuel leads a large army overland to Cilicia en route for Antioch to deal with Reynald, with Jerusalem's neutrality assured; his advance-guard rides furiously for Tarsus to surprise the Armenian occupiers but Thoros of Armenia hears in time and flees into the mountains; Theodore Vatatzes takes Tarsus; Manuel reoccupies all the Cilician plain.

1159 BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

Reynald is persuaded by Bishop Gerald of Lattakeih that Manuel will be content with vassalage not conquest, and decides not to fight.

Reynald sends the keys of Antioch to Manuel and offers to admit an Imperial garrison, is ordered to surrender, and comes to his camp outside Mopsuestia; Patriarch Aimery demands his deposition but Manuel is

content for Reynald to kneel before the imperial throne and accept imperial garrison and Orthodox Patriarch in Antioch.

Reynald returns to Antioch to meet Baldwin, who now arrives from Jerusalem and goes on to Manuel's camp where he is the Emperor's guest for ten days. Baldwin talks Manuel into letting Patriarch Aimery keep the see of Antioch and into pardoning Thoros the Armenian and guaranteeing his lands.

12 April, Easter Sunday. Manuel enters Antioch on horseback, with Reynald walking holding his bridle and Baldwin riding behind uncrowned; he ignores a plan by senior Franks to scare him into staying out by rumours of a plot to kill him. He rides to a service at the cathedral, and then resides in Palace and holds feasts and tournament.

20 April. Manuel marches up River Orontes into Moslem territory, and looks after Baldwin when he breaks his arm out hunting. He receives envoys from Nur-ed-Din at the Antiochene frontier, to the annoyance of the belligerent Franks, he agrees to a truce with Nur-ed-Din whereby 600 Christian prisoners are released, including Templar Grand Master Bernard.

Manuel leaves Syria and *June–July* returns across Anatolia, being harassed en route by Turkish tribes under Seljuk suzerainty.

August? Back at Constantinople, Manuel organises coalition of Yaqub Arslan the Danishmend, Nur-ed-Din, and other neighbours against Seljuks; Reynald and Thoros send contingents to Manuel's army.

Death in prison in Aleppo of Joscelin of Courtenay, deposed ruler of Edessa, who has to be confessed by an Eastern rite (Jacobite) priest as Nur-ed-Din's guards have no Catholics available; claim passes to his son Joscelin (III), resident at the Court in Jerusalem.

ITALY

Summer–Autumn. Frederick campaigns against rebel towns in Lombardy.

1 September. Death of Pope Hadrian IV at Tivoli; *7 September* majority of cardinals elect Roland Bandinelli as Pope Alexander III but a minority elect Frederick's preferred candidate Cardinal Octavian as Victor IV; Alexander consecrated at Ninfa, Victor at Farfa, and schism.

Alexander sends cardinals of Tivoli and St. Theodore to obtain Manuel's assistance.

IRAQ

Seljuk Sultan Mohammed is succeeded by his uncle Sulaiman.

1160 | BYZANTIUM/ITALY/SYRIA

February. Manuel sends envoys to Frederick at Pavia concerning his gaining Ancona and part of Apulia.

ABBASID CALIPHATE

12 March. Death of Caliph Al-Muqtafi, aged 64; succeeded by his son Al-Mustadi, aged 18.

SYRIA

November. Reynald of Chatillon, ruler of Antioch, is intercepted as he raids a Moslem herdsman's convoy taking flocks from the Amanus mountains into the Euphrates valley for the winter; he is captured by Nur-ed-Din's foster-brother and lieutenant Majd-ed-Din and taken to Aleppo as a prisoner, and ransom is refused (and not sought by Baldwin with any urgency). This leaves the military command and regency for 15-year-old Bohemund III in question; Constance leads the government.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel decides on marrying into the Antiochene dynasty to secure alliance and sends John Contostephanus and Theophylact to Antioch.

King Baldwin suggests that they choose Raymond of Tripoli's daughter Melissende, as a Jerusalem ally, rather than Constance's daughter Maria whose marriage would increase Byzantine influence over Antioch. The ambassadors go on to Tripoli but hear rumours about Melissende's paternity.

Constance is deposed as King Baldwin suddenly arrives at Antioch and proclaims Patriarch Aimery regent for her son Bohemund III, and she appeals to Manuel for aid to no effect. Manuel is however annoyed with Baldwin and his Tripolitan allies and puts off agreement with Raymond, who unawares continues to prepare for the wedding.

GERMANY/BYZANTIUM

Frederick sends embassy to Constantinople at Manuel's request to discuss status of Ancona and alliance against Sicily.

EGYPT

23 July. Death of Caliph Al-Faiz, aged 10/11; succeeded by 9-year-old cousin al-Adid, son of Az-Zahir's brother Yusuf.

PORTUGAL

Foundation of the Templar headquarters in the kingdom, the castle and town of Tomar.

ITALY

10 November. William of Sicily's chief minister Maio of Bari assassinated.

IRAQ

Seljuk Sultan Sulaiman is succeeded by his nephew Arslan II, son of Sultan Tughril (r. 1131–4).

PALESTINE

Auger de Balben succeeds Raymond of Le Puy as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1161 ITALY

Revolt in Palermo as Maio's assassin, Mathew Bonellus, amnestied but fearing vengeance, organises conspiracy *9 March* to seize the prison and release Tancred of Lecce and other prisoners, then seize Palace; Arabs in palace and harem women are mistreated and the city mob starts to massacre Moslems, while William I's son William is proclaimed the new King; however some conspirators prefer William I's bastard brother Simon, and while they dispute the loyalist bishops rally mob to attack Palace and try to rescue William I.

11 March. William's eldest son Roger killed by an arrow fired into the Palace during riots as the conspirators beg the King to pacify mob, and he does as they ask; eventually they are allowed to leave city and government restored; rebels rally in countryside and advance on Palermo, but retreat as loyal fleet arrives and many surrender in return for pardons; Tancred and others exiled and *late April* William sacks Butera after new revolt; Andrew of Rupecanino in Campania and Robert of Loritello in Apulia revolt again.

BYZANTIUM/SYRIA/PALESTINE

? Manuel is alarmed at rumours that Frederick intends to attack Byzantium en route on new Crusade to Syria and sends warning letters to Kilij Arslan and other Moslem rulers.

Early Summer. Raymond's envoy Odo of Risberg arrives at Constantinople to enquire about the delay in a treaty for Manuel to marry Melissende.

In retaliation to confirmation that Manuel has rejected Melissende, her brother Raymond of Tripoli raids Cyprus with one of the twelve galleys that were due to escort her to Constantinople; Baldwin, in Tripoli as news arrives, goes on to Antioch to find if Maria has been chosen as the Imperial bride instead.

EGYPT

September. Chief minister Ibn Ruzzik, regent for Caliph Al-Adid, is fatally stabbed by an agent of the boy's aunt (Az-Zahir's sister) and has her executed before he dies; his son Al-Adil takes over the government.

PALESTINE/BYZANTIUM

September. Death of Queen Melissende of Jerusalem, aged around 52; succeeded in her influence over Royal Family and Church by her stepdaughter Sibylla of Flanders (d. 1165) who has been a nun at Bethany convent since joining her husband Count Thierry on pilgrimage in 1157.

Alexius Bryennius Comnenus and Eparch of Constantinople John Ducas arrive at Antioch to confirm that Maria is Alexius' choice and that Constance must rule Antioch as regent; they hold talks with Baldwin III. They sail for capital with Maria; Manuel returns to Constantinople and 25 *December* Patriarch Luke of Constantinople, Patriarch Sophronius of Alexandria, and titular Patriarch Athanasius of Antioch marry Manuel and Maria in Hagia Sophia.

1162 ITALY

February. Pope Alexander flees from Frederick and Victor IV to France.

February–April. William ruthlessly restores order in southern Italy; Salerno narrowly avoids demolition.

PALESTINE

Baldwin falls ill during a journey across Tripoli; Count Raymond sends his doctor Barac to look after him but he gets worse and there are suspicions of poison.

10 *February.* Death of Baldwin III at Beirut, aged 32; widowing Manuel's niece Theodora. She receives Beirut as jointure to settle in; Baldwin's brother Amalric, Count of Jaffa and Ascalon, aged 26, succeeds to Jerusalem and Nur-ed-Din chivalrously refuses suggestions from his generals that he attack.

Baldwin is buried at Jerusalem; 18 *February* Amalric is crowned. The barons and Patriarch Aimery insist that he divorce his unpopular wife,

Agnes of Courtenay, sister of Joscelin of Turbessel (the rightful lord of Edessa) and his third cousin so within the Church rules of banning marriages between relations. His son Baldwin, aged 2, and his daughter, the older Sibylla, remain as his heirs.

Spring. Amalric asserts extended Royal legal power over his vassals, in a case before the 'High Court' where a sub-vassal of the Royal vassal Gerard of Sidon complains at his forfeiture. Amalric reinstates him, the ruling thus allowing sub-vassals to appeal to him over the heads of his senior vassals.

Arnold de Comps succeeds Auger de Balben as Grand Master of the Hospitallers; succeeded later that year by Gilbert d'Assailly.

BYZANTIUM/ARMENIA

Manuel marches to Philippopolis to intervene in Hungarian civil war, and Stephen IV asks for aid; troops are sent, but Stephen III has rallied most of the country to his cause and *19 June* Stephen IV soundly defeated near Belgrade. Manuel agrees to recognise Stephen III and abandon Stephen IV; frontier delineated and Stephen III becomes Manuel's ally and sends his brother Béla to Constantinople as hostage for good behaviour.

Manuel releases cousin Andronicus and sends him to Cilicia as governor; Prince Thoros' brother Stephen murdered en route to banquet with Andronicus, who Thoros blames; Thoros invades Cilicia and takes Mopsuestia and massacres garrison at Anazarbus; Andronicus recalled and imprisoned again and replaced by Coloman; Thoros makes peace.

SYRIA

Constance unsuccessfully appeals to Coloman to restore her as regent of Antioch for her elder son Bohemund III, and is accused of instigating riot and expelled; her son Baldwin goes to Manuel to seek aid.

Constance dies soon afterwards.

EGYPT

December? Chief minister Al-Adil is overthrown by Shawar.

1163 AFRICA/SPAIN

May. Death of the Almohad Caliph Abd-al-Mumin, aged 69, after a 33-year reign over his dynasty's lands; succeeded by his son Abu Yaqub Yusuf, aged 28.

EGYPT/SYRIA

‘Vizier’ Shawar deposed by chamberlain Dhirmag, who rules by terror.

September. Amalric invades Egypt in protest at the non-payment of a tribute of 160,000 dinars per annum offered in 1160; he besieges Pelusium but has to retire as Dhirmag breaks a dyke to flood the surroundings. While Amalric is in Egypt, Nur-ed-Din invades Tripoli to besiege Krak des Chevaliers, and Hugh, Count of Lusignan in Poitou, and Geoffrey of Angoulême are in the area en route home from pilgrimage and join Count Raymond’s relief-army. Bohemund III and the Imperial general Constantine Coloman, governor of Cilicia, join them and they attack the besiegers’ camp by surprise; Nur-ed-Din retreats to Homs.

Shawar flees to Nur-ed-Din at Damascus and asks him for help to overthrow Dhirmag in return for recognition of overlordship and a third of the annual revenues, although as he is a Sunni this will entail subordinating Shi’a Fatimid regime to ‘heretics’.

1164 PALESTINE/SYRIA/EGYPT

April. Nur-ed-Din agrees to send the exiled vizier Shawar back to Egypt with an expedition, which his senior general Shirkuh will command. With the latter goes his 27-year-old nephew Salah-ad-Din (Saladin), on his first major campaign.

Dhirmag sends to Amalric for help, but Shirkuh crosses the Sinai before the Christians can intercept him and defeats Dhirmag’s brother near Pelusium; (*May*) Shirkuh takes Cairo. Dhirmag is executed and Shawar is installed as vizier and a Syrian client.

A few weeks later Shawar renounces the Syrian alliance and tells Shawar to leave; Shawar seizes Bilbeis and Shawar offers Amalric 27,000 dinars plus gifts for the Military Orders if he will intervene.

SPAIN

18 July. Queen Petronilla of Aragon is forced to abdicate by her nobles in the name of her 6-or-7-year-old son Alfonso II; her position has been undermined by the death of her husband Count Raymond Berengar IV of Barcelona in August 1162.

PALESTINE/SYRIA/EGYPT

Early August. Amalric marches to the Nile to join Shawar and they besiege Shirkuh in Bilbeis; three-month siege follows.

Once Amalric has left for Egypt (*late July?*), Nur-ed-Din attacks Antioch and besieges Harenc, assisted by reinforcements from Qutb-ed-Din

(Mosul) and the vassal Ortoqid princes of the 'Jazirah'. Bohemund III asks Raymond of Tripoli, Thoros of Armenia, and Byzantine governor Constantine Coloman of Cilicia for help.

Nur-ed-Din retreats from Harenc as the Antioch/Tripoli/Armenia/Byzantine army approaches; Bohemund decides to press a close pursuit despite the warning of Reynald of St. Valery, castellan of Harenc, of the size of the enemy army.

10 August. Bohemund's troops catch the Moslems up near Artah, and Bohemund charges despite the warning of Prince Thoros and is lured into a feigned retreat. The Christians are surrounded, and though the Armenians escape Bohemund, Raymond, and Coloman are all captured and taken as prisoners to Aleppo.

Nur-ed-Din refuses to attack Antioch lest the Byzantines hurry to its rescue and take it over; Bohemund is a weaker foe. He quickly ransoms Coloman.

November. Amalric decides that he needs to march home on hearing of the trouble in Syria, and he and Shirkuh negotiate their mutual evacuation of Egypt; their armies march out across the Sinai parallel to each other.

Amalric marches on into Tripoli with the pilgrim Theobald of Flanders to reinforce his army, and takes over as regent; he reaches Antioch and Nur-ed-Din opens negotiations. The latter agrees to ransom Bohemund as a Byzantine vassal, but not Raymond or his other prisoner Reynald of Chatillon.

1165 BYZANTIUM/PALESTINE/SYRIA

Imperial envoys arrive at Antioch asking what Amalric is doing in a Byzantine vassal city without permission; he explains, and sends the Archbishop of Caesarea and the 'Butler' Odo of St. Amand as envoys to Manuel asking for an Imperial bride and an alliance to attack Egypt.

Bohemund III of Antioch is ransomed from Nur-ed-Din by Manuel and goes to Constantinople to pay the money back; he is persuaded to accept Athanasius II as Patriarch of Antioch and install him and Eastern Orthodox clerics in place of Latins in Cathedral, which he carries out on return.

ITALY

Pope Alexander calls for another Crusade to aid the Holy Land.

23 November. Pope Alexander returns to Rome after invited back by the Senate.

1166 | ITALY

7 May. Death of William of Sicily, succeeded by 12-year-old son William II under regency of mother Margaret; Manuel sends envoys to Pope to conclude alliance against Sicily, and briefly considers invasion in favour of William I's brother.

PALESTINE

(or 1167, Arab version) Nur-ed-Din takes the fortress of Munietra, on the road from Baalbek to Jebail, during a series of surprise raids on Tripoli outposts.

Shirkuh operates in Oultrejordan and takes a new Templar fortress near Amman; he also takes 'Shakif Titun' (the 'Cave of Tiron'),? Qalat al-Ninha, east of Sidon.

BYZANTIUM

Alexius Axuch dismissed from governorship of Cilicia; replaced by Manuel's cousin and contemporary, the rakish Prince Andronicus.

PORTUGAL

Fall of Evora, south-east of Lisbon, to the Christians; it becomes a fortress of the Knights of Aviz and a springboard for attacks on the emirate of the Algarve.

1167 | PALESTINE/EGYPT

January. Amalric proposes to a council at Nablus that he leads an expedition to assist Shawar, lest Nur-ed-Din take over Egypt. News arrives that Shirkuh and Saladin are returning with Syrian army to remove 'heretic' Fatimid government, and Amalric sends troops to the Sinai but cannot intercept them in time.

30 January. Amalric's army sets out for Egypt.

Early February. Shawar and Saladin arrive at the Isthmus of Suez after a sandstorm; they move on to the Nile at Atfih, upstream from Cairo, cross the river, and march down the west bank to Gizah opposite the capital.

Amalric arrives outside Cairo on the east side, and Shawar meets him to direct him to camp-site and arrange a treaty whereby he receives 400,000 bezants and stays in Egypt until Shirkuh leaves. Hugh, lord of Caesarea, and the Templar knight Geoffrey visit the Sultan's palace to sign and swear oaths to the treaty, though the Sultan Al-Adil is reluctant to remove his glove and shake hands with 'infidels'.

March. After a month's stalemate, Amalric crosses the Nile to the west bank and advances on Shirkuh's camp at Gizah; he retires upriver and Shawar joins Amalric for the pursuit, leaving Hugh of Ibelin to assist Shawar's son Kamil in controlling Cairo. The first Christian military presence in Cairo (or anywhere in the country since 646) horrifies the citizens.

17 March. Amalric and Shawar encounter Shirkuh's army at Ashmunein (Hermoupolis), and Amalric is allegedly urged to attack by a vision of St. Bernard of Clairvaux.

18 March. The Christians attack despite Shirkuh having more (manoeuvrable light Turkish) cavalry, and Saladin in the enemy centre retreats to lure them on. They fall into the trap, and Shirkuh on the Syrian right wing then counter-attacks into the Christian/Egyptian left wing which gives way. Amalric narrowly escapes but many are killed or captured, and the survivors retreat to Cairo.

BYZANTIUM/PALESTINE

Successful negotiations to marry Manuel's great-niece Maria, daughter of his elder brother Isaac's son John, to Amalric of Jerusalem.

PALESTINE/EGYPT/SYRIA

April? Shirkuh advances to besiege Alexandria, which surrenders, avoiding Cairo; Amalric and Shawar advance and a Christian fleet arrives to blockade the port.

May. Facing starvation, Shirkuh leaves with most of the army for the Nile valley; Saladin and around 1,000 men hold out awaiting relief, but after a month or so have to open talks when Shirkuh writes that he cannot bring enough troops to rescue them. Shirkuh asks a leading prisoner from the *18 March* battle, Hugh of Caesarea, to go to Amalric for talks; he refuses but Arnulf of Turbessel takes on the task.

August. Amalric and Shirkuh reach stalemate and agree to evacuate Egypt again; but this time Egypt remains allied and tributary to Amalric (100,000 pieces of gold per annum) with a nominal garrison in Cairo.

4 August. Amalric enters Alexandria with his army as Saladin's army is allowed to march out unmolested. Around ten days later Shirkuh and Saladin set out from Egypt back to Syria, and Amalric marches to Cairo where Shawar has to sign up to his terms. He then leaves Egypt.

29 August. The returned Amalric marries Maria Comnena at Tyre, with Patriarch Aimery conducting the service; Manuel's envoys George Paleologus and Manuel Comnenus accompany Amalric to Jerusalem to arrange closer alliance.

BYZANTIUM

Bohemund III complains to Manuel that Andronicus is neglecting his duties in Cilicia and dallying with his sister Philippa in Antioch instead; Manuel replaces Andronicus with Coloman, and Andronicus refuses to return home and stays in Antioch; he flees with Philippa to Jerusalem where Amalric agrees to give him Beirut as fief.

SPAIN

22 *September*. Pope Alexander issues a Bull recognising the Military Order of Calatrava.

1168 ARMENIA

Death of Thoros II; succeeded by young son Rupen, under regency of Thoros' sister's half-Frank son Thomas.? Thoros' brother Mleh flees to Nur-ed-Din.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel receives his returned ambassadors with Amalric's proposals against Egypt, and in return sends Alexander, Count of Conversano, the Count of Gravina, and Michael of Otranto to Amalric proposing that in return for joint expedition to Egypt Amalric accepts Byzantine direct rule of Antioch; archdeacon William of Tyre (the chronicler) sent by Amalric to Manuel.

Manuel receives William of Tyre at Pelagonia, during expedition to Serbia, and returns to capital.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

? Andronicus Comnenus deserts Philippa, seduces his cousin Theodora, the widow of Baldwin III who is residing at her 'dower' city of Acre, and moves with her to Beirut. The furious Manuel orders him to return home; as Amalric will back Manuel, Andronicus pretends to accept the order and comes to Acre without his mistress; then suddenly Theodora arrives and Andronicus flees with her to Damascus to seek Nur-ed-Din's protection.

Amalric is encouraged to move in on Egypt quickly before a revolt can begin, with Shawar's son Kamil reported to be plotting with Shirkuh and his nephew Saladin, whose sister he wants; (*late Summer*) the arrival of Count William of Nevers and his knights in Palestine provides more men for an expedition. At a council in Jerusalem Grand Master Gilbert of the Hospitallers backs a quick invasion, supported by most of the barons, but the Templars do not and refuse to join in the campaign (angry at promise of Pelusium, crucial Nile fortress, to the Hospitallers?). Amalric prefers to wait for Byzantine reinforcements but is out-voted.

Death of the Count of Nevers, leaving his enthusiastic knights leaderless and undisciplined.

October. Amalric invades Egypt again, intending to evict Shawar and install Christian rule; he announces he is en route to Homs to send Nur-ed-Din north to protect it, then marches swiftly from Ascalon (20 *October*) to Bilbeis (30 *October*). En route, at Daron Shawar's envoy Bedran arrives to ask the Christians to retire but is bribed to give way; a few days later a second envoy, Shams-ed-Din Khilafa, arrives to complain at Amalric's bad faith and is told that the treachery is that of Kamil for negotiating with Shirkuh and only two million dinars will halt the invasion.

1 November. Shirkuh's son Taiy holds out at Bilbeis despite attack *4 November*. Taiy's forces are overcome and the inhabitants are massacred, mostly by the leaderless Nevers contingent – the victims include Christian Copts so the locals are alienated though Amalric tried to halt the massacre and buys back enslaved citizens afterwards.

A Christian fleet enters the Nile and sacks the town of Tanis; more Copts are massacred.

Amalric halts at Bilbeis, instead of pressing advantage on demoralised Cairo; *13 November* he arrives at Cairo, but his fleet is held up at the mouth of the Nile by a boom. Shawar sets fire to the poorly-walled suburb of Fustat, the original Moslem city from the 640s, and sends to Nur-ed-Din assuring that he will burn Cairo sooner than surrender.

Held up without a fleet to block the Nile and starve Cairo out, Amalric accepts his Seneschal, Miles of Plancy's advice and sends unofficial envoys to Shawar hinting that he will accept a large bribe to leave; Shawar pays 100,000 dinars for Taiy's return and offers more, while delaying talks as he considers accepting Nur-ed-Din's rule instead.

Amalric encamps at Matara, the reputed site of the sycamore under which the Holy Family camped on the 'Flight into Egypt'.

Shawar offers Nur-ed-Din a third of Egypt and tribute in return for aid, on the insistence of his son Kamil; Al-Adid writes the formal invitation.

Shirkuh is called back to Damascus from a visit to Aleppo, and is sent with 8,000 troops to Egypt; Saladin is his deputy commander. As Shirkuh crosses the Sinai Shawar warns Amalric that he is coming, hoping to avert immediate conquest by either as they fight each other. Amalric leaves to intercept Shirkuh at the Isthmus, but Shirkuh crosses the desert to his south and reaches the Nile valley.

1169 EGYPT/BYZANTIUM/PALESTINE

2 January. Amalric has to retreat as Shirkuh and Saladin advance with Syrian army; *8 January* they enter Cairo to seize government on behalf

of Nur-ed-Din, and Al-Adid receives Shirkuh at the Palace and gives him gifts. Shawar is initially honoured, but Shirkuh persuades the Caliph to come secretly to his headquarters and then (18 *January*) Shawar is invited to join Shirkuh on pilgrimage to the shrine of As-Shafei and en route is arrested by Saladin who disperses his guards. Shirkuh has Shawar executed with an order from the Caliph, and takes over the palace while the populace are distracted with an invitation to loot Shawar's house.

Shirkuh seizes Egypt but 23 *March* dies of over-eating, succeeded by Saladin as governor.

Amalric plans to invade Egypt to retrieve the situation and sends appeal to Manuel; the Grand Master of the Hospitallers is sacked by his Order as scapegoat for the failure in Egypt in 1168 and Miles of Plancy also comes in for criticism.

Patriarch Aimery and Archbishop of Caesarea are sent with an embassy to the West to ask Henry II of England, Louis VII of France, Queen Margaret of Naples/Sicily, and the Counts of Flanders, Blois, and Troyes to send help; they are driven back to Acre within days by storms and are so demoralised that Archbishop Frederick of Tyre has to replace them as the embassy's head, assisted by Bishop John of Banyas and Preceptor Guibert of the Hospitallers.

The embassy reaches Rome (*July*) to secure Papal letters backing their cause and go on to France, where Louis will not give an early answer.

Al-Mutamén, chief eunuch to the late Caliph Al-Adid, sends letter to Jerusalem offering help from Fatimid partisans for an invasion; meanwhile Nur-ed-Din is kept from marching to Saladin's aid by the deteriorating situation in the 'Jazirah' as Qutb-ed-Din of Mosul is dying.

10 *July*. 'Megadux' Andronicus Contostephanus leads Byzantine fleet from Sestos on the Hellespont towards Egypt; they reach Cyprus and send envoys to Amalric to find his army not yet ready.

August. Saladin takes over the Fatimid Sultan Al-Adil's citadel palace, purges his supporters, (20 *August*) beheads Al-Mutamén and dismisses unreliable palace servants; the Nubian guardsmen riot at instigation of the dismissed palace officers and hold Saladin's brother Fakr-ed-Din at bay until Saladin sets fire to the Guard barracks at Fustat; the rioters flee to rescue their families and possessions from the blaze, and Fakr-ed-Din massacres them. The Caliph backs Saladin, and his Armenian guardsmen fail to support the Nubians but Saladin kills them anyway by setting fire to their barracks. Saladin secures full control of Cairo.

10 *September*. Birth of Manuel and Maria's son Alexius; he is proclaimed heir to throne.

16 *October*. Main Crusader force belatedly leaves by land from Palestine for Egypt while Contostephanus' fleet sails parallel off coast; 25 *October*

Christians reach Farama near Pelusium, while Saladin waits at Bilbeis. Byzantines embark the Crusaders to avoid the guarded Nile crossings and sail direct to Damietta; they land and commence siege avoiding Saladin's army.

Saladin cannot leave restive Cairo and asks Nur-ed-Din for reinforcements; he sends supplies down the Nile while his Damietta garrison's boom keeps the Byzantine fleet out of the river and Amalric delays an assault despite Contostephanus' warnings that after delay in Palestine his supplies are running out. Amalric's first siege-tower is put up against a strong section of wall, and the Greek Orthodox (Byzantines and locals) are furious that the Crusaders propose to attack near a church dedicated to the Virgin Mary, alleged site of the Holy Family's rest en route to Egypt while fleeing from Herod.

Moslem fireships damage fleet and heavy rain swamps camp; the besiegers quarrel and after Saladin offers a large sum of money they decide to re-embark; *13 December* the siege-engines are burnt and retreat begins; many ships are driven ashore or sunk in a storm; *24 December* at Ascalon Contostephanus leaves the Crusaders to sail to Constantinople and report to Manuel.

ITALY

October. Treaty of alliance between Byzantium and Genoa.

1170 SYRIA

January. The Kingdom's army and that of Tripoli, under Amalric as regent of the latter in Raymond's captivity, recovers the castle of Akkar to the south of the Buquaia; he assigns it to the Hospitallers.

BYZANTIUM

10 April. City Praefect Basil Camaterus fixes limits of new Genoese quarter in Constantinople; the Venetians object to Genoese commercial gains in their new treaty with Empire; Manuel seizes Venetian money in capital to put pressure on Venice, and the latter orders all Venetians to boycott Byzantium; finally Doge receives envoys from Manuel and sends Sebastian Ziani and Ono Mastropietro to negotiate.

EGYPT/SYRIA

April. Nur-ed-Din sends Saladin's father Najm-ed-Din Ayyub to Cairo, with a contingent of troops and a trade-caravan, to work on his behalf; he accompanies the caravan across Oultrejordan and makes a brief attack on Kerak before returning home to Damascus.

29 *June*. Earthquake in Antioch destroys cathedral with Patriarch Athanasius and congregation inside; Bohemund III restores the Latin claimant Aimery, now living at Qosar, as Patriarch; effective Christian/Moslem truce as damaged fortresses (including the Christians' Krak des Chevaliers, Tripoli, and Jebail and the Moslem Aleppo, Hama, and Homs) are restored.

ARMENIA/SYRIA

Rupen of Armenia's exiled uncle Mleh (an ex-Templar) overthrows him and his regent, Rupen's half-'Frankish' first cousin Thomas, with troops sent by his host Nur-ed-Din. He then takes Mopsuestia, Adana, and Tarsus from Byzantium; Amalric comes to aid Bohemund III and defeats his siege of Templar fortress, Baghras; Amalric restores the Cilician plain to Byzantium; Coloman governor.

Summer. Death of Qutb-ed-Din of Mosul; his sons Saif-ed-Din and Imad-ed-Din quarrel over the lordship and a few months later Nur-ed-Din arrives to impose a solution. Saif-ed-Din gets Mosul and (*late Autumn*) Nur-ed-Din advances through the 'Jazirah' annexing local towns. He hands Sanjar to Imad-ed-Din and takes Nisibis and the Khabur valley for himself.

Some time in these months, Amalric's son Baldwin, aged 9, is identified as a leper as his tutor, archdeacon William of Tyre, notes that he is impervious to pain as he and a group of friends compete at driving nails into their skin. The early stages of leprosy are diagnosed, and it is realised that Baldwin may well die young or be incapacitated from ruling. There are claims that it is a Divine punishment for Amalric breaking Church laws by marrying his cousin Agnes, Baldwin's mother.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel's niece Eudocia marries Roman noble, Odo Frangipani; Pope Alexander attends the wedding at Veroli, and writes to Louis VII of France urging him to marry his daughter Agnes to Manuel's son not Frederick's son as better ally.

PALESTINE

December. Saladin attacks Daron near Gaza, the principal castle defending the southern frontier; Amalric postpones his planned departure for Constantinople and hurries to the rescue, bringing the Patriarch and the 'True Cross'.

18 *December*. Amalric arrives at Ascalon; he marches to Gaza, where his Seneschal, Miles of Plancy takes over the defence as the Templar garrison joins Amalric to relieve Daron. Amalric relieves Daron, and Saladin dodges past his army and suddenly attacks Gaza; the undermanned walls

are stormed and the town sacked, but the citadel holds out and Saladin retires east as Amalric approaches; he crosses the Negev to (*late December*) take Aila, the port at the head of the Red Sea, and make the Moslem military route from Egypt to Syria safer.

Amalric writes to Archbishop Frederick of Tyre, on mission to the West, to ask him to invite Count Stephen of Sancerre (House of Blois-Champagne) to Jerusalem to marry Princess Sibylla; this commences the search for a male regent and eventual successor to the ailing Prince Baldwin.

Cast de Murols succeeds Gilbert d'Assailly as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ABBASID CALIPHATE

20 December. Death of Caliph Al-Mustadi, aged 28; succeeded by son Al-Mustali.

1171 BYZANTIUM/PALESTINE

Manuel sends envoys to Frederick to discuss his daughter Marai marrying Frederick's son Henry.

March. Manuel's offer of Princess Maria to William II of Sicily accepted, after earlier Sicilian negotiations with England for marriage.

10 March. Amalric leaves Palestine for Constantinople, calling in at Tripoli.

12 March. Manuel orders simultaneous arrest of all Venetians in Empire and seizure of property, some Venetians, particularly colony at Halmyros in Thessaly, escape and pillage islands en route home to plan revenge.

April. Amalric, the Bishop of Acre, and 'Marshal of the Court' Gerard of Pongi lead delegation to Constantinople for State visit, with recently retired Grand Master Philip of Mailly of the Templars. They are greeted at Gallipoli by Queen Maria's father John Comnenus (Manuel's nephew) and proceed overland to Heraclea and thence by sea to Boucoleon Harbour in the capital for ceremonial welcome, banquets, games, dancing-displays, and trip up Bosphorus followed by entertainments at Manuel's favourite, largely rebuilt Blachernae Palace; Amalric signs treaty recognizing Manuel as his overlord and giving assistance against Armenia in return for assistance against Egypt – Manuel can claim to have restored 'authority' in Syria and Palestine for first time since 630s, but link tenuous.

15 June Amalric's delegation leaves.

EGYPT

Spring. Saladin ignores Nur-ed-Din's orders to stop prayers being said in the name of the 'heretic' Caliph Al-Adid, a Shi'a, and restore the name

of the orthodox Sunni Caliph Al-Mustadi, as this could cause revolt; Nur-ed-Din is furious and (*August*) threatens to invade to see that his orders are carried out. On the first Friday of the new Moslem year a preacher from Mosul is allowed to read the prayers in the Sunni Caliph's name in the Grand Mosque in Cairo, as is done elsewhere; meanwhile the ailing Al-Adid is kept under guard in his palace.

August. Fatimid Caliph Al-Adid dies, aged 11, after Saladin refuses an invitation to his deathbed in case he will be attacked by plotters there; Saladin abolishes the Caliphate and restores Egypt's alliance to Caliph in Baghdad.

August/September. Saladin besieges Montreal in the lower Jordan valley, protecting the Christian route to Red Sea and cutting the Moslem route from Damascus to Cairo; as Nur-ed-Din approaches, en route to attack Kerak, Saladin raises the siege and says he cannot join his overlord due to need to reinforce his brothers' attack on the Christian kingdom of Nubia/Sudan beyond First Cataract. Nur-ed-Din is suspicious and speaks angrily of Saladin, but at the Egyptian ministers' council called to consider his hostile reaction Ayyub persuades his son Saladin to send apologies; these are accepted and (*September?*) Nur-ed-Din raids into Tripoli and Antioch in retaliation for the garrison of Lattakieh seizing an Egyptian ship. Safita and Araima are taken and Bohemund has to pay compensation before the Moslems will leave.

Odo of St. Amand, a Royal official, succeeds Philip of Mailly as Grand Master of the Templars.

SPAIN

Foundation of the knightly 'Order of Santiago' (St. James i.e. at his shrine of Compostella), by the granting of a formal 'Rule' for observance by the members, issued by visiting Papal legate Cardinal Jacinto (later Pope Celestine II). This proceeds to set up branches in the main kingdoms of the Iberian peninsula, principally Castile-Leon, Aragon and Portugal, with a 'Military Commander' in each kingdom and one overall Grand Master. The first of the latter is Pedro Fernandez de Castro (d. 1184). All candidates are required to show that their four grandparents are all of noble blood.

BYZANTIUM

September. Venetian fleet conquers Ragusa and sails into Aegean to pillage Euboea; renewed negotiations collapse and Venetians ravage and winter on Chios.

Henry 'the Lion', Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, arrives via Iconium at Constantinople en route home from Palestine after refusing hand of Amalric's daughter Sibylla (likely heiress as Amalric's son Baldwin a leper).

Byzantine/Seljuk alliance against Danishmends, as famine hits Pontus.

Manuel sends envoys to France to persuade Louis VII to marry daughter Agnes to Prince Alexius.

1172 BYZANTIUM

Frederick's envoy Conrad; Bishop of Worms, joins Manuel and Henry for talks.

Spring. Manuel calls off the Sicilian marriage-alliance at last minute; William II, at Taranto awaiting his bride, swears revenge.

SYRIA

Nur-ed-Din ransoms Raymond of Tripoli for 80,000 dinars, handing him over when 50,000 has been paid; King Amalric and the Hospitallers raise this and when Raymond returns to Tripoli he fails to find the rest.

ITALY

'Doge' Michiel of Venice lynched in riot; succeeded by Sebastiano Ziani, ex-envoy to Manuel.

PALESTINE

Jobert of Syria succeeds Cast de Murols as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1173 BYZANTIUM/HUNGARY

Death of King Stephen III; Hungarian envoys ask Manuel to send them Prince Béla-Alexius and he agrees; the Prince installed as King Béla III by Byzantine army led by Emperor's nephew John.

Byzantine-German negotiations stall; *1 April* Christian de Mayence and army besiege Byzantine-held Ancona while Doge Ziani leads fleet in Venetian naval blockade; Manuel's Italian marital allies the Frangipani lead army to relieve Ancona.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Amalric enters Cilicia to fight Mleh on Manuel's behalf, but achieves little.

In his absence, Nur-ed-Din invades Oultrejordan and summons Saladin to help.

Saladin brings an army to besiege Kerak during the absence of its lord, Stephanie of Oultrejordan's second husband Miles of Plancy (the Royal

Seneschal), with the King. Humphrey (II) of Toron marches to its relief and Saladin retires, claiming to be ill; Nur-ed-Din takes up the siege, but as Humphrey's army approaches he has to withdraw. He blames Saladin for not staying to assist him, and the death (*August*) of his ally at Saladin's court, the latter's father Najm-ed-Din Ayyub, ends hopes of a reconciliation; Nur-ed-Din plans to invade Egypt in 1174.

Kilij Arslan sends envoys to Nur-ed-Din offering alliance against Byzantium and promising to leave Sebastea to Danishmend.

EGYPT

As Nur-ed-Din threatens to invade; Saladin sends brother Turan Shah to attack Sudan as a possible refuge and Copts slaughtered en route; Saladin's forces then turn on Yemen and establish 'Ayyubid' (dynastic title as Saladin son of Ayyub) rule.

SYRIA

Autumn. The new Shaikh of the 'Assassins since 1169, Rashid-ed-Din, sends envoys to Amalric to propose an alliance against Nur-ed-Din. He agrees and promises to persuade the Templars of Tortosa to cancel their tribute-demands on local pro-'Assassin' (Nusayri sect) villages. But as the envoys are returning to the Syrian mountains a Templar knight, Walter of Mesnil, ambushes and kills them, apparently at the Grand Master Odo's instigation to wreck the alliance. Odo refuses to hand Walter over to Amalric for trial and says that Templar rules mean that only the Pope can judge them. Amalric marches on Sidon during a Templar meeting there, marches into Odo's residence, and kidnaps Walter at sword-point; the 'Assassins' accept his apologies and Amalric plans to ask the Pope to dissolve the arrogant and autonomous Order.

1174 SYRIA

15 May. Sudden death of Nur-ed-Din while preparing Egyptian campaign at Damascus, aged 56/7; succeeded by 11-year-old son As-Salih Ismail; Saladin, as governor of Egypt, and governor Gumushtekin of Aleppo claim regency but governor Ibn-al-Muqaddam of Damascus holds the new ruler and the capital. Nur-ed-Din's nephew Saif-ed-Din of Mosul seizes 'Jazirah' cities including Nisibis and Edessa/Urfa.

SYRIA/PALESTINE/EGYPT

June. Amalric advances north as far as Banyas, where Ibn-all-Muqaddam arrives to buy him off with all the Christian prisoners in Damascus and an alliance against Saladin; he agrees, possibly due to early effects of an attack of dysentery which forces him to return to Jerusalem in a litter.

11 July. Death of Amalric at Jerusalem, aged 38; invalid son Baldwin IV succeeds, aged 13, under unofficial regency of the Seneschal, Miles of Plancy, husband of Stephanie of Oultrejordan.

15 July. Coronation of Baldwin by Patriarch Aimery.

Miles' enemies, led by the Constable Humphrey (II) of Toron and Reynald of Sidon, lodge a claim for the regency on behalf of their candidate Count Raymond of Tripoli, cousin of the King and recently married to the Lady Eschiva of Galilee.

25 July. A large Sicilian fleet under Tancred of Lecce, illegitimate son of the late King Roger II, arrives at Alexandria, without Byzantine support due to the quarrel over William II not receiving Princess Maria as promised in 1172. Saladin arrives to lead the defence (*1 August*) and they sail off.

Queen Maria Comnena retires to her dower-estates at Nablus; she soon marries Balian of Ibelin, son of Balian 'the Old', lord of Ibelin, and brother of Hugh (lord of Ramleh through his mother) and Baldwin. They become the focus for a faction centred on the succession-claims of Maria and Amalric's daughter Isabella, now aged 4, and opposed to Baldwin IV's powerful mother Agnes and her daughter Sibylla.

November? The 'High Court' of Jerusalem finally hears the lawsuit by Raymond of Tripoli for the regency, after delays caused by Miles; it decides in Raymond's favour and he takes up regency. A few weeks later Miles is murdered in an alleyway in Acre – leaving Stephanie and her lands vacant for a new husband, who as luck has it will turn out to be ruinous for the Kingdom in 1187.

Autumn. As-Salih of Damascus flees threat of Saladin's attack to take refuge with Gumushtekin at Aleppo; Ibn-al-Muqaddam appeals in vain to Saif-ed-Din of Mosul to send troops to help him. The rioting populace of Damascus insist that he send for Saladin to take over command, and Saladin rides with 700 cavalry through Oultrejordan before the Christians can intercept him; *26 November* he arrives outside Damascus and stays overnight at his father Ayyub's old residence.

27 November. Saladin enters Damascus to popular acclaim; Ibn-al-Muqaddam hands over the citadel. He installs his brother Toghtekin as governor, and marches north; Gumushtekin appeals for Crusader help to save Aleppo.

9 December. Saladin enters Homs; he moves on north via Hama.

30 December. Saladin starts the siege of Aleppo; As-Salih appeals to the citizens personally and rallies their defence.

ARMENIA

? Mleh deposed by his nephew Rupen III, son of Prince Andronicus' murder-victim Stephen.

1175 | BYZANTIUM

? With his protector Nur-ed-Din dead, Prince Andronicus and his mistress Theodora Comnena move to Pontus and are given a fortress not far from Trebizond by local Turks.

Manuel marches troops into Phrygia and builds a new fortress at Sublaeum to protect area from raids, rebuilds fortress at Dorylaeum, and unsuccessfully sends forces to Neocaesarea and Amasea to reclaim them from Seljuks who refuse to leave; he considers evicting Seljuks from Anatolia and writes to the Pope about new crusade on his own behalf.

SYRIA

Saladin's siege of Aleppo continues, and As-Salih sends for help to Count Raymond and to the 'Assassins'; the latter send agents to infiltrate Saladin's camp who are killed trying to storm his tent.

1 February. Raymond's attacks Homs and tries to storm the walls; Saladin abandons the siege of Aleppo and moves south as Raymond retreats; (*April*) Saladin forces Homs to accept his rule. In gratitude to Raymond, Gumushtekin releases Aleppo prisoners including Reynald of Châtillon, who returns to Palestine to marry the Lady Stephanie of Oultrejourdan and lead aggressive 'war party' of barons, and Joscelin of Courtenay who returns to the Court at Jerusalem to assist his sister Agnes (the King's mother) in anti-Ibelin intrigues.

Saif-ed-Din of Mosul sends an army to Aleppo to assist Gumushtekin, and Saladin tries to lure the latter to abandon this alliance by offering him Hama and Homs; this is refused. Saladin routs the combined army of Aleppo and Mosul in an ambush near Hama and arranges a truce.

SPAIN

8 July. Bull of Pope Alexander III recognises the new Knightly Order of Santiago; it adopts the 'rule' of the Augustinian canons, which is less demanding than the Cistercian 'rule' followed by most of the other Orders.

ITALY

Treaty between Venice and Sicily aimed against Byzantium.

PERSIA

Death of Seljuk Sultan Arslan II of Iraq, succeeded by son Tughril.

1176 | ITALY

Spring. William of Sicily's marriage to Princess Joan of England arranged.

SYRIA

Saladin announces his independence of titular overlord As-Salih, who he claims has ignored his offer of loyalty and listened to his enemies, and sends to the Caliph in Baghdad for recognition as independent Sultan; *May*. He receives royal robes from the Sultan and starts to mint coins in his own name as ruler of Egypt and Syria.

March. Saif-ed-Din of Mosul marches on Aleppo; Saladin heads north to confront him and (*11 April*) they cross the Orontes near Hama during an eclipse.

21 April. Saif-ed-Din arrives at Saladin's camp 20 miles from Aleppo, before the latter is ready to fight, but hesitates; *22 April* he advances to find Saladin ready for battle, and Saladin's men hold his first assault. Saladin counter-attacks with the reserves, and by evening the enemy are in flight. Saif-ed-Din flees to Mosul, and Saladin takes his treasure to reward his men but is defied as he reaches the walls of Aleppo. He moves off to take Menbij, en route to the Euphrates valley, and besieges Azaz which (*21 June*) surrenders.

24 June. Saladin besieges As-Salih in Aleppo again; truce as As-Salih and his Ortoqid allies agree to recognise all Saladin's conquests; *29 July* treaty signed.

August? Saladin marches into the mountains to besiege the main 'Assassin' stronghold, Masyaf, while Shaikh Sinan is absent; he cannot take the castle, Sinan eludes an ambush, and Saladin's troops are unnerved by the Shaikh's reputed magic powers; after Saladin finds an 'Assassin' dagger and threatening message in his tent he agrees to a treaty and leaves for Damascus.

While Saladin is away at Aleppo Raymond of Tripoli raids the Buqaia and fights Saladin's governor of Baalbek, Ibn al-Muqaddam; King Baldwin and the Jerusalem army join him and they defeat Saladin's brother Turan Shah and the garrison of Damascus. They retire as Saladin returns south.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel's cousin Andronicus Vatatzes leads army to Pontus to restore Danishmend rule to Sebastea; Manuel leads large army into Thraceseion and up the Maeander valley onto Anatolian plateau to head for Iconium and drive out Seljuks and apparently considers but calls off a naval expedition to Egypt which Reynald of Chatillon has requested.

September. Andronicus Vatatzes defeated and killed by Seljuk army outside Neocaesarea/Niksar, and head sent to Sultan; Manuel leaves Sublaeum to cross the hills towards Iconium but finds the Seljuk army waiting at Myriocephalum fortress at end of the Tzibritze Pass; *17 September* his vanguard enters the pass and the rest of army follows with

inadequate scouting, but once Byzantines are strung out along the pass Turkish cavalry charges down from the hills to attack the length of column; Byzantine counter-charge is defeated and Manuel's brother-in-law Baldwin of Antioch is killed; Manuel panics and flees, and the Turks cut army to pieces at their leisure as retreating Byzantines blunder into baggage-train.

Kilij Arslan sends envoys offering peace in return for demolition of Sublaeum and Dorylaeum; Manuel agrees and leads remnants of army to safety, humiliatingly escorted by Kilij Arslan's Turcomans; however, once he is safe Manuel insists that he needs Dorylaeum to defend Bithynia and only demolishes Sublaeum.

PALESTINE

September. Saladin returns to Egypt.

October. William, eldest son of Count William of Montferrat (northern Italy), cousin and probably the candidate of King Louis VII of France, arrives at Sidon to marry Baldwin IV's sister and heiress Sibylla; it is assumed that they will succeed the leper King. William receives Ascalon and Jaffa, the southern frontier of Kingdom, as dowry.

? Amalric's widow Maria Comnena marries Palestinian baron, Balian of Ibelin.

1177 BYZANTIUM

Early. Manuel leads a new army into Maeander valley and Turks retreat; Andronicus Angelus, son of his aunt Theodora Comnena, and Manuel Cantacuzene are sent to Charax to pursue Turks but when they separate Andronicus panics and flees a small band of Turks thinking they are the main army; Cantacuzene retakes Chonae, main defence of the valley, and Manuel threatens to parade Andronicus through capital dressed as a woman.

Manuel promises Jerusalem another fleet to aid Egyptian campaign.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

Baldwin IV comes of age and Count Raymond of Tripoli ends his regency.

June. Death of William of Montferrat of malaria, leaving Sibylla pregnant; son Baldwin (V) born later in the *Summer*.

September. 'Great Heteriarch' John Ducas, Andronicus Angelus, George Sianiates, and Count Alexander of Gravina lead Byzantine fleet (70 vessels) to Acre to join Crusader fleet from west under Count Philip of Flanders.

Baldwin IV is ill with malaria, and the local barons quarrel with Philip over plan of campaign; Baldwin offers Philip the regency if he will lead expedition to Egypt, to no avail as Philip says he is here on pilgrimage not for sole command of a difficult war. Baldwin offers him co-leadership by Reynad of Chatillon, but Philip does not trust the latter's competence and as he is accused of prevaricating he admits his main purpose is to arrange the marriage of his protégés, the sons of Robert of Bethune, to Baldwin's sisters. The barons, led by Baldwin of Ibelin, object as Philip suggests this to the 'High Court', and the expedition is abandoned; the annoyed Byzantine ambassadors complain at the lack of commitment to the expedition and their fleet sails home.

Late October. Philip leaves Jerusalem for Tripoli; he joins Raymond for an attack on Hama and Baldwin IV sends troops to help them, but a raid on Homs loses all its loot to a counter-attack as it makes its way back. As Moslem reinforcements arrive from Damascus the army returns to Tripoli, and Philip goes on to Antioch to assist Bohemund III in a mid-winter attack on Harenc (whose garrison is disaffected against As-Salih for executing their commander, Gumushtekin). Harenc holds out, As-Salih advances, and the attack is abandoned.

Roger de Moulins succeeds Jobert of Syria as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

Pope Alexander sends his physician, Master Philip, east towards Asia with a personal letter to 'Prester John', presumed Christian emperor of the Indies, requesting aid for the states of Outremer against the Moslems. He goes to Jerusalem, and then apparently decides that 'Prester John' is in Africa not Asia (probably due to contact with Ethiopian clerics in Palestine) and is last heard of heading up the Nile.

1178 BYZANTIUM/SYRIA

? Manuel's niece Theodora, daughter of John Comnenus and sister of Queen-Mother Maria of Jerusalem, marries Bohemund III of Antioch.

1179 BYZANTIUM

Manuel's late brother Isaac's daughter Eudocia is sent west to marry brother of Alfonso II of Aragon, and on hearing of his marriage to a rival (possibly thanks to Frederick Barbarossa) is betrothed to William of Montpellier; the Byzantine ambassadors en route to Montpellier call in at Montferrat to negotiate alliance with Count William, father of late William who married Sibylla of Jerusalem; Manuel's daughter Maria betrothed to William's younger son Renier; marriage-negotiations with France concluded successfully.

ABBASID CALIPHATE

30 March. Death of Caliph Al-Mustali; succeeded by brother Al-Nasir, aged 21.

PALESTINE

Philip of Flanders returns to Jerusalem for Easter, and then leaves for Constantinople.

April. King Baldwin leads the army out to intercept Moslem herdsmen as they move their flocks of sheep to new pastures around Mount Hermon; Saladin sends his nephew Faruk Shah to investigate and (*10 April*) he ambushes the Christian army near Banyas. Constable Humphrey (II) of Toron saves the King from capture by holding up the enemy while he retreats, but is mortally wounded and (*22 April*) dies at Hunin castle; Amalric of Lusignan, a minor Poitevin baron and alleged lover of the King's mother Agnes, is made Constable.

Saladin besieges 'Jacob's Ford' castle, but is repulsed and retires to attack Banyas; (*late May?*) his raiders invade Galilee and destroy the crops in the Litanei valley down to the plain south of Beirut, and the King marches north to repulse them and sends for Raymond of Tripoli. The Royal army advances via Tiberias to Toron and then move to intercept Faruk Shah with a party of returning raiders at Marj Ayun, valley between the upper Litanei and Jordan. Saladin notices their cavalry disturbing the flocks in the valley from his post above Banyas and hurries to attack them.

10 June. Battle of Marj Ayun; the Royal army catches and routs Faruk Shah, but Count Raymond and the Templars move ahead of the others and blunder into Saladin's troops in the upper Jordan valley. The Templars charge and are driven back, and they retreat to the main army; Saladin attacks and the confused Royal troops panic and break; the Christian leadership flees to Beaufort Castle, and some fugitives head on into the coastal plain where their news dissuades the advancing Reynald of Sidon from mounting a rescue-mission. Without his troops to rally them the Christians are picked off and many are killed, and Grand Master Odo of the Temple, Hugh of Tiberias, and Baldwin of Ibelin (Balian's brother) are captured and held for exorbitant ransoms. Odo refuses to be ransomed so as not to weaken the Order, and later dies in prison in Damascus; (*August?*) Baldwin is released in exchange for 1,000 Moslem prisoners and a promise to find his ransom, but on his return to Jerusalem his new fiancée, Princess Sibylla, says that she cannot marry him until he finds the money.

BYZANTIUM

August. Renier arrives in Constantinople and assists Manuel in expedition against the Turks; Kilij Arslan sends embassy to Frederick

suggesting a daughter of his marries one of Frederick's sons (and alliance against Byzantium?).

September. Archbishop William of Tyre arrives in Constantinople en route home from Pope's Lateran Council and discussions with Manuel are followed by imperial envoys accompanying him to Antioch and Jerusalem.

Autumn. 23 ships from Montpellier escort Louis VII's daughter Agnes to Constantinople; she is engaged to Prince Alexius and renamed 'Anna'.

1180 BYZANTIUM

January. Manuel and Renier arrive in capital.

February. Renier marries Princess Maria and renamed 'John' and becomes 'Caesar'; given rights over Thessalonica, probably tax-revenues from land as 'pronoia'; Renier's elder brother Conrad visits him.

Sunday 2 March. Princess Agnes/Anna married to Prince Alexius in Trullan Hall of Palace, followed by festivities and Hippodrome Games.

PALESTINE

Early. Baldwin of Ibelin journeys to Constantinople to successfully request money from Manuel to pay off his ransom and free him from financial embarrassment so he can marry Princess Sibylla.

King Baldwin suggests a truce to Saladin after a Moslem raid on Galilee; due to a winter of famine Saladin agrees.

Arnold of Torroja, a Spanish (Aragonese) knight, is elected Grand Master of the Templars to replace Odo.

February/March? Arrival in Jerusalem of the Poitevin knight Guy of Lusignan, in early/mid-twenties, at the invitation of his older brother Amalric of Lusignan the new Constable. Amalric, married to Eschiva of Ibelin (daughter of Baldwin and niece of Balian), and his mistress the Lady Agnes (nee Courtenay), King Baldwin's mother, are planning to marry him off to Princess Sibylla to thwart the Ibelin marriage-plan.

Sibylla agrees to marry Guy before Baldwin returns.

Easter. Sibylla and Guy are married, and Baldwin returns too late to stop it. This represents a victory for the Lusignan-Courtenay faction over the Ibelins, and the bad feeling (and Guy's weak character) will undermine national unity in the crises of 1183–7. Guy receives the fiefs of Asclaon and Jaffa, on the Kingdom's southern frontier.

May. Two-year truce agreed between Baldwin IV and Saladin; excludes Tripoli where Saladin now raids the Buqaia and his Egyptian fleet raids Tortosa, and Count Raymond soon arranges a truce too.

SYRIA

29 June. Death of Saif-ed-Din of Mosul, succeeded by brother Izz-ed-Din; Saladin travels to the Euphrates to mediate between Seljuk Sultan Kilij Arslan and the latter's son-in-law Nur-ed-Din the Ortoqid of Mardin, and (*2 October*) holds a conference of the local Ortoqid princes and Seljuk and Armenian ambassadors at Samosata; a two-year truce is agreed.

BYZANTIUM

Late Summer. Nicephorus Paleologus, commander in Pontus, kidnaps Andronicus' mistress Theodora and uses her to force Andronicus to give himself up; Andronicus comes to Constantinople and theatrically prostrates himself before Manuel wearing chains and announcing penitence; Manuel forgives him and sends him to Oenoe in Pontus as governor.

FRANCE

18 September. Death of the Crusader King Louis VII, aged 59; succeeded by his son by his third marriage, Philip II ('Augustus'), aged 15.

BYZANTIUM

September. Manuel's condition deteriorates; he reluctantly names Empress Maria, Patriarch and his daughter Maria, Renier, his bastard son Alexius the 'protostrator', and his nephew Alexius the 'protosebastos' (son of Andronicus, brother of John, uncle of Queen Maria) as regents; *24 September* he takes monastic vows and dies, aged probably 61/62, after a 37-year reign.

PALESTINE

October. Betrothal of the Princess Isabella to Humphrey of Toron, the son of the Lady Stephanie of Oultrejordan (by the late Constable Humphrey II of Toron) and stepdaughter of Reynald of Chatillon; as Isabella is Balian of Ibelin's stepdaughter King Baldwin intends this to reconcile the Ibelins and Reynald's faction. As Isabella is only 7 or 8 the marriage is postponed for three years.

6 October. Death of Patriarch Amalric.

16 October. The canons of the Holy Sepulchre name as one of their two candidates Archbishop Heraclius of Caesarea, a handsome but semi-literate Auvergne canon who is the candidate (and possibly ex-lover) of the King's mother the Lady Agnes. The choice between the final two is down to the King, who names Heraclius at Agnes' suggestion despite the protests of his ex-tutor Archbishop William of Tyre.

SYRIA

Autumn. Bohemund III deserts his wife, Theodora Comnena; excommunicated.

1181 BYZANTIUM

As Alexius the ‘protosebastos’ concentrates power in his hands with Dowager Empress Maria’s encouragement, Manuel’s daughter Princess Maria and Renier conspire with Alexius the ‘protostrator’ and Prince Andronicus’ sons Manuel and John; popular opinion condemns the Frankish Dowager Empress as a foreign agent and Alexius’ mistress.

Plotters plan to murder ‘protosebastos’, but they are betrayed and Princess Maria and Renier flee to Hagia Sophia and are given sanctuary by Patriarch; they hire Georgian and Italian soldiers.

Good Friday, 10 April. Hagia Sophia attacked by mob incited by the ‘protostrator’; citizens rise to aid Patriarch and besiege the Palace until driven off.

9 May. The cathedral is surrounded and Patriarch negotiates truce whereby rebels surrender but are not punished.

May–June. Prisoner-exchange arranged with Saladin in Egypt; *Autumn* truce follows.

June. As leading rioters are put on trial, Andronicus starts to gather army, encouraged by letters from capital.

ARMENIA/PALESTINE

Spring. Prince Rupen of Armenia on pilgrimage to Jerusalem; he marries Isabella of Toron, daughter of the Lady Stephanie of Oultrejordan and stepdaughter of Reynald of Chatillon.

April. Patriarch Heraclius, an ally of Sibylla and Guy, excommunicates his ecclesiastical rival Archbishop William of Tyre (the historian), King Baldwin’s ex-tutor, on a legal excuse.

Summer. Reynald of Chatillon raids east into Arabia as far as the Taima oasis, on the pilgrim-route to Mecca; he sacks a passing caravan and carries off loot. Saladin sends his nephew Faruk Shah, governor of Damascus, to raid Oultrejordan; Saladin complains to King Baldwin at the breach of treaty but Baldwin cannot force Reynald to return the loot. In retaliation, Saladin arrests a party of 1,500 Christian pilgrims whose ships are driven ashore by bad weather near Damietta and holds them as hostages until compensation is paid.

ITALY

Papal Bull ‘Cor Nostrum’ calls for a new Crusade.

30 August. Death of Pope Alexander III; 1 September Ubaldo Allucingoli elected (Lucius III).

SYRIA

4 December. Death of As-Salih of Aleppo, aged 18, allegedly poisoned; at his request cousin Izz-ed-Din of Mosul takes over to resist Saladin but when he arrives in Aleppo he refuses an offer of alliance by the Emir of Hama against Saladin sooner than break the current truce.

1182 SYRIA

February. Plot against Izz-ed-Din by his brother Imad ed-Din of Sanjar, who asserts his right to more of the Zengid dominions and allies with Kukburi the commander-in-chief of Aleppo.

BYZANTIUM

Andronicus Angelus and family lead exodus of 'protostrator's enemies to join Andronicus Comnenus as he marches on capital; he is held up by Andronicus Contostephanus' fleet in the Bosphorus. Andronicus insists that the regent must resign and Dowager Empress retire to monastery; after stalemate Contostephanus leads fleet to join Andronicus and April Andronicus' partisans join mob to open the prisons and seize capital; 'protostrator' Alexius is arrested, blinded, and sent to monastery and the mob ransacks the Latin quarter, killing around 4,000 people including women, children and Papal legate; surviving Latins escape to ships, sack the Princes's Islands in retaliation, and sail to Italy. The massacre increases anti-Byzantine feeling in Italy.

Andronicus crosses Bosphorus to savour his triumph as the new regent.

PALESTINE

Spring. Faruk Shah raids into Galilee and takes cattle and 1,000 prisoners in advance to Mount Tabor.

11 May. Saladin leaves Cairo for Damascus. He links up with Faruk Shah, who now besieges the rock fortress of Habis Jalduk overlooking the River Yarmuk (east of the Jordan) and forces surrender.

11 July. Saladin leaves Damascus with a large army; he raids south of the Sea of Galilee, and Baldwin brings the Christian army back from Oultrejordan to confront him near Belvoir castle; there is a drawn battle before Saladin returns across the Jordan.

SYRIA

May. Izz-ed-Din hands over Aleppo to brother Imad-ed-Din of Sanjar as pressurised by his general Kukburi, and returns to Mosul; Imad-ed-Din

gives him Sanjar, and Kukburi is rewarded with Harran. Kukburi now allies with the Ortoqid princes of Hisn Kaifa and Birjek against the Zengids, and secretly allies with Saladin.

BYZANTIUM

16 May, Pentecost. Alexius II crowned, and Andronicus swears to protect him as regent and carries him back to Palace on shoulders.

SYRIA

August. Saladin raids across the Lebanese mountains from Damascus to attack Beirut; his Egyptian fleet arrives offshore in co-ordinated plan, but Bishop Odo leads the defence and as King Baldwin arrives with the Christian army Saladin retires.

November. Expiry of local truce in the ‘Jazirah’; Saladin invades, and crosses the Euphrates via his new Ortoqid allies’ lands at Birejek; he takes Edesssa/Urfa and Nisibis.

Saladin besieges Izz-ed-Din in Mosul (*10 November*) but has to retire as Caliph Al-Nasir and Seljuk Sultan Tughril approach; he takes Sanjar.

Izz-ed-Din brings an army to confront Saladin, but retires when the latter refuses a truce; Saladin leaves him for the moment and takes Diyarbakir instead.

Autumn. While Saladin is in the north, Reynald of Chatillon leads an expedition across Oultrejordan to the head of the Red Sea, carrying timber from Moab ready to construct ships for a naval raid down the Red Sea. They take the fortress of Aila (near Eilat), and Reynald besieges the island fortress offshore while most of his men sail down the Red Sea – the first Christian presence there since the 7th century – to sack the Nubian port of Aidib, end of the pilgrim- and trade-route from Egypt to the crossing to Mecca. They sack a large Egyptian caravan and cross to the Arabian coast to sack Al-Hawra and Yamba, the ports of Medina.

November. Death of Faruk Shah, Saladin’s nephew and governor of Damascus, while his uncle is campaigning in the ‘Jazirah’. Lured by the promise of Banyas and 10,000 dinars a year as allies by an embassy from Mosul, King Baldwin and the army of Jerusalem invade the Hauran as far as Bosra; Raymond of Tripoli retakes Habis Jaldak.

Early December. Raymond raids to Bosra; Baldwin and the Royal army march as far as the suburbs of Damascus. Baldwin retires to Tyre for Christmas.

1183

PALESTINE

? William of Tyre, undermined by his enemies at Baldwin IV’s court, goes to Rome to plead his cause against excommunication.

Early. Reynald's pirates proceed to Ar-Raghib, one of the ports of Mecca, and sink a pilgrim-ship offshore; Saladin is humiliated at the outrage and his brother Al-Adil, governor of Egypt, sends his admiral, Emir Husam ed-Din Lulu, to round up the raiders. He retakes Aila after Reynald has left for Oultrejordan, and his fleet defeats the raiders off Al-Howra; the survivors are taken prisoner and sent to Cairo for execution, except for some who are taken to Mecca for public execution at the Islamic holy site of Mina during the next 'Hajj'. Saladin reputedly promises to kill Reynald for his blasphemous outrage, which he does in 1187.

Early Spring? Baldwin IV falls seriously ill at Nazareth and the army is immobilised without a leader; Bohemund III of Antioch sends to Saladin to organise a four-year truce. Saladin accepts and takes the opportunity to attack Imad-ed-Din in Aleppo.

Baldwin IV recovers partially from his illness, but is now unable to walk or use his arms and is a total invalid. Sibylla and Guy take control of the government of Jerusalem, with Sibylla and her mother Agnes (Amalric's first wife) and Patriarch Heraclius guarding the sick King; Guy is to command all the Kingdom's possessions except the city of Jerusalem which the King will retain. The barons reluctantly accept the arrangement.

12 June. Imad-ed-Din signs treaty of surrender with Saladin. He is to rule a reduced fief of Sanjar, Nisibis, and other towns in the 'Jazirah' and leaves Aleppo (*17 June*) jeered by the crowds.

18 June. Saladin enters Aleppo to take control.

24 August. Saladin returns to Damascus.

BYZANTIUM

September. The regent Andronicus seizes power and becomes co-Emperor; he soon has his junior colleague Alexius II privately murdered, and Empress Maria (sister of Bohemund III) is strangled and Alexius' sister Maria and her husband Renier of Montferrat are poisoned. The death of Renier, brother of Sibylla of Jerusalem's late husband William, arguably is a major cause of the hostility of his brother Boniface of Montferrat to the Empire in 1203–4 – and his alleged grant of Thessalonica will be used in Boniface's claim to rule that city.

SYRIA/ARMENIA

? Rupen takes over the neighbouring Armenian principality of the Hethoumid family of Lampron, the main rivals of his family.

PALESTINE

17 September. Saladin leaves Damascus to invade Palestine; *24 September* he crosses the Jordan south of Lake Galilee to take Beisan, whose inhabitants flee to Tiberias.

Guy, Raymond of Tripoli, Reynald of Sidon, Reynald of Chatillon, Balian of Ibelin and his relatives, Walter of Caesarea, and the visiting Duke Godfrey of Brabant and Ralph of Mouleon prepare the Kingdom's defences. Humphrey of Toron, bringing the forces of Oultrejordan to join the main army, is defeated in an ambush on Mount Gilboa.

Saladin sacks the forts and Greek Orthodox convent on Mount Tabor but cannot capture the citadel and moves on to Jezreel (Tubaniya)

1 October. The main army of the Kingdom leaves Jerusalem to attack Saladin. Saladin clashes with the Kingdom's army, attacking Guy's brother Amalric's vanguard which the Ibelins rescue; the Christians camp at the 'Pool of Goliath' and a five-day stalemate follows. Raymond prefers to avoid battle, Reynald of Chatillon wants an attack, and Guy dithers.

8 October. Saladin retires beyond the Jordan; the Christian army returns to Jerusalem with the barons angry with Guy for weak leadership; Guy refuses Baldwin's offer of military and civilian command in Jerusalem in return for handing the more secure Tyre (which an invalid can rule easier) over to him.

Unpopular with the barons, Guy is deposed from the regency by a baronial council meeting; quarrelling with Sibylla, he retires to his fief of Ascalon and Jaffa.

1184 PALESTINE

23 March. Baldwin IV proclaims Sibylla's son by her first marriage, Baldwin (V) aged 6, as his heir; the government will thus fall to Sibylla and her choice of assistants and could exclude Guy. Guy refuses to swear allegiance to his stepson and is deposed from his fief of Jaffa by a council including Bohemund III, Raymond of Triploi, and the Ibelins.

Guy holds out in Ascalon.

The Grand Masters of the Orders and Patriarch Heraclius attempt to intercede for Guy but are ordered to leave Court; they are to leave for Europe to preach a Crusade but do not do so for a few months. The subsequent offer of the crown by Heraclius to the King's cousin Henry II of England shows that he is attempting to avert Baldwin V's accession and a long regency.

SPAIN/MOROCCO

29 July. Death of the Almohad Caliph, Abu Yaqub Yusuf, aged 49, after a 21-year reign; succeeded by his son, Abu Yusuf Yaqub, aged 24.

PALESTINE

30 September. Death of Grand Master Arnold of the Templars at Verona during the European fund-raising and recruit-collecting tour.

November. The marriage of Princess Isabella, aged 13, and Humphrey of Toron, heir to Oultrejordan, is arranged to take place at Kerak at its custodian Reynald of Chatillon's request. Most of the principal lords in Palestine and Queen Maria Comnena arrive for the celebrations, and Saladin chooses this time to mount an attack on the castle.

20 November. Saladin besieges Kerak during the wedding-festivities, and storms the town; Reynald manages to get back into the castle despite close pursuit as one of his knights holds the bridge over the castle ditch single-handed until it can be destroyed. The festivities continue, and the bridegroom's mother Stephanie sends out some of the fare to Saladin.

The King, in a litter, and Count Raymond advance from Jerusalem to relieve Kerak; *4 December* Saladin leaves for Damascus, and the King's army arrives to evacuate the wedding-party.

ITALY

Manuel I's nephew Alexius 'the Cupbearer', brother of Queen Maria of Jerusalem, and other exiles arrive at William II's court to encourage him to invade the Eastern Empire.

PALESTINE

Autumn. Guy massacres Moslem herdsmen who are pasturing their flocks near Ascalon, in contravention of the right of access they were granted in *1153(?)*; the perturbed Baldwin IV, now weakening, sends for Raymond of Tripoli to assist his government as more cautious and less likely to provoke a war than Guy.

1185 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Isaac Ducas Comnenus, son of Irene daughter of Manuel I's elder brother Isaac, ransomed from Armenian captivity by Emperor and the Templars but fearing for his safety, sails to Cyprus and presents forged imperial letters making him governor.

Around 350 Sicilian ships, commanded by William II's cousin Tancred of Lecce, sail from Sicily as Andronicus hears rumours and sends David Comnenus to command Thessalonica and son-in-law Romanus and John Branas to Dyrrachium; troops start to desert.

ENGLAND

29 January. At Reading, Patriarch Heraclius makes an offer of the Kingdom of Jerusalem to King Henry II and presents him with the keys

of the city and of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre; presumably the intention is to secure an adult ruler rather than risking the perils of a long regency for Baldwin IV's 7/8-year-old nephew, Princess Sibylla's son Baldwin. The probability of Heraclius' foe Count Raymond of Tripoli gaining the regency may also weigh with him. Henry's great-grandfather Count Fulk of Anjou abdicated to go to Jerusalem as husband to the heiress and next King, and Henry calls a meeting of all senior barons to discuss the offer.

10 February. Dedication of the new round church of the 'Temple' off Fleet Street, London, built on the model of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, at the new Templar headquarters in England; carried out by Patriarch Heraclius.

10 March. Majority opinion at the council held at St. John's, Clerkenwell is against Henry abdicating and he is reminded of his coronation oath to protect his subjects; he turns the offer down.

PALESTINE

Gerard of Ridefort elected Grand Master of the Templars.

February? The chronically sick Baldwin IV, now virtually incapacitated, announces to a council of barons that the successor to Jerusalem will be his sister Sibylla's 8-year-old son Baldwin (V), under the regency of Count Raymond of Tripoli as nearest male kin; the boy's stepfather Guy of Lusignan is denied the office as rash and unpopular, but Raymond refuses to be the next King's personal guardian lest he die and Raymond be accused of poisoning him for the throne: the seneschal and distant Royal relative Joscelin of Courtenay is to be Baldwin V's guardian. An oath is taken by all the Kingdom's feudatories that if Baldwin V dies before the age of 10 Raymond will be regent until Kings Henry II (England) and Philip II (France), Emperor Frederick 'Barbarossa', and the Pope arbitrate on the rival claims of Sibylla and her half-sister Isabella. Patriarch Heraclius, Grand Master Roger of the Hospitallers, and the newly-arrived new Templar Grand Master Gerard of Ridefort agree; Heraclius crowns Baldwin V in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, with Balian of Ibelin carrying the boy.

March. Death of Baldwin IV aged 24; Baldwin V succeeds under regency of Raymond of Tripoli; 4-year truce arranged with Saladin, with winter of famine making peace expedient.

April. Saladin attacks Izz-ed-Din the Zengid of Mosul, who sends for help to Sultan Kilij Arslan and obtains troops from the Seljuks of Hamadan. Emir Kukburi of Harran comes to his friend Saladin's aid, but their siege of Mosul is stalled as their troops suffer in the summer heat.

BYZANTIUM

Sicilian fleet lands in Epirus; *24 June* Dyrrachium surrenders; land-army advances along Via Egnatia to Thessalonica unopposed, as fleet sails through Aegean and incompetent governor David Comnenus does nothing; *6 August* land-army arrives at Thessalonica; *15 August* fleet arrives.

John Comnenus leads reinforcements from Constantinople, but dallies en route as troops desert and 'Great Domestic' Alexius Gidus sent with second army; Gidus reaches Thessalonica but fails to break siege. Rumours of plot to betray Thessalonica by German colony; *23–4 August* mines under walls fired by Normans and walls breached.

24 August. Fall and sack of Thessalonica; David Comnenus flees to citadel, surrenders and is held hostage with Bishop Eustathius; the population is massacred and shrine of St Demetrius looted.

Normans advance into Thrace as Gidus retreats, Tancred's fleet sails to Hellespont.

Andronicus withdraws to Meludion Palace on east side of Bosphorus and orders all his prisoners to be massacred, but his son Manuel refuses to implement his orders; *11 September* the brutal Imperial secretary and 'enforcer' Hagiochristophorites tries to arrest Andronicus' distant cousin Isaac Angelus, descended from Emperor Alexius I's second daughter, after a prophecy names Andronicus' successor as 'I.S.', but Isaac kills him and rides through city to Hagia Sophia to seek sanctuary; crowds gather and so do Isaac's relatives.

12 September. Andronicus arrives at Palace, but the citizens storm prisons to release prisoners; the crowds at Hagia Sophia insist that Patriarch crowns Isaac; Andronicus offers to abdicate in favour of Manuel but the mob breaks into Palace to install Isaac and he flees across Bosphorus; Andronicus reaches a ship at Chele on Black Sea and sails for Russia but is blown back to shore, arrested, returned to Constantinople, and tortured to death by jubilant mob in the Hippodrome, aged around 66.

Isaac II takes over capital and unsuccessfully asks Normans, now at Serres and Mosynopolis, to withdraw; Alexius Branas sent out with army.

Branas surprises over-confident Normans raiding around Mosynopolis and drives them into the town; many killed and the survivors start retreat but *7 November* are caught at the River Strymon, trapped on bank, and slaughtered; Alexius the 'cupbearer' captured and blinded and Norman commanders Baldwin and Richard hostages.

Normans at Thessalonica retreat along the Via Egnatia to Dyrrachium, being harassed en route; Tancred's fleet reaches Prinkipo, one of Princes' Islands, and is defeated by Byzantine fleet but manages to raid Gulf of Nicomedia before second defeat; he retires to Sicily.

IRAQ

Late Summer. Saladin abandons the siege of Mosul on the news of the death of the Seljuk Sultan Soqman of Hamadan, and marches up the Tigris to take over the latter's stronghold of Diyarbakir and other local towns; he takes his exhausted troops to recuperate in the hills but falls seriously ill while visiting Kukburi at Harran and is incapacitated for many weeks. His brother Al-Adil, governor of Aleppo, brings doctors but Saladin draws up his will and his eventual recovery is unexpected.

ITALY

25 November. Death of Pope Lucius III; Umberto Crivelli elected Pope (Urban III); William II's aunt Constance sent to Germany to marry Frederick's son Henry; the reluctant Sicilian barons have to swear oath to her as heir to throne, ignoring the claims of her male but illegitimate cousin Tancred of Lecce.

PORTUGAL

6 December. Death of King Afonso I, founder-ruler, aged c. 76, after a reign of 46 years as King and 73 from assumption of title as Count; succeeded by his son by Maud of Savoy, Sancho I (born *11 November 1154*).

1186

ARMENIA

Rupen III abdicates and retires to monastery; succeeded by brother Leo II.

ITALY

27 January. Henry, eldest son of Emperor Frederick, marries Constance of Sicily at Milan, and assumes government of Frederick's lands in Italy; this raises the prospect of Henry assuming German control of Naples and Sicily if her cousin King William II dies childless.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

February. Saladin receives envoys from Izz-ed-Din of Mosul, last of the independent Zengid princes of the Jazirah to hold out against his power.

March. Izz-ed-Din becomes Saladin's vassal, and surrenders his lands south of the Tigris to the latter's local emirs.

5 March. Death of the unreliable Emir Nasr-ed-Din of Homs, son of Saladin's late uncle Shirkuh, during Saladin's visit to him at the city; having plotted to seize power in Damascus in place of Saladin's sons if Saladin died in the autumn it is possible that Saladin poisoned him. His

12-year-old son Shirkuh II is allowed to succeed him; *April*. Saladin returns to Damascus.

Late August. Death of the young Baldwin V at Acre, aged 9, in the absence of his mother Sibylla and stepfather Guy of Lusignan; their ally the Steward Joscelin of Courtenay is present at Acre with the regent Count Raymond. Raymond is sent by Joscelin to his wife's city of Tiberias to organise a Council of the realm's principal lords while Joscelin organises the late King's funeral in Jerusalem. In Raymond's absence Joscelin seizes Tyre and Beirut against his regency, and Joscelin leads the proclamation of Sibylla as Queen at Acre and calls her and Guy back from Ascalon to assume power. While Joscelin rules in Acre until their arrival, the Templars escort Baldwin V's cortege to Jerusalem instead.

Reynald of Chatillon arrives from Kerak to join Sibylla's supporters at Acre, and Raymond summons the 'High Court' to his ally Balian of Ibelin's castle at Nablus to declare the coup illegal. Raymond, Balian, and his wife Queen Maria Comnena are joined by Maria's daughter Princess Isabella, her husband Humphrey of Toron, Baldwin of Ramleh, Walter of Caesarea, Reynald of Sidon, and all the great lords except for Reynald of Chatillon and they refuse invitations to Sibylla's coronation; the Grand Master of the Templars, Gerard, and Patriarch Heraclius back Sibylla and accompany her to Jerusalem to be crowned. Raymond sends two Cistercian monks to Jerusalem to remind Sibylla's backers that crowning her without legal backing from the 'High Court' will break the oath taken to the late Baldwin IV, but Heraclius (reputedly Sibylla's ex-lover) rallies the Church to her side. The populace of Jerusalem back Sibylla as holding hereditary right as Baldwin V's elder sister, despite the general dislike of Guy.

Sibylla is crowned at Jerusalem with the gates being locked to prevent a raid from Nablus, but the Hospitallers under Grand Master Roger boycott the event and Roger refuses to hand over his key to the chest containing the coronation-regalia so Grand Master Gerard of the Templars uses his key to open it.

Sibylla is crowned alone to placate objectors to Guy being crowned too, and it is probably given out by her advisers that she will divorce Guy; she is handed a second crown at the ceremony by Heraclius and asked to crown he who she thinks most worthy of it. She uses it to crown Guy as co-ruler (following the precedent of Queen Melissende's husband Fulk of Anjou, her grandparents). This is probably in breach of the guests' expectations and worked out beforehand with her ally Heraclius.

Baldwin of Ramleh advises Raymond, in command at Nablus defying Sibylla, and his supporters to leave the Kingdom, but Raymond considers crowning a rival candidate, Isabella, and seeking Saladin's backing. Isabella's husband Humphrey refuses to go along with this, or accept a crown as co-ruler, and deserts to Sibylla to do homage to Guy rather than risk civil war. Raymond relies on the fact that he can promise continued

truce with Saladin and the oath taken to Baldwin IV which Sibylla's unsanctioned crowning violates.

Most of the barons gradually drift off to Jerusalem as the stand-off continues; Raymond releases the barons from the oath and retires to his wife's fief of Galilee with his main backer, Baldwin of Ramleh; he plans to claim the throne himself as son of Baldwin II's younger daughter, Melissande's sister Hodierna. Guy holds an accession-council at Acre and declares him deposed from his Jerusalem fief of Beirut as a traitor; at the gathering to do homage to Guy Balian's brother Baldwin of Ibelin refuses to do homage and leaves for Antioch, handing his lands to his son Thomas.

November. Reynald attacks another Moslem caravan near Kerak in Oultrejourdan and takes merchants and their families hostage; he treats Saladin's envoys to arrange their ransom with contempt. Guy receives Saladin's envoys more courteously and orders Reynald to return the prisoners and their property, but he refuses.

1187 PALESTINE

Saladin prepares to close in on the Kingdom of Jerusalem; Raymond III makes a truce for Tripoli and his wife Eschiva's county of Galilee, and Bohemund III does so for Antioch; King Guy turns on Raymond; distrusting him, he invades Galilee to take over his fief of Tiberias as its neutrality in a war is a threat to his Kingdom's defence. As Guy advances on Tiberias his wife's stepmother Queen Maria's husband, Balian of Ibelin, meets him to attempt mediation and warns him invasion will add Raymond's enmity to Saladin's and Raymond's forces outnumber him; his mediation fails as Raymond says he will only negotiate if Guy hands back Beirut to him.

Saladin assembles a large army in Damascus and prepares for war with Guy.

29 April. Guy persuaded to make another offer to Raymond by Balian, sends Balian, the Grand Masters of the Templars (Gerard) and Hospitalers (Roger), and Archbishop Josias of Tyre to Raymond at Tiberias; the envoys leave Jerusalem and spend the night at Nablus.

30 April. Balian stays on at Nablus for business as the others ride on to the castle of La Feve; Saladin's son Al-Afdal is by now camped at Banyas, north-east of the Sea of Galilee and close to the River Jordan crossing at Jacob's Ford, with Saladin's vanguard. He sends to Raymond at Tiberias asking for permission to cross his Galilee fief en route to Guy's lands; Raymond has to agree to avoid breaking his private terms with Saladin, and says they can cross next day providing they do no damage, and sends a warning to the Grand Masters. Balian rides to Sebastea (Samaria) to call on the Bishop and attend next day's St. James' Day Mass there. In the evening, Raymond's messenger reaches the Grand Masters at La Feve

and Gerard summons his local Templars for next day; also called in is the Templar Marshal, James of Mailly, who is at Kakun nearby with 90 knights.

1 May. Balian sets out for La Fève after Mass; Emir Kukburi and 7,000 troops of Saladin's vanguard cross Galilee; the Grand Masters Roger and Gerard rally their troops with the Templars' Marshal, James of Mailly, and ride on to Nazareth. They find the Moslem cavalry watering their horses at the Springs of Cresson, and despite the warnings of Roger and James a majority of the Order backs Gerard as he decides to attack. Taunted with cowardice by Gerard, James joins in a headlong charge on the Moslem ranks. The Orders' charge is held as the Moslems form ranks quickly, and the latter's numbers and archery prevails; the Orders are routed with heavy losses.

The fleeing Knights are hunted down in the open countryside and picked off; Gerard and two Templars escape the massacre and reach Nazareth, while the heads of the fallen are taken as trophies to Saladin. The majority of the Templars' secular auxiliary knights are rounded up as prisoners.

Balian hears the news at La Fève and reinforces the wounded Gerard at Nazareth; Balian and the Archbishop join Raymond at Tiberias, and he agrees to seek Guy's pardon so the Christian leadership can unite. The Moslems ride back across Galilee unchallenged to rejoin Saladin east of the Jordan. Guy reconciles with Raymond.

May. As his army musters east of the Jordan, Saladin rides down south towards Petra to meet a returning caravan from the Mecca pilgrimage, including his sister and nephews, and protect them from a revenge Christian raid. Guy collects his army and the Templars hand over their share of the money which Henry II sent the Kingdom as atonement for the murder of Becket; Bohemund III's elder son Raymond brings reinforcements from Antioch.

Late June. 1,200 knights and nearly 2,000 infantry collect at Acre ready to march into Galilee and meet Saladin's expected invasion, but Patriarch Heraclius claims he is too unwell to join them; the Prior of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre brings the True Cross to the army instead.

Friday, 26 June. Saladin reviews his army at Ashtara; his nephew Taki-ed-Din is to command the right wing, Emir Kukburi the left, and himself the centre, and with his troops from Mosul and Aleppo it far outnumbers the Christian forces. He leads his forces round the south side of the Sea of Galilee to cross the Jordan (*1 July*), sending scouts ahead.

2 July. Part of Saladin's army storms the walls of Tiberias in Raymond's absence, but his Countess Eschiva holds out in the castle; Saladin and the main contingent await the Christians' arrival to relieve the castle some miles away. News of the attack reaches the Christian army assembling at Acre; there is probably a council meeting at Acre, before the news of the fall of Tiberias arrives (i.e. on *1 July*?) as well as one later on the *2nd*

when the army arrives at Sepphoris. (One of the main Christian sources, Balian of Ibelin's squire Ernoul, only mentions one council; the 'Estoire d'Eracles' mentions two.) At one of these meetings, probably the second (i.e. once the fall of Tiberias is known), Raymond advises Guy to play a waiting game in the heat, letting the Moslems wilt sitting outside the well-defended castle of Tiberias and not moving forward until the main Antiochene contingent arrives.

Templar Grand Master Gerard and Reynald of Chatillon are more confident of success in an early battle and accuse Raymond of being in Saladin's pay, a persistent rumour which is also probably behind the hostility of those sources connected to Guy's 1190–2 ally Richard I of England. Guy takes their advice and decides to advance; the army moves forward to Sepphoris, where a message from Eschiva arrives that evening. A council is held and Raymond says that his castle can hold out so there is no need for an early relief, and Guy agrees but changes his mind after the meeting as Gerard pressurises him in private. An attack next day is announced.

Friday, 3 July. At dawn the Christians advance towards Tiberias with Raymond in the van, Guy in the centre, and Reynald, the Orders, and Balian in the rearguard. The Moslem cavalry harass the army with archery and minor skirmishes but avoid direct contact; there is also a problem with smoke from burning undergrowth, probably started accidentally by the Moslems earlier. The Christians struggle on in the heat to a two-crowned hill near Hattin where they halt as the Templars can go no further in their heavy hauberks. The Christians choose a camp-site near Hattin (Lubieh, 2 miles south-west of Hattin, according to the Moslem sources; 'Marescalcia' according to the Third Crusade sources) where there is no spring so they are short of water, contradictory to expectations (and Raymond's assurances?).

Raymond, dismayed at their poor defensive position in the open, claims that they are lost by halting here, as Guy orders, not going on to the lake (according to one source, 'De Expugnatione Terrae Sanctae per Saladinum Libellus'). The Moslems have blocked the local wells so there is no water; Saladin's forces move round to encircle the camp without being challenged.

Saturday, 4 July. Guy and the other leaders decide to break through the circle of attackers and head for the Sea of Galilee. The Christian cavalry, desperate for water charge down the hill eastwards towards the Sea of Galilee, according to Imad ad-Din they are unable to take a direct route to the water due to the fires. They are unable to force their way through the Moslem ranks, the main body of infantry disobey orders and retire up a hill and are surrounded and attacked. The leadership and cavalry, separated from them, cannot rescue them as they are slaughtered. Raymond's Tripolitan and Galilee contingent lead an attempt to break out with Guy's permission, and Saladin's nephew Taki-ed-Din opens his

ranks to let them through (which arouses suspicion). Balian and his kin's Ibelin contingent break through, but Guy's contingent and the Orders are surrounded and retreat up the slope to the Horns of Hattin; Saladin's men attack. It is debatable whether Raymond flees rather than trying to try to rescue Guy due to cowardice or (Ernoul) recognising he cannot help. The King's men have abandoned their horses on the steep hill; the camp's defences are stormed and the Bishop of Acre is among those killed; after fierce fighting in the heat the King, his brother Amalric of Lusignan, Reynald, Grand Master Gerard, and other leaders are captured, many too exhausted in the heat to stand as they surrender; the Knights are overwhelmed with many casualties and the survivors are captured. (The Hospitallers' letter announcing the battle says that 1,000 knights were killed and 200 escaped.)

Saladin receives Guy courteously in his tent and treats him well, but he abuses Reynald as a brigand; he stops Guy handing Reynald a drink as that would make the latter his guest and thus make killing him dishonourable. He cuts down Reynald personally, and the survivors of the Orders are slaughtered. The prisoners are taken to Damascus and the poorer knights, who are unlikely to be richly ransomed, are sold off as slaves.

5 July. Countess Eschiva surrenders Tiberias castle and is allowed to leave for Tripoli. Balian heads back for Tyre to muster the defence; Raymond returns to Tripoli.

8 July. Saladin reaches Acre unopposed, and the city's leadership under Joscelin of Courtenay offers to surrender; the indignant citizens riot.

10 July. Surrender of Acre; the merchants are allowed to leave with their valuables but the stores are sacked by the entering army.

Saladin overruns Samaria, and Balian's men surrender his castles on terms after a few days; Ibelin itself surrenders after a fortnight's siege. Saladin's brother Al-Adil advances into southern Palestine with the Egyptian army, and sacks Jaffa and enslaves the inhabitants.

14 July. Conrad of Montferrat, younger brother of Princess Isabella's late husband William, arrives by sea at Acre from Constantinople; he realises something is wrong and refuses to land; posing as a Moslem merchant, he invites the captain of a Moslem ship aboard and finds that the city has fallen; he sails to Tyre to lead the defence. His arrival heartens the citizens, and their lord Reynald of Sidon has to abandon his talks to surrender; Saladin has sent two of his banners in to be raised as a sign of submission, and the citizens throw them in the moat. Reynald leaves to take charge at his other port, Sidon, and Balian arrives to aid Conrad.

Saladin moves up the Lebanese coast, leaving Tyre alone for the moment; *27 July* surrender of Lattakieh; siege of the inland Hospitaller fortress of Sahyun (Saone) which falls to assault (*29 July*).

29 *July*. Surrender of Sidon to Saladin as its lord Reynald flees inland to Beaufort Castle; 6 *August* surrender of Beirut. Jebail surrenders on the orders of its captive lord Hugh of Embriaco, who Saladin then releases; the rest of the coastal towns south of the Tripoli-Antioch frontier are overrun except for Tripoli itself.

23 *August*. Surrender of Burzey, southernmost of the castles in the Orontes valley, under commander whose sister the Princess of Antioch is secretly in league with Saladin; he and wife are allowed to go free. Saladin moves north into the lower Orontes valley to take the fortresses protecting the approaches to Antioch.

16 *September*. Surrender of the Templar stronghold of Darbsaq in the Amanus mountains; 28 *September* surrender of Baghras, dominating the road from Antioch to Cilicia. Antioch is now isolated, but Saladin's army are tiring and he grants a truce to Bohemund III which recognises all his conquests so far. Bohemund is able to keep Antioch and its port, St. Simeon; the Hospitallers keep Marqab and Krak des Chevaliers and the Templars keep the port of Tortosa, all difficult to storm.

Saladin moves back south. Queen Sibylla leads the defence of Jerusalem.

Early September. Saladin arrives outside Ascalon; Guy and Gerard are sent up to the walls to plead with the citizens to surrender but are defied with insults.

4 *September*. Ascalon surrenders, and the inhabitants are escorted by Moslem troops to Alexandria to await repatriation to Europe; Gerard is released after he persuades his Templar garrison to surrender Gaza; in the evening, following an eclipse, a delegation from Jerusalem arrives at Ascalon and meets Saladin but refuses to surrender.

At Balian's request, he is given permission to pass through Moslem lines outside Tyre and go to Nablus to collect his family, Queen Maria Comnena and their children; instead he hurries on from Nablus to Jerusalem to lead the defence, but Saladin still allows his family to leave Nablus and go to Tyre.

September. Patriarch Aimery of Antioch sends the Bishop of Baghras with a letter to Henry II, as the likeliest leader of a new Western expedition and closest Royal kin of the Kings of Jerusalem; Archbishop Josias of Tyre sails from Antioch to Sicily to bring news of Hattin to the Pope and then go on to France.

Balian defends Jerusalem, where there are only two knights left; Saladin advances on Jerusalem; Queen Sibylla is allowed to leave Jerusalem and Saladin instructs her to go to Nablus and await Guy's arrival; Balian knights all the boys in the city aged over 16, and 30 merchants, to take part in the defence.

20 *September*. Siege of Jerusalem; the Moslems attack the north and north-west walls but they are too strong to be taken.

25–6 September. Saladin moves his camp round to the south of the city and sets up his headquarters on the Mount of Olives; the ‘Gate of the Column’ is undermined.

29 September. Fierce fighting around a breach in the walls; the assault is repulsed but Patriarch Heraclius advises surrender to prevent disaster and a massacre at the next attack, and Balian agrees to negotiate terms.

30 September. Balian goes to Saladin’s camp, pre-empting the plan of Saladin’s Greek Orthodox scholarly assistant, Joseph Batit, to arrange for his co-religionists to open the gates. The assault resumes during the negotiations and Saladin points to his men’s advance to frighten Balian into better terms, but Balian can point to his men still fighting on.

Eventually Saladin agrees to terms of a ransom of 10 dinars per male citizen, 5 per woman, and 1 per child together with a lump sum of 30,000 dinars for 7,000 of the 20,000 poorer citizens who cannot pay up.

Friday, 2 October. Surrender of Jerusalem to Saladin; all who can pay are ransomed and allowed to leave through one gate, and the others leave through another gate to be taken off to slavery. Reputedly the Orders stingily refuse to use any of their funds to ransom non-members and Patriarch Heraclius takes the Church plate with him rather than selling it to Saladin to pay for more ransoms. Saladin grants more prisoners’ freedom to his leading courtiers, e.g. Al-Adil (1,000 prisoners) and Patriarch Heraclius (700), and Balian is allowed to take 500. All the aged, married citizens and their wives, and orphans are released but some unscrupulous Moslems demand extortionate payments from people. Balian, the Orders, and Heraclius lead the column of refugees to Tyre with a promise of no molestation, and those who prefer are allowed to head for Tripoli – in military terms, the extra mouths to feed will weaken the two cities’ capacity to resist. The Orthodox citizens of Jerusalem are allowed to stay on payment of ransoms and the ‘jizya’ poll-tax.

The Templars, the Hospitallers, and Balian lead three columns of refugees to Tyre.

Jerusalem is re-occupied by the Moslems, and no pillaging or massacres; *9 October* Saladin leads a large congregation for a service of thanksgiving in the Al-Aqsa Mosque, and the Church of the Holy Sepulchre is not demolished despite some requests by Moslems. At Tyre and Tripoli, the citizens shut the gates to latecomers from Jerusalem and the latter have to march on to Antioch.

Stephanie of Oultrejordan, lady of the fief east of the Jordan, negotiates her castles’ surrender and gets Saladin to release her son Humphrey of Toron, Lord of Kerak; in return he promises to get his castles to surrender, but his men at Kerak and Montreal refuse his instructions. He honourably returns to Saladin as he has failed in his agreement, but Saladin releases him anyway.

November. Al-Adil besieges Kerak; other troops besiege Safed, north-west of the Sea of Galilee.

November. Conrad leads successful defence of Tyre with Balian; 29 *November* land-assault is defeated, and five out of ten Moslem ships which arrive offshore from Acre are sunk. Saladin arrives outside Tyre.

6 *December.* Surrender of Safed.

Armenguard of Asp is elected Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

October. Having informed William II of Sicily of the loss of the True Cross, Archbishop Josias makes his way to Rome backed by a Sicilian embassy; William has promised a naval expedition for 1188.

19/20 *October.* Death of Pope Urban at Ferrara, reputedly on arrival of the news of the loss of the True Cross (from Genoese in Palestine before Josias arrives?); 21 *October* Alberto de Morra elected (Gregory VIII).

The fall of Jerusalem is confirmed; Gregory sends a letter to all the Western sovereigns, reminding them of their failure to take adequate action after the loss of Edessa in 1144 and proclaiming a new Crusade; all the possessions of those who leave for the Crusade are placed under Papal protection during their absence. A fast is proclaimed on every Friday for five years and abstinence from meat on Wednesdays and Saturdays, and a seven-year truce in Christendom is proposed.

17 *December.* Death of new Pope Gregory in Pisa, en route to Rome; 19 *December* cardinals elect Paolo Scolari, Bishop of Praeneste, as Pope (Clement III).

FRANCE

November? Henry II's eldest surviving son Richard, Count of Poitou and Duke of Aquitaine, takes the Cross before the arrival of Josias' embassy from Jerusalem.

BYZANTIUM/PALESTINE

Emperor Isaac II secures the restoration of the custody of the 'Holy Places' in Jerusalem to Orthodox clerics, in agreement with Saladin.

December? Death of Raymond of Tripoli of pleurisy, aged around 47; his lands are bequeathed to his godson Raymond of Antioch, eldest son of Bohemund III, unless a member of the House of Toulouse (his own distant cousins) come out to Palestine.

1187/ TURKISH SULTANATE

- 8 Kilij Arslan decides to semi-retire and divide most of dominions among his sons – Sebastea to eldest son Malik Shah; Tokat to (Rukn-al-Din) Sulaiman Shah, Neocaesarea/Niksar to Nasr-ed-Din, Albistan to Toghril Shah, Caesarea to Sultanshah, Nigde to Arslan Shah, Ankara to Mas-ud Shah, Sozopolis to Khusrau; other lands to brother Sanjar Shah and Amaseia to nephew Arslan Shah; civil war.

Sources**1150–5**

Abu Shama, pp. 7–8; Chron. Anonymous Syrian, pp. 299–300; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 475–97; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs of Mosul’, in *Receuil des Historiens des Croisades: Historiens Orientaux*, vol. ii, part a, (Paris: Imprimerie Nationale, 1882) pp. 171–5, 180, 189–92; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 293–300, 301, 307–9, 314–21; Kemal al-Din, pp. 523–8; Matthew of Edessa, books cclix, cclxiii; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccix–ccxi, cclxxxi, ccxcv–vii; William of Tyre, book xvii, ch. i–xxx, book xviii, ch. ix.

Byzantine Empire: Cinnamus, pp. 121–4.

1156–60

Abu Shama, p. 110; Gregory the Priest, *Continuation of Matthew of Edessa’s Chronicle*, pp. 176, 186–94, 199; Ibn al-Athir, p. 544; Ibn al-Qalanisi, pp. 322–49, 353; Kemal al-Din, pp. 529–32; Matthew of Edessa, books cclxxiii, cclxxiv, cclxxxi, cclxxxiii; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cccxiv–ccxxiv; Odo of Freisingen, *Gesta Frederici*, p. 229; Robert of Torigny, *Chronique*, ed. Delisle, 2 vols (Rouen, 1872–3) pp. 309, 316; William of Tyre, book xviii, ch. i, x–xxii, xxiii–xxv (Byzantines in Syria 1158), xxviii, xxx.

Byzantine Empire: Cinnamus, pp. 179–90 (1158 expedition), 191–201 (Manuel and Kilij Arslan), 208–10 (Manuel’s second marriage); Nicetas Choniates, pp. 141–5 (Syrian expedition 1158) and 152–64 (Manuel and Kilij Arslan). Also Magdalino, pp. 67–71 (1158 expedition) and 71–2 (Manuel’s second marriage).

1161–5

Baha ad-Din Ibn Shaddad, *Life of Saladin*, tr. R. E. Conder, vol. xiii (London: Palestinian Pilgrims Texts Society, 1897) pp. 46–8; Gregory the Priest, p. 200; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 529 (Cairo 1163), 531, 533–6, 540–2; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs of Mosul’, pp. 207–9, 215–19; Kemal al-Din, pp. 510, 534; Michael the Syrian, vol. iii, ch. cccci–cciv, cccxix–cccxxxvi; Robert of Torigny, vol. i p. 355; William of Tyre, book xvi, ch. ii; book xviii, ch. xx, xxxi–xxxiii (Manuel’s second marriage), book xix, ch. i–iv (accession of Amalric), v–x, book xx, ch. i.

Cinnamus, pp. 210–11 (Manuel’s second marriage), 227, 237–8; Nicetas Choniates, p. 151.

1166–70

Abu Shama, pp. 130–4; Baha ad-Din, pp. 48–51; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 545–51, 553–4 (1168); Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs of Mosul’, pp. 235–6, 246–7 (1168); Michael the Syrian, book

- iii, ch. cccxxxii–cccxxxv; William of Tyre, book xix, ch. xi–xx, xxii–xxxii (1167 Egypt expedition), book xx, ch. i–v.
- Byzantine Empire: Cinnamus, pp. 250–1; Nicetas Choniates, pp. 180–6.
- War in Egypt, 1167: dispute over date of battle of Ashmunein, dated 18 March by Ibn al-Athir in main text and 18 April in his ‘Atabegs’.
- Egypt war, 1168: Abu Shama, pp. 114–15, 136–40; Baha ad-Din, p. 52; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 554–6; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs’, pp. 247–50; William of Tyre, book xx, ch. vi–ix.
- Shirkuh in Egypt, 1169: Abu Shama, pp. 118–19, 142–5; Baha ad-Din, pp. 53–5; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 558–61; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs’, pp. 251–3.
- Crusaders in Egypt, 1169: Abu Shama, pp. 146–52; Baha ad-Din, pp. 52, 55–6; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 568–70; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs’, pp. 258–60; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cccxxxi–cccxl; Nicetas Choniates, p. 208–9; William of Tyre, book xx, ch. xii–xvii.
- 1170: Abu Shama, pp. 149–54; Baha ad-Din, pp. 59–60; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs’, pp. 260–2; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. cccxxxix–ccclxiii; Sambat the Constable, History, pp. 622–5; William of Tyre, book xx, ch. xviii–xx, xxvi.

1171–5

- Abu Shama, pp. 162–8; Baha ad-Din, pp. 61–71; Cinnamus, p. 280; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 575–83, 587–93, 599–609 (death of Nur-ed-Din 1174), 611, 614–20; Ibn al-Athir, ‘Atabegs’, pp. 202–3, 293; Imad ad-Din, *Al Fath al Qussi fi'l Fath al-Qudis*, ed. and tr. de Landesberg (Leyden: Brill Publishers, 1888), pp. 159–60; Kemal al-Din, pp. 551–3, 558–60 (death of Nur-ed-Din); Maqrissi, *History of Egypt*, tr. Blochet in *Revue de l'Orient Latin*, vols viii–x (Paris: E. Leroux, 1895–8) vol. viii pp. 506–11; William of Tyre, book xx, ch. xxii–xxx, xxxi (death of Amalric 1174); book xxi, ch. i–vi (1174–5 accession of Baldwin IV).

1176–80

- Abu Shama, pp. 185–202, 211; Baha ad-Din, pp. 71–7; Ernoul, *Chronique d'Ernoul et de Bernard le Tresorier*, ed. L. deMas Latrie (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1871) pp. 31, 48, 56–60, 80–2; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 625–40; Kemal al-Din, pp. 146–53; Maqrissi, pp. 530–1; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. lxxv–lxxvi, ccclxxv–ix, ccclxix–cclxxii; Sambat the Constable p. 324.
- William of Tyre, book xxi, ch. xii–xix, xx–xxiv (Battle of Montgisard 1177), xxvi, xxvii–xxx (1179 campaign), book xxii, ch. i (Guy marries Sibylla 1180), ii–v.
- Byzantium: 1176 events: Nicetas Choniates (1984 edition), pp. 176–91 and Cinnamus (1976 edition) pp. 293–8.
- After 1176: Choniates (1984 edition) pp. 192–3, 197–9.
- 1180 events: Choniates (1984 edition) pp. 200–01; William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. v.

1181–5

- Abu Shama, pp. 218–22 (1182 campaign), 374; Ernoul, pp. 9, 84–6; Estoire d'Eracles, in *RHC Occidental*, vols i and ii: vol. ii, pp. 57–9; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 651–3 (1182 campaign), 656–7 (1181 death of as-Salih and Saladin's advance), 662, 729–30; Kemal al-Din, pp. 159–60 (1181); Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccclxxxix–cccxliv; Sambat the Constable, p. 628; William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. vi–vii, xiv–xvi (1182), xx–xxv (1183).
- Byzantine politics 1180–3: Nicetas Choniates (1856 edition) pp. 356–403; William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. x–xiii.

Red Sea campaign, 1182: Abu Shama, pp. 231–5; Baha ad-Din, pp. 86–8; Ernoul, pp. 69–70; Ibn al-Athir, p. 662; Kemal al-Din, p. 167; Maqrisi, pp. 550–1.
 Saladin in Syria, 1183: Abu Shama, pp. 226–8; Ibn al-Athir, p. 662; Kemal al-Din, p. 167; William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. xxiv.
 Later 1183 Crusader campaigns: Abu Shama, pp. 243–6, 248; Baha ad-Din pp. 90–1; Ernoul pp. 96–102, 103–6; Maqrisi pp. 13–14; William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. xxvi–xxx; also William of Tyre, book xxii, ch. xxix on Baldwin V's accession as co-ruler.

1184–5

End of Baldwin IV's reign: Abu Shama, pp. 249–56; Baha ad-Din, pp. 95–8; Ernoul, pp. 115–19; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, ch. iii, vii–ix.

1185–6

Reign of Baldwin V: Abu Shama, p. 288; Baha ad-Din, pp. 98–105; Ernoul, pp. 121–9; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, ch. xii–xiii, xxv; Kemal al-Din, pp. 123–6.

1186–7

Reign of Guy and Sibylla: Abu Shama, pp. 257–8; Arnold of Lubeck, *Chronica Slavorum* (MGHS, 1868) pp. 116–17; Baha ad-Din, p. 109; Ernoul, pp. 129–54; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, ch. xxv–xli; Ibn al-Athir, p. 674; Radulph of Diceto, vol. ii p. 47.

1187

Fall of the Kingdom: To the battle of Hattin: Abu Shama, pp. 262–89; *Annales de la Terre Sainte*, ed. Rohricht, in *Archives de l'Orient Latin* vol. 2 (Paris: E. Leroux, 1884) p. 218; Baha ad-Din, pp. 110–16; Benedict of Peterborough, *Gesta Regis Henrici II*, ed. W. Stubbs, 2 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1867) vol. ii, pp. 10–14; *De Expugnatione Terrae Sanctae per Saladinum Libellus*, ed. W. Stubbs (London: Rolls Series, 1875) pp. 218–28; Ernoul, pp. 155–74; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii ch. xlvi–xlix; *Historia Regni Hierosolymitani*, in Kohler, ed., *Melanges pour servir a l'histoire de l'Orient Latin*, vol. 2 (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1884) pp. 52–3; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 679–88; *Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi*, ed. W. Stubbs (London: Rolls Series, 1864) pp. 12–17; Michael the Syrian, book iii, ch. ccciv.
 To the fall of Jerusalem: Abu Shama, pp. 266–7, 295–7, 300–10 and 320–40 (siege and fall); Baha ad-Din, pp. 115–16, 122–3, 138–43, 198–201; *De Expugnatione*, pp. 31–4, 238, 241–51; Ernoul, pp. 171, 174–5, 185–7, 211–30 (fall); *Estoire d'Eracles*, pp. 69–71, 81–99 (fall), 122; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 688–91, 693–703, 704–5 (fall).
 Death of Raymond III: Abu Shama, p. 284; Baha ad-Din, p. 114; *Estoire d'Eracles*, p. 72.
 After the fall: Abu Shama, pp. 356–76; Baha ad-Din, pp. 120–2, 125–38; Ernoul, pp. 179–83, 240–4, 252–3; *Estoire d'Eracles*, pp. 74–8, 104–10, 122; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 707–12, 726–9, 732–3; *Itinerarium Regis Ricardi*, pp. 18–19; Kemal al-Din, pp. 187–90.
 Launching of Third Crusade: Ansbart, *Expeditio Friderici Imperatoris*, in A. Chroust, *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzuges Kaiser Friedrichs I* (Berlin: MGHSS, 1928) pp. 2–4; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii p. 13–14, 40–1; Ernoul pp. 247–8; *Itinerarium Regis Ricardi*, p. 32; Rigord, *Gesta Philippi Augusti*, ed. Delaborde (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1882) pp. 83–4.

6 The Third Crusade 1188–1192

1188 | PALESTINE/SYRIA

1 January. Saladin abandons the siege of Tyre and moves off inland; later in the month the Hospitallers at Belvoir surrender. Reynald of Sidon hoodwinks Saladin into agreeing to a three-month truce.

SPAIN

22 January. Death of Ferdinand II of Leon, uncle of King Alfonso VIII of Castile, aged 50/1; succeeded by his son by Urraca of Portugal, Alfonso IX (born *15 August 1171*).

FRANCE

January. Archbishop Josias of Tyre, as the Kingdom's representative in rallying recruits for a rescue-expedition, meets Henry II and King Philip 'Augustus' of France at the traditional Norman/French truce-meeting site of Gisors, on the Norman/Vexin frontier, to plan the Third Crusade. Many of the nobility of both kingdoms who are at the meeting take the Cross too, and it is decided that despite their long enmity Henry's and Philip's armies will march together.

Late January. Henry holds a council at Le Mans to raise a special tax for the Crusade, the 'Saladin Tithe'; Henry then sails to England to make arrangements there, and holds a Council at Geddington. The tax for the Crusade (10% on goods) is bitterly resisted in England. Josias leaves France for Italy.

February/March? Richard faces revolt from restive barons in Aquitaine, possibly starting while he is at the Gisors conference; among the rebels is Guy's brother Geoffrey of Lusignan. Putting down the rebellion, Richard agrees to pardon the rebels provided that they go on Crusade; Geoffrey soon arrives in Palestine.

GERMANY

27 March. Emperor Frederick 'Barbarossa' takes the Cross at Mainz from the Cardinal of Albano, sent by the Pope; he sends envoys to Byzantium

to secure passage across the Eastern Empire for his army and supply-depots en route; other envoys are sent to King Bela III of Hungary and Sultan Kilij Arslan of Konya to secure safe passage and to Saladin to demand the return of Jerusalem (and allegedly to invite him to combat at Zoan in *November 1189*). Saladin replies that he will only release his Frankish prisoners and return the Latin (Catholic) abbeys in Palestine to their owners.

FRANCE

Spring. An attack by Richard on his neighbouring barons in the County of Toulouse – a fellow-fief of France which has long resisted claims of overlordship by Aquitaine – breaks the fragile Crusade truce in France. As Richard reoccupies the disputed Quercy territory and advances on Toulouse Count Raymond appeals to his overlord King Philip, who protests to Henry II; Henry assures that Richard is acting without his permission, and Philip invades Berry on Richard's north-east borders. Philip takes Chateauroux, and after his return to the Isle de France Richard returns and fails to retake it.

ENGLAND/WALES

April. Archbishop Baldwin of Canterbury's famous journey across Wales to preach and raise funds and recruits for the Crusade, accompanied (and later memorialised) by the clerical Anglo-Norman-Welsh historian Gerald de Barri ('Giraldus Cambrensis'). Starting from Chepstow, he follows the south coast westwards via the see of Llandaff to St. David's, and then goes north to Cardigan and across the independent Welsh principalities to Caernarfon and St. Asaph. There are around 3,000 recruits. Allegedly Gruffydd ap Rhys of Deheubarth, ageing principal ruler in south Wales, is talked out of going by his wife.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Late Spring. William II of Sicily sends his fleet under Admiral Margaritone to Palestine to reinforce the Antiochene ports and Tripoli and then Tyre.

June. Saladin heads west from Damascus for the Antiochene coast through the Buqaia, and enters Tripoli territory to besiege Krak des Chevaliers.

During the siege of Krak des Chevaliers, Saladin receives his future biographer, Baha ad-Din Ibn Shahhad, who has just been on pilgrimage to the reconquered Jerusalem and who presents his new book on 'The Virtues of the Jihad' to him; he enters Saladin's service.

1 July. As Saladin crosses the Buqaia he hears that the Sicilian fleet has arrived, and hurries on to attack Tortosa; the town surrenders but the citadel holds out, and he moves on; *15 July* surrender of Jabbala; *22 July* storming of Lattakieh.

FRANCE

July. The Franco-Angevin border war intensifies as Henry returns from England to Normandy, and as he hangs back from confrontation Philip raids his borderlands in east Anjou and south Normandy; in this campaign the famous elm-tree at Gisors marking the usual truce-meeting-site is cut down by Philip as a provocation. On Richard's arrival in his father's camp Henry moves forward into the Vexin (30 *August*) and raids Philip's base at Mantes; skirmishes continue into the autumn.

SYRIA

Saladin besieges the Hospitaller stronghold of Sahyun (Saone) which falls to assault (29 *July*); 12 *August*, surrender of the mountain stronghold of Bahas-Shoqr; 19 *August*, fall of Sarmingya.

23 *August*. Saladin enters Antiochene territory; fall of Burzey, the southernmost of Antioch's castles; 26 *August*, fall of Baghras, reoccupied during the winter by Antioch, to another force sent by Saladin.

16 *September*. Fall of the Templar fortress of Darbsaq; as Saladin's Jazirah contingent from Sanjar want to return home he opens talks with Antioch and agreement is reached; Bohemund III's dominions are reduced to Antioch, St. Simeon, and the Orders' fortresses (Marqab and the Krak for the Hospitallers and Tortosa for the Templars) in the subsequent truce. The port of Tripoli is allowed to survive under Bohemund's son Raymond, shorn of all other possessions.

Saladin releases Guy and his brother the Constable Amalric, who join Sibylla at Tripoli; William of Montferrat, Conrad's father, is also released, and is sent by Guy to Tyre to ensure his backing for their return to control of the Kingdom but fails; Conrad stakes his claim to the throne with the backing of Balian of Ibelin.

Conrad of Montferrat, defending Tyre, refuses admission to Guy of Lusignan; the two rivals have to postpone a showdown due to their dire military position and Conrad proposes to wait for the adjudication of the Western European monarchs when they arrive in Palestine.

Death of the Arab historian Usama ibn Munqidh, member of the former ruling dynasty of Shaizar and autobiographical memorialist of the 12th century, aged 93.

FRANCE

7 *October*. Truce-meeting between Henry, Richard, and Philip at Chatillon-sur-Indre in east Anjou, where Richard alarms his father by showing signs of moving towards alliance with Philip as he proposes that he will accept the judgements of French legal court in such border-disputes. This explicit recognition of French overlordship of Anjou and

Aquitaine – and legal right to interfere – will weaken the Angevin autonomy from France, but it is in Richard's favour for the forthcoming succession to Henry's French dominions as 'overlord' Philip can refuse to accept any grant of them to Richard's younger brother John.

Richard allegedly accuses Henry of wanting to disinherit him in John's favour; 18–20 November a second Angevin-French meeting at Bonmoulins sees Philip demand that Henry cease holding up his refusal to let his ward and alleged mistress, Princess Alice of France (Philip's half-sister), marry Richard. Richard does homage to Philip for all of Henry's French dominions, thus securing his legal backing as overlord for his succession whatever Henry may decide, and Henry is furious. A truce is agreed until January 1189, but war looms again.

BYZANTIUM

November. As Third Crusade prepares, John Ducas Camaterus and Andronicus Contostephanus sent to Imperial court at Nuremberg to agree to Frederick crossing Byzantium on march to Palestine.

1189 SYRIA/PALESTINE

Saladin in Jerusalem, then in Acre, preparing defences; *March*. He returns to Damascus.

April. Guy and Sibylla march on Tyre from Tripoli again.

6 April. A Pisan fleet of 52 ships under Archbishop Ubaldo (sent by the Pope late in 1188 after negotiating a Pisa-Genoa truce) arrives at Tyre after wintering at Messina; a few days later Guy and Sibylla's forces arrive, Guy demands that Conrad hands over control, and Conrad refuses to admit them; they camp outside. After a quarrel with Conrad Ubaldo and the other Pisan leaders proclaim allegiance to Guy and are joined by the Sicilians.

ENGLAND

May. The main fleet leaves Dartmouth en route for the Mediterranean.

Whitsun. The Papal envoy, John of Anagni, manages to persuade Henry II (who missed the planned peace-conference with Philip in January due to illness), Richard, and Philip to meet at La-Ferte-Bernard in Maine, with four archbishops (Rheims, Rouen, Bourges, and Canterbury) to arbitrate. However Richard and Philip demand that Alice be handed over to Richard by Henry, Richard be recognised as heir to all Henry's domains, and John join the Crusade so he cannot stage a revolt once Richard has left – Richard refuses to leave for Crusade without his brother. Henry refuses these terms, and Philip defies the threat of a Papal interdict if he refuses peace and claims that the legate has been bribed by Henry. The

conference breaks up; 12 *June* Richard and Philip join forces to stage a surprise attack on Henry at Le Mans, and the ailing King has to flee his burning birthplace. The allies pursue him north towards Normandy, and Richard is confronted and nearly killed by the great English model of chivalry, William Marshal, as he attacks Henry's rearguard.

Henry returns towards Anjou, possibly as he knows he is dying; the allies pursue him and (3 *July*) sack Tours, the principal town of eastern Anjou, while Henry lies sick at Chinon.

4 *July*. Henry has to ride out to Ballon to agree to peace-terms demanded by Richard and Philip, which include the setting of date for the departure of all three for Crusade as *Lent 1190* at Vezelay. All Henry's subjects are to swear allegiance to Richard as heir.

6 *July*, Death of Henry II at Chinon, aged 56; Richard succeeds to all the Angevin 'empire' and confirms Henry's promise of the county of Mortain in Normandy (once held by William 'the Conqueror's half-brother) to John.

20 *July*. Richard's inauguration-ceremony as Duke of Normandy at Rouen; 22 *July* Richard and Philip hold another conference at Gisors, and confirm the Crusade arrangements; Richard sails to England and (13 *August*) lands at Portsmouth.

Sunday, 13 September. Richard's coronation in Westminster Abbey; some Jews bringing gifts to the Abbey are set upon by the crowd and robbed or killed, and the news sparks off a riot and a night of attacks on Jews. Richard orders a halt as soon as he hears and hangs three rioters, but his orders that the Jews are to live unmolested under his protection are disobeyed in various towns; the most serious incidents are at Lynn, Norwich and Stamford in eastern England and the most notorious massacre after his departure at York (*March 1190*).

PORTUGAL

Fall of Moslem-held Silves to the forces of King Sancho I; the kingdom briefly controls the northern Algarve ('Al-Gharb', 'the West' i.e. of al-Andalus).

GERMANY/BYZANTIUM

Early May. Frederick's army leaves Ratisbon to march down the Danube valley towards Hungary; the largest-ever European Crusading army, it includes most of his senior vassals except the dissident Duke Henry 'the Lion' of Saxony – who Frederick would not trust to keep the peace in his absence and was given the choice of joining the Crusade or going into exile and chose the latter (in his wife Matilda of England, Henry II's daughter's country). Frederick of Swabia, the Emperor's second son, accompanies him.

The German army enters Hungary, whose ruler Bela III welcomes and provisions them; Bela's daughter Margaret has recently married the widowed Byzantine Emperor Isaac II, his ally, whose territory is next to be crossed (with the marriage's cost causing a still-smouldering Bulgarian revolt around the planned route of the German expedition). Isaac undoubtedly fears that Frederick will link up with the Bulgarian rebels or the defiant Serbs to undermine his weakening military position in the Balkans.

19/20 June. Frederick's envoys, Chamberlain Markward, Henry of Dietz, Rupert of Nassau, Count Walrab, and Bishop of Munster, reach Constantinople in Emperor Isaac's absence; *2 July* Frederick's army at Branicevo on Hungarian frontier; they are met by Isaac's ex-ambassadors to Germany, John Ducas and Constantine Contostephanus, who take the opportunity to encourage the German Emperor against their own sovereign.

11 July. The Germans march into forests en route to Naissus/Nis, and Isaac panics at size of army and its rowdy behaviour and detains ambassadors; the Byzantine foreign minister, John Ducas Camaterus, writes to Frederick excusing the lack of waiting supplies en route to the annoyed Germans on lack of sufficient warning; *24 July(?)* Frederick enters Naissus and refuses offers of alliance against Isaac from the arriving Stephen Nemanja, prince of Serbia, and from envoys of the Bulgarian rebel leaders Peter and Asen; the three of them offer fealty to Frederick and the Bulgarians offer him a crown. Isaac's cousin Alexius is sent to apologise for attitude of governor of Branicevo and assure that the latter disobeyed orders and that supplies are waiting, but 'Domestic of West' Alexius Gidus blocks 'Trajan's Gate' pass into Hebrus valley; *August* Germans reach the pass and garrison flees.

Frederick arrives outside Philippopolis, where historian Nicetas Choniates is governor; Isaac sends letter calling himself 'Emperor of Rome' and accusing Frederick of plotting with Nemanja to put his own son on Byzantine throne, and *26 August* Frederick occupies Philippopolis as Byzantines flee.

PALESTINE

Early August. Saladin finally decides not to trust Reynald of Sidon's promises that he is planning to convert to Islam and become his vassal, as it is being delayed suspiciously long. He takes his army to Beaufort castle, Reynald of Sidon's garrison in the upper Litanei valley inland from Sidon, and orders Reynald to prove his goodwill by telling its garrison to surrender. Reynald tells them to surrender in Arabic and then to hold out in French, and the strength of its position makes assault difficult. Saladin opens siege and sends Reynald as prisoner to Damascus.

August. After minor skirmishes with Saladin's local troops, Guy leaves the blockade of Tyre to march on Acre as an alternative base for his claim to the throne; the Pisan and Sicilian ships sail parallel to him offshore, and Saladin does not block his advance as he has a large garrison to hold Acre and he prefers to await the main Crusader army before fighting. Currently besieging Beaufort Castle, Saladin fears Guy has come to rescue the castle but on his spies' reports that Acre is the objective he plans to ambush Guy at the 'Ladder of Tyre' pass on the coast road. His advisers prefer to wait until Guy is encamped in the plains outside Acre, and Saladin gives way; *28 August.* Guy reaches Acre and begins the siege.

31 August. Failure of first Christian assault on Acre; Guy waits for reinforcements; *early September.* A Danish and Frisian fleet arrives at Acre.

c. 10 September. Arrival at Acre of the Flemish and north French expedition led by the Low Countries baron James of Avesnes, the Counts of Bar, Brienne, and Dreux, and the Bishop of Beauvais.

15 September. Arriving from Beaufort, Saladin attacks the Christian camp; he fails to break through to Acre but his nephew Taki-ed-Din secures access to the northern gate of the city to send in supplies and troops.

Late September. Arrival of Margrave Louis of Thuringia with the seaborne German contingent, the Count of Guelders, and Archbishop Gerald of Ravenna with more north Italians. Conrad accompanies them on the final leg from Tyre after Louis assures him that he does not have to accept Guy's command.

4 October. The Crusaders attack Saladin's army while Geoffrey of Lusignan defends their own camp; Taki-ed-Din's strategic retreat on the Moslem right alarms Saladin into sending troops to assist him, and the Crusaders push back the enemy centre and right and penetrate Saladin's camp. Some Moslem cavalry flee to Tiberias, but Saladin's greater numbers mean that his unaffected left wing can rally and he drives the Crusaders back to their camp. The Crusaders hold their lines, but their losses include the Grand Master of Templars, Gerard (captured and executed) and many inexperienced Germans and Guy rescues Conrad.

31 October. 50 Moslem galleys break through the blockade to bring supplies into Acre.

November. The English fleet arrives at Acre from a foray in Portugal; more reinforcements arrive from across Europe but the Kings of England and France are not planning to meet up until *late Spring 1190.*

BYZANTIUM

Local Armenian settlers, Bulgarians, and landowners encourage Frederick against Isaac, and his latest envoys Canon Werner of Mainz and

Gottfried von Wiesenbach are arrested on arrival at Constantinople; Germans reach Didymoteichon south of Adrianople, and Frederick follows to enter Adrianople 22 *November* and send to son Henry in Italy for reinforcements and a fleet; he declares that he cannot trust Byzantium and only when the Crusaders occupy the Dardanelles can they be sure of safe passage to Palestine. Isaac mans the capital's walls.

ITALY

8 *November*. Death of William II of Sicily at Palermo; Tancred of Lecce, bastard son of his grandfather Roger II and last male of the Royal house, disputes the right of Roger's daughter Constance (and her German husband Henry, son of Emperor Frederick) to the throne and the Sicilian fleet sails home from Palestine.

FRANCE

30 *December*. Richard, returning to France leaving England in the charge of his Chancellor William Longchamp (Bishop of Ely), meets Philip at Nonancourt to confirm arrangements for 1190; however he prevaricates about marrying Alice as Philip is expecting him to do.

PORTUGAL

Conquest of Silves, main remaining Moslem stronghold in the south of the country, by King Sancho I (acc. 1185).

1190 ITALY

January–February. Tancred accepted by magnates as King of Sicily and crowned.

BYZANTIUM

21 *January*. Isaac's envoys Eumathius and Jacob sent to Adrianople to negotiate peace with Frederick; he sends Berthold von Konigsberg, Markward von Arhweiler, and Chamberlain von Neuenberg to Constantinople. Safe passage and supplies in return for German prisoners (and the release of Kilij Arslan's detained envoy to Frederick) arranged and 8/9 *February* Frederick's envoys and Isaac and ministers sign agreement with 500 leading Byzantines swearing to it on oath.

14 *February*. At Adrianople, Frederick and his magnates swear oath to the terms; the Germans cross the Hellespont, release most of Isaac's hostages (including Isaac's cousin Michael Angelus Ducas, later Despotof Epirus) at Philadelphia, and 28 *March*–27 *April* march across Anatolia with some harassment from both Byzantines and Turks.

PALESTINE

Conrad and Guy reach agreement, letting Guy keep his title and the lordships of Beirut and Sidon but Conrad securing Tyre; *March*. Conrad leads naval assistance and supplies for the besiegers from Tyre to the siege of Acre, defeating Saladin's fleet despite their use of 'Greek Fire'.

FRANCE

16 March. Richard and Philip meet again to arrange their journey to Palestine, now set to begin a little later on *24 June*; a further delay is requested by Philip as his wife Isabella dies in childbirth.

ITALY

Spring. Tancred faces revolt from autonomist barons in southern Italy, led by Count Roger of Andria; the cities of Capua and Aversa join in. Like Isaac, Tancred's hostile attitude to arriving Crusaders will be conditioned by fear that they will aid his rebels. Roger is defeated and executed.

PALESTINE

5 May. Christian assault on the walls of Acre driven back and their siege-towers are destroyed in sorties; *Whit Saturday, 19 May*. Saladin, recently reinforced, launches sustained attack on Christian camp which lasts until *27 May*.

BYZANTIUM/SELJUK SULTANATE/ARMENIA/SYRIA

3 May. Frederick enters Myrioccephalum, site of the vital Byzantine defeat by the Seljuks in 1176 which opened central-western Anatolia to invasion; *17 May* Frederick enters abandoned Konya/Iconium, Kilij Arslan's capital; he skirmishes with the Sultan's son Malik Shah, crosses the Taurus Mountains into friendly 'Little Armenia', and on *10 June* is drowned at the River Calycadnus near Seleucia/Silifke in Cilicia. His younger son Frederick of Swabia takes charge and leads army on, meeting Prince Leo of Armenia (acc. 1186), but many nobles sail direct to Syria. *21 August* the vanguard reaches Antioch; Frederick of Swabia arrives a few days later.

FRANCE

Early June. Richard meets King Sancho of Navarre, southern neighbour of his Aquitaine, and discusses a new choice of fiancée for him – Sancho's daughter Berengaria. His current fiancée Alice's half-brother King Philip is not informed. He then takes the staff and badge of a Crusader at Tours.

2 *July*. King Richard and King Philip meet at Vezelay as promised and (4 *July*) set out for the Holy Land; they march in two separate national forces, the French first (the English force is larger), to minimise clashes; at Lyons a bridge breaks under the weight of the English troops and for three days the rearguard is left stranded on the west bank of the Rhone.

PALESTINE

Conrad leaves for Antioch to attend Frederick Barbarossa's funeral in the Cathedral and confer with the German leadership, presumably to secure their backing for his claims to Kingdom (and possibly his marriage to Princess Isabella).

25 *July*, Christians at Acre defeated in attack on Taki-ed-Din's camp and Archdeacon Ralph of Colchester, one of the 1189 English arrivals' leaders, is killed; Count Theobald of Blois, his brother Stephen of Sancerre, Ralph of Clermont, and Count Henry of Champagne are among the major north French feudatories who arrive at Acre well ahead of the Royal expedition; Archbishop of Besancon and the Bishops of Blois and Toul are among the churchmen. Count Henry, as half-sister's son and representative of King Philip, takes command of the siege-operations from James of Avesnes and the Landgrave of Thuringia – he is also the nephew of King Richard so he will be acceptable to him too. The sick Landgrave returns to Europe.

July. Fall of Beaufort Castle to Saladin.

FRANCE

31 *July*. Richard arrives at Marseilles, his fleet (under Richard of Canville and Robert de Sable) is now at Gibraltar after a clash with the citizens of Lisbon during their stay there involving attacks on local Moslems and Jews.

August. Philip heads along the Riviera from Marseilles to Genoa; Richard waits at Marseilles for his fleet which was due on 1 *August*.

22 *August*. The fleet arrives just after he has given up and left. Part of the English army under Archbishop Baldwin and the Justiciar Ranulf de Glanville sails directly to Palestine; Richard takes the other part to Sicily, probably to pick up his sister Queen Joan (widow of the late William II) and possibly to investigate complaints about the non-payment of her husband's legacies. Most of the army travels by sea, but Richard goes by land via Pisa and Ostia.

Late August. Philip sails from Genoa for Sicily.

PALESTINE

16 September. The main English fleet arrives at Acre.

Early October. Frederick of Swabia and the main German contingent arrive at Acre.

Autumn. Famine and epidemic in the Crusader camp, and Queen Sibylla (aged around 32) and her young daughters by Guy die. This leaves Isabella as sole hereditary claimant to the Kingdom and the new Queen, and makes her choice of husband the obvious next King. The barons of the Kingdom are unwilling to keep Guy as King now he has no matrimonial (or parental as regent) claim to it. Balian of Ibelin, as Isabella's stepfather, plans to marry her to his candidate Conrad and persuades her current husband Humphrey of Toron to agree to a divorce.

Humphrey lacks baronial backing due to his desertion of his wife's cause for Guy and Sibylla's in 1186.

Isabella is unwilling to co-operate but is bullied by her mother Queen Maria Comnena into it, and Maria tells the barons' council that Isabella could not give informed consent to the match with Humphrey as she was only eight at the time.

Patriarch Heraclius is unwell so his nominee Archbishop Baldwin of Canterbury leads the clerics' discussions on agreeing to a divorce, his role including that of senior cleric to Isabella's cousin King Richard of England; he temporises as Richard is a friend of Guy (an ex-vassal of Richard's in Aquitaine) and claims that he cannot give consent as there are rumours that Conrad left a wife behind in Constantinople. Guy opposes the divorce which will elevate his rival Conrad to the kingship. Bishop Philip of Beauvais, the senior representative of Richard's rival King Philip, and the Archbishop of Pisa (allegedly offered French commercial treaty for his city) take the lead in authorising the divorce.

Death of Saladin's nephew Taki-ed-Din; succeeded as Ayyubid prince of Hamah by his son Al-Mansur Mohammed.

November. The Crusaders take Saladin's position at Tel Kaisan, forcing him to move his camp further away to Tel Kharruba.

19 November. Death of Archbishop Baldwin, while leading the Anglo-Norman barons' refusal to agree to the Conrad/Isabella marriage and threatening excommunications of its backers; the opposition thus loses legal ecclesiastical support. Guy challenges Conrad to single combat but is ignored.

24 November. Conrad of Montferrat is married to Princess Isabella at Tyre; Guy still disputes his claim to crown and refuses his offer not to take the crown until Isabella dies; Conrad does not return to Acre after the honeymoon.

Garnier of Naples succeeds Armenguard of Asp as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

14 September. Philip arrives at Messina. Tancred invites him to use the royal palace.

Richard arrives at Salerno by road. He sends almost all his men by sea to Messina and travels with one attendant across Calabria; *21 September.* He is reputedly nearly killed by angry villagers near Mileto for helping himself to a local's hawk (restricted to knightly owners in Anglo-French practice). He has an awkward relationship with a distrustful Tancred as he discovers that Tancred, short of money and lands, has put Joan in custody and not given Joan all her late husband bequeathed her (including County of Monte St. Angelo) or his own legacy of valuables, gold plate, and sacks of provisions and two galleys (originally intended for Henry II when he arrived on Crusade); he sends a message to Tancred to release his sister and pay up or else. Tancred regards the bequest to Henry II as voided by his death, not transferable to Richard.

22 September. Richard arrives at Messina and disputes Joan's dower rights with Tancred; Tancred gives him a palace outside the walls as his residence, which may be interpreted as a snub as Philip was lodged in the town. Joan is sent to Richard by Tancred with a 1 million 'taris' gift.

28 September. Joan arrives at Messina; Philip is impressed with her and a marriage is soon rumoured.

Philip offers to mediate with Tancred, but Richard refuses and (*30 September*) crosses the Straits to seize the abbey of Bognara where he installs Joan with a garrison. He returns to Messina and takes a Greek Orthodox monastery on a nearby island to use as barracks, infuriating the townsfolk; *3 October* the Messinans bar the gates to him after a clash between Messinans and English in a suburb amid rumours that he intends to overrun the kingdom.

4 October. Philip brings the Count of Poitiers, Count Hugh of Burgundy, and others (including Admiral Margaritone and the Archbishops of Messina, Monreale and Reggio) to Messina to negotiate; during the talks some townsmen venture outside the walls to shout abuse at the English and Richard, hearing insults aimed at him through his residence's windows, orders his men to attack them. They chase the citizens back into the city and seize control of the gates; the English sack Messina and Richard does not call his men off but occupies the town, burning Tancred's fleet in the harbour. Philip's and his troops' zone is left untouched, and Philip watches the looting without intervening. Richard raises his flag over the walls (a usual sign of conquest), along with Philip's as the latter protests, threatens to overrun the kingdom, and builds the fort of 'Mategrifon' ('Bridle on the Greeks') outside the walls.

Philip sends Count Hugh to tell Tancred at Catane and offer military support, but Tancred is dubious about trusting him as he is an ally of the Germans who will shortly be invading Apulia on behalf of his rival Constance, wife of their new Emperor-designate Henry (VI). Tancred sends envoy to Richard offering him and Joan 40,000 'taris' (20,000 gold pieces) each as compensation for the money due to Henry II/Richard and to Joan and a marriage between Tancred's daughter and Richard's nephew Count Arthur of Brittany.

Richard agrees, and the Archbishop of Rouen persuades him to return looted possessions to the principal citizens of Messina. His promise to defend Tancred against any invasion while he is in his lands means that he is his ally against the German claim to Sicily – and may add to Constance's husband Henry VI's hostility as seen when he is taken prisoner in 1192. Richard gives Philip a third of the money he has received from Tancred.

Mid-October. Philip, angered by the delay in Richard's promised marriage to his half-sister Alice, sets sail for Palestine; he is driven back by a storm and agrees to winter at Messina. He is probably aware that Richard's mother Queen/Duchess Eleanor of Aquitaine (his father Louis VII's ex-wife and a foe of the Capetian dynasty) has been on a mission to Navarre to collect his new fiancée, King Sancho's daughter Berengaria.

11 November. Treaty between Richard and Tancred is signed; however Richard and Philip's dispute over Philip's half-sister Alice escalates bad feeling between them, and Richard urges his mother to bring his replacement fiancée Berengaria to Sicily for a quick marriage.

25 December. Richard entertains Philip and Tancred to a sumptuous banquet at 'Mategrifon' fort; a few days later he meets the noted Apocalyptic expert and mystic Abbot Joachim of Corazzo (Joachim of Fiore) and discusses the identity of the Antichrist with him, reputedly suggesting the current pro-French Pope Clement III to local scandal.

1191 SYRIA/PALESTINE

Early. Saladin dismantles Baghras, dominating the Amanus range north of Antioch; after he leaves for Palestine Prince Leo of Armenia arrives from Cilicia to occupy the site, and refuses to hand it back to his alleged ally Bohemund.

6 January. Collapse of part of the Acre land-walls.

20 January. Frederick of Swabia dies in the Crusader camp outside Acre; Henry of Champagne is ill but recovers. Theobald of Blois and his brother Stephen of Sancerre also die. Conrad is blamed for the extent of famine in the camp for not bringing supplies or sending ships to break Saladin's seaborne blockade.

13 February. Saladin is able to send a relief-force with supplies and a new commander into Acre by land by breaking through the malnourished

besiegers. A fully-laden Christian ship with a cargo of corn finally reaches the camp early in Lent (*mid-March*), and more follow.

March? Arrival of Duke Leopold of Austria, Frederick's half-Byzantine cousin, to take over the German Crusaders.

ITALY/PALESTINE

February. Queen Eleanor and Berengaria of Navarre arrive in Naples, and Richard has their expedition diverted to Brindisi as Messina is too crowded now that Count Philip of Flanders' Crusaders have arrived.

Richard meets Tancred at Catania, Sicily, and swears friendship; a suspicious Philip joins them at Taormina where he recognises the inevitable and frees Richard from his legal agreement to marry Alice.

30 March. Philip sails for Palestine; Richard's mother Eleanor of Aquitaine arrives at Messina with Berengaria of Navarre; *3 April* Berengaria sails for Palestine as Eleanor returns home; *10 April* Richard sails.

Philip arrives at Tyre and consults with Conrad, which is later interpreted by his English opponents as a plot to create French/Montferrat/Palestine axis to exclude English influence from the Kingdom; he goes on to Acre, arriving on *20 April* (day before *Palm Sunday*).

CYPRUS

22 April–1 May. Richard delayed at Crete and Rhodes by bad weather, but two English ships are wrecked off Cyprus and Isaac Ducas Comnenus seizes occupants and loots their property. Berengaria and Joan arrive off Limassol but their parties are refused permission to land. Joan is invited ashore but refuses as she is afraid she will be used as a hostage; Isaac sets up fortifications on the shore to repel any attack.

8 May. Richard arrives at Limassol and lands demanding revenge and Isaac flees into Troodos Mountains, to Kilani; the Greek and Latin residents of Limassol welcome Richard.

11 May. Isaac visits Richard's camp at Colossi under truce, and he offers compensation, 100 men for the Crusade, and his daughter as a hostage; he thinks the English army is reassuringly small and breaks off talks. Guy of Lusignan, his brother Geoffrey, and other Palestinian barons (including Humphrey of Toron, Isabella's ex-husband) and a Templar delegation arrive to encourage Richard against Conrad and join him. Leo of Armenia, Bohemund III of Antioch, and the latter's elder son Raymond of Tripoli also arrive.

12 May. Richard marries Berengaria in chapel of St. George at Limassol, and Berengaria crowned Queen of England by the Bishop of Evreux.

13 May. The rest of Richard's ships arrive and he enters Famagusta; Isaac, based inland to the west at Nicosia, sends his family north to Kyrenia and moves to Famagusta. Isaac retreats again as Richard moves on Famagusta, and Richard occupies the town.

Isaac is defeated at Treminthos and flees to Kantara; Richard occupies Nicosia, and while he is ill Guy takes Kyrenia and besieges St. Hilarion and Buffavento castles; Guy takes Isaac's family prisoner as Kyrenia surrenders.

Isaac surrenders and is put in chains, allegedly of silver as Richard promised not to put him in irons; Richard loots Isaac's treasury, and imposes a 50% capital levy on all Greek citizens. He organises a new government under his advisers Richard of Camville and Richard of Turnham as 'justiciars', and confirms Greek laws but hands the castles to Westerners. 5 June Richard sails for Syria with Isaac Ducas Comnenus and family as prisoners; Isaac's daughter is put in the charge of Queen Joan. He passes Tortosa, Jibrail and Beirut and (*evening, 6 June*) lands at Tyre. Conrad refuses him admission, so he marches on to Acre.

8 June. Richard arrives at Acre; a 3-day truce with Saladin is arranged though Saladin refuses an invitation to meet Richard; Richard is unable to attend a meeting with Al-Adil as he and Philip fall ill.

ITALY

Late March. Death of Pope Clement III; Henry of Hohenstaufen, now German Emperor, and Constance arrive in Rome; 14 April 85-year-old Giacinto Bobo consecrated Pope Celestine III; 15 April he crowns Henry and Constance; *late April* Henry invades Apulia; *June(?)* Naples besieged and Constance installed in Salerno, but Henry's troops wilt in the heat in Apulia and *late August* he starts to retreat; Constance captured in revolt in Salerno and sent to Tancred.

PORTUGAL

The Almohad Caliph Yaqub al-Mansur invades the Algarve and reconquers Silves from Portugal.

PALESTINE

Bombardment of Acre commences as reinforcements from Sanjar (the Jazirah), Egypt, Hama, Shaizar (upper Orontes valley) and Mosul join Saladin; Patriarch Heraclius dies, and Richard and Philip dispute over whether Guy (Richard's candidate, as his ex-vassal in Poitou) or Conrad should be King of Jerusalem. Another quarrel begins over the inheritance of Philip's recently-deceased (1 June) vassal Count Philip of Flanders, and Philip demands half of Cyprus in return for allowing Richard any of Flanders.

Late June. Philip has to lead a French attack on Acre alone as Richard fails to join in, possibly due to convalescence or not wanting to weaken his reputation by a failed attack. A Genoese fleet arrives at around this time and decides to take Philip's orders as their rivals Pisa are pro-Richard.

3 July. The French breach the walls of Acre; *4 July* Acre sends a delegation to Richard and Richard sends a delegation to Saladin asking for his terms and asking permission to collect snow from the mountains inland for refreshment.

5 July. Saladin fails to persuade his vassals to launch an attack on the Crusader camp; *6 July* a swimmer brings a last desperate message from Acre to Saladin warning that if help does not come quickly they will surrender.

11 July. Richard leads a surprise Crusader attack on Acre, aided by the Pisans but not the French who are caught unawares during dinner; the latter were probably not told deliberately so Richard could claim the glory if he broke in. They fail to take the walls.

12 July. Acre surrenders; the terms involve 200,000 pieces of gold as ransom for the inhabitants and garrison; 450 pieces of gold to Conrad (implying that he is rightful sovereign as Isabella's husband), and the handover of 1,500 Christian prisoners (100 named) and the True Cross by Saladin. The terms are supposed to be guaranteed by Saladin in return for the Crusaders sparing the garrison.

The Moslem garrison is allowed to leave Acre for internment in Crusader camp pending repatriation, and Richard, Conrad, and Philip enter. Richard takes over the royal palace and Philip takes over the Templar headquarters. The Crusader leaders' banners are erected on the walls and towers, but Richard is accused of taking down his enemy Duke Leopold of Austria's banner to deny him a share in the victory as head of the German contingent. Leopold shortly afterwards leaves the Crusade for home, and the incident is traced as the reason why he is keen to seize Richard and hold him to ransom on his homeward journey in 1192. The former residents of Acre, mostly pro-Conrad barons and merchants, appeal to Conrad's ally Philip to see that they have their homes returned and any occupying Crusaders told to leave, and he sees that this happens.

Papal legate Adelard of Verona organises the cleaning and re-dedication of the churches of Acre, and the government is arranged by a council of barons which Adelard chairs; Guy remains King to his death and Conrad then succeeds; Conrad is to be lord of Tyre, Beirut, and Sidon and the next king.

31 July. Philip and Conrad leave Acre for Tyre; *2 August.* Philip sails home for France. Richard has failed to persuade him to take an oath to stay for three years so the rest of Kingdom can be liberated, and he fears that Philip will attack his French dominions while he is absent; Philip promises a one-year truce there.

Richard negotiates with Saladin for the ransoms and handover of the True Cross which were promised in the surrender-terms; the garrison of Acre is to be released on payment of the first of three instalments of the ransom, and Saladin shows that the True Cross is in his camp ready to be returned.

11 August. The first instalment of the ransom is paid, and some Christian prisoners are sent to Richard's camp. There is a dispute over the number of Christian prisoners to be released, and the Acre garrison is not released in retaliation; Saladin offers hostages until the extra Christians are handed over but demands that all his men be returned now, and this is rejected.

20 August. Richard massacres 2,700 Moslem prisoners, held in the camp outside Acre, in dispute over ransoms with Saladin; *22 August.* He marches south from Acre towards Arsuf, the Duke of Burgundy commanding the remaining French in the rear, with the Crusader fleet offshore and Saladin shadowing his army and moving south ahead of him to camp on Mount Carmel.

Richard passes dismantled Haifa, and (*30 August*) there is a first skirmish near Caesarea. The Moslems harass his flanks with archery and skirmishes, and many Europeans fall victim to sunstroke and are picked off if they leave the main column. The French rear-guard has to fight off an attack.

The Crusaders pass nervous but unmolested through the forest of Arsuf, and emerge to see Saladin's fortified camp ahead. Richard encamps near Saladin's position on the plain of Arsuf, where the Sultan is preparing a site ready for battle; *5 September* he meets Al-Adil under a flag of truce and demands the return of all Palestine which is refused.

7 September. Richard prepares his troops for battle with Henry of Champagne in the rear, the Templars on the right wing, and himself, the Lusignans, Flemings, French, and the Hospitallers in the centre.

Battle of Arsuf: the Moslem light infantry attack supported by archers, but are repulsed from the Christian centre infantry by a cavalry charge. The Moslem cavalry charge and are repulsed, and Richard orders a defensive strategy until the enemy are exhausted. The impatient Marshal of the Hospitallers refuses to wait and he and Baldwin Carew lead a cavalry attack without orders, but this breaks through; James of Avesnes, lord of Brabant, is among the casualties as the Moslems are routed.

8 September. Saladin rallies his commanders and challenges Richard to another battle; Richard avoids fighting and the Moslems retire.

Saladin retires to Ramleh; Richard enters and refortifies Jaffa and starts march towards Jerusalem. Saladin retreats to the city and orders the abandonment and demolition of Ascalon.

Richard retrieves deserters who are heading back to Acre as they refuse to obey Guy when the latter is sent to halt them; a rebellion in Cyprus leads Richard, lacking troops to deal with it, selling it to the Templars.

Richard sends Humphrey of Toron, who can speak Arabic, to Saladin to request the return of all Palestine west of the Jordan and of the True Cross.

1 October. Richard announces in a newsletter to the West that he intends to take Jerusalem within 20 days of Christmas; he asks the Abbot of Clairvaux to organise a preaching-campaign to recruit settlers to repopulate Crusader Palestine.

1 October? Richard's first truce-meeting with Al-Adil at Lydda; he again attempts to secure the surrender of all Palestine.

2 October. Second meeting; in the following talks Richard proposes that Al-Adil should be Saladin's viceroy of Palestine, based at Jerusalem, and marry his sister Joan with the Christians resuming control of the coast as far south as Ascalon, the Templars having all their castles returned, and free Christian access to Jerusalem. Joan, now at Acre, refuses to convert to Islam and Al-Adil refuses to convert to Christianity so the marriage-proposal is abandoned.

11 October. In a letter to Genoa, Richard invites the Genoese to send ships to Palestine in 1192 for an attack on Egypt; he will pay half their expenses and arrange for equal trading-rights for them and their Pisan rivals throughout the Kingdom, which Guy will accept on his advice. At around this time (*early October*) Richard visits Acre, partly to consult and if needed collect Joan for marriage and partly to ward off the threat of Conrad attacking it.

13 October. Richard returns to Jaffa with naval reinforcements; *17 October* he asks Al-Adil to send negotiators, and the latter sends his secretary Ibn an-Nahhal; apparently he writes to Saladin insisting that the Christians need all land west of the Jordan to make the Kingdom defensible and that the Cross is only a piece of wood to the Moslems but vital to the Christians; both he and Saladin insist that the Holy City is too precious to their religions to be negotiable.

20 October. Baha-al-Din the historian is among Al-Adil's next embassy to Richard.

31 October. Richard leaves Jaffa to rebuild the local castles of 'Casal of the Plains' and 'Casal Moyen' at Yasur.

ENGLAND

October. Richard's plans for the government of England in his absence are overthrown, as the regent – the low-born and unpopular extortioner Bishop Longchamp of Ely – is forced to flee the country. Having faced revolt by the barons after he violated sanctuary in Dover to capture the arriving Archbishop-elect Geoffrey of York, Richard's half-brother, Longchamp flees abroad dressed as a woman.

PALESTINE

8 November. Richard and Al-Adil meet for a feast at Lydda, amid fears that the Moslems are playing for time so they can demolish more castles; Richard apparently insists that his ancestors conquered Palestine so he has a hereditary right to it. Conrad sends Reynald of Sidon to Saladin saying that he would be content with the lordship of Beirut and Sidon. Meanwhile Saladin is receiving Reynald of Sidon, Conrad's ambassador.

9 November. Humphrey of Toron brings Richard's proposals to Al-Adil to Saladin, suggesting that Richard could now marry his niece Eleanor of Brittany to Al-Adil if Joan is unwilling. According to Saladin's biographer Baha ad-Din, Richard proposes a plan that will not rouse religious hard-liners against either party for giving away too much. Negotiations continue, with (*11 November*) the Moslem leadership debating whether to ally with Richard or Conrad. Al-Adil persuades Saladin to prefer an alliance with Richard to one with Conrad as he will be going back to Europe soon and has no long-term stake in or ability to enforce the treaty. Humphrey's party are annoyed to see Reynald out hunting with Al-Adil and this increases distrust of Conrad's reliability.

Richard is based at Ramleh for six weeks as negotiations continue.

During one of a number of skirmishes between the armies' scouts, Richard is ambushed with a small escort while out hawking but is saved from capture by William of Breaux shouting that he is the King and being captured instead.

Late November. Saladin returns to Jerusalem to await the arrival of reinforcements from Egypt; Richard advances inland from Ramleh. Richard is nearly captured and the Earl of Leicester is captured in a skirmish near Blancheguarde, east of Ascalon and south-west of Jerusalem; heavy rain halts the Moslem cavalry raids on his army and he marches towards Jerusalem; *25 December* Richard at Latrun; *28 December* Richard in the Judaeen hills west of Jerusalem.

FRANCE

Christmas. Philip arrives back at Fontainebleau near Paris, and soon starts plotting with Richard's enemies including Prince John.

TURKISH SULTANATE

? Kilij Arslan recovers Iconium, which Malik Shah has seized.

1192

PALESTINE

3 January. Richard reaches Beit-Nuba, 12 miles from Jerusalem, but the local barons advise him that it would be dangerous to mount a siege with extended communication-lines, Saladin in the city with a strong garrison

and supplies, and Saladin's Egyptian army, undefeated, ready to cut him off; he studies a map of Jerusalem drawn for him by local barons and decides to retire to coast.

8 January. Richard returns to Ramleh. The Duke of Burgundy and part of the French contingent leave for Acre without Richard's permission, reducing his forces.

20 January. Richard holds a council, and decides to re-fortify Ascalon as a base for the control of the southern coast and a possible attack on Jerusalem. He restores Ascalon as a strong fortress but (*early February*) Conrad refuses to come south to help him, reviving fears of his intentions for a private agreement with Saladin protecting only his own lands.

The Pisans, Richard's allies, seize control of Acre in Guy's name against the returned Duke Hugh and the local Genoese merchant-community, who are Conrad's allies (and planning a coup in Acre to depose Guy?); they hold out against Conrad's men for three days and ask Richard to bring his forces north to help them.

20 February. Richard arrives in Acre, and meets the angry Conrad at Casel Imbert en route; they fail to come to any agreement and Conrad defies a threat to have his lands seized unless he does his duty and reinforces Ascalon. Richard negotiates with Saladin (who is in Jerusalem), sending Richard of Turnham who has left Cyprus as the Templars take command there, and Conrad sends a rival delegation led by Balian of Ibelin and Reynald of Sidon.

Saladin asks Al-Adil to try to reach agreement and if not to spin out talks while reinforcements arrive; Richard proposes the division of Jerusalem, leaving the 'Haram as-Sharif' and Temple site in Moslem hands.

20 March. Al-Adil meets Richard on his brother's behalf and offers the True Cross, a coastal strip including Beirut (the southern border not yet defined – Ascalon or not?), and right of access for pilgrims to Jerusalem; Richard knights A-Adil's son as a goodwill gesture and (*April*) Al-Adil takes his terms to Saladin.

The Prior of Hereford arrives at Acre with news of trouble in England as the unpopular regent, Bishop Longchamp, is threatened by a baronial conspiracy spearheaded by Prince John. There is a fear that John, who has broken his oath to stay in his French country of Mortain, seeks the throne and that when Philip arrives home he will assist John; the news encourages Saladin to realise that Richard will have to leave Palestine soon and he plans an attack on the coastal strip's southern fortresses to improve his negotiating position.

31 March. Richard arrives back at the camp at Ascalon.

Easter Day, 5 April. Richard holds a council and announces that the kingship must be decided finally; the local barons are unanimous that they prefer Conrad to Guy, so Richard gives way and sends Henry of Champagne to Tyre to collect Conrad.

20 April? Henry arrives at Tyre and informs Conrad; the latter plans his coronation at Acre and Henry brings the news of his acceptance to Richard.

28 April. Before Conrad can leave Tyre, he is returning to his residence in the town from a dinner-time visit to the Bishop of Beauvais when he is fatally stabbed in the street by two 'Assassins', one is killed, and the other is captured and says they were sent by the Shaikh of the Order in the Syrian mountains, Rashid-al-Din Sinan, in a private dispute over Conrad robbing a ship belonging to the Order. Richard and Saladin are both suspected of ordering the murder to remove their main local enemy, and the Arab sources say the captured killer implicated Richard. Ibn-al-Athir writes that Saladin paid Sinan to murder both Conrad and Richard but Sinan wanted to leave Richard alive as a check on Saladin; the Bishop of Beauvais leads the accusations, and from the outcome apparently tells Philip he believes them when he returns to France.

Isabella barricades herself in the Tyre citadel and awaits the arrival of either Richard or Philip, but when Henry of Champagne arrives in the town from Acre the locals hail him as their next ruler. It is suspected by the French that Richard put him up to it and organised the demonstration as the Palestinian barons would still not accept Guy as their ruler, but it may be an unprompted act; Henry insists that Richard must approve.

30 April. Isabella agrees to marry Henry, and the engagement is celebrated formally in Tyre; Richard officially agrees to it and possibly talks Henry out of going home to Champagne instead.

5 May. Marriage of Isabella and Henry at Acre; Henry becomes King of Jerusalem.

May. Richard negotiates with the Templars to persuade them to sell Cyprus to Guy of Ibelin; they agree (they have so far only paid 40,000 of the promised 100,000 dinars and the locals are in revolt) and Guy sails to Cyprus as the new King, beginning 280 years of Lusignan dynastic rule there.

Richard advances south along the coast again, and (18 May) attacks the fortress of Daron, near (demolished) Gaza, which protects the southern approaches to Ascalon; Alam-al-Din Qaisar, the new commander sent by Saladin to reinforce it, retreats rather than face a siege. Henry fails to arrive with reinforcements from Acre on time, but on 22 (*Christian sources*)/23 (*Moslem sources*) May Daron town falls to Richard's assault and the citadel surrenders; Richard massacres or enslaves the garrison.

24 May. Henry arrives with Hugh of Burgundy and Richard hands Daron to him.

Richard marches north to Ascalon (31 May), but before he can advance on Jerusalem another worrying report arrives from England (brought by John of Alencon) of a plot between John and King Philip; a Poitevin

chaplain, William, has to persuade him to make one final attempt to advance on the city and he says he will stay in Palestine until *Easter 1193*; *6 June* he leaves Ramleh and advances to Blancheguarde.

Richard's second march on Jerusalem, to Latrun *9 June* and Beit-Nuba *12 June*; he waits for Henry to return with reinforcements. Richard sights the city from the hills near Emmaus, and allegedly covers his eyes weeping that he cannot deliver it; the Bishop of Lydda and the Abbot of a local convent present him with reputed parts of the True Cross saved in *1187*; *20 June* a caravan bringing supplies from Egypt to the city is spotted by Crusader scouts; *23 June* Richard (with 500 knights and 900 sergeants) attacks and captures it by the 'Round Cistern' 20 miles south-west of Hebron.

Saladin orders all the wells around Jerusalem to be blocked, and *1 July*, at a council in the city he decides to stay and fight.

4 July. Richard decides that a siege of Jerusalem would be impractical and too dangerous, and that it cannot be held long if captured; he sets off back for the coast; at Jaffa he and Henry send envoys to Saladin, Richard only requiring the handover of the coastal strip (minus Ascalon) but Henry requiring that of all west of the Jordan. The later pro-Richard Western writers blame Duke Hugh of Burgundy for talking Richard out of an attack on Jerusalem, either on Philip's orders or unilaterally.

26 July. Richard retires to Acre to plan attack on Beirut; *27 July* Saladin brings his army down to the coastal plain and launches surprise attack on Jaffa, intending to secure it so that Richard cannot retake it before he has to go home.

30 July. Fall of Jaffa town on third day of Moslem assault; the citadel's garrison surrender and are told to stay put as berserk attackers are plundering the town and Saladin wants to avoid a massacre. A messenger sent on *27 July* reaches Acre late on the *28 July* and tells Richard what has happened; he immediately orders a counter-attack and within hours 50 galleys leave to sail down the coast to Jaffa. The wind holds him up at sea, and his land-force halts at Caesarea so as not to be caught ahead of the ships by the Moslems on shore.

31 July, evening. Richard reaches Jaffa as 49 of the garrison knights and their families are allowed to pass through the town out to safety. The rest of the garrison rallies as they see him, but as he fails to attack at once they continue preparations to leave.

1 August. A priest swims out to Richard's ship to tell him that the citadel is untaken. He leaps from his ship near the citadel walls and wades through the water to the beach to lead the attack, and the garrison rally and attack into the town. The garrison's attack is repulsed and they send envoys to Saladin to repeat their surrender, but Richard's men then enter the town and save the day; the Moslem forces, stronger in numbers (the attackers have around 80 knights, 400 archers, and 2,000 Italian sailors)

but exhausted from the previous day's storming, are driven out of Jaffa. Saladin's camp is filled with his panicking troops from Jaffa and he has to retreat inland.

1 August. Negotiations with Saladin resume, and his chamberlain Abu Bekr is sent to Richard's camp; there is a stalemate over who should have Ascalon; Richard offers to hold Jaffa and Ascalon as a fief from Saladin.

5 August. Saladin attacks the Crusader camp by surprise hours before the main Crusader army from Acre is due to arrive; he is repulsed with Richard leading around 54 knights and 2,000 infantry with makeshift weapons, defending a hasty barricade which the Moslem cavalry fail to storm. After an afternoon of Moslem cavalry assaults Richard organises a counter-attack by his archers, and leads his cavalry into the stricken enemy cavalry; in the evening Saladin retreats out of range of attack and heads back to Jerusalem; c. *8 August.* Saladin is able to return to Ramleh with Egyptian reinforcements.

Although Crusader reinforcements arrive at Jaffa, Richard is unable to march due to illness; Richard sends a vain message to the ill Al-Adil to ask Saladin for Ascalon, and finally gives way over Ascalon.

28 August. Hubert Walter informs Saladin's advance-guard commander Badr-ad-Din Dildirim that Richard is prepared to concede Ascalon. Peace-agreement reached with Al-Adil's next embassy, bringing Saladin's 'final offer'; *3 September* a five-year peace-treaty is signed, and the 'Latin Church' obtains restoration of guardianship of the 'Holy Places' in Jerusalem despite Emperor Isaac Angelus' offers to Saladin to keep it with the Greek Orthodox; Jaffa is agreed as the southern frontier of the Kingdom and Ascalon is to be demolished. French writers later allege that Richard was bribed to abandon Ascalon, but strategically it would be difficult to defend once he had left Palestine.

Bishop Hubert Walter of Salisbury leads a party of Crusader pilgrims to Jerusalem, where they tour the 'Holy Places' and have an interview with Saladin; Richard refuses to go as he could not retake Jerusalem by force, and refuses to allow any French troops to go either. Two Latin priests are to be allowed each at the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, the Basilica of the Nativity at Bethlehem, and Nazareth, and Queen Tamara of Georgia endeavours to buy the 'True Cross' for 200,000 dinars from Saladin but he refuses.

Richard returns to Acre, in a litter after another bout of illness; *29 September* Queens Berengaria and Joan sail for the West with the first part of the English contingent, and call in at Palermo en route to France. The English admiral Stephen of Turnham commands the small fleet.

8 October. Richard sails for the West on board a 'buss' or 'great ship'; in the meantime Philip is organising a 'smear campaign' against him, particularly over the alleged disposal of Conrad of Montferrat, and alleging that Richard has hired the Assassins to kill him too. Emperor Henry backs

Philip, as Richard is an ally of his enemy Tancred; as a result Richard cannot travel through German dominions.

Richard crosses the Ionian Sea to Corfu, but finds that the route across Italy to France is blocked by the hostile Germans (Henry VI's men) in the Papal States, Henry cannot be trusted not to intercept him in the Alps or southern Germany, and Philip's ally Genoa blocks the Riviera; another enemy, Count Raymond V of Toulouse, has sent troops to Provence to guard the ports against him and is rumoured to be planning to ambush him at Marseilles. The western route via the Straits of Gibraltar into the Atlantic is too risky for his small force against Moslem pirates (and the strong currents which would require oared galleys to overcome them), and it is *mid-winter*.

11 November. Richard's ship sails from Corfu; it is spotted off Brindisi a few days later, but fails to land in Italy or Sicily. Probably warned by Tancred's envoys, he decides to sail up the Adriatic and head for northern Germany (his ally Duke Henry of Saxony) via Bohemia (the realm of Henry's foe King Premysl Ottakar). According to Ralph of Coggeshall, he abandons his warship for two hired galleys. He escapes an attack by a pirate-ship in the Ionian Sea. Meanwhile Joan and Berengaria arrive in Rome by road from Naples, but are unable to proceed further due to German troops.

Saladin leaves Jerusalem for Damascus once Richard has sailed, signs truce with Bohemund III at Beirut, and (*4 November*) arrives in Damascus.

ITALY/GERMANY

December. Richard arrives at Ragusa/Dubrovnik, traditionally after being shipwrecked nearby on Lokrum island and vowing to build a church on the site if he gets ashore. He apparently initially claims to be a Templar knight, and is probably on a Templar galley. Later he is shipwrecked near Aquileia at the head of the Adriatic; the local lord, Meinhard of Gorizia, is a nephew of Conrad of Monteferrat and a close ally of his overlord Emperor Henry.

Claiming to be 'Hugo', a merchant, Richard sends an envoy to Meinhard seeking help but the latter is suspicious of the value of the ruby offered to him and sends his Norman-bred nephew-in-law Roger of Argentan to see if he can recognise Richard; Roger does so but refuses to betray him and Richard leaves in a hurry; later some of his party are captured at Udine by Meinhard's men.

Richard's small party is reputedly ambushed but fights the locals off; Richard heads across Carinthia into Austria, pretending to be a Templar pilgrim and heading for Vienna, but is now hunted by Duke Leopold

whose flag he tore down from the walls of Acre in 1191. According to Roger of Howden, the conspicuous expenditure of Richard's party arouses suspicion; he leaves Baldwin of Bethune and most of his men behind at Freisach to pretend that he is with them, and rides swiftly ahead with one companion, a boy who can speak German, and possibly the knight William de l'Etang for the first part of the route.

21 December. Richard is captured at an inn, probably at Erdberg on the outskirts of Vienna, after being held up for a few days by illness; the boy with him is reported for his foreign accent and the expensive gloves he is carrying and is caught making purchases in a nearby market by Leopold's men. According to the French version of events, Richard is ignobly roasting meat in the inn kitchen when the guards arrive; he is taken before Duke Leopold. Within days he is sent to the fortress of Durnstein, on a rock overlooking the Danube upstream from Vienna, owned by Leopold's vassal Hetmar von Kuenring.

28 December. Henry, spending Christmas near Regensburg, writes to Philip to inform him of Richard's capture; Leopold is ordered to bring Richard to the Emperor.

ITALY

Pope Celestine secures guardianship of Tancred's captive Constance, but en route to Rome Henry's men rescue her.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Seljuk Sultan Kilij Arslan; lands are divided among his sons.

Sources

1188

Abu Shama pp. 62–3; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii, pp. 30–2, 34–6, 38–9, 44–9, 54–6; Ernoul, pp. 251–3, 256–7; *Estoire d'Eracles* ii, pp. 114, 119–24; *Expeditio Frederici* p. 16; Ibn Al-Athir, pp. 707–21; *Itinerarium RR*, pp. 28–33, 59–60; Rigord, pp. 90–3.

1189

Abu Shama, pp. 380–1, 430–1, 497–506; Ansbert, *Expeditio Frederici*, p. 27–66; Arnold of Lubeck, pp. 130–1; Baha ad-Din, pp. 140–3, 150–78; Benedict, vol. ii, pp. 50–1, 59–61, 66–71, 74–5, 80–8, 97–101, 116–22; Ernoul, pp. 358–9; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 124–9; *Gesta Federici in Expeditionis Sacra*, pp. 80–4; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, p. 6; *Itinerarium RR*, pp. 47–9, 60–74, 77–9; Nicetas Choniates (1856 edition), pp. 525–37; Otto of St. Blaise, *Chronica*, ed. Hofmeister (MGHS, 1912) pp. 6607; Ralph of Diceto, vol. ii, pp. 65–6, 70; Rigord, pp. 94–7; Roger of Wendover, *Chronica*, ed. Hewlett, 3 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1886–9) vol. i pp. 154–63.

1190

Abu Shama, p. 478.

Ambroise, pp. 365–70, 419, 473–80.

Ansbert, *Expeditio Frederici*, pp. 67–90 (German expedition), 90–2 (death of Frederick).

Baha ad-Din, pp. 178–80, 183–4 (death of Frederick), 189–91, 193–7, 207–14 (siege of Acre)

Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii, pp. 94, 108, 111, 116–22 (Palestine/Syria); also pp. 115–25 (Richard's expedition commences); pp. 126–60 (Richard and Philip in Sicily).

Epistola de Morte Friderici, pp. 172–7 (expedition), 177–9 (death).

Ernoul, pp. 250–1, 259

Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii. p. 140.

Gesta Frederici, pp. 84–97.

Itinerarium RR, pp. 49–53, 54–5 (death of Frederick); pp. 65, 79–88, 92–4, 97–109, 111–13, 119–24 (siege of Acre), and pp. 146–53 (Richard's expedition commences), pp. 154–77 (Richard and Philip in Sicily),

Nicetas Choniates (1856 edition), pp. 538–45 (German expedition).

Ralph of Diceto, vol. ii, pp. 82–3 (Acre).

Ralph of Hoveden, *Chronica*, vol. iii, pp. 36–7; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta Ricardi*, pp. 124–8, 132–9, 151–7.

Rigord, pp. 97–9 (Richard and Philip set out), pp. 106–9 (in Sicily).

William the Breton, *Gesta Philippi Regis and Philippis*, ed. Delaborde, 2 vols (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1882–5) vol. i, pp. 95–9 (Richard and Philip set out).

1191

Acre, spring: Abu Shama, vol. i pp. 517–18; Ansbert, pp. 96–7; Baha ad-Din, p. 236; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 155–6; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 32–3; Itinerarium RR, pp. 124–34, 136–7; Rigord, p. 108; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta* pp. 115–9 and 161 (Richard's truce with Tancred and leaves Sicily)

Richard in Cyprus: Ernoul, pp. 207–13; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 159–70; Itinerarium RR, pp. 177–204; Ralph of Hoveden, *Chronica*, vol. iii. p. 107; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta* vol. ii. pp. 162–72; Richard of Devizes, *De Rebus Gestis Ricardi Primi*, in *Chronicles* ed. Howlett, vol. iii (London: Longman, 1886), pp. 423–6; William of Newburgh, *Historia Rerum Anglicanum*, in *Chronicles*, ed. Howlett, vol. ii (London: Longman, 1886), p. 598.

Richard and Philip at Acre: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 42–3; Ambroise, cols 57–82; Baha ad-Din, pp. 240–3; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii. pp. 168–9; Ernoul, p. 273; Estoire d'Eracles, pp. 169–70; Imad ad-Din, pp. 289–90; Itinerarium RR, pp. 204–11.

Fall of Acre: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 19–29; Ambroise, cols 123, 133–9; Ansbert, p. 102; Baha ad-Din, pp. 224–7, 258–69; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii. pp. 170–9; Ernoul, pp. 274–5; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 173–6; Haymar Monachus, *De Expugnata Accone*, ed. Riant (Lyons: Roux, 1876) pp. 35, 44–6; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii. pp. 44–6; Imad ad-Din, p. 318; Itinerarium RR, pp. 213–34; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta*, vol. ii. pp. 170–8; Rigord, pp. 108–116.

After the fall of Acre; Philip goes home: Ambroise, cols. 142–3; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii, pp. 183–5, 192–9, 227–9; Ernoul, pp. 277–8; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 179–81; Itinerarium RR, pp. 238–9; Ralph of Hoveden, *Chronica*, vol. iii. p. 123; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta*, pp. 179–83; Rigord, pp. 116–17; William the Breton, pp. 106–9.

Richard kills prisoners and starts advance: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 30–3; Ambroise, cols 144–8; Baha ad-Din, pp. 270–4; Ernoul, pp. 276–7; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 178–9;

- Imad ad-Din, pp. 328–30; Itinerarium RR, pp. 240–3; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta*, pp. 186–9.
- March southwards: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 33–6; Ambroise, cols 248–56; Baha ad-Din, pp. 275–83; ibn al-Athir, vol. ii. p. 49; Imad ad-Din, pp. 339–40; Itinerarium RR pp. 248–56; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta*, vol. ii. p. 190.
- Battle of Arsuf: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 36–40; Ambroise, cols 160–78; Baha ad-Din, pp. 281–95; Itinerarium RR, pp. 256–78.
- March on Jerusalem and negotiations with Saladin: Abu Shama, vol. ii. p. 41–50; Ambroise, cols 187–9; Baha ad-Din, pp. 295–335; Benedict of Peterborough, vol. ii. pp. 172–3; Ernoul, p. 273; Estoire d’Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 170, 189090; Imad ad-Din, pp. 345–51, 353; Itinerarium RR, pp. 280–6, 295–303.

1192

- Richard approaches Jerusalem: Ambroise, cols 203–8; Baha ad-Din, pp. 326–7; Imad ad-Din, pp. 354–5; Itinerarium RR, pp. 303–8.
- Retreat and negotiations: Ambroise, cols 225–38; Baha ad-Din, pp. 327–31; Imad ad-Din p. 373; Itinerarium RR pp. 309–24.
- Conrad chosen king and assassinated: Abu Shaha, vol. ii. pp. 52–4; Ambroise, cols 233–8; Baha ad-Din, pp. 332–3; Ernoul, pp. 288–90; Estoire d’Eracles, vol. ii. pp. 192–4; Imad ad-Din p. 376; Itinerarium RR, pp. 329–42.
- Henry of Champagne chosen king: Ambroise, cols 238–9; Ernoul pp. 290–1; Estpire d’Eracles vol. ii. pp. 195–6; Imad ad-Din p. 378; Itinerarium RR, pp. 342–3; Ralph of Diceto, vol. ii. p. 104.
- Richard’s second advance on Jerusalem: Abu Shama, vol. ii. p. 54–66; Ambroise, cols 245–88; Baha ad-Din, pp. 337–60; Imad ad-Din, pp. 378–9; Itinerarium RR, pp. 352–99; Ralph of Hoveden, *Chronica*, vol. iii. pp. 175–83.
- Saladin attacks Jaffa and Richard saves it: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 66–71; Ambroise, cols 289–302; Baha ad-Din, pp. 361–71; Itinerarium RR, pp. 400–11.
- Final negotiations and treaty: Abu Shama, vol. ii. pp. 71–9; Ambroise, cols 304–11, 314–27; Ansbert, p. 99; Baha ad-Din, pp. 334–5, 371–87; Itinerarium RR, pp. 413–30; Ralph of Coggeshall, pp. 44–52; Ralph of Devizes, pp. 74–9.
- The English return home; Richard’s journey and capture: Ambroise, cols 327–9; Itinerarium RR, 439–40 (army’s return), 441–46 (Richard’s journey); Ralph of Coggeshall, pp. 53–7; Ralph of Diceto, vol. ii, p. 107; Ralph of Hoveden, *Chronica*, vol. iii, p. 184–6, 194–6; Ralph of Hoveden, *Gesta*, pp. 192–8, 203–6, 215–20, 227–30, 236–7; Rigord, pp. 118–22.

7 The Crusader kingdoms and the Fourth Crusade 1193–1204

1193 | FRANCE

January. Having heard that Richard is a captive, John arrives in Paris to do homage to Philip for the Angevin dominions in France – and reputedly for England too.

GERMANY

6 January. Duke Leopold brings Richard to the Imperial court at Regensburg, and Meinhard of Gorizia arrives with Richard's men who he rounded up in Northern Italy. Negotiations follow for Leopold's 'pay-off' for handing Richard to the Emperor, who wants Richard forced to abandon his ally Tancred. The fact that the persons and lands of Crusaders are supposed to be inviolate is ignored though the English regency government points this out and seeks Papal help.

Richard is soon returned to Durnstein by Leopold, possibly in case Henry seizes him without paying up; it is to this period in *January–February* that the story of Richard's minstrel 'Blondel' (a nickname, probably for a Picard troubadour called Jean de Nesle) discovering his whereabouts by singing under the castle tower and Richard joining in, belongs. The original version of the story, in the *1260s* by the 'Minstrel of Rheims', has Blondel going in search of Richard after his disappearance and searching for months if not a year; the time-scale makes this impossible. If 'Blondel' did find Richard at Durnstein he is unlikely to have come all the way from England or Normandy, but could have been one of Richard's entourage in Austria.

Hearing of Richard's capture, his chief adviser Bishop Hubert Walter (in Sicily after leaving him on Corfu) sends to Rome to ask the Pope to order Richard's release and excommunicate Leopold. He then goes to Germany to join the English/Norman delegation which (late February) a 'Great Council' sends to Henry's court. The delegation is led by Bishop Savaric of Bath.

14 February. At Wurzburg, Henry and Leopold reach terms on Richard's handover.

19 March. Apparent date for the English/Norman delegation, en route to Speyer, meeting Richard nearby as Leopold's men take him to the city.

22 March. Richard is formally accused before Henry's Imperial court at Wurzburg of treasonable dealings with Saladin to betray the Holy Land (i.e. the rumours of a bribe to sign a quick truce and abandon Ascalon?), having Conrad murdered, and breaking agreements with Henry (i.e. alliance with Tancred); these reflect Henry's willingness to use Philip's propaganda. Boniface of Montferrat, Conrad's brother and the later 1203–4 Crusader, leads the accusations. Richard defends himself, and the majority of the Emperor's vassals believe in his innocence; after Richard kneels at Henry's feet to swear his innocence Henry gives him the kiss of peace and promises to negotiate between him and Philip.

22 March. Henry takes custody of Richard; *25 March* terms are reached whereby Richard pays 100,000 marks, technically as a dowry for his niece Eleanor who will marry one of Leopold's kin, and allies with and sends military support to Henry against Tancred. Leopold is to receive half the money and the English/Norman delegation returns home to collect it. Henry also reportedly wants some German Crown Jewels back, which were taken in 1125 by Richard's grandmother the Empress Matilda (widow of Emperor Henry V). Richard is soon sent to the castle of Trifels in the Rhineland, as Henry faces revolt from some Lower Rhineland princes.

April. Richard is returned to Henry's court after his protests at the humiliation of close confinement, after the intercession of his adviser Bishop Longchamp.

PALESTINE

The exhausted Saladin postpones his planned return to Egypt and pilgrimage to Mecca.

19 February. Saladin rides out from Damascus to meet the returning pilgrimage from Mecca; that evening he collapses with a fever.

1 March. Saladin falls into a coma; his eldest son Al-Afdal hurries to secure the support of the emirs for his accession and bullies them to swear allegiance and to disinherit their children if they break the oath.

3 March. Death of Saladin in Damascus, aged 54/5; succeeded by feuding sons, (eldest and titular Sultan) Al-Afdal of Damascus, aged 22, Al-Aziz of Egypt, aged 21, and Az-Zahir of Aleppo; a younger son, Khidr, rules the Hauran (Jazirah) as Al-Afdal's deputy. Al-Adil rules Oultrejourdan (east of the river) and part of the Jazirah, and brother Toghtekin rules the Yemen. Al-Aziz refuses to accept Al-Afdal as his superior. Izz-ed-Din of Mosul plots revolt but dies as does Emir Beqtimur of Ahlat (Armenia), and their sons Nur-ed-Din Arslan and Aqsonqor accept the suzerainty of Al-Adil.

FRANCE/ENGLAND

Spring. John's group of Norman rebels and a French army overrun part of eastern Normandy, but fail to take Rouen; Philip regains much of the Vexin which John has promised to cede to him and the crucial castle of Gisors surrenders. In England, loyal barons under the 'justiciars' drive John's rebels back into his castles of Windsor and Tickhill and a six-month truce is agreed to raise Richard's ransom.

PALESTINE

May. Henry of Champagne reduces the Pisan colony at Tyre to thirty persons for a plot to hand it over to Guy of Lusignan; the Pisan ships raid the Palestinian coast and Henry retaliates by expelling them from Acre too.

Geoffrey de Donjon succeeds Garnier of Naples as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

GERMANY

Richard, and his advisers now helping him at the Imperial court, manage to halt plans for Henry to meet Philip on 24 *June*.

29 *June*. A new agreement between Richard and Henry at Worms halts Philip's efforts to pay Henry to hand Richard over to him. Richard is now to pay an extra 50,000 marks to Henry, though within seven months of his release not before it.

John flees to France as soon as the agreement for Richard's release is finalised, and the regency (now led by his and Richard's mother Queen Eleanor) confiscates his English lands and starts to raise the 'ransom'.

Richard confirms Philip's grant of important Norman castles to John, which Henry wants to include in his mediation between Richard and Philip, to keep John busy there.

ITALY

Autumn. Henry's Germans and rebel barons gain upper hand over sick Tancred in Apulia.

Death of Tancred's eldest son, Duke Roger of Apulia, husband of the Byzantine Princess Irene, who is thus free to be married off to Henry VI's nominee on the fall of the Kingdom of Sicily to Henry (long-term cause of Fourth Crusade diversion to Constantinople).

SYRIA/ARMENIA

October. Leo II of Armenia kidnaps visiting Bohemund III of Antioch at Baghras, in agreement with Bohemund's wife Sibylla to get her son

William as heir not her stepson Raymond of Tripoli; Leo's troops under Hethoum of Saisun, aided by Bohemund's Marshal Bartholomew Tirel, occupy Antioch but the citizens are more dubious than the barons and fear Armenian rule; a riot starts as an Armenian soldier insults (French) St. Hilary, dedicatee of the Palace chapel, and the Armenian troops are driven out by citizens on Raymond's behalf; the Patriarch leads the citizens at a rally at the Cathedral to set up a 'Commune', i.e. autonomous government out of Prince's control, and they take an oath to Raymond as representing anti-Armenian Crusader alignment and ask him and King Henry to come to their aid. Leo deports Bohemund to Armenia as Raymond and his brother Bohemund (IV) arrive in Antioch.

GERMANY

20 December. As the first part of the 'ransom' arrives, Henry sets *17 January 1194* as the date for Richard's release.

1194 GERMANY

Henry fails in a plan to have Richard appointed as the new King of Burgundy, the Imperial lands in the Rhone valley/western Switzerland (thus his vassal), but Richard offers to hold the Kingdom of England as his vassal instead and Henry accepts; he does homage and is set a 5,000-mark annual rent. The agreement is probably aimed at reassuring Henry of Richard's firm loyalty to ensure his release; meanwhile a desperate John has promised to hand over all Normandy east of the Seine to Philip.

4 February. Richard is handed over to the ambassadors of his mother, Queen Eleanor, on the payment of all the initial 100,000 marks; he sets out for his dominions to deal with Philip and John, travelling via Cologne (*12 February*) and Brabant; *14 March* he sails from Flanders for England; *14 March* he lands at Sandwich.

28 March. Surrender of John's principal rebel fortress, Nottingham Castle.

ITALY

20 February. Death of Tancred at Palermo, aged around 50; younger son William succeeds under regency of Queen Sibylla.

Spring. Henry's general Berthold of Kunsberg victorious in Campania.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

May. Al-Aziz of Egypt invades Palestine and marches unopposed to the walls of Damascus, encouraged by refugee ministers of Saladin's who have abandoned the incompetent Al-Afdal. Al-Adil comes to Damascus on Al-Afdal's appeal, but to mediate not to aid his eldest nephew. Al-Aziz

secures Palestine in new agreement among the ‘Ayyubid’ princes mediated by Al-Adil, and Az-Zahir receives Lattaakieh and Jabala.

CYPRUS/PALESTINE/SYRIA/ARMENIA

May. Death of Guy of Lusignan, who Richard I has granted Cyprus, aged around 35; he wills Cyprus to his brother Geoffrey, but the latter has returned to Poitou so the barons elect their brother Amalric, Constable of the Kingdom of Jerusalem; Amalric arrives in Cyprus, but is not recognised at first by the suspicious King Henry; Balian (ex-lord of Beisan), Constable of Cyprus, negotiates Henry’s recognition of Amalric and Henry agrees to pay a visit to Cyprus for talks. The agreement reached there sees Amalric’s sons Guy, John, and Hugh engaged to Henry’s stepdaughter Marie of Montferrat (Conrad’s daughter by Queen Isabella) and Henry’s and Isabella’s daughters Alice and Philippa, all infants.

Queen Maria Comnena’s son by second marriage to Balian of Ibelin, John, becomes Constable of the Crusader Kingdom.

Death of the new Patriarch Radulphus of Jerusalem, Heraclius’ successor; the canons of the Holy Sepulchre meet in Acre and elect Archbsihop Aymer ‘the Monk’ of Caesarea; they send him to Rome for his consecration, but are arrested by King Henry for not consulting him first; Archbishop Josias of Tyre persuades Henry to release them and accept Aymer.

Henry marches to Antioch, and meets the new Shaikh of the Assassins en route, being his guest for a banquet; both have a common interest in keeping the Ayyubids divided and the Assassins offer to kill any enemies he nominates.

Henry invades Armenia from Antioch, marches on the capital at Sis, and forces Leo to hand over Bohemund III; Leo receives Baghras in peace-treaty and his niece Alice, daughter of Rupen III, marries Bohemund’s son Raymond (now ruler of Tripoli). Alice, technically heiress to Armenia, could unite the two realms – and her existing husband Hethoum, Leo’s lieutenant, dies conveniently.

ITALY

23 August. Naples surrenders to Henry’s fleet; he sacks Salerno and most of Southern Italy surrenders; *October* Henry lands at Messina and overruns the island as King William III and family flee to Caltabelotta fortress and surrender in return for promise of Taranto and Lecce as fief; *25 December* Henry crowned King of Sicily at Palermo.

26 December. Constance, hurrying to join Henry, gives birth to son Frederick at Jesi near Ancona; Henry deports Sicilian leadership to Germany, and Isaac II’s daughter Irene is taken too and is married to his brother Philip of Swabia; William III sent to monastery.

GERMANY

31 December. Sudden death through gangrene of Duke Leopold of Austria after an accident; seen as Divine retribution for his breaking the Church rules on not molesting Crusaders. This halts the plan for his son to marry Richard's niece Eleanor of Brittany.

1195

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Early. Henry, as heir to Sicilian kingdom's claims, insolently sends envoys to Isaac demanding Epirus and Macedonia; Isaac's envoys offer him a financial equivalent to buy him off and help his planned Crusade and terms are negotiated.

Isaac's brother Alexius renews his plotting.

8 April? Encamped at Kypsela en route to attack Bulgaria, Isaac goes out hunting and returns to find that his elder brother Alexius has proclaimed himself Emperor in the imperial tent and the soldiers are joining in supporter's acclamations; Isaac's attendants flee and he heads along the Via Egnatia but is captured and taken to Vera monastery to be blinded; at Constantinople Alexius' wife Euphrosyne occupies the Palace, but Alexius Contostephanus tries to proclaim himself Emperor at Hagia Sophia and guards have to disperse his followers.

Isaac installed in palace on the Bosphorus under guard; Alexius blames the coup on the will of disgruntled army and gives lavish gifts to the nobility to win them over; during his coronation-procession his horse rears and his crown is knocked off.

SYRIA/EGYPT

Summer. After a second advance by over-confident Al-Aziz on Damascus to attack Al-Afdal leads to al-Adil coming to the rescue, Al-Afdal is emboldened to attack Egypt. This time Al-Adil marches on Damascus to attack not aid him, and forces him to withdraw.

SPAIN/PORTUGAL

June. Caliph Yaqub al-Mansur lands a large army at Tarifa to march into southern Castile and reconquer regions recently lost to the Christians. King Alfonso VIII marches out to the river Guadiana on the frontier to intercept him, with an army including most of the knightly orders of Calatrava and Santiago. Yaqub prudently halts his army as he spots the enemy (*16 July*) to rest them rather than rushing into a fight.

22 July. Heavy defeat of the Christians at the battle of Alarcos, with the Almohads holding back a Christian cavalry charge and then surrounding the knights. Many of the latter, the Masters of both Orders present in the battle (Sancho Fernandez de Lemus of the Order of Calatrava), and three bishops are killed.

Alfonso retreats to Toledo; without an effective Castilian army for some time, Yaqub is able to retake the towns of Montanchez, Talavera and Trujilo. He also takes the Order of Calatrava's eponymous headquarters, forcing them to relocate (1198) to Salvatierra. With most of the Order's knights in Castile killed at Alarcos, the more numerous Knights based in Aragon try to take over the Order by electing the next Grand Master from among themselves and a schism with Castile follows.

1196 SPAIN

25 April. Death of King Alfonso II of Aragon at Perpignan, aged 31; succeeded by his son by Sancha of Castile, Peter II (aged 17/18).

PALESTINE/EGYPT

July. Al-Aziz and his uncle Al-Adil attack Damascus and force Al-Afdal to abdicate; Al-Aziz becomes Sultan and Al-Afdal is pensioned off with the town of Salkhad in the Jazirah.

HUNGARY/GERMANY/BYZANTIUM

Death of Béla III; succeeded by son Emeric.

Henry VI sends envoys, Chancellor Conrad of Hildesheim and Marshal Henry von Kalden, to Constantinople to demand huge financial assistance for his Crusade; 25 *December* Alexius tries to overawe them at a splendid reception but the unimpressed Germans jeer that swords are more important than jewels and demand 5,000 lbs of gold; Alexius sends Eparch Eumathius Philocales to Henry to reduce demands.

1197 SYRIA

Early. Death of Bohemund III's son Raymond of Tripoli, leaving infant son Raymond-Rupen by Alice of Armenia. The latter and Bohemund's adult second son Bohemund (IV) are now rivals to be heir to Antioch, with Armenia aligned to Raymond-Rupen's cause.

Recovery of Jebail/Jabala by its Crusader claimant, Stephanie of Mailly (niece of Reynald of Sidon), after a private agreement with its Kurdish commander.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Henry accepts Alexius' reduced offer of 1,600 lb of gold, and Alexius raises a special 'Alemanikon' (German) tax to pay it and as he has made nobles, clergy, and guilds in capital immune from taxation he has to strip imperial tombs of valuables; 7,000 lb of silver and less gold raised. Alexius sends Leo of Armenia a crown.

28 September. Death of Henry VI, aged 32; succeeded in Naples and Sicily by 3-year-old son Frederick (II) under regency of Constance, and end of threat to Byzantium. The German crown is however elective and needs an adult ruler, and Henry's brother Philip of Swabia prepares to fight over it with the Hohenstaufen family's hereditary foes, the Welfs of Saxony (now represented by Richard's nephew Otto).

PALESTINE

August. A first contingent of troops from Henry VI arrives in Acre for a new Crusade, mostly from the Rhineland; Duke Henry of Brabant also arrives with Flemings. The German leaders, Chancellor Conrad of Hildesheim and Count Adolf of Holstein, sail from Bari to Cyprus but are held up from military plans by the coronation of Amalric in Cyprus and then by subsequent succession-problems at Acre.

September. Coronation of Amalric as King of Cyprus in Nicosia; he does homage to the Imperial envoy and Chancellor, Conrad of Hildesheim.

The Germans enthusiastically march into Moslem territory in Galilee without waiting for reinforcements, and Al-Adil summons his vassals to oppose them; as a large Moslem army advances the Germans flee, and Henry brings troops out of Acre to save them from annihilation. Al-Adil takes his army south to attack Jaffa, and Henry offers it to his ally Amalric of Cyprus; Amalric sends his baron Reynald Barlias to take command, but Henry becomes worried at his lackadaisical approach to defence.

10 September. Henry of Champagne is killed falling out of window at the Palace in Acre, as he is looking at his troops assembling for the march on Jaffa in the courtyard and some Pisan envoys enter the room unexpectedly and distract him. His dwarf grabs at his clothes but falls out too. The barons debate who is to succeed and thus marry Isabella, but the local candidate, Hugh of Tiberias' brother Ralph, is opposed by the Orders and during the interregnum Al-Adil captures Jaffa. Duke Henry of Brabant returns from his march on Jaffa to take charge in Acre, and (*20 September*) Conrad of Hildesheim arrives from Cyprus. He suggests King Amalric of Cyprus, recently widowed, and this is accepted; Amalric is summoned to Acre.

October. Duke Henry and his Flemings aid an expedition to recover Beirut, which is abandoned by its pirate Emir Usama; it is handed over to Queen Isabella's half-brother John of Ibelin, son of Balian and Queen Maria Comnena. The Moslems demolish and abandon Sidon.

November. The German Crusaders besiege Toron and attempt to force the handover of 500 Christian prisoners, but refuse the garrison's request for safe passage on Conrad's insistence; the local barons warn Al-Adil of the possibility of a massacre even if the terms are agreed, hoping to avert an excuse of angry Moslem retaliation in that case and the defence hold out.

1198 | ITALY

8 January. Death of Pope Celestine III; cardinal-deacon Lothar elected Pope Innocent III, and Alexius III sends John Gregorius and Ibelard to him asking for negotiations.

ARMENIA

January. Coronation of Leo II as King by Catholicos Gregory, with Byzantine crown and German sceptre, in presence of Papal legate Conrad, Archbishop of Mainz, and the German Chancellor Conrad of Hildesheim

PALESTINE

January. Arrival of Amalric in Acre; next day he is married to Isabella, and a few days later he is crowned King of Jerusalem. As he is a German vassal as King of Cyprus, Conrad of Hildesheim probably intends to exert German influence over the Kingdom of Jerusalem too. Amalric insists that the kingdoms of Jerusalem and Cyprus remain legally separate and that there is only a personal union under himself, as consort not hereditary ruler in Jerusalem so his wife's daughter Maria of Montferrat is heiress to the latter.

2 February. The army of Al-Aziz arrives to relieve Toron, and the German troops flee on a rumour that Conrad's leadership has already deserted them. Back at Acre the Germans decide to go home and leave.

Some German knights decide to stay in Acre, and are attached to the service of a new hospice for their nationals which the Bremen and Lubeck merchants have set up; this is the start of the 'Order of Teutonic Knights'.

March. Amalric puts his ex-rival for the throne, Ralph of Tiberias, on trial for an unsuccessful ambush on him outside Tyre, and banishes him; John of Ibelin persuades the King to accept a 're-trial' before the barons as required by law, and Ralph successfully defends himself before his peers but announces that he is leaving the Kingdom as he has lost his sovereign's confidence.

BALTIC

A German-led Crusade against the pagan Livonians planned by Pope Celestine since 1193 takes place with the landing of an army, led by Bishop Berthold of Hanover; it is defeated and the Bishop is killed.

ITALY

15 August. Innocent proclaims Crusade for *March 1199*; he writes to Alexius III advising end of the Church schism and briefs legates Albertus and Albertinus for mission.

November. Death of Regent Constance of Sicily, leaving Pope as guardian to Frederick II, while her brother-in-law Philip of Swabia (married to Isaac II's daughter Irene) and Otto of Saxony/Brunswick fight over Germany.

EGYPT

29 November. Death of Al-Aziz of Egypt after hunting-accident; ministers soon invite Al-Afdal to assume regency for 12-year-old son Al-Mansur.

SYRIA

December? Bohemund III's younger son Bohemund (IV) seizes Antioch and deposes father to safeguard his rights against nephew Raymond-Rupen, whose cause is taken up by relative Leo of Armenia. Bohemund III's and Leo's partisans are able to count on support in Rome as the Pope is anxious not to antagonise his new vassal Leo.

1199 EGYPT/SYRIA

January. Al-Mansur's uncle Al-Afdal arrives in Egypt as regent, as invited by the boy's ministers, and seizes the government; Az-Zahir of Aleppo fights uncle Al-Adil and sends an army to attack Damascus while he is in the Jazirah attacking Mardin, and Al-Afdal sends an Egyptian army as well; so does the less important Ayyubid cousin Shirkuh of Homs.

SPAIN/MOROCCO

23 January. Death of the Almohad Caliph, Abu Yusuf Yaqub, aged 38/9, after a 14-year reign; succeeded by his son Mohammed an-Nasr (Abu Abdullah), in his early 20s.

GERMANY/BALTIC

28 March. A patent from Archbishop Hartwig of Bremen and Hamburg entrusts his nephew Albert with becoming the first Bishop of Livonia to conquer, Christianise and administer the pagan lands of the north-east Baltic, as Innocent organises a new expedition there to avenge the defeat of 1198. A Crusade is proclaimed, the Northern equivalent of the Fourth Crusade, and Albert tours northern Germany preaching and collecting volunteers.

FRANCE

6 April. Sudden death of Richard I, aged 41, of a crossbow-injury received during the siege of castle of Chalus in Poitou. John succeeds to the rule

of England, Normandy, and Anjou rather than the genealogically senior Arthur, son of his late elder brother Geoffrey of Brittany. As Richard is not available to take part in the forthcoming Fourth Crusade the leadership passes to others less committed to retaking Jerusalem, among them his ally Count Baldwin of Flanders (who if Richard had been alive might have been assisting him in Northern France in 1202–3 not been available for Crusade).

SYRIA

Al-Adil returns to Damascus (8 *June*) before his nephews' armies arrive; his eldest son Al-Kamil keeps up the siege of Mardin.

14 *June*. Al-Afdal's army arrives outside Damascus; 16 *June* Al-Aziz's army arrives.

16 *June–December?* Al-Afdal and Az-Zahir besiege uncle Al-Adil in Damascus.

Supported by Pope Innocent, Bohemund III obtains his eponymous son's agreement to him returning to power in Antioch; the younger Bohemund then returns to Tripoli. Patriarch Peter fails in negotiations with the obstinate Leo of Armenia about Leo returning the castle of Baghras to the Templars.

FRANCE

28 *November*. Count Theobald of Champagne holds tournament at Ecry-sur-Aisne as legate Peter Capuano preaches Crusade across France, and urges guests to join him on Crusade; Fourth Crusade organised.

1200 SYRIA/EGYPT

January. Al-Adil's son Al-Kamil arrives from 'Jazirah' in Iraq to relieve Damascus, and Al-Adil pursues Al-Afdal into Egypt; he defeats him at Bilbeis and *February* forces him to abdicate in his favour. Al-Afdal returns to Salkhad.

Spring. While Al-Adil is still in Egypt, Az-Zahir advances on Damascus again and Al-Afdal hurries to join him; Al-Adil returns to his capital to withstand siege, but soon manages to foment a quarrel between his nephews. Al-Afdal accepts an offer of the cities of Samosata and Mayyafariqin (upper Euphrates valley) and withdraws from the siege, and Al-Aziz has to retreat to Aleppo.

FRANCE

Spring. Baldwin, Count of Flanders, and other Crusaders hold a 'parlement' at Soissons; Baldwin's brother Henry, Count Louis of Bois, Count

Geoffrey of Perche, and Count Simon de Montfort are prominent in the group that now organises the Crusade and a mixture of north French and Flemish knights take part. They send Geoffrey of Villehardouin, their later chronicler, and Conan of Béthune to Venice to loan ships. In the Rhineland the Bishop of Halberstadt and the Count of Katzenellenbogen lead the Crusade.

BALTIC

Spring. Bishop Albert of Livonia and his Crusaders, in 23 ships, land at the mouth of the River Daugava and commence the conquest of pagan Livonia.

1201 ITALY

Lent. Crusading envoys in Venice and request transportation for 4,500 knights and horses, 9,000 squires, and 20,000 infantry; terms agreed with payment of 94,000 marks, reduced to 84,000 on appeal, to be paid in four instalments before embarkation *June 1202*; *May* Pope Innocent supports Crusade, and envoys obtain promises from Marquis Boniface of Montferrat (brother to Renier and Conrad) but not Genoa or Pisa; *24 May* death of putative leader Theobald of Champagne, succeeded by Boniface.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Isaac II's son Alexius (aged c. 23), released from house-arrest, flees to Italy disguised as a sailor on Pisan ship and is not recognised when Imperial sailors search the ship; he goes to sister Irene's husband Philip in Germany and Alexius III cancels talks with Pisan envoy Benenato.

BALTIC

Bishop Albert founds the port city of Riga as headquarters of the new Crusader state in Livonia, helped by the merchants of the Hanseatic League. He becomes its first Bishop, dying in 1229.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Death of Bohemund III aged c. 59; succeeded by younger son Bohemund IV.

Autumn. Al-Adil secures full control of the Ayyubid realm after defeating Al-Aziz, who retains control of Aleppo as his vassal; Al-Mansur of Egypt is pensioned off with Urfa/Edessa and Al-Afdal keeps Samosata but not Mayyafariqin, which goes to Al-Adil's fourth son Al-Muzaffar; Al-Adil's eldest son Al-Kamil becomes his deputy in Egypt, his second son Al-Muazzam assists him in Damascus, and the third, Al-Ashraf, rules at Harran.

ITALY

Winter. Boniface meets Prince Alexius at Irene and Philip's court and discusses helping him; start of idea of diverting Crusade via Byzantium.

Philip apparently intends to assist Alexius to install a pro-German regime in Constantinople, ready for when he assumes the western Imperial throne and revives his late brother Henry VI's eastern schemes.

BALTIC

Arnold von Buxhoevden leads a Papal-sponsored military expedition from Germany to back up the forceful conversion of the pagan Livonians by Catholic missionaries; the military mission is formalised on a permanent basis as the 'Knights of the Sword', on the model of the Templars and Hospitallers. Foundation of Riga as their headquarters.

1202 ITALY

June. Crusaders start to assemble at Venice though some sail direct to Palestine from Apulia; the Bishop of Autun takes one French force directly from Marseilles to Palestine.

BALTIC

Bishop Albert of Riga establishes the 'Knights of the Sword' (or 'Sword Brothers') in Livonia, modern northern Latvia/southern Estonia. They establish a permanent colonial presence in Livonia's interior to compensate for the fact that many Crusaders there only come for campaigns in the summer months. Their first Master (1204) is Wenno von Rohrbach.

FRANCE

14 September. Fulk of Neuilly preaches the Fourth Crusade to the general chapter of the Cistercian Order at Citeaux.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

The Crusaders in Venice cannot raise enough money, and Prince Alexius writes offering Byzantine money and troops if he is restored to rights; the Crusading leaders accept Doge Enrico Dandolo's proposal to take Zara for Venice in lieu of payment and *8 September(?)* Dandolo takes Cross in St. Mark's; *10 November* the Crusaders land outside and besiege Zara.

Alexius III hears of the threat and appeals to Innocent who *16 November* promises to stop Crusade assisting his nephew.

11 November. (St. Martin's Day) Crusaders storm and sack Zara, and hand it over to Venice.

December. Prince Alexius' envoy arrives at Zara, offering himself with 10,000 men and 200,000 marks for Crusade and reunion of Churches in return for support.

CYPRUS

Autumn? Isaac Ducas Comnenus' daughter's husband, knight Baldwin, turns up to unsuccessfully demand that King Amalric abdicate in his favour.

PALESTINE

Late Autumn. The Bishop of Autun's (small) expedition arrives at Acre, shortly after a Flemish fleet under Jean de Nesle, and a group of disillusioned Crusaders from Venice (under Reynaud of Dampierre) follows. Then Reynaud of Montmirail brings news from Zara that the main Crusade is to go from Zara to Constantinople and will not be arriving for many months, if at all; King Amalric tries to dissuade the French enthusiasts from starting a war with his Moslem neighbours, so Reynaud of Dampierre calls him a coward and announces that he is going to serve Prince Bohemund in Antioch instead. En route to Antioch his party is ambushed and overwhelmed by the troops of the Emir of Lattakieh, having ignored a friendly warning from the Emir of Jabala to seek permission before entering his suzerain Al-Aziz's territory.

1203 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

Most Crusaders agree to attack Constantinople, but Pope sends letter admonishing them for attack on Zara and excommunicating Venetians and their supporters and demanding return of loot and no further attacks on Christians; 7 April (day after *Easter*) main fleet leaves Zara for Corfu, and Dandolo and Boniface wait until 25 April Prince Alexius arrives late.

Late May. Fleet, rejoined by Boniface's group, lands at Corfu and dispute with the local Greek Orthodox Bishop over Church reunion at dinner leads to citizens attacking ships and retaliation; leaders have to assure angry Crusaders that they will spend a month in Constantinople at most while Alexius reassures on troops to aid Crusade, supplies, and Church reunion; Alexius and leaders agree in treaty to Isaac II's restoration, which Alexius assures will be easy, in return for aid. 24 May (eve of Pentecost) the fleet leaves Corfu.

Fleet lands at Euboea, and citizens swear allegiance to Alexius (*June* in Abydos?). 23 June they arrive at St. Stephen/Hebdoman, seven miles west of Constantinople which is now within sight, and Doge Dandolo advises on tactics for the attack. 24 June the fleet sails up to Constantinople to

sail past its Southern walls, and the Crusaders are daunted by its size according to Villehardouin. They land at Chalcedon over the Bosphorus; 26 *June* they occupy Chrysopolis and await the promised revolt in Prince Alexius' favour.

1 *July*? Alexius III's admiral Michael Stryphnus and c. 500 cavalry are defeated in their camp near Chrysopolis, and grand Imperial tents are plundered by the Crusaders; 2 *July* Alexius III sends Lombard, Nicholas Rosso, to demand why Crusaders are attacking Christians and require their departure, and Conan of Béthune replies they are restoring rightful ruler and demands abdication.

3 *July*. Prince Alexius sails beneath the walls to show himself to citizens but is jeered at; Crusaders baffled and decide to move to European shore.

5 *July*. Venetian ships transport the Crusaders to west side of Bosphorus, and Byzantine army on shore bombarded until knights can land horses and lead charge; Alexius III abandons camp and Crusaders occupy it.

6 *July*. Crusaders attack and take the tower defending Galata suburb north of Golden Horn, and Venetians ram the chain blocking the Horn; harbour occupied and Venetians propose to concentrate on sea-walls.

10 *July*. Fleet protects crossing of Golden Horn to main land-walls as the destroyed bridge has to be repaired; 11 *July* Crusaders camp at monastery of Ss Cosmas and Damian, 'Bohemund's castle', opposite Blachernae.

Skirmishes as Venetians attack sea-walls, and superstitious city mob smashes up columns of Arcadius and Theodosius.

17 *July*. Baldwin of Flanders leads assault on Blachernae, but Varangian guard drives the Crusaders off the walls; Venetians take towers along the sea-walls in Petrion district, are driven out of streets by citizens, and start fire that devastates quarters facing the Horn between Blachernae and Petrion; Alexius III drives Crusaders back to camp in person and Venetians abandon towers.

Night, 17–18 July. Alexius III flees with 1,000 lb of gold, pearls, jewels, and daughter Irene to flee by sea to Develtus in Thrace.

18 *July*. Ministers meet and reluctantly fetch Isaac II to restore him to Blachernae Palace; envoys are sent to Crusader camp, and Prince Alexius, Boniface, Geoffrey of Villehardouin, and two Venetians go to Palace; Isaac is reminded of his son's agreement and has to sign it despite protests before Alexius IV is proclaimed co-emperor and escorted to Palace; Crusaders allowed in to tour city; 1 *August* Alexius crowned.

Western troops sent to Blachernae Palace and holes knocked in land-walls to discourage treachery; Alexius proposes that Crusaders stay in capital at his expense until March and he then accompanies fleet to Palestine and pays for it until September; Crusaders agree but Alexius III arrives in Adrianople to lead provincial resistance and *August* Boniface and

Baldwin's brother Henry accompany Alexius IV into Thrace to reoccupy Adrianople.

19 August. City mob attacks Latin quarter and many flee to Crusaders; in retaliation the Italians lead assault on 'infidel' Moslem quarter and another devastating fire breaks out; *19–20 August* fire burns across city to harbours of Julian and Eleutherius on south shore; *November* Alexius IV returns to find citizens sullen and Isaac unable to pay enough of promised aid; Alexius becomes closer to anti-Latin faction to rally support and restores some of uncle's ministers such as Nicetas Choniates, but is losing power to more 'nationalist' leaders such as Alexius Ducas Murtzuphlus who he makes 'protovestiarius' in attempted alliance.

Late November. Crusader leaders warn Emperors at Blachernae reception of consequences if agreement not met; *1 December* Latin quarter attacked again but riotous citizens captured crossing Horn to assault Venetians.

PALESTINE

Alfonso of Naples succeeds Geoffrey de Donjon as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1204 BYZANTIUM

1 January. Byzantine fire-ships driven off by Venetian fleet; skirmishes break out on land and Latins suffer from lack of food until more ships arrive.

25 January. Crowds gather at Hagia Sophia and ignore Choniates' and others' warnings of Crusaders' wrath if Alexius IV deposed; Radinus elected but hides disguised as monk, and statue of Athena from Parthenon smashed up as facing west and 'beckoning Latins'.

28 January. Crowds elect young noble Nicholas Canabus, while Alexius IV sends to Boniface asking him to move into Blachernae Palace to protect him but recovers nerve after nobles' taunts and changes his mind; that night Murtzuphlus burst into Alexius' bedchamber to tell him the mob is coming and Alexius, agreeing to follow him to escape, is seized and thrown in a dungeon; Murtzuphlus seizes Palace.

29 January. Murtzuphlus announces his accession to assembly of nobles and clergy and promises to rid the City of Latins, and the mob supports him and abandons Canabus who refuses to leave Hagia Sophia and *3 February* after followers have been bribed to disperse is arrested; the gates are shut and reassuring messages sent to leaders summoning them to meet 'Alexius IV' but Dandolo suspects trap and they do not reply.

News of the coup reaches camp; Alexius V meets Dandolo who requires payment of Alexius IV's debts under treaty and his restoration, and afterwards knights try to capture the new Emperor.

Siege of Constantinople; 5 *February* coronation of Alexius V ‘Ducas’ in Hagia Sophia; 8 *February* Alexius V strangles his predecessor after failed attempt at poisoning and pretends he died naturally, and shortly afterwards Isaac II dies (presumably murdered) aged probably c. 55; buried at Pantanassa monastery.

March. Crusading leaders draw up agreement – at fall of city, all loot collected and three-quarters of it to Venice until Alexius IV’s debts paid off, then equal distribution; six Crusaders and six Venetians elect a ‘Latin Emperor’ who gets a quarter of Empire, the rest equally divided; if a Crusader is elected Venetians get Patriarchate and Hagia Sophia, and vice-versa; all swear oaths and siege engines prepared.

9 *April.* Failed assault on sea-walls across Golden Horn, and Dandolo rallies the disheartened Crusaders as clergy assure that their sins did not cause failure.

Monday, 12 April. Forty ships cross Golden Horn carrying ‘flying bridges’ to assault the sea-wall at correct height, and attack walls between Blachernae and Alexius V’s position at monastery of Christ Evergetes; at around midday the first tower is seized, and after Crusaders are halted in possession of several towers some more smash open a postern-gate and Alexius V’s counter-charge downhill from city is defeated; more Crusaders follow to storm uphill into city and Alexius retires to Boucoleon as main Byzantine force regroups at Blachernae; Baldwin takes Alexius’ monastic headquarters.

At night Crusaders start another fire to stop counter-attack, and over a third of city burnt in giant swathe to the Propontis in South; Alexius V tours city to no avail and as people are fleeing he collects his mistress Eudocia, ex-Empress Euphrosyne, and others at Palace and flees into Thrace; at Hagia Sophia a hasty election-meeting chooses Alexius III’s son-in-law Theodore Lascaris, but as he tries to rally citizens at the Milion Arch and Varangian Guard demands donative he decides position is hopeless and flees over Bosphorus.

13–15 *April.* Sack of Constantinople, with the usual atrocities; Crusaders hold a mock ‘service’ in Hagia Sophia and install prostitute on Patriarch’s throne; Boniface occupies Boucoleon Palace but is expelled by Dandolo, and marries Isaac II’s widow Margaret of Hungary.

Patriarch John, Choniates, and many exiles struggle to Selymbria; Theodore Lascaris leaves family at Nicaea and rallies exiles at Brusa.

Pro-Byzantine Tuscan, Aldobrandini, seizes Antalya/Attaleia; Mavrozomes declares independence in Maeander valley, Sabbas at Priene, and Monotheodorus at Philadelphia.

April? Queen Tamara of Georgia’s troops assist Alexius and David Comnenus, sons of Manuel son of Andronicus I, to take Trebizond – foundation of Empire of Trebizond. Alexius rules at Trebizond, David at Sinope.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Death of Rukn-al-Din, Sultan of Iconium/Konya; succeeded by son Kilij Arslan III, a minor, whose uncle Kaikhusraw has fled but plans to return.

LATIN EMPIRE

9 May. Baldwin of Flanders elected Emperor despite Boniface's attempts, and 16 May crowned in Hagia Sophia with Byzantine ceremonial; Venetian sub-deacon Thomas Morosini Patriarch; Baldwin's brother Henry marches west, and Alexius V abandons Tzurolon and flees; he seeks alliance with his refugee predecessor Alexius III at Mosynopolis, but the latter pretends to welcome him and then seizes him in bath, blinds him, and turns him out as beggar.

Spring. Leo Sgurus overruns Attica, and Bishop Michael flees to Euboea; Alexius III advances to meet him at Larissa and marries him to daughter Eudocia.

Late Summer. Villehardouin's nephew Geoffrey, arriving from Palestine to join in Crusader 'land-grab', lands at Modon in Peloponnesse and allies to local Greek lords.

August. Crusader host advances across Thrace to take Thessalonica, which Boniface successfully demands on account of Manuel I's grant to his brother Renier; Boniface installed in Thessalonica, annoyed at Baldwin insisting on being his suzerain, and 12 August sells his rights in Crete to Venice; Genoese pirate Enrico Pescatore seizes island.

October. Formal treaty of division of Empire – a quarter to Baldwin; three-eighths each to Venice and other Crusader lords; Baldwin rules east Thrace; Venice obtains Adrianople, Peloponnesse, Aegean and Ionian islands, Gulf of Corinth, and tip of Euboea; Baldwin gets Asia Minor and gives Adramyttium to brother Henry; Count of Blois gets Nicaea, Count of Perche Philadelphia, and Peter of Braçieux lands to Iconium.

Alexius III and Alexius V captured as Crusaders advance to Thermopylae, which Sgurus abandons; Athens occupied and given to Burgundian lord, Otto de la Roche; castles built at Boudounitza near Thermopylae (Guy Pallavicini) and Salona near Amphissa (Thomas d'Autremencourt); James of Avesnes overruns Euboea while Sgurus besieged in 'Acrocorinth', Corinth's mountainous citadel, and Boniface overruns Peloponnesse.

Michael Angelus Ducas (son of Alexius III's uncle John), disappointed of Crusader fief, deserts their army to join his relative Sennacherim, lord of Arta, and on his death takes over lands – foundation of *Despotate of Epirus*.

Alexius V tried for betraying his lord Alexius IV, sent to Constantinople, and 12 October thrown off Column of Theodosius as traitor.

Crusader force under Henry of Flanders takes Adramyttium; Peter of Braçieux and Payn of Orleans take Nicaea; 6 *December* defeat Theodore Lascaris, but are driven off his headquarters at Brusa.

PALESTINE

Autumn. Six-year truce between King Amalric and Al-Adil; the latter returns Jaffa and Ramleh to the Kingdom and abandons claims to Beirut and Sidon. At around this time a number of landless barons whose ancestral lands are still behind Moslem lines, including Hugh of Tiberias (married to half-Byzantine Margaret of Ibelin, daughter of Balian and Queen Maria Comnena), sail to the 'Latin Empire' to find new fiefs.

BULGARIA

November. Ioannitsa crowned as King by Papal legate, Cardinal Leo.

LATIN EMPIRE

Doge's nephew Marco Sanudo takes Naxos for Venice.

December. Innocent's legate Peter of Capuano addresses Greek clergy in Hagia Sophia and tells them to adopt Latin practices.

Sources

1193

Death of Saladin: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 101–9; Baha ad-Din, pp. 392–402; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 72–5; Roger of Hoveden, vol. iii, p. 213.

Aftermath: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 101–9; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 75–7; Kemal al-Din p. 305.

1193–4

Palestine: *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 203–5.

1194

Cyprus: *Estoire d'Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 202–8, 212–13.

Kingdom of Jerusalem: Ernoul, pp. 323–4; *Estoire d'Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 216, 231.

1194–7

Ayyubid feuds: Abu Shaham pp. 110–49; Ibn al-Athir, pp. 78–89.

1195–7

Cyprus: Arnold of Lubeck, p. 204; Ernoul, pp. 302–3; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 209–12, 214–16.

1197

German Crusade plans: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 116–17, 152; Ernoul pp. 305–7, 315–17; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 217–22; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 85–8.

1197–8

Death of Henry of Champagne: Ernoul, p. 306; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, p. 220; Ibn al-Athir vol. ii, p. 86.

Accession of Amalric: Arnold of Lubeck p. 205; Ernoul pp. 309–17; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 221–30; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, p. 86; Roger of Hoveden vol. iv, p. 29.

1197–1200

Palestine: Abu Shama, vol. ii pp. 220–1; *Chronica Regia Colonensis*, ed. Waitz (MGH Series, 1880) p. 161; Ernoul pp. 316–17; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, p. 228; Ibn al-Athir vol. ii, p. 89; Roger of Hoveden vol. iv, p. 28.

1198

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 1.

1199

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 2.

1200

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 3–7.

1201

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 8–11.

1201–4

Palestine: Abu Shama vol. ii, p. 158; Ernoul p. 341; *Estoire d’Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 247–9, 263; Ibn al-Athir vol. ii, p. 96; Kemal al-Din p. 39.

1202

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 11–13 (to Venice), 14–16 (Zara plan), 17–18 (Prince Alexius arrives); ch. 19–22 (Zara), 23 (treaty with Alexius), 23–4 (some leave for Palestine).

1203

Fourth Crusade: Villehardouin, ch. 25–7 (preparations for expedition vs Empire), also in Robert of Clary, *La Conquete de Constantinople*, ed. Lauer (Paris: E. Champion, 1924) pp. 30–40.

Villehardouin, ch. 27–31 (to Constantinople), 32–8 (Bosphorus and Asia), 39–44 (attack), 45–6 (Isaac II and Alexius IV installed); also in Robert of Clary, ch. 41–51.

Villehardouin, ch. 47–53 (in Constantinople and fire).

1204

Deposition of Alexius IV: Villehardouin, ch. 54–6, Robert of Clary ch. 57–9.

Siege of Constantinople: Villehardouin, ch. 57–8, Robert of Clary ch. 68.

Fall of the city: Villehardouin, ch. 60–6, Robert of Clary ch. 68–9, 80–1.

Election of Emperor Baldwin and division of Empire: Villehardouin, ch. 67–9, Robert ch. 93.

Subsequent campaigns in Thrace: Villehardouin, ch. 72–85.

8 The Crusading states to the Sixth Crusade 1205–1244

1205 GREECE: LATIN EMPIRE

21 January. Innocent reluctantly confirms Thomas Morosini's election as Patriarch of Constantinople despite illegality, and *March* he leaves Venice for Constantinople.

Geoffrey of Villehardouin's host, Archon of Modon (Peloponnese), dies and his son rejects alliance; Villehardouin joins Boniface of Montferrat at the siege of Nauplia but decides to conquer Peloponnesse and *Spring* persuades William of Champlitte to join him. With 100 knights and 400 men-at-arms they leave Boniface's army to take Patras, Andravida, 'Mouse Castle' (Pondico Castro), and other strong points to create principality; Cyparissia besieged.

? Michael Angelus Ducas of Epirus ransoms his cousin ex-Emperor Alexius III, who stays temporarily at Arta and then moves on to Iconium/Konya to seek Seljuk aid, leaving his wife Euphrosyne behind.

19 March. Henry defeats Theodore Lascaris' brother Constantine in the Troad.

Ioannitsa of Bulgaria aids Byzantine revolt in Thrace; Adrianople and Didymoteichon/Demotica captured, the latter's Frankish garrison having faced a local rebellion on the news of the death of its new lord Hugh of St. Pol at Constantinople. Baldwin hastens to Adrianople to start siege before the main Bulgarian army can reach it; *29 March*, attack on the city walls fails. *April* Ioannitsa arrives with Cuman reinforcements and routs and captures Baldwin in battle; Dandolo evacuates the survivors to Constantinople, whence many Crusaders flee; Henry of Flanders arrives from Bithynia at Rhaedestus to rally the army and is named Regent.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

1 April. Death of Amalric of Jerusalem and Cyprus at Acre, of a surfeit of fish, aged around 52; succeeded by 10-year-old son Hugh I in Cyprus, while widow Isabella rules Jerusalem (i.e. Acre and coastal ports) as sovereign.

FRANCE

Peter of Castelnau and Ralph of Fontfroide, appointed Papal Legates to preach to the Cathar heretics in Languedoc in 1203, have little success against their opponents who have strong local support; they receive Aragonese clerical assistance from across the Pyrenees. The founder of the Dominicans, St. Dominic (de Guzman), takes part in this mission.

LATIN EMPIRE

29 May. Death of Doge Enrico Dandolo; Henry besieges Adrianople and marches against Ioannitsa, who retires as Cumans abandon campaign and sacks Philippopolis, main town in the upper Hebrus valley. Henry goes on to besiege Thessalonica, leaving the more dangerous Bulgarians alone in their home region.

June. Venetians in Empire elect Marino Zeno as first 'Podesta'.

June. Jacopo Morosini, Venetian commander, takes Dyrrachium.

Revolt in south-west Peloponnesse against its new Frankish lords allotted it by the Crusade leaders, Villehardouin and Champlitte; Michael Angelus Ducas crosses Gulf of Corinth to assist them but is defeated at Coundoura; Cyprissia, Coron and Kalamata fall to the Latins but Monemvasia holds out.

ITALY

Pietro Ziani elected Doge in Venice and makes 'Podesta' Zeno hand over Dyrrachium and Corfu to direct Venetian control.

LATIN EMPIRE

Paulicians in Philippopolis try to hand over city to Ioannitsa, so local Latin commander Renier burns their quarter with Greek support; Ioannitsa is ordered by Pope to release Baldwin (and murders him?); Theodore Branas, Thracian magnate married to Andronicus I's widow Agnes/Anna of France, is accepted as feudal Lord of Didymoteichon.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Kaikhusraw revolts against his nephew Kilij Arslan with a coalition including three Danishmend princes, takes Iconium, and becomes Sultan.

1206 LATIN EMPIRE

Spring. Henry marches into Thrace and relieves Ioannitsa's siege of Didymoteichon/Demotica; Venetians expel their rebel commander Vetrano from Dyrrachium.

SYRIA

Bohemund IV deposes Patriarch Peter of Antioch for intrigues with Armenia (whose King Leo poses a threat to his rule as a partisan of Bohemund's half-Armenian nephew, Raymond-Rupen) and installs Greek Patriarch Simeon II.

PALESTINE

The 'Lady' of Caesarea leases some fortresses to the Teutonic Knights.

Geoffrey le Rat succeeds Alfonso of Portugal as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

LATIN EMPIRE

Henry relieves Bulgarian siege of Renier in Stenimachus; *July* Patriarch Thomas surrenders to Papal demand that he accepts some non-Venetian canons at Hagia Sophia.

20 August. Henry crowned Emperor at Hagia Sophia; he relieves Ioannitsa's siege of Adrianople, and later unsuccessfully besieges Nicomedia.

NICAEA

Theodore Lascaris proclaims himself Emperor; though Patriarch John Camaterus refuses to come from Thrace to crown him; *May/June* John dies.

Theodore defeats Mavrozomes, who keeps Maeander lands as his vassal.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Kaikhusraw occupies Attaleia/Antalya.

PALESTINE

Or late *1205?* Queen Isabella dies, aged around 34; succeeded by her daughter by Conrad of Montferrat, Marie, who was born in *1192*. Isabella's half-brother John of Ibelin, lord of Beirut, becomes regent of the Kingdom.

ITALY

The Hohenstaufen family's German general Dietrich of Voburg lands in Sicily, and persuades the ineffective local regent, William Capparone, to surrender power and the guardianship of young King Frederick II; he starts to reduce the rebels in Apulia and reassert central control.

FRANCE

(St.) Dominic de Guzman, Aragonese founder of the Dominican Order of ultra-orthodox preaching friars, joins his Bishop in a Papal-sponsored preaching-campaign to convert the ‘dualist’ Cathar heretics in southern France. The rhetorical skills, austere lifestyle, and religious zeal of Dominic is designed to provide a counter-attraction to those of the Cathar ‘perfecti’. The preaching-campaign is boycotted by the local overlord, Count Raymond VI of Toulouse, who protects the targets and is suspected of Cathar leanings – as are the ineffective Archbishop of Narbonne and local bishops whose appointment is due to pro-Cathar lay patrons.

1207 LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA

Early. Latins retake Pegae, Cyzicus, and Nicomedia; Theodore appeals to Ioannitsa who invades Thrace; Henry returns to Thrace, marrying *February* Boniface’s daughter Agnes of Montferrat to restore relations with the Crusaders in Thessalonica; Theodore besieges Cibotus which Henry evacuates, and then hires 17 pirate galleys under John Stirione to blockade Cyzicus; Henry relieves Cyzicus, then relieves siege of Nicomedia but is called to Thrace as Adrianople attacked again by Ioannitsa.

Theodore offers 2-year truce, with Latins keeping Cyzicus and Nicomedia but demolishing walls; *June.* Henry agrees, returns to Thrace to fight the Bulgarians, and is heavily defeated.

Boniface recognises Marco Sanudo as Venetian ‘Duke of Naxos and the Archipelago’; Boniface does homage to Henry for Thessalonica, but is soon killed in a Bulgarian ambush; Ioannitsa of Bulgaria besieges Thessalonica but dies suddenly in miracle ascribed to St. Demetrius and Boniface’s infant son by Empress Margaret, Demetrius, succeeds to Thessalonica under regency of Oberto of Biandrate.

John Asen, Ioannitsa’s son, flees to Russia as his cousin Boril seizes Trnovo and becomes King of Bulgaria.

ARMENIA

‘Catholicos’ John, head of the Church, defies King Leo by backing his autonomist cousins, lords Constantine of Seleucia/Silifke and Henry of Norpert; after a quarrel John fortifies his episcopal seat at Hromgla and refuses entry to the King’s forces.

BALTIC

Pope Innocent establishes the new state of ‘Terra Mariana’, i.e. ‘The Virgin Mary’s Land’, in Livonia subject to him and the Holy Roman Emperor.

SYRIA

Late. A faction of knights backing the deposed Latin Patriarch Peter are smuggled into Antioch at night and seize the lower city; Bohemund rallies the citizens from the citadel and drives them out, and Peter is arrested for collusion; he is thrown into prison and dies of eating lamp-oil.

PALESTINE

Guarin de Montague succeeds Geoffrey le Rat as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY/FRANCE

Spring. The Papal preaching campaign against the Cathar heretics in the County of Toulouse in southern France is led by Peter of Castelnau; it is not very successful due to harassment by Cathar zealots and the hostility of the local lords.

April. Peter gives up and returns east of the Rhone into friendlier Provence. The Papal mission complains to Innocent about the lack of lay co-operation, and blames hindrance by Count Raymond VI. Raymond is rumoured to have Cathar ‘perfecti’ (equivalent to priests) in his service and to connive at the appointment of pro-Cathar bishops in his hereditary lands (the St. Gilles dynasty’s Camargue and Provence) and the more recently acquired County of Toulouse; also under suspicion is Raymond-Roger, Count of Trencavel and lord of Carcassonne.

Peter excommunicates Raymond.

17 November. Innocent writes to Philip II, urging military assistance to the preaching campaign against the Cathars and offering full Crusading privileges to participants. Philip is unenthusiastic.

Peter visits Raymond’s court at St. Gilles to warn him of the consequences of not obeying Papal orders and aiding the anti-heretic campaign.

1208

LATIN EMPIRE

William of Champlitte returns home to claim lands, leaving Geoffrey de Villehardouin (the younger) as sole Prince of Achaia in Peloponnese.

Leo Sgurus, despairing of end to siege of Acrocorinth, throws himself off the rock; Michael Angelus Ducas’ brother Theodore leads defence.

FRANCE

13 January. Peter of Castelnau has a stormy encounter with the unrepentant Raymond at St. Gilles, and is apparently threatened for refusing to lift the excommunication.

14 January. Peter is assassinated a few miles from Arles in the Rhone valley, apparently by a servant of Count Raymond. The furious Innocent determines to eradicate the stubborn heretics and their lordly protectors by a military campaign, which will have the status of a Crusade; the recreant lords' lands (especially the County of Toulouse) will be offered to the Crusaders to encourage participation. King Philip is required to extend assistance, but refuses to join the expedition and will allow up to 500 vassals to do so and the French Church to organise the campaign.

10 March. Papal Bull offers full Crusading privileges to all who join in the attack on the Cathars, and announces that the heretic-protecting excommunicate Raymond VI is to forfeit his lands.

Arnauld Amaury, Abbot of Citeaux, is selected as Papal Legate to preach the Crusade, so the Cistercian organisation can be brought into play to run the recruitment (as with St. Bernard in 1146–7).

Summer–Autumn. Recruits for the army are collected by preachers in northern France, mostly ambitious lords who covet the lands and loot of Languedoc; they are led by Count Odo of Burgundy and Count Hervey of Nevers. An army is organised to set out in *Spring 1209*.

NICAEA

March. Theodore Lascaris holds Synod at Nicaea; *20 March* Michael Autoreianos elected Patriarch to restore a legitimate Orthodox Church hierarchy and reorganises episcopate of Byzantine-held lands in west Anatolia, raising Philadelphia to archbishopric; *Easter Sunday* Michael crowns Theodore.

ITALY

Pope Innocent is forced to accept that the Hohenstaufen candidate, Frederick II's uncle Philip of Swabia, has the upper hand in the German/north. Italian civil war over his ally Otto (IV) of Brunswick; he abandons Otto and signs a treaty recognising Philip as rightful claimant to the Imperial throne and abandoning Ancona and Spoleto to him; *9 June.* Philip is unexpectedly assassinated by Otto of Wittelsbach and Otto IV revives his cause. The murder widows Philip's Byzantine wife Irene Angela, daughter of Isaac II.

LATIN EMPIRE

1 August. Henry defeats Boril's vastly superior Bulgarian army at Philippopolis in Thrace; Boril agrees to become his vassal and marries his illegitimate daughter, and peace restored to Thrace; as truce expires in Anatolia Henry campaigns against Theodore Lascaris in Bithynia in alliance with David Comnenus of Sinope.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Bishop Florent of Acre and Aymar, lord of Caesarea, are sent with an embassy to King Philip of France to ask for his advice regarding a potential husband for Queen Marie.

Hospitallers raid Moslem territory and Cypriot ships attack Moslem trading-vessels; Al-Adil raids around Tripoli, and when Bohemund goes south to help Leo of Armenia, attacks Antioch.

Renewed war between Bohemund IV and Leo of Armenia leads to Bohemund expelling Greek Patriarch Simeon in order to secure Papal support after Innocent wrote to Az-Zahir of Aleppo asking him to help the Latin Church in Antioch against the Greeks; Leo receives Simeon and allies with Nicaea, and Bohemund allies with Kaikhusraw.

The Pope asks Patriarch Albert of Jerusalem to mediate between Bohemund and Leo; Bohemund encourages Kaikhusraw to attack Leo in the rear. Albert orders Leo, as a Papal vassal under Catholic direction, to return Baghras to the Templars.

Locedo is elected the new Latin Patriarch of Antioch; the expelled Greek clerics secure lands from Leo in Armenia, and Leo marries his client Raymond-Rupen to Helvis of Cyprus, sister of Hugh I, and gives castles to the Teutonic Knights.

CYPRUS

King Hugh marries his late father Amalric's step-daughter Alice of Champagne, elder daughter of Queen Isabella of Jerusalem by Henry of Champagne; marriage arranged by Alice's grandmother Queen Maria Comnena, and dowry provided by bride's father's aunt the Countess of Champagne.

BALTIC

Commencement of the conquest and Christianization of Estonia by the Knights of the Sword (of Livonia) from the Riga area, backed by their converted Livonian allies under the chieftain Caupo.

FRANCE

14 September. On the 'Feast of the Holy Cross' and the seventh anniversary of the launching of the Fourth Crusade, Abbot and Papal Legate Arnould-Amaury of Citeaux delivers the opening sermon of the Albigensian Crusade at the General Chapter of the Cistercian Order at Citeaux.

LATIN EMPIRE

Late. Henry marches to Thessalonica to counter a plot against him by Biandrate the regent, but is harassed by bad weather and Vlachs; the

regent insists that Henry grant Thessalonica all lands from Dyrrachium to the River Vardar and a 'corridor' to the Black Sea and Henry, unable to press siege, agrees subject to Empress Margaret's agreement but persuades her to reject it; Biandrate falls to persuade Boniface's elder son William, ruling Montferrat, to come out to Greece and assist him.

ITALY

With the rebellion in Sicily crushed and the situation in southern Italy improving, Frederick II is proclaimed 'of age' at 14; end of regency.

1209 LATIN EMPIRE

6 January. Henry crowns Demetrius as King of Thessalonica; Biandrate maintained as regent but is watched and is soon arrested and imprisoned for treason; Henry takes Serres from Biandrate's supporters, but *Spring* has to leave Thrace to suppress revolt in Thessaly and takes Larissa.

ITALY

March. Otto IV agrees to all Papal demands in treaty of Speyer; Innocent recognises him as rightful Emperor-elect.

FRANCE

The main Crusading army marches down the Rhone, led by Count Odo of Burgundy, Count Hervey of Nevers, and the minor magnate Count Simon of Montfort (father of the eponymous English politician of the 1260s). Simon, a member of the Fourth Crusade who left Zara for Palestine sooner than attack a secular Christian target on Venice's behalf and a protégé of the Crusader preacher Fulk of Neuilly and of St. Dominic, soon emerges as their most outstanding – and brutal – general.

A second army under the Archbishop of Bordeaux enters the Languedoc from Aquitaine to the north-west, via Quercy.

LATIN EMPIRE

May. Geoffrey of Villehardouin, having succeeded in deflecting attempt to secure William of Champlitte's part of the Morea (Peloponnese) by William's cousin and heir Robert, attends Henry's 'Parlement' at Ravennika and is recognised as Lord of the Morea.

June. Treaty between Geoffrey and Venice; Venice gains ports of Modon and Coron and exemption from customs-dues; Henry marches on to Thebes to besiege resisting Lombard barons in castle until they surrender,

and then on to Athens; Biandrate escapes trial to take refuge with Ravano delle Carceri, principal Lombard Lord of Euboea, but Henry invades and forces them both to surrender.

Michael Angelus Ducas does homage to Henry as vassal and is allowed to rule south Epirus as Despot, basing himself at Arta.

SPAIN

(Alternatively dated as 1211) Caliph Mohammed al-Nasir leads an Almohad expedition across Al-Andalus via Cordoba to invade southern Castile. Fall of Salvatierra, relocated headquarters of the Knightly Order of Calatrava since the loss of their eponymous headquarters, to the Almohads.

ITALY

Summer. Otto marches through central Italy to Apulia to try to conquer the Kingdom of Naples from Frederick II.

FRANCE

18 June. Count Raymond VI submits to a public scourging by the Papal legate Milo to show his repentance of supporting heresy, the drastic means for regaining Church backing last used by Henry II of England after the murder of Thomas Becket. He is absolved of his sins and (*22 June*) takes the Cross to join Simon's army, where he is supposed to assist in punishing his 'heretic' subjects. Technically as he is a Crusader his lands should be free from pillaging or confiscation for the duration of his service – at the discretion of the Church, represented on the Crusade by the Legates.

The Crusade advances on Beziers, the first major pro-Cathar town on the road west from the Rhone into the Languedoc.

22 July. Sack of Beziers by the Crusaders; around 15,000 people are killed in a notorious massacre of all the townsfolk. The legate Arnould-Amaury is supposed (apocryphally) to have replied to a query about the problem of identifying and killing only heretics that all should be killed and 'God would look after His own'.

Carcassonne is besieged, with Raymond-Roger of Trencavel commanding inside; the Catholic Bishop endeavours to arrange an agreement for the Catholic citizens to name and hand over their 'heretic' compatriots in return for the attackers leaving, but the indignant citizens refuse to go along with it even to save themselves.

15 August. Surrender of Carcassonne on terms, and expulsion of the 'heretic' garrison and part of the populace. The governor, Raymond-Roger of Trencavel, is taken captive.

Having served the legally required 40 days in the Crusading army, Raymond makes his excuses and leaves; this helps to revive suspicion of his real sympathies and motives. Simon de Montfort, coveting his lands, encourages it. The expiry of the usual legal limit for service to a feudal overlord on campaign reduces the army further; among the others who start to leave in the following weeks is the Count of Nevers, who has quarrelled with the Duke of Burgundy and resents taking orders from Simon, a social inferior and a Burgundian vassal.

September. The Papal legates, Milo and Hugh of Reiz, complain to the Pope that Raymond has violated his promises to combat heresy.

By the late *Autumn*, the Duke has left too and Simon only has 46 knights in his army; the campaign winds down.

1210 FRANCE/ITALY

January. Raymond VI arrives in Rome to defend himself against Milo's and Hugh's charges and save himself from excommunication and having his lands confiscated (the latter should technically be done by his overlord, King Philip, not the Pope or the Crusader leadership).

LATIN EMPIRE

Geoffrey of Villehardouin acclaimed by vassals as Prince of Achaia at a 'parlement' at Andravida and forces Acrocorinth to surrender; Theodore Angelus Ducas flees to his brother Michael at Arta; Geoffrey divides principality into 12 fiefs and arranges new Latin Church sees under the Archbishoprics of Patras and Corinth. His wife and his son Geoffrey (II) arrive from Champagne.

Michael Angelus Ducas revolts against Henry, attacks Thessalonican territory and captures and crucifies Constable Amadeo; 20 *June* he signs treaty with Venice, becoming their vassal and paying 40 lb 'hyperpera' per annum and granting trading-concessions; Venice sends him mercenaries and he takes territory until *Autumn* Henry returns to Thessalonica and he submits and does homage again.

FRANCE/PALESTINE

Death of the Papal legate in Languedoc, Milo; Innocent appoints Master Thedise/Theodosius to assist Arnould-Amaury.

March. Simon de Montfort's wife, Alice de Montmorency, noted patroness of preachers, brings him reinforcements; he is able to renew campaigning.

Spring. Philip announces his choice of husband for Queen Marie of Jerusalem – a minor but internationally experienced baron, John of Brienne, aged 60, the brother of the former husband of King Tancred of Sicily's daughter.

June–July. Siege of Minerve, near Carcassonne; around 140 ‘heretics’ executed on its fall. This is the first mass judicial execution of the Crusade.

PALESTINE

July. Al-Adil sends to renew the truce, and the Regent, John of Ibelin, holds a council to discuss it; John and the majority of the lords and bishops prefer to extend truce, backed by the Grand Masters of Hospitallers (Guerin of Montaigu) and Teutonic Knights (Hermann Bardt) but the Templar Grand Master, Philip of Le Plessier, argues successfully that it would constrain the freedom of action of the next King, John of Brienne, and should be rejected; Al-Adil launches a few minor raids by his son Al-Mu’azzam.

13 September. John of Brienne lands at Acre, with 40,000 lbs. of silver each from Philip II and the Pope.

14 September. Marie of Montferrat, now Queen of Jerusalem and aged 18, marries John of Brienne, who becomes King and *30 October* is crowned at Tyre; John of Ibelin remains chief minister.

FRANCE

August–November. Siege of Termes, south-west of Carcassonne.

Raymond VI is refused a hearing by an ecclesiastical court controlled by his opponents at St. Gilles. He can provide evidence that he was not involved in the killing of Peter of Castelnau, so the court makes sure that he has no chance to produce it and concentrates on the more proveable allegations of his failure to assist in punishing ‘heretics’.

CYPRUS

Regent Walter of Montbeliard resigns as his 15-year-old ward, King Hugh, assumes power; he is soon exiled for gross embezzlement.

1211

LATIN EMPIRE

Early. Henry defeats and pursues Boril across Thrace; Michael Ducas assists rebels on the island of Galaxidi to defect and kill their overlord, Thomas d’Autremencourt of Salona in Phocis, and takes Salona but his eastward expansion is halted by Nicholas of St. Omer, Lord of Gravia (Mount Parnassus) and Pallavicini of Boudounitsa.

ITALY/FRANCE

January. Raymond VI meets his arch-enemy Simon de Montfort at Narbonne, with his overlord King Peter II of Aragon to mediate. Peter is uneasy at the deprival of Raymond and the denial of the rights of

Raymond's son Raymond (VII), his own son-in-law, to succeed to Toulouse, but allows Simon to do homage to him as the new Count.

February. Innocent excommunicates Raymond VI for alleged breaches of his oaths to assist the Crusade.

PORTUGAL

26 March. Death of king Sancho I, aged 56, at Alcobaca; succeeded by his son Alfonso II the Fat' (born *23 April 1185*).

NICAEA/TURKISH SULTANATE

Kaikhusrav invades Theodore's territories on behalf of Alexius III and his nephew (Isaac II's son) Manuel who accompany him; he besieges Antioch-on-Maeander and Theodore, about half his army Latin mercenaries, marches to its relief; in the battle Seljuks gain upper hand but Kaikhusrav is unhorsed and killed in pursuit of Greeks, possibly by Theodore in person, and Seljuks flee; Theodore captures Alexius III, who is sent to Hyacinthus Monastery, and Manuel; Seljuks have to accept existing territorial frontier but keep Attaleia/Antalya.

A council of emirs at Iconium decides on Karkhusraw's eldest son, Izz-ed-Din Kaykavus of Malatya, as next sultan rather than half-brothers Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad of Tokat or Kayferidun Ibrahim of Antalya; Leo of Armenia, senior military commander ('Parvane') Prince Zahir-al-Din Ili the Danishmend, and Seljuk prince Mughith-al-Din of Erzerum (Theodosiopolis) install Kaiqobad at Iconium instead and Kaykavus manages to win them over and retrieve his throne; Kaiqobad flees to Ankara to ally with Turcomans of Kastamoni (Castamona), and Kaykavus becomes Theodore's ally enabling him to concentrate on Latins and issue letters to Greeks promising deliverance.

FRANCE

Fall of Lavaur, north-west of Carcassonne; 30 'heretics' executed.

Simon de Montfort leads the Crusader army into the County of Toulouse, and ravages territory; Raymond VI retreats ahead of his larger army but Simon is unable to capture the city.

29 June. Simon abandons the siege of Toulouse after two weeks; the walls are too strong for his under-equipped army.

Raymond VI attacks the occupied town of Castelnaudary but is driven off.

LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA

June/July. Death of Patriarch Thomas at Thessalonica; non-Venetian clerics at Hagia Sophia produce Papal letter supporting free election of

successor but after they leave meeting the Venetian clerics elect their dean Philip as Patriarch; the objectors send their 'short-list' to Pope for him to select choice but 25 August he writes ordering new election.

PALESTINE

Summer? The Military Orders and some Palestnian barons raid the mouth of the Nile near Damietta, but have to retire; *Autumn(?)* John of Brienne agrees to renew the truce with Al-Adil for five years.

ITALY

Innocent raises revolt in central Italy in Otto IV's rear; he has to retire north and abandon his Apulian campaign. Innocent opens negotiations with Frederick II, and alliance is agreed on the proviso that Frederick will hand over Naples and Sicily to his son Henry (born 1210) as soon as he becomes Emperor. The 'Terra di Lavoro' in central Italy is returned to the Papal States.

ITALY/BALTIC

Summer. The pagan Estonians attack the stronghold of the Knights of the Sword's local, Christian ally Caupo of Turaida; he and his Crusader allies fight them off. The Knights then attack but fail to take the Estonian fortress of Viljandi.

19 October. Pope Innocent confirms Bishop Albert of Riga's arrangements for the cession of land to and government of it by the 'Knights of the Sword in Livonia.'

FRANCE

Autumn. As his troops start to return home at the end of their expected term of service, Simon de Montfort finds his army shrinking; he has to abandon plans for an attack on Toulouse and retires north into Quercy to hunt down heretics.

King Peter II launches a diplomatic offensive in Rome to persuade the Pope that Simon de Montfort is abusing the Crusade for personal gain and to suggest that the County be given to his own son-in-law, Raymond VI's son Raymond (VII), a guaranteed Catholic.

Late. Innocent suspends recruiting for the Albigensian campaign, partly as a favour for Peter II so he can use volunteers for his 1212 campaign against the Spanish Moslems.

LATIN EMPIRE

Theodore invades Latin Bithynia and kills Peter of Bracieux but 25 October is routed by Henry's 250 knights in decisive battle on

River Rhyndacus and Theodore's brother and his son-in-law Paleologus captured.

Henry takes Poimamenum and Adramyttium and enrolls Greek captives to defend his frontier; at Nymphaeum Theodore signs treaty ceding Nicomedia, all the Propontis coast, the Troad, Cyzicus, and Adramyttium and Achytacus to Henry and keeping the rest of dominions.

24 December. Venetians elect Ludovico and non-Venetians Gervasius as rival Patriarchs; both appeal to Pope.

1212 ITALY/SPAIN

Innocent proclaims a Crusade in Aragon against the Moslems for King Peter II's immanent expedition south to aid Alfonso VIII of Castile against the Almohad state of southern Spain and Morocco after the fall of Salvatierra. Arnauld-Amaury, Abbot of Citeaux and organiser of the preaching and recruitment for the Albigensian Crusade, is proclaimed Legate to organise it.

LATIN EMPIRE

Henry's brother Eustace defeats Boril as *January* Henry writes to Pope from Poemamenum that all his enemies are vanquished; Boril sues for peace as his cousin John Asen returns to Bulgaria with mercenaries from Russia to start civil war.

Venice takes over Crete from the Genoese pirate lord Enrico Pescatore of Malta.

FRANCE

Early. Catholic bishops' Council at Lavaur rejects the appeals of King Peter II of Aragon, the County of Toulouse's neighbour and overlord, against the confiscation of the County from Raymond VI and refusal to pass it to his Catholic son Raymond (VII); they confirm its handover to Simon de Montfort and the confiscation of other 'heretic' fiefs for Simon's followers.

EPIRUS

Spring. Michael Angelus Ducas overruns Thessaly, takes Larissa, and expels Latin clerics.

NICAEA

After death of his Empress Anne Angelina, Theodore marries Leo of Armenia's niece Philippa.

FRANCE

The Counts of Julich and Cleves lead a German contingent of Crusaders to Languedoc to reinforce De Montfort's dwindling army, many of whom have gone home; the Archdeacon of Paris brings volunteers from the Isle de France. The reinforcements give Simon the ability to renew an offensive war.

April. Simon de Montfort's army takes Hautpol and wins battle at and sacks Albi, eponymous alleged centre of the Albigenian Cathar heresy.

May. De Montfort wins battle of Caylus.

May. A 12-year-old shepherd boy, Stephen of Cloyes (near Orleans), arrives at King Philip's court at St. Denis saying that he has been given a letter by Christ authorising him to preach a Crusade. Philip tells him to go home, but he starts preaching outside the cathedral saying that he will lead them to the Mediterranean where the seas will divide for them as they did for Moses. He starts to assemble an 'army', mostly of children, as he proceeds on a preaching-tour round the Isle de France region, and bands of them collect under leaders carrying replicas of the Oriflamme banner and head for the rendezvous set at Vendome.

Late June. Stephen's 'Children's Crusade' assembles at the appointed rendezvous, Vendome; they are blessed by friendly priests and set out for Marseilles, Stephen riding in a cart and the richer boys on horseback; a few poor priests and older pilgrims go with them. Numbers drop off as the journey in the summer heat takes its toll of them.

SPAIN

July. Alfonso VIII of Castile, Peter II of Aragon, Sancho of Navarre, Alfonso II of Portugal, and the Papal Legate Arnauld-Amaury lead expedition south into the Guadalquivir valley via a surprise manoeuvre through the Despenaperros Pass at the eastern end of the Sierra Morena, guided by a local shepherd. This catches the Almohad Caliph by surprise in his camp, and the Christians attack before they are spotted.

16 July. The Christians win the battle of Las Navas de Tolosa over the Almohads, routing their army; the crucial move sees the Navarrese under king Sancho break through the Caliph's slave bodyguard regiment which protects his tent. Allegedly 100,000 Moslems are killed for around 2,000 Christians, the latter including the Grand Master of the Order of Santiago (Pedro Arias) and the head of the Portuguese branch of the Templars (Gomes Ramirez). Ruy Diaz, Master of the Order of Calatrava, is badly wounded and has to resign. The Caliph's standard and tent are sent to Pope Innocent. The victory commences the reconquest of southern Spain, down the Guadalquivir valley towards Cordoba and Seville.

The Castilians reconquer Calatrava, ex-headquarters of the eponymous Knightly Order, which returns there but in 1218 relocates eight miles to a more defensible position at Calatrava la Nueva.

FRANCE

August? The ‘Children’s Crusade’ arrives at Marseilles and the locals sell them provisions, but the seas fail to divide. Stephen’s authority is damaged and many of the children go home, but he refuses to give up; two merchants, Hugh ‘the Iron’ and William ‘the Pig’, offer to take them on their ships to the Holy Land, free of charge. Stephen accepts and the remaining children set sail on seven ships; it later transpires from a returning witness (in 1230) that the merchants had arranged with Moslem trader contacts in Bougie, Algeria, to sell the children to them as slaves and five of the ships reach there for that purpose. Some of the children are sold on to Egypt in the Bougie slave-market and taken in service by the governor of Alexandria; Al-Kamil, viceroy of Egypt for his father Al-Adil, takes on some as interpreters. The other two ships are wrecked off Sardinia.

GERMANY

May/June? Another boy preacher, Nicholas, inspired by Stephen, preaches the Crusade at the shrine of the ‘Three Kings’ in Cologne; he assembles another ‘army’ of children and proposes that his followers should convert the ‘infidel’, and they head off up the Rhine. Nicholas takes the first of two parties, via Basle and Switzerland, to (*late August*) Genoa. The seas fail to divide for them, so most accept the Genoese offer of residence in the city and stay on; Nicholas goes on with a party to Pisa where two shiploads sail for Palestine. He takes those who do not embark on to Rome, where Pope Innocent receives them but tells them to go home and postpone their pilgrimage until they are older. Most return to Germany over the next winter. The second party of German pilgrims crosses the eastern Alps to Ancona; they eventually reach Brindisi whence a few sail to Palestine.

PALESTINE

July. The truce comes into force, to last until *July 1217*; John has by now sent an embassy to the Pope asking for arrangements for a new Crusade to land in Palestine when the truce expires.

Death of Queen Marie of Jerusalem, aged 20, giving birth to daughter Isabella; husband John of Brienne becomes regent.

FRANCE

August. Surrender of Moissac to Simon de Montfort’s army; mass-execution of the garrison as ‘heretics’.

ITALY

Frederick II marches into northern Italy to drive out the local partisans of Otto IV, the pro-Welf ‘Guelph’ factions. This campaign sees the origin

of the ‘Guelph’ versus ‘Ghibelline’ struggles in the Italian cities, the latter term referring to the Hohenstaufen castle of Waiblingen.

December. Arriving in Germany, Frederick is crowned King (i.e. Emperor-elect) at Mainz; civil war continues.

LATIN EMPIRE

Henry marries Boril’s daughter, and they campaign together against Stephen II of Serbia but are defeated near Nis/Naissus.

1213 CYPRUS

15 January. Pope orders the canons of Nicosia to elect a new Archbishop to replace Durand.

SYRIA

Bohemund IV’s son and heir Raymond, aged 18, murdered by ‘Assassins’ in the cathedral at Tortosa; possibly instigated by the local ‘Assassins’ Hospitaller allies.

ITALY/FRANCE

Pope Innocent creates a bureaucratic Church structure for the preaching of the forthcoming (Fifth) Crusade in each ecclesiastical province, with designated preachers to cover specific areas. Cardinal Robert of Courcon commences preaching the Crusade in France.

King Philip refuses to let his son Louis (VIII) join the Crusade in the Languedoc, despite the possibility that by doing so the Capetian dynasty could take back the local initiative from the over-powerful De Montfort. Philip’s main priority is planning to invade England while it is under a Papal interdict, which King John’s unexpected submission to be a Papal vassal ends.

King Peter II of Aragon, deciding to prefer Count Raymond VI to De Montfort as ruler of Toulouse, brings his army north into Toulousan territory to aid the local lords against the invaders; De Montfort brings his army south to attack him. Peter has the advantage in numbers by about two to one, and has experienced soldiers who fought the Moslems with him at Las Navas de Tolosa in 1212. A number of Crusader garrisons fall as their exiled lords return with Aragonese troops.

10 September. Peter arrives at the town of Muret and besieges De Montfort’s garrison of around 30 knights there.

11 September. De Montfort arrives at Muret and is able to enter the town without interception.

13 September. Peter II is killed and Aragonese-Toulousan army is routed at the battle of Muret. Peter's infant son James succeeds to Aragon (63-year reign, the longest in medieval European history), and the weakened Aragon is unable to protect the lords of Languedoc as De Montfort's Crusaders confiscate their territory for themselves.

Raymond VI flees and De Montfort lays claim to the County of Toulouse and the hereditary lands of Raymond's family (east of Langeudoc, the Duchy of Narbonne) as Papal nominee. Pope Innocent offers the complaining Raymond, who insists on his loyalty and Catholicism, a pension and promises future lands for his son Raymond (VII).

SPAIN/MOROCCO

23 December. Death of Almohad Caliph Mohammed an-Nasr (aged in his late 30s?), after a 14-year reign; succeeded by his son Abu Yaqub Yusuf, aged 15.

1214 PALESTINE/ARMENIA

The widowed John of Brienne, regent of the Kingdom for his infant daughter Isabella/Yolande, marries Stephanie of Armenia; this makes him an ally of Leo and foe of Bohemund IV.

NICAEA

December. Pelagius' representatives go to Synod at Heraclea for discussions on Greek/Latin union with Nicene clerics; talks fail but Henry's accompanying envoys sign treaty with Theodore confirming frontier.

SPAIN

5 October. Death of Alfonso VIII of Castile, aged 58, after a 56-year reign; succeeded by his son by Eleanor of England, Henry I (born *14 April 1204*).

1214? EPIRUS/NICAEA

Michael Angelus Ducas murdered by a servant; young son Michael is set aside and brother Theodore Angelus Ducas succeeds as Despot.

1215 FRANCE.

January. Pro-Papal Church Council at Montpellier led by the new Papal Legate, Peter of Beneventum; it recognises Simon de Montfort as the new Count of Toulouse.

PALESTINE

Birth of John of Brienne and Stephanie's daughter, Isabella. She has a claim on Armenia, which John will be keen to exploit in 1219.

Two western lords with armed companies arrive offshore at Alexandria, and the alarmed authorities think it is an attack and arrest the city's c. 3,000 Western inhabitants; they release them when it is clear that there is no danger.

GERMANY/ITALY

Frederick II is crowned at Aachen; he takes the Cross to go on Crusade.

Pope Innocent's 'Council of the Church' at the Lateran, Rome. It considers the rival claims of Gervasius and Ludovico to be Patriarchs of Constantinople. Innocent speaks of the need to reconquer Jerusalem at the first session, and its Patriarch requests aid; the Fifth Crusade is affirmed and Crusading privileges for participants are announced. The Crusade is to leave Frederick's lands on 1 *June* 1217, a month before the current Palestine truce expires. The Council also provides (decree 'Excommunicamus') for the proclamation of a Crusade against any secular lord who fails to carry out orders to punish 'heretics'.

Innocent writes to Al-Adil warning him to hand over Jerusalem or face war. The Lateran Council confirms Raymond VI's deposition from Toulouse and replacement by De Montfort as Count. Prince Louis visits Languedoc as his father's representative to reassert Royal power over the new Crusader lords of Languedoc and remind them that Philip is their overlord, but De Montfort does not defer to him or hand over leadership of the expedition.

May. Louis, Simon De Montfort, and the legate Peter of Beneventum lead army into Toulouse. Louis' expedition achieves little as his vassals will only serve for the legal limit of 40 days, and he returns home without altering the military balance. Simon later goes to Paris to pay homage to King Philip to secure his legal position.

BALTIC

Failed preaching mission of Bishop Christian of Oliva in pagan Prussia, with fierce resistance to conversion to Christianity (possibly exacerbated by fear of conquest as is occurring in neighbouring Livonia) and a resulting series of reprisal attacks on the Christianised district around Chelmino. As a result the local Church seeks military aid from the Pope.

1216 ITALY AND WESTERN EUROPE

Spring. Preachers start calling for volunteers to go on Crusade and arranging the assemblies for 1217; the University of Paris theologians proclaim it a mortal sin to swear to go on Crusade then back out.

LATIN EMPIRE

Gervasius returns to Constantinople as Papally-accepted, non-Venetian Patriarch.

Death of Ravano della Carceri of Euboea; six Lombard families divide island.

SYRIA

Death of Az-Zahir of Aleppo; succeeded by 2-year-old son Al-Aziz. The eunuch Toghril becomes regent, but Az-Zahir's elder brother Al-Afdal leaves his retirement at Samosata to plot invasion and asks Seljuk Sultan Kaykavus for assistance.

FRANCE

April. Raymond VI and his son Raymond (VII) arrive in Provence, which the Lateran Council has allowed them to keep, and are welcomed by the populace which is bitterly hostile to the incoming northern French Crusader lords who have seized local territory. They help to stir up revolt, and while Simon de Montfort is in Paris Raymond (VII) invades his father's confiscated territories west of the Rhone. He occupies the revolted town of Beaucaire, and Simon fails to retake it on his return. Raymond VI invades Languedoc from Aragon, but is less successful and has to retreat.

ITALY

16 July. Death of Pope Innocent III at Perugia, while adjudicating disputes between Genoa and Pisa so that they will co-operate in transporting the Crusade; *18 July* Cardinal Cencio Savelli, Papal chamberlain, elected (Honorius III) and plans Fifth Crusade. He writes to John of Brienne promising an immanent expedition.

Kings Andrew of Hungary and Inge of Norway take the Cross; Inge however dies before he sets out and his successor Haakon 'the Good' has other domestic priorities.

FRANCE

Raymond of Toulouse returns from exile to his County to attempt reconquest from De Montfort's forces. Simon has the fortified part of the city of Toulouse demolished to prevent it being seized against him by the untrustworthy citizens.

SYRIA

Leo of Armenia smuggles men into Antioch while Bohemund is in Tripoli and seizes the city; the citadel surrenders; he installs Bohemund's nephew,

Raymond-Rupen, as Prince and Baghras is returned to the Templars and lands are returned to the Latin Church to buy Papal recognition; Sultan Kaykavus launches Seljuk attack on Armenia.

LATIN EMPIRE

Henry arrives at Thessalonica to support King Demetrius' regents against Theodore Angelus Ducas' advance; he dies *11 June*, aged around 40, and Conan of Béthune proclaimed Regent and 'Sebastocrator' until new emperor elected; barons choose Henry's sister Yolande's husband Peter de Courtenay, cousin of Philip II of France and distantly related to the former rulers of Edessa (1098–1144), and send emissaries to him.

1217 ITALY/BALTIC

March. Bull of Pope Honorius authorises preaching of a Crusade to aid Bishop Christian of Oliva's missionary work by invading pagan Prussia.

LATIN EMPIRE

Berthold, regent of Thessalonica, and other nobles leave for the Fifth Crusade.

9 April. Pope Honorius crowns Peter of Courtenay at Church of St. Lawrence in Rome; he agrees to Venetian proposal to besiege Dyrrachium for them and sails there with Cardinal John Colonna, Papal Legate, and 6,000 troops while pregnant Yolande sails direct to Constantinople; their sons Robert, Philip, and Henry stay in France.

Peter has to abandon siege and marches over Pindus towards Thessalonica to be met by Theodore Angelus Ducas who pretends to pay submission and escorts his army but then attacks them, captures Peter and the leadership prisoner, and turns the soldiers loose after robbing them; Pope writes to surrounding rulers for help and to King Andrew of Hungary to divert Crusade against Theodore but no effect.

ARMENIA

Sultan Kaykavus captures Constable Constantine of Lampron, Leo's powerful cousin, as he tries to relieve Seljuk siege of Gaban in Taurus Mountains; Leo relieves siege and ransoms Constantine.

SPAIN

6 June. King Henry I of Castile, aged 13, is killed at Palencia as a tile falls off a roof onto his head; he has no children so his sister Berengaria's son by King Alfonso IX of Leon, Ferdinand the heir to Leon, accedes to the throne aged 16.

ITALY/PALESTINE

July. Pope Honorius orders the Crusade to sail to Cyprus, but no transport is available; a Frisian fleet heads for Portugal.

August. King Andrew of Hungary arrives via Croatia in Spalata, and is joined by Duke Leopold VI of Austria, son of King Richard's captor; there is inadequate transport.

September. Leopold's army sails to Palestine in 16 days, and a fortnight later Andrew and two more ships sail leaving most of the Hungarians stranded.

Hugh of Cyprus arrives at Acre with troops for the campaign.

FRANCE

September. Count Raymond retakes Toulouse, and faces attack by Simon de Montfort.

BALTIC

21 September. Heavy defeat of around 6,000 pagan Estonians, led by the chieftain Lembitu, by the Knights of the Sword and their converted Livonian allies (whose chieftain Caupo is killed), in the 'Battle of St. Matthew's Day'.

PALESTINE

October. The first part of the Frisian fleet arrives at Gaeta in central Italy.

John of Brienne advises Kings Hugh and Andrew and Duke Leopold to launch an immediate attack and not wait for the truce to expire.

3 November. The Crusader army marches out from Acre into the Plain of Esdraelon, and the waiting Al-Adil retires to Ajlun to guard the road to Damascus while his son Al-Mu'azzam guards the road to Jerusalem. The Crusaders sack Beisan, but then quarrel over their destination with the Orders and the Hungarians only obeying their commanders not John. They march east to the Jordan, cross to march round east of the Sea of Galilee, and move south back round to Capernaum. Back at Acre, John decides on an attack on the fortress of Mount Tabor but Hugh, Andrew, and the Orders disagree and do not join him.

3 December. John attacks alone to be driven back.

5 December. The Orders arrive and launch a second assault; that fails too and the expedition marches back to Acre.

LATIN EMPIRE

Early Autumn? Birth of Peter and Yolande's son Baldwin in Constantinople; Peter is probably murdered by Theodore Angelus Ducas and is certainly never heard of again.

1218 PALESTINE/EGYPT/SYRIA/CYPRUS

January. A small Hungarian force attacks the Buqa'ia without seeking their King's approval first, and is hit by snowstorms in the Lebanese mountains on the way back. Andrew accompanies Hugh of Cyprus to Tripoli for the marriage of the widowed Bohemund IV to Hugh's half-sister, Melissende.

10 January. Sudden death of Hugh of Cyprus, aged 23; succeeded by son Henry, aged 1, under regency of widow Alice of Champagne (daughter of Queen Isabella of Jerusalem, so aunt to the infant Queen Yolande of Jerusalem).

Andrew returns to Acre, and decides to go home despite threats of excommunication from Patriarch Albert; he rides to Antioch to secure a valuable collection of holy relics (including the head of St. Stephen) before heading north via Armenia into Anatolia where the Seljuks give him permission to cross their lands en route to Constantinople.

Duke Leopold borrows 50,000 bezants from Hugh Embriaco of Jebail to help pay for the restoration of the walls of Caesarea, where he assists King John's building-programme; the Templars and Teutonic Knights build the 'Pilgrims' Castle' near Athlit and al-Adil demolishes his isolated and costly fortress on Mount Tabor.

January/February. Sultan Kaykavus and Al-Afdal march on Aleppo, and regent Toghril appeals to Al-Adil's third son Al-Ashraf, viceroy of Iraq, who advances to help him; the Ayyubid army defeats the Seljuks near Buza'a and as Kaykavus goes home to Anatolia Al-Afdal has to go back to Samosata. Al-Aziz of Aleppo recognises Al-Ashraf as his overlord.

26 April. The first section of the Frisian fleet lands at Acre.

10 May. The second part of the fleet arrives at Acre, with news that a French expedition is following. The Crusade leaders decide to repeat the 1168 attack on Egypt, and to seize Damietta.

24 May. The expedition sails from Acre, and picks up supplies at Athlit; they are then becalmed at sea.

27 May. A few ships reach the Eastern mouth of the Nile, and wait for a senior commander to arrive and order disembarkation. No more ships arrive.

29 May. Archbishop Eustorgius of Nicosia persuades the troops to accept Count Simon of Sarrebruck as leader; they land on the west bank of the

Nile, opposite Damietta, with little opposition. Later John, Leopold, and the three Grand Masters arrive and land too.

The Crusaders head upstream for Damietta, but a chain is stretching across the river-mouth so their ships cannot sail in to ferry them across to the east bank. They decide to attack the tower on the west bank that carries the western end of the chain, while the Egyptian governor Al-Kamil (eldest son of Al-Adil) marches north from Cairo and sends reinforcements ahead to the tower. Al-Adil is marching from Syria with an army.

Late June. First attack on the tower fails; Oliver of Paderborn (historian of this expedition) offers to pay for a siege-tower to be set up on two ships and brought up to the tower to attack it from the water.

Al-Mu'azzam attacks and takes Caesarea while the main army of the Kingdom is in Jerusalem.

FRANCE

July. Simon de Montfort killed during his siege of Toulouse, by a shot aimed from the walls. His army has to retreat; his elder son Amaury inherits his claim to Toulouse. Count Raymond holds onto Toulouse and the Crusader lords appeal to King Philip of France for an expedition to save their lands from heretic reconquest. The King's son Louis is currently in England pursuing claim to the throne at the invitation of rebel barons, but becomes available for the expedition later that year as he is driven out by supporters of the young King Henry III. Due to Papal disapproval of Louis' expedition of 1216 against the Papal vassal King John of England, France is in need of proving its loyalty to the Papacy – and Philip covets Toulouse for his family.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

Friday, 17 August. Crusaders hold religious service ahead of the attack.

24 August. Attack on the tower from the afternoon until after dark.

25 August. In the afternoon the Crusaders storm the tower; the hundred or so surviving defenders surrender, and loot is removed; the chain is taken down and the Crusaders sail up to Damietta.

31 August. Death of Al-Adil at Damascus aged around 73 – allegedly of shock at the news of the fall of the tower near Damietta. Al-Mu'azzam succeeds to Syria and Al-Kamil to Egypt; Al-Ashraf rules in Iraq.

The Crusaders wait for reinforcements to arrive, and most of the Frisian fleet goes home.

August. Cardinal Pelagius leads a Papal fleet from Brindisi towards Egypt; they arrive in *mid-September*. Meanwhile a French expedition under Count Hugh of Lusignan, Count Herve of Nevers, Cardinal Robert of

Courcon, Archbishop William of Bordeaux, and the Bishops of Paris, Laon, and Angers, and an English force under the Earls of Chester, Arundel, Derby, and Winchester assemble at Genoa and duly follow. Pelagius sends instructions that they must follow his orders as he is Papal Legate and supreme commander, and is resented.

EPIRUS

Theodore agrees to Papal request to release captive Cardinal Colonna and some other leaders of Peter's army and offers submission to Pope, who sends Bishop of Cotrone to him.

IRAQ/PERSIA

The government of Baghdad, the seat of Caliph Al-Nasir, is seized by the armies of the Shah Mohammed of 'Khwarezm' (Khiva, in Turkestan), now the overlord of the entire Persian plateau; his son Jelal-al-Din becomes his governor there, commencing the rule of a new power in Iraq and an Eastern threat to the Ayyubids.

In the deserts of the Turkestani steppes, the first contact occurs between the Shahdom of Khwarezm (which now rules all the Iranian plateau) and its immanent conqueror, the Mongol 'Great Khanate' of Genghis Khan; the Khwarezm authorities massacre a caravan including Mongol merchants at Otrar, and Genghis Khan starts to plan his revenge.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

Pelagius claims leadership of the Crusading expedition, usurping the role from John of Brienne.

October. John of Brienne leads the Crusader naval repulse of an Egyptian flotilla which is sailing down the Nile from Damietta to attack their camp; the Moslems manage to build and hold a bridge over the river. Later the Anglo-French expedition arrives from Genoa and leads repulse of a second naval attack; an attack on the Crusader camp is driven back into the river with heavy losses.

Late October. The rest of the Western European ships arrive, and there is a lull while Al-Kamil awaits reinforcements from Al-Mu'azzam; the Crusaders dig a canal round from the sea to a point upriver of the Moslem camp so they can send ships up it and take the enemy fleet in the rear, but due to the gradient the canal does not fill with water when it is opened to the sea.

29 November. A northerly gale blows the sea over the banks into the Christian camp, which is flooded; Pelagius organises the building of dykes to drain off the water but in the following weeks the Crusaders are afflicted by famine and epidemics. Cardinal Robert of Courcon is among the victims.

1219 | NICAEA

Theodore Lascaris divorces Philippa of Armenia; *early* he signs treaty with Yolande at Constantinople, who now becomes Empress as Peter presumed dead, and marries her daughter Mary.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

2 *February*. Crusaders attack the Moslem army, as ordered by Pelagius, but are driven back by torrential rain.

Al-Kamil hears of a plot by his Emir Imad ed-Din Ahmed Ibn al-Mushtib in favour of his brother Al-Faiz and retreats from Al-Adiliya up the Nile; he is considering fleeing to the Yemen when Al-Mu'azzam with his army arrives in the Sinai; Al-Kamil sets off to join his brother, and the Crusaders occupy his camp at Al-Adiliya.

7 *February*. Al-Kamil and Al-Mu'azzam meet at Ashmun; Ibn al-Mushtib is arrested and Al-Faiz is pensioned off with the rule of Sinjar in the 'Jazirah' and dies en route. The joint Moslem army marches on Adiliya, and after an attack the Crusaders abandon the position and move back to Fariskur. Afraid that he will have to hand over Jerusalem to remove the Crusaders from Egypt, Al-Mu'azzam orders its walls to be destroyed (work begins 19 *March*) and many Moslem inhabitants flee to Oultrejordan.

Safed, Toron, and Banyas castles are dismantled by their Ayyubid defenders on Al-Kamil's orders, but the suggestion of religious fanatics to pull down the Church of the Holy Sepulchre is forbidden; Al-Kamil appeals to all Moslem rulers for aid and Caliph Al-Nasir promises a large army.

May. Leopold of Austria leaves for home with fragments of the 'True Cross'. Al-Adiliya is reoccupied and is defended from assaults on *Palm Sunday* and at *Whitsun*. William of Chartres, Grand Master of the Templars, and the Count of La Marche are killed defending the camp.

ARMENIA

27 *May*. Death of Leo of Armenia after 33-year reign, nominating his daughter Isabella as heir; his disappointed great-nephew Raymond-Rupen of Antioch contests it. John of Brienne decides to back the claims of Isabella's sister Stephanie, his wife, and their daughter.

FRANCE

Philip finally agrees to let Louis take on a new northern French Languedoc campaign after Pope Honorius threatens to put the Capetians' principal rival, Count Theobald of Champagne (heir to the Kingdom of Navarre so with potential to build up a Languedoc empire), in charge.

June. Prince Louis launches expedition south from Aquitaine into the County of Toulouse, to reconquer it from the heretic Count Raymond in the name of the Church; *16 June* he besieges Toulouse.

Louis fails to take Toulouse and (*1 August*) as his soldiers' legal term of 40 days' service expires, he retreats.

BALTIC

June. King Valdemar II and Archbishop Sunesen of Lund lead a Danish naval expedition to invade the Gulf of Bothnia coast of Estonia; they set up a 'Danish Castle' at the site of what becomes the region's principal town, Tallinn ('Danish Town' in Estonian).

15 June. The Danes are attacked by surprise and nearly defeated by the Estonians in the 'Battle of Lindanisse' at Tallinn, where Bishop Theodoric of Estonia is killed by attackers mistaking him for the King. Legendarily the Danes are saved by the Archbishop's prayers and the miraculous appearance on the battlefield of the 'Dannebrog', the future Danish flag, as a sign from Heaven.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

Stalemate continues in a hot summer; Crusader morale suffers.

20 July. Another attack on the Crusader camp is heavily defeated; the Crusaders launch their new siege-towers against the walls of Damiatta but they are damaged by 'Greek Fire' and another, surprise attack on their camp nearly causes disaster but is halted by darkness.

6 August. Failure of assault on the walls of Damiatta; *29 August* while the leaders are quarrelling over strategy at a council (Pelagius wants to attack Al-Kamil's camp) the soldiers attack the walls without orders, and are lured into a feigned Moslem retreat. John, the Orders, and the senior nobles hurry to their aid. The visiting St. Francis of Assisi is allowed to visit Al-Kamil's camp at Fariskur under a flag of truce, and is received kindly and offered gifts. Francis offers to undergo an ordeal by fire to show the Moslems that God is with his faith, but is refused. Poor Nile floods threaten the size of the harvest; Al-Kamil fears famine and is encouraged to hasten the invaders' departure.

Fearing attack from Al-Ashraf in northern Iraq or from Jelal-al-Din of Khwarezm at Baghdad, Al-Mu'azzam proposes to go home to Syria; Al-Kamil sends a Frank prisoner to offer negotiations and a truce is agreed. Talks will follow on handing over Jerusalem.

14 September. Twelve shiploads of Crusaders leave the camp for home.

21 September. Sauvary of Mauleon brings reinforcements from Genoa.

26 September. Al-Kamil attacks the Crusader camp but is repulsed.

Late October. Two captive knights bring Al-Kamil's offer of the 'True Cross', Jerusalem and Bethlehem, central Palestine, Galilee with Nazareth, and tribute for Oultrejordan; Pelagius and the Patriarch object to these terms as prefer more righteous success by victory, and the Orders say that their castles in the proposed area have been demolished so it will be undefendable and will soon be lost; the Italian cities prefer cession of Damietta for trade. The offer is rejected.

4 November. Pelagius' scouts report that the walls of Damietta are undermanned and an assault is planned.

5 November. The city is assaulted again, and the walls are taken, inside the Crusaders find only 3,000 citizens left and the garrison sick and unable to defend the place. Damietta is occupied, 300 top citizens held for ransom and the rest sold as slaves, and the younger children are converted to Christianity. Pelagius proposes to take over Damietta for the Church in the name of all Christendom, but the secular lords want to hand it to the Kingdom and John says he will leave if he does not receive it; eventually Pelagius says he will hand it over to Frederick II when he arrives and John can rule in the interim.

Al-Mu'azzam returns to Syria; Al-Kamil retires to Talha, and the town of Tanis is abandoned to the Crusaders and quarrelled over by the rival Italian city-states.

LATIN EMPIRE

Autumn? Death of Yolande; Conan of Béthune and legate Colonna regents until eldest son Robert of Courtenay arrives from France.

12 November. Death of Patriarch Gervasius.

PERSIA

Late. Start of the Mongol conquest of the Shahdom of Khwarezm, as Ghenghis Khan's armies attack the fortresses on the Jaxartes river frontier. Rumours of the attack apparently reach Damietta and are ascribed hopefully to an invasion of Islam by 'Prester John' coming to help the Crusade.

1220 PERSIA

February. Siege of Bukhara by Genghis Khan; it surrenders and the citadel is stormed. Fall of Samarcand.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

February. John of Brienne leaves Damietta for Acre. He plans attack on Armenia to make his wife Stephanie Queen, but she dies a few weeks

later (according to rumours, ill-treated) so he has no claim on the kingdom. He does not rejoin the Crusaders.

February. 'Feast of the Purification'. Rededication of the chief mosque of Damietta as a church.

March. Al-Mu'azzam attacks the rebuilt Crusader fortifications of Caesarea, and then moves on to besiege Athlit all *Summer*.

March. The Archbishop of Milan arrives with a Church delegation and troops and envoys from Frederick, who is not en route to Church annoyance; the leaders debate about an attack, but Pelagius' call for action is defied by the Palestinian barons who want to wait for John's return. As Athlit is attacked the Templars decide to leave to defend it.

July. More troops arrive from Frederick, but there is no attack and the Hospitallers' Grand Master is captured in an ambush en route back from a raid on Burlos.

Summer. Al-Kamil sends a fleet down the western branch of the Nile to sail to Cyprus, where they intercept and destroy Crusader reinforcements off Limassol; Pelagius sends ships to attack the western mouth of the Nile and raid Alexandria but misses the Moslem fleet.

CYPRUS

A Church Council at Lemesos decides to end the exemption of the Greek Orthodox community from paying tithes to the Latin Church; the co-regent Philip of Ibelin, uncle of Queen-Mother and co-regent Alice, complains to her in vain about the end of his exemption from tithes and refuses to pay any.

SYRIA/ARMENIA

Bohemund IV recaptures Antioch from Raymond-Rupen while his invasion of Armenia is underway; the Hospitallers hold out in the citadel.

Raymond-Rupen, now at Tarsus, is denied the expected Hospitaller reinforcements.

Queen Isabella of Armenia's regent Adam of Baghras murdered by 'Assassins' and Constantine of Lampron takes over leadership to besiege Raymond-Rupen at Tarsus.

BALTIC

Unsuccessful native Estonian attack on the new Danish castle at Tallinn.

8 August? Defeat of part of a current Swedish expedition to western Estonia, at the battle of Lihula; a Swedish garrison is overrun and their commander Jarl Carl/Charles is killed.

PERSIA

Summer. Sack of Rayy (near Tehran), Qazvin, and other principal cities of the lands south of the Caspian by the advancing Mongol army; his lands overrun, Sultan Mohammed of Khwarezm flees to the Caspian as a refugee.

Autumn? Surrender of Hamadan and Tabriz. Fall of Merv. Jelal-al-Din retreats into Afghanistan but wins battle of Parvan.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

September. More Crusaders leave Damietta for home.

ITALY

22 November. Frederick II and his wife Constance are crowned by Pope Honorius in Rome; the Emperor promises to leave for Damietta in the spring, and Honorius instructs Pelagius to refer all offers from Al-Kamil to him.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Late. Death of Sultan Kaykavus, succeeded by brother Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad.

LATIN EMPIRE

Late. Robert of Courtenay arrives in Constantinople via Hungary and Bulgaria to take up crown.

1221 ARMENIA/SYRIA

Early. Constantine takes Tarsus and imprisons Raymond-Rupen, whose family flee to Cyprus.

Raymond-Rupen dies; Bohemund IV receives the surrender of the citadel of Antioch from the Hospitallers, and tells them that due to their treachery to him the Templars can have Jebail instead when it is recaptured.

LATIN EMPIRE

Matthew elected Patriarch of Constantinople and *25 March* crowns Robert; treaty with Nicaea renewed and Theodore Lascaris proposes his daughter Eudocia as Robert's bride.

FRANCE

Pope Honorius fails to lure King Philip into leading a new expedition on Toulouse, where Count Raymond is in the military ascendant, despite

offering to hand the County to him in place of the failing incumbent, Amaury de Montfort, with lucrative taxes across France to pay for the expedition.

SPAIN

22 May. King Ferdinand III of Castile formalises the union of the Order of Calatrava with the smaller Order of Monfrague – the latter is that part of the Order of Monjoie (founded in Palestine c. 1180 at ‘Mont Joie’ outside Jerusalem) which is resisting merger with the Knights Templar.

ITALY

Pope Honorius agrees to give the status of a Crusade to a campaign proposed by the Hungarians to attack the ‘dualist’, ‘Bogomil’ heretics (the same doctrinal sect as the Cathars) in Bosnia.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

June. Arrival of Duke Louis of Bavaria with more German troops at Damietta; the encouraged Pelagius does not bother to refer Al-Kamil’s offer of Palestine, a 30-year truce, and compensation for the demolition of the walls of Jerusalem to the Pope but refuses. Louis says that Frederick ordered no assault to take place until he arrives, but as the Emperor does not arrive Pelagius becomes impatient.

Early July. Five weeks after Louis’ landing, Pelagius decides to attack the western mouth of the Nile before the river floods; however the Cypriot government and the Orders in Palestine write that they cannot send help as Al-Mu’azzam and Al-Ashraf are gathering an army in Syria.

6 July. As a three-day fast ends, John of Brienne arrives with reinforcements and is pessimistic about their chances.

12 July. The army of c. 5,000 knights, 4,000 archers, 40,000 infantry, and assorted civilian pilgrims assembles at Fariskur for a review by Pelagius; they leave part of their force at Damietta and advance up-river to Sharimshah, with the fleet parallel on the river, while the Moslems retreat to Talha.

20 July. The Crusaders reach Sharimshah, with the enemy on the opposite bank protected by a canal in front of their camp; John urges a halt as Al-Mu’azzam and Al-Ashraf are now in Egypt advancing on them and the Nile will flood shortly, but Pelagius ignores him. The Ayyubid army crosses a dry canal and moves round to the Crusaders’ rear; *24 July* the Crusaders reach the dry canal to find that it has been opened to the rising river. They have to halt, and Moslem ships sail into a canal to their rear (as the river rises) to cut off their retreat.

Stalemate follows, and eventually even Pelagius accepts that the Crusaders will have to withdraw to avoid disaster as Louis warns that there are only 20 days' supplies left.

26 August. The retreat starts, but the Teutonic Knights' setting fire to their stores alerts Al-Kamil and he has the canals' sluice-gates opened to flood the surrounding area. The Crusaders struggle on through the swamps, and the Moslem cavalry harasses the retreat; John leads the Christian cavalry to drive them back. Pelagius escapes down-river to Damietta on a ship with the stores (thus causing the marooned army to face starvation) and as Frederick's next army (under Count Henry of Malta) is expected he proposes a truce so the army can be withdrawn safely to Damietta (*28 August*).

Al-Kamil accepts but insists on harsh terms; *30 August* truce agreed by Pelagius, on the proviso that Damietta is evacuated and an eight-year truce; the 'True Cross' will be restored by Pelagius, John, Louis, the Grand Masters, and others will be hostages while the army returns to Damietta and the Grand Masters will then hand it over; in return Al-Kamil offers his sons, brothers, and some emirs.

The terms are carried out and the army is allowed to proceed unmolested down the Nile, but Count Henry and 40 ships have landed at Damietta before the Grand Masters. When they return to the town to organise the handover the soldiers riot, backed by the new arrival Count Henry of Malta, and attack the King's and Grand Masters' quarters but are suppressed; Al-Kamil gives John and the other hostages dinner and rich gifts before the hostages are exchanged.

8 September. The Crusaders sail from Damietta, and Al-Kamil enters; John takes the Palestinian army home to Acre, and Pelagius goes on to Antioch to adjudicate the Hospitaller-Bohemund IV dispute and propose that the Orders share control of Jabala. Bohemund seizes all Hospitaller property in Antioch to teach them a lesson and defies Pelagius' subsequent excommunication.

EPIRUS/THESSALONICA

Demetrius of Thessalonica leaves for West to seek aid, leaving Empress Margaret as regent; *late* Theodore Angelus Ducas takes Serres to surround Thessalonica by land, Alexius Slav, independent Lord of Rhodope Mountains, allies to Theodore and marries his wife Maria Petralipha's niece.

PERSIA/AFGHANISTAN

Autumn. Genghis Khan pursues Jelal-al-Din to the banks of the Indus; the Mongols sack Hamadan.

1222 | NICAEA

January? Death of Theodore Lascaris, aged around 47; his c. 8-year-old son by Philippa of Armenia, Constantine, is disinherited and daughter Irene's husband John Vatatzes takes throne, but Theodore's discontented younger brothers Isaac and Alexius defect to Constantinople, taking Theodore's daughter Eudocia to marry her to Robert.

ARMENIA

Alarmed at Seljuk Sultan Kaiqobad's power, regent Constantine arranges Isabella's marriage to Bohemund IV's younger son Philip of Antioch;

Philip will become an 'Armenian' rite Christian and lead the Armenian Church away from Papal influence. Bohemund defies Pelagius and agrees, and Philip becomes co-ruler of Armenia but is soon unpopular for absenteeism.

PERSIA/GEORGIA

Early. Subodai's Mongol horde moves from Azerbaijan into eastern Georgia and through the 'Caspian Gates' pass onto the steppes; they head for the Don to fight the assembled princes of southern Russia.

June. Genghis Khan sacks the revolted city of Herat and massacres inhabitants.

BALTIC

Expedition by Crusade, which has been gathering in the lower Vistula lands of Mazovia since 1218, to assist Duke Conrad of Mazovia and Bishop Christian of Oliva in invading and converting Prussia. Duke Henry of Silesia and the bishop of Wroclaw are leaders. Castles are built or rebuilt and Chelmno is refortified as a barrier to Prussian attacks.

Superficial success by weight of numbers is reversed by revolt once the Crusaders have gone home.

FRANCE

August. Death of Count Raymond VI of Toulouse, arch-enemy of the 'Albigensian Crusade'; his son Raymond VII succeeds but is not recognised by the Papacy or by the Kingdom of France, which regard the fief as confiscated by King Philip for heresy.

PALESTINE

Autumn. John of Brienne appoints Odo of Montbeliard as viceroy of the Kingdom and sails to Italy with the returning legate Pelagius; also on the

voyage are Patriarch Ralph of Jerusalem and the Grand Master of the Hospitallers, and the Grand Master Hermann of the Teutonic Knights has already sailed west. They land at Brindisi (*October*) and go to Rome, where John successfully proposes to the Pope that all re-conquered territory in Outremer should go to his kingdom.

Frederick gives his approval, and John goes on to France to visit his patron, King Philip.

1223 THESSALONICA/EPIRUS

Early. Queen-Mother Margaret leaves Thessalonica for her homeland, Hungary, leaving Guy Pallavicino as regent; Theodore Angelus Ducas starts siege as Pope tries to raise money and volunteers to rescue the city as a Crusade.

PORTUGAL

25 March. Death of king Alfonso II, aged 37, at Santarem, during a Papal interdict against his country on account of his legally queried taxation of the clergy. Succeeded by his son Sancho II (born *8 September 1207*) under the regency of the archbishop of Lisbon and his aunts, which gets the interdict lifted.

BALTIC

Pagan Prussian raids on Mazovia and burning of churches, bought off by Duke Conrad with tribute; he seeks a permanent military force based in his lands to defeat the Prussians.

FRANCE

John of Brienne arrives in France, but King Philip is not pleased at the news that he has agreed to betroth his daughter Queen Yolande-Isabella of Jerusalem to Emperor Frederick (at the suggestion of Grand Master Hermann). This will hand the Kingdom over to Philip's main rival in Europe.

14 July. Philip dies at Mantes, aged 58, leaving John 50,000 marks for his kingdom; Louis VIII becomes King of France, aged 36.

John attends the coronation, and then goes on to Compostella (Spain) on pilgrimage; he marries Berengaria, sister of King Ferdinand III of Castile.

BALTIC

Major revolt in Estonia against the Danes; at one point they only hold the town of Tallinn, but eventually prevail and regain control.

PERSIA

Jelal-al-Din returns to war-shattered Persia after the departure of the Mongols for southern Russia; he recovers Hamadan, Rayy, Qazvin etc. and rebuilds his realm but abandons the Mongol-occupied north-east (Khorasan) and soon resumes expansion south-west into Iraq.

1224 FRANCE

January. Amaury de Montfort, besieged in Carcassonne by Raymond VII, is forced to sign a treaty agreeing to evacuate it in return for safe passage. Outmatched by superior numbers, he retreats east abandoning the Toulousan heartland and appeals to Louis VIII for aid.

SPAIN/MOROCCO

6 January. Death of Abu Yaqub Yusuf, last powerful ruler of the Almohad dynasty, aged 25; no obvious successor. Accession in Morocco of usurper Abu Mohammed Abd-al-Walid, his elderly great-uncle, as puppet of a palace coterie led by minister al-Jam'i. He is defied by a distant relative, Abdallah the governor of Murcia (Andalucia), aided by the latter's brothers Idris of Cordoba, Abu Musa of Malaga, and Abu al-Hassan of Granada, and Abdallah is assured of secret support among the great noblemen ('shaikhs') of Marrakesh. Abdallah proclaims himself Caliph 'Al-Adil' ('the Just') and takes most of the Andalucian army to Morocco.

LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA/EPIRUS

March. Papal legate assembles Crusade to relieve Thessalonica at Brindisi; the Pope writes to all the lords of the Latin Empire to organise an expedition and Frederick sends 900 marks to pay for troops.

April. Robert sends Thierry of Walincourt and Nicholas of Mainvault into Thrace to aid Thessalonica; a second army assists Isaac and Alexius Lascaris to invade Bithynia, but John III routs them and captures his rebel Lascaris uncles-in-law at Poemamenum; John retakes the entire Troad as far as the Hellespont (and crosses into Europe to secure Gallipoli?); collapse of Latin dominions east of Propontis.

Thierry and Nicholas retreat on hearing of the disaster, and Epirots pursue them across Thrace and break up their army.

Crusade to rescue Thessalonica is halted at Brindisi, with Demetrius' half-brother William of Montferrat, leader, ill.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

John of Ibelin, lord of Beirut, visits Cyprus to join his brother Philip the co-regent; at a grand Ibelin family tournament to celebrate the knighting

of Philip's sons a knight of the 'team' challenging the Ibelin knights, Amalric Barlais, claims a foul blow from the Ibelin rider Toringuel, a knight from Philip's household. Next day Barlais, who has a grudge against the Ibelins, and his friends ambush and cripple Toringuel, and as Philip swears revenge John has to intervene and escort Barlais to Beirut; the episode polarises 'Ibelin' versus 'anti-Ibelin' factions at Court.

ITALY

Spring. John of Brienne returns from Spain to Italy.

Frederick founds University of Salerno; his concurrent settlement of surrendered Moslem ex-rebels from Sicily in colonies on the Italian mainland (especially at Lucera) and ban on Christians converting them is arousing Church displeasure.

ITALY/FRANCE

Pope Honorius refuses Louis VIII's extortionate demands for finance, the required condition for his planned expedition to the Languedoc to overrun Toulouse.

BALTIC

Easter. With the great Estonian revolt largely suppressed, the Knights of the Sword attack the main 'rebel' stronghold at Tartu but are soon forced to retreat; the defenders are aided by a garrison of 200 Russians under Vyatchko, sent from the neighbouring Republic of Novgorod to keep the unwelcome Catholic Crusaders at bay.

Establishment of the newly taken castle at Viljandi (modern Estonia) as the headquarters of the Knights of the Sword, rulers of Livonia.

ARMENIA

? The Hospitallers, now based at Seleucia/Silifke on the Cilician coast, aid regent Constantine in reconquering assorted castles from the Seljuks; the success emboldens Constantine to discard the Antiochene alliance.

SPAIN/AFRICA

Alliance between Abdallah al-Bayyasi, the rebel cousin of Abdallah Al-Adil the Almohad (now invading Morocco), and Ferdinand III of Castile; the latter lends al-Bayyasi military aid for revolts.

As Abdallah marches on Marrakesh, Abu Zakariya of the Hintata tribe and Yusuf ibn Ali of Tinmal attack the city and depose Abd-al-Walid I in his name; chief minister al-Jam'i and his clique are liquidated and (September) the ex-Caliph is strangled in captivity. But Abdallah and his

Andalucian army and advisers are resisted by many local Moroccan regional ‘strongmen’ and the regime soon unravels; the late ruler’s nephew Yahya al-Mutassim revolts and civil war.

BALTIC

25 August–? October. Second Crusader siege and fall of Tartu in Estonia; the conquest of Estonia is completed but islanders hold out on Saaremaa (until 1227).

LATIN EMPIRE

December. Biandrate and Guy Pallavicini surrender Thessalonica to Theodore Angelus Ducas, Byzantine rule restored to second city of Empire and exiled Archbishop Constantine Mesopotamites, Alexius III’s nominee, returns.

ARMENIA

Late. Constantine of Lampron arrests Philip of Antioch (who is imprisoned at Sis) and seizes full power, reassured by Seljuk preoccupation that he does not need alliance with Antioch.

1225 ARMENIA

Early. Constantine poisons Philip; Queen Isabella flees to Hospitaller castle of Seleucia/Silifke.

EPIRUS

Early. Archbishop Constantine, friendly with Nicaea, refuses to crown Theodore Angelus Ducas as Emperor; Apocaucus of Naupactus also refuses but is pressurised to hold a synod which authorises Archbishop Chomatianus of Ochrid to perform coronation as Theodore strongest champion of Orthodoxy and Ochrid; Theodore sets up imperial court in new capital.

March. Crusade crosses from Brindisi to Greece, and sails round to Halmyros in Thessaly where William of Montferrat and many others die in epidemic so campaign abandoned.

ARMENIA

Constantine besieges Isabella at Hospitaller castle, at Seleucia/Silifke, and forces her surrender; Bohemund IV appeals to Sultan Kaiqobad to force Philip’s release and he invades Cilicia, but Constantine pretends Philip is still alive to have campaign halted; he persuades Bohemund to come to Cilicia to receive Philip, and at his behest Toghril, regent of Aleppo,

attacks Antioch to force Bohemund to return home; Bohemund hears of Philip's fate and returns to save Anrioch.

Constantine marries Isabella to his son Hethoum and makes the latter King as his puppet; the furious Isabella apparently denies her new husband marital relations for years in protest.

GEORGIA

Jelal-al-Din, the Shah of Khwarezm, based at Tabriz carving out a new realm, invades Georgia and defeats Queen Roussadan at Garni; he sacks Tbilisi/Tiflis and annexes the Kur Valley, driving Georgians west; Kutaisi new capital.

LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA

Theodore Angelus Ducas takes Kavalla, Xanthi, and Mosynopolis to overrun east Thrace, but Adrianople citizens turn to John Vatatzes who installs a garrison under Camytzes; Nicaeans are evicted by Theodore.

Robert signs treaty with John Vatatzes recognising loss of all Asia except Chalcedon; encamped at Lampsacus, John calls off Thracian campaign on revolt of cousin Andronicus Nestongus which he suppresses.

Theodore's brother Manuel marries John Asen's daughter Maria in Epirot/Bulgarian treaty recognising his conquests; he advances to Bizye and approaches the walls of Constantinople where Anseau of Cahieu injured in skirmish.

BALTIC

Or 1228. Foundation of the military 'Order of the Knights of Dobrzyn' in east Prussia, a body of 14 knights granted a castle by Duke Conrad of Mazovia and Bishop Christian of Oliva to protect the Polish/Prussian frontier. Their base is at Dobrzyn once this is built, and they are to govern and protect 'Chelmno Land'/'Culm Land'. Conrad explicitly retains overall sovereignty.

AFRICA

Morocco split between Abdallah al-Adil, who rules from his home territory in Andalucia, and Yahya al-Mutassim who seizes Marrakesh.

SPAIN

Spring. The Castilian army invades the lower Guadalquivir valley in alliance with Al-Bayyasi, and installs him in Cordoba as rival ruler to Al-Adil. Portugal and Leon also attack the Almohad lands; Caceres holds up the Leonese advance but the Portuguese reach the outskirts of Cordoba

and Al-Adil stays within the walls, probably short of troops. A volunteer force of citizens emerges to try to save the local countryside from ravaging but is slaughtered.

Al-Bayyasi cedes the crucial frontier fortresses of Banos de la Encina, Salvatierra (originally built by the Christian Order of Calatrava then captured by Moslems), and Capilla to Castile. The Christian advance proves permanent.

ITALY/FRANCE

Pope Honorius accepts Louis VIII's terms for a new expedition to the Languedoc to overrun Toulouse.

The French Royal court declares Count Raymond VII deposed from Toulouse and recognises Amaury de Montfort as rightful Count.

ITALY

25 *July*. Frederick takes an oath to two Papal legates at San Germano that he will sail to Outremer in *August* 1227 and provide 10,000 knights for Crusade and 100,000 oz. of gold to the Pope as security that he will carry out his vow.

PALESTINE/ITALY

August. Count Henry of Malta brings 14 Imperial galleys to Acre, with Archbishop-elect James of Capua to carry out the proxy marriage of Frederick and Queen Yolande/Isabella (now aged 15).

The marriage is performed at the Church of the Holy Cross, and celebrations follow; then Yolande/Isabella sails for Cyprus with her cousin Balian of Sidon and Archbishop Simon of Tyre.

The Royal entourage goes on to land at Brindisi, where John of Brienne and Frederick arrive; 10 *November* Frederick and Yolande/Isabella are married at Brindisi cathedral.

Frederick takes Yolande/Isabella off on honeymoon without waiting for John, who follows to the bridegroom's annoyance; they quarrel, the Queen/Empress tells John that her husband has seduced her cousin, and Frederick refuses to guarantee John the regency of Jerusalem when he is not in residence. Frederick proclaims that he will rule Jerusalem via his nominees, and his men seize King Philip's legacy for the Kingdom from John and take it off to Acre; John goes to Rome to protest to the Pope, who gives him the governorship of Tuscany in compensation.

ABBASID CALIPHATE

5 *October*. Death of Caliph Al-Nasir, aged 67, after 46-year reign (longest in dynastic history); succeeded by his son Al-Zahir.

CYPRUS

‘Regent’ Philip orders King Henry’s coronation, aged only 8, so the regency will lapse on his 15th birthday (1232); the dismayed co-regent Alice, recently married to Bohemund IV’s son Bohemund (V), asks him for help against Philip and tries to have him appointed as bailli of Cyprus. When this fails she turns to the recalled Amalric Barlais; however Barlais is lured into a joust in a ‘staged’ challenge by an Ibelin partisan, William de la Tour, and flees to Tripoli where he gets in touch with Frederick and denounces the Ibelins.

ATHENS

Otto de la Roche returns to Burgundy; succeeded by nephew Guy.

1226 FRANCE/ITALY

January. Papal Legate, Cardinal Romanus, excommunicates Count Raymond VII of Toulouse and proclaims a Crusade against him. A tax of a tenth of clerical incomes is imposed on France to pay for King Louis’ immanent expedition to Toulouse.

The Legate confiscates Raymond’s County of Provence, breaking the earlier agreements leaving that part of his (inherited) domains to him.

SPAIN

Al-Bayyasi is killed by a Cordoban revolt, and Cordoba returns to Almohad allegiance, but Castile keeps its conquests including Anduja and Martos.

ITALY/BALTIC

Grand Master Hermann von Salza of the Teutonic Knights proceeds to Italy to negotiate with Emperor Frederick for a grant of territory on the Polish/Prussian border, to protect and expand the Christian lands there into Poland, at the suggestion of the Crusade leader Bishop Christian of Oliva. His ambitions are turning to the Baltic after the cancellation of the Order’s earlier grant of some autonomous territory in Transylvania (?), which King Andrew of Hungary has just cancelled.

March. At Rimini, Frederick and Hermann sign a ‘Golden Bull’ which grants ‘Chelmno Land’ in Mazovia and any conquered territory in Prussia to the Teutonic Knights as the Empire’s vassal, with the aim of conquering and converting all pagan Prussia.

LATIN EMPIRE

Death of Patriarch Matthew; Robert of Courtenay (?) abducts a girl from her fiancé, Burgundian knight, and the latter and some friends attack the

Palace to mutilate her; baronial opinion supports them so Robert leaves for the West in disgust.

IRAQ/SYRIA

Jelal-al-Din reasserts his lapsed control over the Caliphate and reoccupies Baghdad; Al-Mu'azam asks him for support against Al-Ashraf and offers him submission, and Jelal-al-Din besieges Al-Ashraf's major fortress of Akhlat.

PALESTINE

Frederick's nominee as regent of the Kingdom of Jerusalem – Thomas of Aquino, Count of Acerra – arrives to take over control from John's nominee, Odo of Montbeliard. His vigour and centralising practices are resented by the local lords.

Thomas and the Bishop of Palermo visit Al-Kamil in Cairo as Frederick's ambassadors; Al-Kamil offers Jerusalem in exchange for peace, but when the Bishop goes on to Damascus to visit Al-Mu'azzam the latter refuses to agree to this. Al-Kamil sends his Emir Fakhr ed-Din to Frederick seeking alliance in case Al-Mu'azzam attacks Egypt.

FRANCE

Amaury de Montfort cedes his rights in Toulouse to Louis VIII, who selects his younger son Alphonso as the new Count. Raymond seeks aid from Louis' rival, Henry III of England, who is endeavouring to recover Poitou from France.

Second and more successful expedition of Louis VIII against Toulouse.

6 June–9 September. Avignon is besieged and captured (confirming French royal control of the lower Rhone valley) and the Royal army moves west across the Languedoc. Count Raymond VII is driven into exile.

The expedition is brought to an end by Louis' sudden death, aged 39 (*8 November*). He is succeeded by 12-year-old son (St.) Louis IX, later leader of the Sixth Crusade, under regency of Queen Blanche. Humbert of Beaujeu, Louis' new Seneschal of Carcassonne, becomes the French Royal lieutenant in the region to continue the war.

ABBASID CALIPHATE

11 July. Death of Caliph Al-Zahir; succeeded by brother Al-Mustansir.

1227 ITALY

18 March. Death of Pope Honorius III; *19 March* Innocent III's nephew Igolino of Segni elected (Gregory IX).

SPAIN

Fall of Baeza to Castile.

LATIN EMPIRE

Death of Venetian ruler of Naxos and the Cyclades, Marco Sanudo; succeeded by son Angelo.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

August. Death of Genghis Khan, aged probably 67, in the mountains of north-west China. His lands are divided with the 'Great Khanate' and the central lands going to his second son Ogodai, the Eastern lands (including half-conquered northern China) to his youngest son Tolui, and the western lands in central Asia to the sons of his deceased eldest son Juchi.

ITALY

Summer. Frederick's Crusade assembles at Apulian ports, but is held up by malaria outbreak; *August.* Duke Henry of Limburg and first section sails from Brindisi.

8 September. Frederick sails from Brindisi, but Landgrave Henry of Thuringia falls seriously ill and they have to land at Otranto. Henry dies, and Frederick goes down with malaria and announces that he is postponing his voyage. Patriarch Gerald of Jerusalem leads the fleet to Palestine, and Frederick goes to Pozzuoli/Puteoli to recover. A messenger reassures Pope Gregory at Anagni that Frederick will sail when he is well, but the disbelieving Pope excommunicates the Emperor.

CYPRUS

Death of the chief minister and regent, Philip of Ibelin; he is replaced as bailli by his elder brother John by decision of the 'High Court', apparently supported by Queen Alice.

FRANCE

Raymond VII is able to regain some of his Toulousan lands as part of a general baronial revolt against the regent Queen Blanche, in alliance with the Counts of Brittany and Champagne and King Henry III of England; however the rebel coalition is defeated.

AFRICA/SPAIN

4 October. Abdallah al-Adil is drowned in his bath in palace at Seville by plotters, and is succeeded by his brother Idris al-Mamun. Yayya al-

Mutassim holds Marrakesh and most of Morocco against him, and Idris asks Ferdinand III of Castile for aid to invade Africa.

SYRIA

11 November. Death of Al-Mu'azzam, Sultan of Damascus and Aleppo and ruler of Palestine; succeeded by his inexperienced though adult son, An-Nasir Dawud. Al-Kamil refuses to recognise him.

1228 LATIN EMPIRE

Early. Robert of Courtenay, told to return to Empire by Pope, sets out but dies in the Peloponnese; brother Baldwin succeeds aged 10/11, and John Asen of Bulgaria suggests that he receive regency and his daughter Helen marries Baldwin but bailli Nogent of Toucy's Council in Constantinople insist a Frank must be Regent.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Spring? Al-Kamil invades and overruns Palestine, annexing Jerusalem and Nablus. An-Nasir Dawud appeals to his uncle Al-Ashraf of Iraq, who marches to 'assist' him but then opens talks with Al-Kamil to divide their nephew's dominions.

ITALY/PALESTINE/CYPRUS

25 April. Empress Yolande/Isabella gives birth to son, Conrad, at Palermo.

1 May. Death of Yolande/Isabella, aged 16; Frederick assumes the regency of Jerusalem for Conrad until his son's majority, though as Consort for his wife he is effectively ruler already. His position in the Kingdom is more open to challenge.

Marshal Richard Filangeiri takes a southern Italian and Sicilian force (500 knights) direct to Palestine.

28 June. Frederick sails from Brindisi (again).

21 July. Frederick arrives at Limassol; as overlord of Cyprus, as per the agreement of King Amalric with his father Henry VI, he asserts his rights and summons King Henry and regent John of Ibelin. He invites John and his sons to a banquet, then has his soldiers arrest them at the table and demands the fief of Beirut and all the revenues of Cyprus since King Hugh's death. John says that Beirut was lawfully given by his half-sister Queen Isabella and he will defend his rights there to the 'High Court' and the revenues of Cyprus have been given to Queen Alice as regent. He refuses to break the laws of either country as Frederick wishes, and Frederick backs down but orders him to hand over his sons as hostages

and join the Imperial expedition. John accepts him as overlord of Cyprus and as regent of Jerusalem.

SYRIA

July/August? Al-Kamil and Al-Ashraf meet at Tel-Ajul, near Gaza, and agree to divide the rule of Syria. An-Nasir Dawud, stationed at Beisan, is deserted; he hears that Al-Ashraf is planning to kidnap him and flees to Damascus.

SPAIN

King James of Aragon commences the conquest of the Balaeric Islands, which become a dependency of Aragon earmarked for his younger son.

FRANCE

Humbert of Beaujeu, the brutal French Royal lieutenant in Languedoc, unsuccessfully attacks Toulouse.

SPAIN/AFRICA

Idris al-Mamun leaves Andalucia for Morocco with an invasion-force including a contingent of 12,000 sent by Castile; this is the effective end of Almohad rule in Spain. Mohammed ibn Yusuf ibn Hud, governor of Murcia, emerges as the main local strongman and claims descent from the Huddid dynasty of Zaragoza.

Badajoz and Merida are conquered by Alfonso IX of Leon's forces as the defences of Moslem Andalucia collapse.

CYPRUS/PALESTINE

Frederick summons the lords of the Kingdom of Jerusalem to his court on Cyprus.

August. Balian of Sidon and Guy Embriaco arrive on Cyprus; and the latter lends Frederick his troops to use against his enemies the Ibelins.

Frederick then advances to Nicosia, joined en route by Bohemund IV, and John flees to the northern castle of St. Hilarion. Unable to waste time on a siege, Frederick accepts the mediation of Balian of Sidon and agrees that he will recognise Alice as regent of Cyprus (aided by his baillis) and that John can defend his right to Beirut before the 'High Court' in Acre. Hostages are returned, and Frederick appoints his baillis – drawn from the anti-Ibelin faction and including Amalric Barlais.

Bohemund IV, asked to do homage for Antioch and Tripoli, feigns illness and leaves for home.

3 September. Frederick sails from Famagusta. At Acre, Frederick faces problems with his vassals as the Pope has renewed his excommunication; the Templars and Hospitallers will not co-operate with anyone under a Papal ban so he has to rely on the Teutonic Knights under Hermann of Salza.

Frederick sends Thomas of Acerra and Balian of Sidon to Al-Kamil to announce his arrival. Al-Kamil plays for time in negotiations, hoping to improve his position by removing Frederick's potential ally An-Nasir Dawud. Frederick asks for the cession of all Palestine, and is told that that would offend all Islam and is impossible.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

October/November. Al-Kamil and Al-Ashraf besiege Damascus.

Late November. Frederick marches down the coast to Jaffa to pressurise Al-Kamil; An-Nasir Dawud slips out of Damascus and takes his army to Nablus to cut Al-Kamil's supply-route to Egypt. Al-Kamil threatens to break off talks if Frederick does not pay compensation for his troops' looting his villages en route, and Frederick does so.

Frederick refortifies Jaffa.

Bertrand de Thesy succeeds Geoffrey le Rat as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

FRANCE

Having seen off Humbert of Beaujeu, Raymond VII opens negotiations with the French monarchy, seeking to force the Regency to accept the fait accompli of his reconquest of the County of Toulouse.

1229 ITALY/EPIRUS

Early. Jacopo Tiepolo, ex- 'Podesta' at Constantinople, elected Doge of Venice.

PALESTINE

February. With Jelal-al-Din of 'Khwarezm', lord of western Persia and Baghdad, threatening Al-Ashraf's rear, the latter has to consider abandoning the siege of Damascus.

11 February. Al-Kamil accepts Frederick's latest terms, brought by Thomas of Acerra and Balian of Sidon.

18 February. Treaty signed by Frederick and (for Al-Kamil) Fakhr-ed-Din and Prince Salah-ad-Din of Irbil/Arbela (northern Iraq). The Kingdom regains control of Jerusalem and Bethlehem, with a corridor to

the sea to Jaffa, plus Nazareth and western Galilee and some disputed areas near Sidon; the Moslems retain control of the 'Temple Mount' in Jerusalem and free access to the city; a ten-year truce for the Kingdom but not for Antioch or Tripoli. Jerusalem can be refortified, but as a personal concession to Frederick not a pledge to the Kingdom per se (i.e. it is likely to lapse when his regency ends).

The treaty does not satisfy the Palestinian barons or the Orders as the extra territory is difficult to defend and Jerusalem is shared with the 'infidel', the Church is unhappy as the Emperor is excommunicate and has made concessions to the Moslems, and the Islamic world is also critical; An-Nasir Dawud orders mourning in Damascus for the 'disgrace'.

Patriarch Gerald refuses to recognise the treaty or have his Church share Jerusalem with Islam, and threatens an interdict on the inhabitants if they let Frederick in; the Archbishop of Caesarea follows Frederick to the city to enforce it.

17 March. Frederick enters Jerusalem, accompanied by German and Italian troops; Qadi Shams ed-Din of Nablus hands him the keys at the gate. The Emperor takes over the Hospitaller headquarters.

Sunday 18 March. Frederick attends Mass in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre with his secular entourage, and illegally crowns himself as King of Jerusalem (he is only regent for his son). The Teutonic Knights are his only prominent local backers, and receive the Royal palace next to the 'Tower of David' as a reward. The Hospitaller Grand Master and the Templar Preceptor however join in his council-meeting at his residence to discuss defence of the city. The 'Tower of David' and the Gate of St. Stephen are to be refortified. Frederick then visits the Al-Aqsa Mosque with his entourage (including Sicilian Moslems), banning all Christian priests from entry without Moslem permission.

19 March. The archbishop of Caesarea arrives and announces the interdict; Frederick angrily leaves for Jaffa.

23 April. Frederick returns to Acre, and faces complaints from the barons for his illegal coronation, which they refuse to accept, and riots by the Genoese and Venetian communities against his trade-agreement with Pisa.

24 April. Frederick summons the leaders of the Kingdom and the communities of Acre and explains his actions, but is defied; he puts troops round the Templar Grand Master's and Patriarch's residences and is reported to be thinking of deporting the Grand Master and John of Ibelin to Italy so they stay indoors under heavy guard.

Hearing that the Pope has commissioned John of Brienne to invade Apulia, Frederick decides to leave for Italy; he appoints the locally acceptable Balian of Sidon and Garnier the German as his baillis and Odo of Montbeliard as constable to govern the Kingdom.

1 May. At dawn Frederick sails from Acre, after a rowdy public demonstration as his entourage was spotted making for the harbour and pelted by a mob.

CYPRUS

Mid-May. Frederick lands at Limassol; he confirms the rule of the anti-Ibelin faction, led by five baillis headed by Amalric Barlias and Gavin of Chenichy. King Henry is betrothed to Alice, daughter of Frederick's ally the Count of Montferrat. Frederick then sails for Italy.

ITALY

10 June. Frederick arrives at Brindisi.

PALESTINE

May/June. Angry imams at Hebron and Nablus organise an attack on Jerusalem by their armed townfolk; the Christians flee to the 'Tower of David' and the governor, Reynald of Haifa, sends to Acre for help. The baillis Baldwin and Garnier bring troops to relieve the city and the raid is denounced by Al-Kamil. Eventually the Patriarch agrees to return to Jerusalem on a part-time basis.

In Galilee, the castles of Toron and Montfort are rebuilt but the Christians' position remains precarious.

LATIN EMPIRE

Spring. At Perugia, Pope Gregory announces that John of Brienne, former King of Jerusalem and regent there until daughter Isabella married Emperor Frederick II, is his choice of regent for Baldwin at Constantinople with his daughter Mary marrying Baldwin.

AFRICA

Fall of Marrakesh to Idris al-Mamun; he assumes the Caliphal rule, but the Almohad realm is crumbling in both Africa and Spain and his declaration of allegiance to the Sunni faith rather than his family's usual Alid loyalty (and withdrawal of recognition of their founder Ibn Tumart as the 'Mahdi') alienates many provincial notables.

CYPRUS

The baillis exile leading Ibelin supporters and confiscate their property to help pay the 10,000 marks they have promised to send Frederick.

The historian Philip of Novara, a friend of John of Ibelin, is on Cyprus and appeals for a truce, but when he is invited to Court by the baillis

they try to arrest him and the Hospitallers have to rescue him and hide him at their headquarters. He sends to John at Acre for help, and John raises an army and invades.

14 July. Battle on the road to Nicosia; the larger but disorganised anti-Ibelin army is defeated with Philip and the Hospitallers aiding the invaders, and Barlais and his associates flee to the castle of St. Hilarion with the young King; Kyrenia and Kantara (under Gavin of Chenichy) also hold out, but lowland Kyrenia soon surrenders; the others are in the mountains and are blockaded.

FRANCE

Treaty of Paris-Meaux: Count Raymond VII submits to the regency government of Louis IX, under Queen-Mother Blanche of Castile. They recognise him as ruler of the main, Western lands he has regained – the original County of Toulouse – for his lifetime, and he bequests them to his daughter Joan who is married to the French Royal claimant Alphonso (Louis IX's brother). In return Raymond will cede the east of the territory, his family's original patrimony in the Rhone valley, to the French monarchy.

PALESTINE

Autumn. Queen-Mother Alice puts in a claim to the Kingdom, as Conrad has failed to come out to his realm and she is the next daughter of the late Queen Isabella (d. 1205/6?) after Conrad's late grandmother Queen Marie (d. 1212). The 'High Court' denies her claim but sends to Frederick asking him to send Conrad out to the Kingdom.

1230 EPIRUS/BULGARIA

Theodore decides to attack Bulgaria before attacking Constantinople and *March(?)* invades Maritsa valley; *April* John Asen defeats and captures him at Klokotnitsa on the road to Philippopolis; Theodore's brother Manuel escapes to Thessalonica and takes the throne, but Epirot power in Thrace collapses and John Asen overruns it; Manuel, as John Asen's son-in law, allowed to keep Thessalonica as ally but Theodore is blinded and John Asen overruns north Epirus and Albania as far as Dyrrachium.

Epirots retain Corfu; Constantine Angelus Ducas retains south Epirus, based at Arta.

BALTIC

16 June. Date of the (disputed) 'Treaty of Kruswicka', by which Duke Conrad of Mazovia allegedly cedes 'Chelmno Land' and any future conquests in East Prussia to the Teutonic Knights. Their Grand Master,

Hermann of Salza, and subsequent leadership regards this as giving them full control of the region, subject to the Emperor and Pope but to no Polish sovereigns; Poland disputes this interpretation.

Conrad von Landsberg and a small force, reputedly only seven Knights and 500–1,500 infantry, arrive in Mazovia to establish the Knights' bridgehead there; their first castle is at Vogelsang near Torun (possibly begun in 1229). Later around 30 more Knights arrive and commence attacks on the Prussians, but the main body of Teutonic Knights remain in Outremer.

CYPRUS

Summer. Surrender of St. Hilarion and Kantara castles; the surviving baillis are pardoned but excluded from government, and John of Ibelin takes over the regency until King Henry comes of age at 15 in 1232.

ITALY

23 July. Peace between Frederick and Pope Gregory at San Germano. Gregory requires Patriarch Gerald to lift his Interdict on Jerusalem, and the lifting of the Papal excommunication improves Frederick's position with the Orders and the Palestinian barons.

PALESTINE

Guerin succeeds Bertrand de Thesy as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

SYRIA

Hospitallers and Templars raid Hama but are defeated in an ambush.

Death of Emir Az-Zafir the Ayyubid, ruler of Bostra.

Deposition of Al-Mansur Kilij Arslan, Ayyubid prince of Hama (descendant of Saladin's nephew Taki-ed-Din); succeeded by brother Al-Muzaffar Mahmud.

SPAIN

Or *1231.* Mohammed al-Ghalib, son of Yusuf al-Ahmar, seizes control of the governorship of Arjuna as the Almohad state's control of Al-Andalus declines; he founds the 'Nasrid' emirate (of Granada from 1237), which will halt the 'Reconquista' in the region until 1492.

BALTIC/POLAND

The Teutonic Knights acquire their first foothold in the region, the town and castle of Chelmno/Culm on the Polish-Prussian border, from Duke

Conrad of Mazovia. Pope Gregory approves the charter which they produce in Rome whereby Conrad invites them to fight the Prussians in return for Chelmno, and grants them the rule of Prussia as they conquer it from the pagan inhabitants as a Papal fief.

SPAIN

23/4 September. Death of King Alfonso IX of Leon, aged 59, after a 42-year reign; succeeded by his son Ferdinand III (born *5 August 1198*), who as of *6 June 1217* is already King of Castile; reunion of these kingdoms.

1231 EPIRUS

Probable date. Manuel Angelus Ducas sends to Morea to recall Michael's son Michael Ducas, in exile since *1215* and now adult; Michael goes to Arta, where Constantine surrenders Despotate, and marries his own cousin Theodora Petralipha (of Norman/Byzantine landed family in Greece descended from Bohemund's lieutenant Peter d'Aulps).

SPAIN

Conquest of Cazorla by Castile/Leon.

April. Ibn Hud of Murcia, strongman of Andalucia, is defeated by the Castilian army at the battle of Jerez as they raid the coastal plains and he tries to intercept them. Leon then overruns Merida.

LATIN EMPIRE

May. John of Brienne arrives in Constantinople and is crowned co-emperor; his young colleague Baldwin II marries his daughter Mary.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Spring. Chormaqan leads a new Mongol invasion of the 'Khwarezmian' lands of the west Iranian plateau and Azerbaijan; the tribal Turcoman forces mostly desert Jelal-al-Din rather than face another round of Mongol massacres as in *1220–1*.

Jelal-al-Din retires across (old) Armenia and enters the Seljuk realm; he attacks Manzikert.

29 July–1 August. Defeat of Jelal-al-Din of Khwarezm, in flight from Mongol invaders of Azerbaijan, by Sultan Kaiqobad and a coalition of vassals (including Trebizond troops) in battle west of Erzinjan.

The 'Khwarezmian' empire in Iraq and western Persia collapses; Jelal-al-Din is murdered *15 August* in flight, and Kaiqobad retakes Manzikert

and Erzerum to secure power in old Armenian lands; he takes Georgian frontier fortresses to pressurise Queen Roussadan into alliance, and her daughter marries his son Kaikhusraw.

SYRIA/IRAQ

Khirkhan, Jelal-al-Din's general, takes part of his army into the service of the Ayyubid rulers of Akhlat and Mayyafariqin.

Al-Kamil takes Amida and Hisn Kayfa to force the Ortoqids of Mardin to submit, and appoints his son As-Salih Ayyub (later ruler of Egypt) as the local governor.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

Frederick asks the Pope to gather a new army for expedition to Palestine, and (*Autumn*) sends Filangeri as Imperial 'legate' to Palestine with 600 knights, 100 sergants, 700 infantry, and 3,000 marines in 30 galleys; *November*. He holds a grand feudal assembly of his Italian vassals at Ravenna, and summons the German lords who are unable to get there on time as revolting Lombards block the Alpine passes; Frederick meets the Germans later at Aquileia.

As the German fleet sails to Acre, an Ibelin agent in Italy goes to Acre to warn John of Ibelin who returns to Cyprus to defend his regency; Filangeri arrives in Cyprus to find John and the King at Kiti/Kition and John's son Balian defending Limassol, and orders the King to dismiss his uncle and banish him and his family. At a Royal council Henry refuses the order and says that he does not betray loyal vassals, and Barlais speaks up for Frederick but is nearly lynched and John has to rescue him.

Filangeri sails on to Palestine, and sends his troops to conquer John's mainland fief of Beirut; John has taken most of his troops to defend Cyprus so the town is soon taken but the citadel holds out. Filangeri marches south via Sidon and Tyre to Acre, where he shows the council Imperial orders appointing him as bailli and confiscating John's lands. The lords accept him as ruler, but deny his right to confiscate John's lands without the 'High Court's' approval; Odo of Montbelaird and Balian of Sidon lead resistance to the Imperial government, and angry Acre merchants organise riots by the locals. A 'Commune' of lords and merchants, the 'Fraternity of St. Andrew', seizes control of Acre, on the model of similar Italian urban governments, and invites John to become their mayor. The Teutonic Knights and the Pisans back Frederick, and John is held up from sailing to Acre by storms.

The Military Orders take Jabala, hold it for several weeks against Ayyubid forces, and then accept a two-year truce.

1232 | **LATIN EMPIRE**

Early. Death of Patriarch Simon of Constantinople; succeeded by Papal ally Nicholas della Porta, Bishop of Spoleto.

PALESTINE

25 February. John of Ibelin leads a fleet from Cyprus (Famagusta) to Palestine, taking along Barlais and his friends to prevent them revolting in his absence. They land south of Tripoli, and Barlais and his allies desert and flee to Tripoli to alert Filangeri (who is at Tyre). Filangeri sends them to defend Beirut; meanwhile John marches south towards Tyre, via Jebala and then Beirut which he storms.

John appeals for his allies to join him, and his nephew John, lord of Caesarea, does so; Balian of Sidon (another nephew), Garnier the German and the Grand Masters come to him to ask for negotiations and it is Filangeri who refuses to moderate terms, demanding the confiscation of all Ibelin lands.

John marches on Tyre, ignoring the arrival of Filangeri's brother Lothair to besiege Beirut, and sends his son Balian to Tripoli to ask Bohemund IV for an alliance centred on the latter's son Bohemund (V) marrying King Henry; of Cyprus' sister Isabella. Bohemund refuses.

Filangeri withdraws Lothair's troops to Tyre, and sends Barlais to attack Cyprus while King Henry is in Palestine with John of Ibelin; King Henry's sisters take refuge in Buffavento castle, and are joined by John's son Balian's secret wife, Eschiva of Montbeliard, disguised as a monk, with provisions. A message is sent to Eschiva's husband at Tripoli but Bohemund blockades the harbour.

Late April. The Ibelins grant the Genoese trading-privileges in Cyprus, and six Genoese ships join the Ibelin advance on Tyre; Patriarch Albert of Antioch, the new Papal legate, arrives at Tyre and Filangeri agrees to negotiate but only as a tactic.

2 May. When John's army arrives near Tyre Filangeri launches a treacherous attack at night during truce, and his men capture King Henry and take him back to Tyre; John's sons hold out on a nearby hilltop until John arrives to rescue them, and Filangeri leaves part of his army at the 'Ladder of Tyre' pass to block John's advance while he sails to Cyprus to join Barlais' invasion.

John takes over Acre, and King Henry offers freedom from all tolls and autonomous quarters in the principal towns on Cyprus to Genoa to secure their help; this will be the root of Genoese power in Cyprus in the next century-and-a-half. John of Caesarea and Philip of Ibelin's son John sell their estates to the Hospitallers to raise money for the expedition.

30 May. The Ibelin expedition sails from Acre; they join Balian of Sidon at his town, and then go on to Famagusta where Filangeri and his c. 2,000 Lombards are waiting; they take over an islet off shore at night, making noise to simulate a large army which unnerves the enemy; next morning the Lombards retreat to Nicosia.

Filangeri goes to besiege Buffavento in the hope of taking the princesses as hostages; the Ibelins sign treaty with Genoese and advance to Nicosia, aided by the Greeks as the Lombards are burning the crops to deny the attackers food; the Ibelins take Nicosia and the Imperial stores.

15 June. John leads his army out of Nicosia to Agridi on the Kyrenia road, in the plain below the approaches to Buffavento where Filangeri is camped; the Lombards send waves of cavalry down the hillside onto them but are routed in battle of Agridi. The besiegers flee to Kyrenia, where King Henry's fiancée Alice of Montferrat has arrived for his marriage but is caught in the town and dies during the long siege.

Filangeri and Barlais leave Kyrenia for Armenia as the Genoese fleet starts blockade; Philip Chenart commands the defence.

Bohemund IV changes his mind about allying with the Ibelins after their victory at Agridi, and allows his son Bohemund (V) to marry King Henry's sister Isabella, he reaches agreement with the Hospitallers with Patriarch Gerold of Jerusalem mediating, and they receive back their confiscated rents but have to abandon claims to rights granted them by Raymond-Rupen; the Patriarch lifts excommunication of Bohemund.

EPIRUS/NICAEA

6 March. Nicaean synod sends Christopher, Bishop of Ancyra, as legate and Exarch to Epirus to negotiate reunion at request of Bishop Bardanes of Corfu and Manuel Angelus Ducas; at Thessalonica Bardanes leads synod to accept Nicaean authority, but Archbishop Chomatianus of Ochrid refuses. Patriarch Germanus sends letter with five returning pilgrim friars to Pope about reunion criticising Catholic cruelty.

AFRICA

26/7 October. Caliph Idris dies while attacking his rival Yahya al-Mutassim who has seized Marrakesh; the senior shaikhs refuse Yahya's appeal for them to elect him as the next Caliph and choose Idris' son Abd-al-Wahhid (II) instead. The two stage a civil war as the Almohad realm collapses, with the Hafsids of Tunis defying the dynasty.

1233 ITALY/PALESTINE/CYPRUS

Early. Frederick hears of the expulsion of his baillis from Cyprus and orders the Bishop of Sidon, visiting Rome, to take letters to Tyre

dismissing Filangeri; Frederick's friend Philip Maugustel, suspected by barons of homosexuality, is to replace him. Filangeri and his party arrive from Palestine at Frederick's court.

March? As Maugustel prepares to be sworn into office at Acre, John of Ibelin leaves the siege of Kyrenia to join his faction in the city and plot against the appointment. At the oath-taking ceremony at the Church of the Holy Cross, John's nephew John of Caesarea denounces the appointment as illegal as not ratified by the 'High Court'; an argument follows and the bell of the city 'Commune' summons a rowdy mob of citizens who try to lynch the baillis, Balian of Sidon and Odo of Montbeliard. Maugustel flees to Tyre to hold it for Frederick, and John of Ibelin rules Acre as the Commune's Mayor; (Balian continues as nominal bailli in King Conrad's name?). Envoys are sent to explain to the Pope, but Teutonic Knights' Grand Master Hermann sees that they are rejected.

SYRIA

March. Death of Bohemund IV of Antioch, aged around 60; succeeded by son Bohemund V.

CYPRUS

April. Surrender of Kyrenia; the defenders are allowed to leave for Tyre.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Sultan Kaiqobad defeats attack by Ayyubid Sultan Al-Kamil of Egypt, Al-Adil's son and successor, and his brother Al-Afdal of Iraq; the Ayyubid army cannot penetrate the Taurus passes so it moves east to sack Hisn Kayfa and aid Ortoqid rebellion at Kharpert; later Kaiqobad recovers the area and temporarily takes Edessa.

FRANCE

Raymond of Pereille, lord of Montsegur in the Languedoc, invites the surviving Cathars to set up their headquarters at his semi-impregnable and remote castle.

SPAIN

Fall of Ubeda to Castile; Ibn Hud of Murcia is forced to agree to a truce to save the main cities of Seville and Cordoba from attack and rebuild his army.

BALTIC

First large-scale expedition by the Teutonic Knights in the lower Vistula valley, allegedly of c.10,000 troops; establishment of the Order's castle of 'Marienwerder' ('Mary's Island') at Kwidzyn.

1234 SYRIA

Pope offers Greek Patriarch Simeon of Antioch autonomous Church if he submits to Rome, but he refuses and goes to Nicaea for Church Council.

NICAEA

Pope sends two Franciscan and two Dominican friars via Constantinople to discuss Church reunion before John Vatatzes' imminent 'General Council' of Eastern Churches; unleavened bread, 'filioque' clause in creed etc. are discussed and John asks if Pope would restore Nicaea's 'rights' as Patriarch of Constantinople if he reconciles Church to Papal authority and is told Pope would be 'very well disposed'; the friars return to Constantinople but as city is depopulated and impoverished and government fearful of Nicaea they agree to take John of Brienne's appeal for 1-year truce back to Nicaea to attend Church Council.

'Council of Nymphaeum', at Vatatzes' favourite palace near Smyrna; Greek clerics go on about 1204 and ignore friars' reminder that Crusaders were excommunicated at the time, and friars do not reply to Vatatzes' appeal to drop 'filioque' in return for use of unleavened bread; the friars leave Council early.

ITALY

Frederick's elder son Henry revolts against Frederick in Germany and allies to the Lombard League; Pope Gregory backs the Emperor.

SYRIA

8 November. Death of Baha ed-Din Ibn Shaddad, Saladin's biographer (aged 89).

1235 HUNGARY

Death of Andrew II the Crusader; succeeded by son Béla IV, who is married to Theodore Lascaris' daughter Mary (many of the royal houses of Europe can claim Angelid and Comnene descent from this union).

BALTIC

The small military ‘Order of Dobrzyń’ in Mazovia is subsumed into the Teutonic Order, and their headquarters at the eponymous castle is returned to Duke Conrad.

NICAEA/LATIN EMPIRE

John Vatatzes and John Asen ally; Vatatzes storms Venetian base at Gallipoli and advances through Thrace to take Philippopolis from Latins.

Vatatzes’ 13-year-old son Theodore to marry John Asen’s 10-year-old daughter Helen in Nicaea/Bulgaria alliance, and the Princess is escorted to Lampsacus for the wedding which Patriarch Germanus performs.

Nicaean and Bulgarian forces attack Constantinople by land and Nicaean fleet by sea, but John of Brienne and 160 knights hold the land-walls effectively and Italian ships defeat Nicaean blockade to land men and supplies; siege abandoned but Vatatzes keeps east Thrace.

PALESTINE

Pope Gregory sends the Archbishop of Ravenna to Acre as Legate to order the government to obey Frederick’s instructions as the legal guardian for his son King Conrad; he is rejected and the barons send Geoffrey Le Tor as envoy to Rome to argue their case.

1236 ITALY/PALESTINE

February. Pope proposes that Filangeri should be accepted as bailli until *September 1236* with Odo as his deputy, to be succeeded by Bohemund V of Antioch; the Commune should be dissolved and there will be an amnesty for all except the Ibelins, whose case will be decided by the ‘High Court’; John of Ibelin leads decision to reject these terms.

ITALY/BALTIC

19 February. Pope declares a Crusade against the pagan Samogitians, in modern Lithuania, with the ‘Knights of the Sword’ of Livonia authorised to overrun this salient between the Christian lands of the Knights in Livonia (based on Riga) to the north and those of the Teutonic Knights in east Prussia to the south. Subsequently forces from Holstein and (Russian) Pskov join the Knights’ army for the invasion.

SYRIA

Death of Al-Aziz of Aleppo; succeeded by 6-year-old son An-Nasir Yusuf under regency of his mother, Al-Kamil’s sister Dhaifa; Al-Ashraf of Iraq,

Al-Kamil's brother, plans to invade and assembles an army in the 'Jazirah' but (27 *August*) dies. Al-Ashraf is succeeded by his brother As-Salih Ismail, who seizes Damascus and plans to use his brother's coalition of emirs to attack Aleppo himself.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

Death of John of Ibelin, aged around 60, after riding-accident; his son Balian succeeds to Beirut and younger son John to Arsuf, but the Commune rules Acre. Balian of Sidon (John's nephew) rules nominally as bailli of the Kingdom, aided by John's son Baldwin as Seneschal.

ITALY

Frederick summons Diet at Piacenza to confiscate the Papal lands and rebel Lombard lands to the Empire due to alleged misbehaviour of occupants; Pope Gregory asserts the permanent right of the Papacy to its lands under the 'Donation of Constantine' and confirmation of this by Emperor Charles (Charlemagne) to Pope Leo III.

LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA

Vatatzes and John Asen blockade Constantinople again, but lack adequate siege-engines; Geoffrey II Villehardouin from the Morea leads Morean/Venetian reinforcements on Venetian ships to break blockade.

Baldwin II goes to Rome to seek aid, leaving John of Brienne in charge; Pope Gregory tries to interest Béla IV of Hungary in attacking Bulgaria and reinforcing Constantinople.

PALESTINE

Bertrand de Comps succeeds Guerin as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

SPAIN

29 *June*. Reconquest of Cordoba, the former Moslem capital in Spain, by Ferdinand III of Castile. This ends effective Almohad rule in al-Andalus, leaving control to a few regional emirs led by Mohammed the Nasrid of Arjuna and his rivals at Malaga.

AFRICA

In the chaos of the collapse of Almohad power in the 'Maghreb', Tunis becomes independent under a new dynasty, the Hafsids, led by Emir Abu Zakariya Yahya (d. 1249).

BALTIC

22 September. On St. Maurice's Day, heavy defeat of the Knights of the Sword in Livonia and their Crusader allies in their invasion of pagan Samogitia, at 'Saule' (location unknown). The Knights' Master, Volkwin, and around 60 knights are killed floundering in the Lithuanian marshes, permanently damaging the Order's military capacity.

1237 LATIN EMPIRE

23 March. Death of John of Brienne, aged well over 80 and possibly 87; Anseau of Cahieu Regent; Baldwin II does not bother to return and goes on to France to offer the 'Crown of Thorns' from Hagia Sophia, mortgaged to Venice for huge loan, to the pious King Louis IX and try to win his effective support.

SYRIA

Templars from Baghras raid the lower Orontes valley to plunder Turcoman tribes' flocks; the regency government of Aleppo sends an expedition to besiege Baghras, but it is relieved by Bohemund V who then arranges for truce to be extended. The Templar Preceptor William of Montfort is annoyed at the truce and plans to ignore it.

THESSALONICA

During John Asen's Papal negotiations, he releases Theodore Angelus Ducas to regain Thessalonica and prove an irritant to John Vatatzes; Theodore slips into city, contacts his friends, and organises a coup to arrest his brother Manuel and deport him to Attaleia; as Theodore is blind he installs his young and unworldly elder son John as King with himself as chief minister, allied to Bulgaria.

BALTIC

The Knights of the Sword in Livonia merge with the stronger Teutonic Knights to their south to ensure backing of the latter following a large-scale revolt in Livonia after the disaster at Saule in 1236. They technically remain autonomous under their own Master.

Conquest of Pomerania at the mouth of the Vistula by the Teutonic Knights; foundation of Elbling.

SPAIN

Mohammed al-Ghalib the Nasrid seizes control of the mountain city of Granada, which becomes his capital and due to its isolation is safe from an easy Christian attack.

SELJUK SULTANATE

31 May. Death of Sultan Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad; youngest son Izz-ed-Din succeeds according to his wishes, under chief minister Kopek; Izz-ed-Din's older brother, Ghiyath-al-Din Kaikhusraw, persuades ministers to depose the new ruler and accept him instead; Kaikhusraw murders both his younger brothers and assorted generals to encourage obedience.

SYRIA

June. William of Montfort and the Templars, aided by troops from Jabala, attack the castle of Darbsaq by surprise; it holds out and the Christian prisoners inside send warning that a relief-force is en route from Aleppo, but William ignores them; he is taken by surprise by the relief-expedition and killed, and the Templars retreat; they ransom their captured knights and agree to a ten-year truce.

27 August. Death of Al-Ashraf of Iraq, while preparing to attack the regency government in Aleppo; his younger brother As-Salih Ismail takes over Damascus.

LATIN EMPIRE

Cuman refugees from Mongols stream over Danube into Bulgaria, and as a horde approaches Constantinople Anseau of Cahieu hires them to make war on Nicaea; governor Tarchaneiotes is besieged in Tzurolon, and John Asen joins in but retires on death of his wife Anne of Hungary.

CYPRUS/ARMENIA

King Henry marries (2) Stephanie of Armenia, sister of King Hethoum.

ITALY

Frederick fights the Lombards and (27 November) wins battle of Costanuova.

1238 LATIN EMPIRE/ENGLAND

Baldwin II arrives from Flanders in England to seek aid from Henry III.

SYRIA

January. Al-Kamil takes Damascus and expels his brother As-Salih Ismail, who receives Baalbek as compensation.

8 March. Death of Al-Kamil, Sultan of Egypt (aged 58?), at Damascus; his younger son Al-Adil (II) is proclaimed Sultan at Cairo where he is residing, ignoring the rights of his elder brother As-Salih Ayyub who is

in the 'Jazirah'; their cousin Al-Jawwud seizes Damascus but flees as Ayyub leads an army southwards on the city, aided by ex-'Khwarizmian' tribesmen from the 'Jazirah' (who thus acquire knowledge of and taste for raiding Syrian cities); Ayyub is recognised as senior ruler of Syria.

ITALY

Frederick fails in two-month siege of rebel Brescia.

SPAIN

Niebla and Huelva fall to Castile-Leon.

Conquest of the city of Valencia, the main remaining Moslem stronghold in southern Aragon, by King James of Aragon; completion of the Aragonese 'Reconquista'. His frontiers now reach the borders of the only remaining Moslem emirate in south-eastern Spain, that of Granada.

1239 THESSALONICA/NICAEA

Manuel Angelus Ducas lands at Demetrias in Thessaly with Nicaean expedition to attack Thessalonica; he is joined by local lord Constantine Melissenus and they overrun Thessaly; Theodore prepares campaign, but he and Manuel come to an agreement and join Melissenus for division of Thessaly; Manuel abandons oath to Vatatzes and Theodore sets himself up as lord of Vodena.

ITALY

20 March. Frederick is excommunicated by Pope Gregory; war follows with a Crusade proclaimed against Frederick, and Frederick besieges Milan. Friars are expelled from the 'Regno' (Naples and Sicily) as loyal to the Pope.

LATIN EMPIRE

Baldwin's mercenary commander John of Béthune dies at Venice en route to Constantinople, but his forces are transported to the city in Venetian ships after an attempted diversion to the siege of Milan by Frederick.

Baldwin mortgages County of Namur, his brother's legacy in Flanders, to Louis IX for 50,000 livres to fund his mercenaries and marches home across Hungary and Bulgaria with new army.

SYRIA/IRAQ

Seljuk army under general Kopek takes Samosata from a vassal of As-Salih Ayyub, who is preoccupied with preparing to invade Egypt. The

Ayyubids enlist the local 'Khwarizmian' tribes, ex-army of Jelal-al-Din, to rule the 'Diyar Mudar' district as 'buffer-zone' against the Seljuks.

As-Salih Ismail seizes Damascus while most of Ayyub's troops are marching on Egypt; Ayyub is caught in Palestine without a local base for his army, but his cousin An-Nasir of Kerak joins him and lends him his troops to continue with the Egyptian expedition.

PALESTINE/FRANCE

June. Pope sends envoys to France and England to preach a Crusade on end of truce in the Holy Land. Counts Theobald of Champagne and Navarre and Peter of Brittany, Duke Hugh of Burgundy, and the Counts of Bar, Sancerre, and (Amaury of) Montfort set out for the East.

Frederick refuses them passage through Italy as he wants to negotiate a new truce with the Ayyubids, so they sail from Aigues-Mortes in the Camargue and from Marseilles instead.

Theobald's expedition is hit by storms at sea but (*1 September*) arrives at Acre. Around 1,000 knights arrive on the campaign, and the leaders join the local barons for a council where Archbishop Peter of Tyre deputises for the Patriarch. Theobald decides to march down the coast to Jaffa and Ascalon and then east to Damascus.

2 November. The expedition sets out down the coast for Jaffa, seat of Count Walter; Count Peter of Brittany leaves on news of a rich caravan moving along the Jordan valley towards Damascus, and proceeds to ambush it with around 200 knights; they take a large number of animals and return to Jaffa, but An-Nasir Dawud is enraged.

The young Turkish 'Mamluk' (slave mercenary) general Rukn al-Din Baybars (known as 'Bundukdari' after his first owner, the artillery officer Bundukdar), later Sultan and the conqueror of much of the Kingdom and of Antioch, is sent by the young Sultan Al-Adil to hold Gaza; the rumour that he has only around 1,000 troops encourages the foolhardy Count Henry of Bar, keen to upstage Peter of Brittany, to attack them without waiting for Theobald or Peter.

12 November. Henry's force and their local allies, Balian of Sidon and Odo of Montbeliard, are about to leave the camp at Jaffa secretly at nightfall when Theobald finds out and arrives to stop them, aided by the Grand Masters; they defy his orders and leave, calling him a coward.

13 November. Theobald moves on to Ascalon to be on hand if needed, while at dawn Count Henry leads his men ahead towards Gaza. The latter rest in a hollow of the sand-dunes before attacking, but Baybars' archers start to harass them and Count Walter of Jaffa advises them to flee as they have been spotted; the Duke of Burgundy and the Palestinian barons leave on horseback, but Count Henry stays with the infantry and the Egyptians attack. The Crusaders are overwhelmed, and Count Henry and

around 1,000 are killed and c. 600 survivors, led by Amaury of Montfort, are taken prisoner and are taken back to Egypt for ransom. When the refugees reach Theobald he proposes an attack, but the local barons say that Baybars would drive him off and kill the prisoners and they won't join him to be killed in a hopeless cause so he gives up.

Encouraged by the victory, An-Nasir Dawud sends an expedition to Jerusalem where (10 November) Filangeri's Italian garrison withdraws into the defensible 'Tower of David' complex by the Gate of St. Stephen, leaving the city to be occupied.

6 December. The garrison surrenders in return for safe conduct to Acre and are allowed to leave; Dawud demolishes the 'Tower of David' fortifications and withdraws too rather than risk war with the Emperor, leaving Jerusalem an 'open' and indefensible city.

Pierre de Vielle Bride succeeds Bertrand de Comps as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

PALESTINE/BALTIC

Death of Hermann of Salza, Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights for three decades and their founding leader.

1240 LATIN EMPIRE/NICAEA

Baldwin, his Western mercenaries, and Cumans retake Tzurolon and sell garrison as slaves; 34 Italian galleys in Baldwin's service defeat Vatatzes' fleet.

TURKISH SULTANATE/GEORGIA

Kaikhusraw murders his chief minister Kopek and marries Queen Roussadan's daughter.

PALESTINE

Early. Theobald goes to Tripoli and negotiates with Al-Muzaffar, Ayyubid prince of Hama, who fears a coalition between Aleppo and Homs to evict him; al-Muzaffar returns a warm reply to the initial approach and even offers to convert to Christianity, but by the time Theobald arrives in Tripoli the immediate threat of attack has passed and he temporises.

As-Salih Ayyub and An-Nasir Dawud march on Egypt. Ayyub's son Turan Shah endeavours to keep the disintegrating realm of Ayyubid Iraq together in the face of 'Khwarizmian' tribal disorder.

ITALY

22 February. As Frederick's army advances on Rome from Viterbo, Pope Gregory leads a procession round the city with holy relics to win over the disaffected populace. They agree to stand firm, and Gregory gives the campaign against Frederick the status of a Crusade. Frederick is daunted by the prospect of a siege rather than easy entry to the city and pulls back. He agrees to let the German clergy mediate, and Gregory sends Cardinal John Colonna to negotiate.

EGYPT/PALESTINE

June. Al-Adil II's disaffected army deserts him and his unpopular young eunuch favourite, and he has to surrender; he is arrested and deported, and As-Salih Ayyub becomes Sultan of Egypt. He hands over Palestine to An-Nasir Dawud; Ayyub's uncle As-Salih Ismail is confirmed in Damascus but the two of them are on bad terms.

Count Theobald advances to Sepphoris to make offers to assist Ismail in return for some territory; Ismail offers Beaufort and Safed castles in northern Gallilee, plus surrounding area, in return for munitions and defence of the southern Palestinian border against an advance by Ayyub from Egypt. The Templars, who have financial links with Damascus, run the negotiations and receive Safed, but the Moslem garrison of Beaufort refuses to hand it over to an 'infidel' and shuts the gates as its late lord's son Balian of Sidon arrives to take over.

Ismail besieges Beaufort and forces its surrender to Balian, but faces Moslem disquiet; the chief preacher at Damascus' 'Grand Mosque' is among defectors to Ayyub.

Theobald leads the Palestinian army and his Crusaders to join Ismail near Gaza to await Ayyub's army, but at the sight of the latter around half Ismail's troops desert; Ismail retreats and the Hospitallers open negotiations with Ayyub, defying Theobald; Ayyub offers the return of the 1239 prisoners in return for neutrality and Theobald, short of men with the Hospitallers defying him, has to agree. The Grand Master signs treaty with Ayyub's envoys at Ascalon, and Amaury and the others are returned; the Palestinian barons and the Templars object to the abandonment of their usual Damascus alliance for reliance on Egyptian goodwill. Duke Hugh of Burgundy refortifies Ascalon as he promised and goes home, and (*late September*) Theobald does so too after visit to Jerusalem. The Count of Nevers stays to join the local barons and Templars at Jaffa and prepare to attack any Egyptian army moving against their ally Ismail.

SPAIN

Fall of Ejica and Lucena to Castile-Leon.

BALTIC

September. The Teutonic Knights take Pskov from the Russians, who are weakened following the devastating Mongol invasion of 1237–40.

PALESTINE

11 October. Count Richard of Cornwall, younger brother of Henry III of England, and an English expedition arrives from Marseilles at Acre to find high tension between the Hospitallers and Templars over the attitude to the Ayyub/Ismail conflict and the Teutonic Knights keeping out of it. The Hospitallers are now moving towards the Imperial party and Filangeri, with most local barons (and the Ibelin faction) pro-Templar. He goes to Ascalon to tell Ayyub's envoys that he will not fight if Ayyub confirms Ismail's grants of castles and adds Belvoir, Mount Tabor, and Tiberias to make the Galilee region defensible. Ayyub's envoys agree, prisoners are exchanged, and Ayyub's troops evacuate eastern Galilee (which belongs to Ismail anyway so their Sultan does not lose his own lands). Ismail goes along with it, as the area is currently falling to his rival An-Nasir Dawud. The Christians' Galilee frontier is restored to that of 1187.

Odo of Montbeliard, as husband of the Galilee heiress, refortifies Tiberias; however the region is still threatened by a Moslem presence at Nablus to the south, cutting the route to the still indefensible Jerusalem.

Walter Penningpil, Filangeri's governor of Jerusalem, is confirmed in office as governor of Ascalon by Richard, and Frederick confirms the arrangements and sends an embassy to Cairo.

ITALY

Pope Gregory breaks his agreement with Frederick once the military pressure on Rome is ended, and summons a 'General Council' of the Church to Italy for 1241 to reassert Papal authority; Cardinal Colonna and others desert him for breach of faith with the Emperor.

1241 SYRIA

Early. Surrender of Amida to Seljuk army; Seljuks extend power over the Diyarbakir area at the expense of the quarrelling Ayyubids.

BALTIC

Teutonic Knights annex Ingria, at the head of the Gulf of Finland, from Novgorod.

POLAND

Duke Henry of Silesia, senior among the rulers of decentralised Poland and currently governing the Duchy of Cracow (the capital), calls on the Teutonic Knights for help as Baidar's Mongol army invades his lands.

The Templars also send troops.

6 April. Henry, the Poles, and the Orders are crushingly defeated at the battle of (Wahlstadt near) Liegniz; Henry is killed. Poland is ravaged and Cracow sacked.

HUNGARY

11 April. Great Khan Ogodai's nephew Batu and his section of the immense Mongol army defeats King Bela IV's army at the battle of the Mohi Bridge on the River Theiss. The Templar commander James of Montreal and Archbishop Hugrin are killed in battle after James rashly advises Bela to attack the enemy; Bela's brother King Coloman of Croatia is mortally wounded. The Mongols pillage the Danube valley and move on into Croatia.

ITALY

Frederick refuses to allow any clergy to pass through Imperial territory en route to the Church Council at Rome; a large contingent sails from Genoa to avoid his blockade but (*3 May*) is captured at sea off the island of Giglio by Frederick's illegitimate son, Enzo of Sardinia, and the Pisan navy Gregory cannot muster enough support for an impressive and authoritative Council, and both sides open negotiations.

PALESTINE

May. Richard of Cornwall leaves Acre for England.

June. The dispute between the Hospitallers and Templars continue, and the local barons send to Frederick to ask him to nominate Richard's well-respected brother-in-law Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, younger brother of Amaury and son of the Albigenian Crusade leader, as bailli as acceptable to them. Simon, who accompanied Richard's expedition, is the first cousin of Philip, lord of Tyre and son of Helvis of Ibelin, so he is probably an Ibelin nominee. Frederick refuses, and Simon goes home too.

SYRIA/IRAQ

Summer. The feuding Ayyubid princes agree to a truce as the 'Khwarizmian' tribal army from the 'Jazirah' moves south into their territories; they defeat them near Homs.

Turcoman revolt against Seljuks in the upper Euphrates area, led by the self-appointed ‘prophet’ Baba Ishaq; as the revolt spreads Sultan Kaikhusraw calls on the Christian states of the Levant for military support.

THESSALY

Death of Manuel Angelus Ducas; his lands go to his nephew, Michael II of Epirus. Theodore Angelus Ducas visits Nicaea and is detained.

BULGARIA/NICAEA

Death of John Asen, greatest ruler of second Bulgarian empire; succeeded by 7-year-old son Kaliman, and Vatatzes makes truce with Baldwin II and prepares expedition to Thessalonica.

ITALY

21 August. Death of Pope Gregory IX, during war with Emperor Frederick II; Frederick overruns much of the Papal States.

25 October. Godfrey de Castiglione elected (Celestine II); *10 November* he dies and Frederick’s hostility delays new election.

Autumn. Death of Amaury de Montfort during his homewards journey from Palestine.

MONGOLIA

11 December. Death of Great Khan Ogodai of alcoholism; his widow ‘Khatun’ Toraghina, a Nestorian Christian, secures the disqualification of his grandson and heir Shiremun and her own regency pending an election. The latter requires the return of all the Mongol royal princes from campaign, so Batu halts his ravaging and returns to the steppe as soon as the news reaches him a few months later. The fact that Toraghina is a Christian encourages the Papacy to think of using the Mongols against the Moslems in Palestine.

1242 PALESTINE

Spring. Templars, opposed to the Kingdom’s alliance with Ayyub, raid Hebron; An-Nasir sends troops to cut the road from the coast to Jerusalem and force all pilgrims to pay tolls to him in reprisal.

BALTIC

5 April. The Teutonic Knights and their Estonian vassals (advancing on Novgorod?) are defeated by its ruler, Prince Alexander ‘Nevsky’, in epic

battle on the ice of Lake Peipus near Dorpat (later made into Soviet film in 1938); end of the Knights' eastwards expansion at Russian expense. Some modern revisionists claim the scale of the clash has been exaggerated.

Duke Swantopolk of Pomerellia (east of Gdansk) assists a major Prussian uprising against the Teutonic Knights, whose position is precarious (most territory except castles lost) until defeating the rebels' offensive in 1244; fighting continues until 1250.

NICAEA/THESSALONICA

Spring. John Vatatzes' large army crosses Hellespont under 'Grand Domestic' Andronicus Palaeologus and marches along Thracian coast with fleet parallel at sea; Cuman mercenaries join them, and Theodore Angelus Ducas accompanies the army as honourable hostage; Vatatzes leads advance on Thessalonica, but as siege starts Vatatzes hears that Mongol horde under Baichu are in Armenia heading for Seljuk lands and decides he has to return home quickly; siege continues until Theodore persuades John to surrender on terms; *November* John is required to abdicate as King but allowed to stay as Despot under Nicaean suzerainty; Theodore allowed to stay as John's chief minister as Vatatzes returns home.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Besieging Ayyubid prince Al-Ghazi in Mayyafariquin, Kaikhusraw hears of Mongol advance west and sends to Nicaea, Trebizond, Armenia and other allies for aid.

FRANCE

28 May. The assassination of two officers of the Inquisition at Avignonet in the Languedoc draw attention to the surviving persistence of the Cathar 'heresy' at the isolated mountain-top fortress of Montsegur ('secure mountain'), which Count Raymond VII has unsuccessfully (and deliberately inefficiently?) besieged in 1241. A Royal order is issued at the Church's request for an expedition to attack the 'heretics' redoubt.

PALESTINE

30 October. The Templars sack Nablus and burn down the main mosque in retaliation against An-Nasir interfering with pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

William de Chateaufort succeeds Pierre de Vielle Bride as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1243 | TURKISH SULTANATE/SYRIA

Early. Baichu besieges Erzerum and takes it by treachery; Trebizond, Antioch, and Nicaea (?) send troops but Hethoum of Armenia delays thinking that Mongols likely to win.

PALESTINE

February/March? One night, Filangeri, having established contacts with local Hospitallers and leading citizens, sneaks into Acre to prepare a coup; he is spotted and Philip of Montfort, lord of Tyre, aids the ‘Commune’ and the Genoese and Venetians in preparing defence. Messages are sent to Balian at Sidon and Odo at Caesarea, patrols are set, and plotting citizens are arrested, and Filangeri flees back to Tyre.

Balian brings troops to reinforce Acre, and blames the Hospitallers; their Grand Master Peter is at Marqab in Antiochene territory raiding local Moslems, and their headquarters in Acre is blockaded.

25 April. With King Conrad legally of age at 15, Frederick sends out Thomas of Acerra to act as his representative and rule the Kingdom until he can return; the barons refuse to accept Thomas and appoint Queen-Mother Alice of Cyprus instead. (She is next heir to the Kingdom after Conrad, as daughter of his late great-grandmother Queen Isabella.) Balian and Philip summon a ‘Parliament’ to confirm the new arrangements.

Thomas of Acerra arrive at Tyre, loyal to the Imperial government, and Filangeri hands it over to him; he appoints Filangeri’s brother Lothair as governor and Filangeri leaves for Italy as ordered by Frederick.

FRANCE

May. Hugues de Arcis launches an official French siege of the virtually impregnable mountain-top Cathar fortress of Montsegur, where there are around 100 combatants plus around 200 (non-fighting) ‘perfecti’ and several hundred dependants. Due to the difficulty of using long-range catapults or undermining the walls through rock, a ten-month blockade results. Eventually Basque mountaineers manage to set up artillery near to the castle and bombard the walls, driving the Cathar sympathisers living outside to move inside and make conditions cramped.

PALESTINE

5 June. The ‘Parliament’ meets at the Patriarchal Palace, and legal expert Philip of Novara says that no homage can be done to Conrad as King until he arrives in person so Alice and her husband Ralph can have full powers as regents. Odo asks the barons not to confirm the appointments until an official invitation to Acre has been sent to Conrad and he has failed to turn up, but they go ahead (at Ibelins’ suggestion) and swear homage to Alice and Ralph.

9 *June*. Lothair is ordered by the ‘Parliament’ to hand over Tyre to the new regency government, and refuses; Balian of Sidon and Philip of Tyre lead army on Tyre, aided by Genoese and Venetian ships.

12 *June, night*. Tyre citizens open the ‘Postern of the Butchers’ near the sea, and Balian lands a force on the nearby rocks to scramble over to the gate and enter. The town is secured and Lothair is besieged in the citadel.

TURKISH SULTANATE/SYRIA

Kaichusraw advances to the plain of Erzinçan to await Mongols and 26 *June* at battle of ‘Köse Dagħ’ Baichu lures Seljuks by feigned retreat, surrounds them in pass, and counter-attacks to destroy army; Kaichusraw flees, collects treasure at Tokat, and retires to Ancyra as Mongols storm Sebastea/Sivas and Caesarea/Kayseri; Vizier Muhadhab-ad-Din goes to Mongol camp to negotiate surrender and save Iconium/Konya and is sent to Persia to submit to senior commander Chormagan; Seljuks to pay tribute as Mongol vassals, and Muhabhab-ad-Din issued with formal charter (‘Yarliq’) which Kaichusraw has to confirm, and Mongols leave Sultanate after plundering but maintain supervisory presence in Azerbaijan.

SPAIN

Fall of Orihuela and Murcia to Castile-Leon, by agreement with Aragon over the Christian frontier so that Castile now reaches the sea both east and west of the emirate of Granada.

ITALY

26 *June*. Sinibaldo Fieschi, Papal jurist likely to stand up to Imperial claims, is elected Pope (Innocent IV) by the cardinals in exile at Anagni.

PALESTINE

10 *July?* Filangeri unsuspectingly arrives by sea at Tyre to assist Lothair after winds drive back his ship, not thinking it has fallen, and is captured; the authorities parade him with a rope round his neck in front of the citadel, and Lothair surrenders; the Filangeri brothers are allowed to leave for Tripoli.

The Filangeris return to Italy; the government entrusts Tyre to the regents, but then the barons accept a request from Philip of Montfort to give him the town, ignoring the arguments of Queen Alice’s husband the co-regent Ralph who leaves for Europe in disgust.

Autumn. When Hospitaller Grand Master Peter formally apologises for plotting with Filangeri, the regency’s military leader Balian of Sidon ends his six-month blockade of the Hospitaller headquarters in Acre. The

government resumes negotiations with As-Salih Ismail, who offers to withdraw the Moslem imams who are allowed to lead their community in Jerusalem under the 1229 treaty with Frederick. This is accepted by Ayyub rather than face war with Acre, and the Templars have their old headquarters at the ‘Temple Mount’ restored.

November. Templar Grand Master Armand of Perigord writes to the European princes that Jerusalem is being refortified.

1244 ITALY

March. With his troops hit by epidemics, Frederick agrees to hold his realms as Papal fiefs as Innocent is demanding; Innocent fears it is a delaying tactic and refuses to lift his excommunication until other issues are resolved, and Frederick is encouraged to plan a new offensive.

LATIN EMPIRE

Baldwin II visits Italy to seek more aid, tries to mediate between Frederick and Innocent, and persuades Frederick to write to Vatatzes on his behalf backing a one-year truce.

NICAEA

Treaty between John Vatatzes and Frederick follows the latter’s approach on Baldwin’s behalf; Frederick sends illegitimate daughter Constance to marry Vatatzes, but she is probably only in teens and after the wedding (at Prusa) Vatatzes soon takes her lady-in-waiting, Marchioness Della Fricca, as his mistress despite scandal.

THESSALONICA

Death of John Angelus Ducas, probably in late 20s; his father Theodore installs John’s debauchee brother Demetrius as successor.

FRANCE

Early March. The besiegers of Montsegur are able to creep up a secret passage (betrayed by a deserter?) into the barbican, which they fortify against the defenders; the attackers bring in catapults to bombard the rest of the castle day and night, and after a failed counter-attack the besieged negotiate surrender. All except those professing Cathar beliefs are allowed to leave, including the commander Raymond de Pereille, but the ‘perfecti’ are to be executed. According to legend, during the truce preceding surrender two ‘heretics’ smuggle out the legendary ‘Cathar treasure’ – both documents and precious objects.

16 March. Surrender of Montsegur. Around 200 Cathars and their sympathisers voluntarily march down the hillside to the Inquisition's execution-site and are burnt alive; the rest of garrison leaves unmolested.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Spring. An-Nasir Dawud and the junior Ayyubid prince Al-Mansur Ibrahim of Homs plot to overthrow Ayyub; the Templars support the plan and invite Ibrahim to visit Acre to sign alliance. Ibrahim offers part of Egypt to the Kingdom. However before an expedition can set out Ayyub invites the 'Khwarizmians' south to attack Damascus and hold up Dawud's army, which they do.

Late June? The 'Khwarizmians' plunder south-west into Galilee and sack Tiberias; as they advance via Nablus on Jerusalem the Grand Masters of the Templars (Armand) and Hospitallers (William of Chateauneuf) and Patriarch Robert organise the defence, call in more troops from Acre, and then leave to avoid a siege.

ITALY

Pressurised by the war-weary Roman populace, Innocent announces that he will meet Frederick at Rieti; however once he has left Rome he flees secretly to Civitavecchia disguised as a sailor and (7 *July*) sails on a Genoese ship to the Riviera to rally his foreign backers to attack the Emperor.

SPAIN

Fall of Arjuna, Mula and Lorca to Castile-Leon.

PALESTINE

11 July. The poorly-defended walls of Jerusalem are stormed by the numerically superior 'Khwarizmians'; the city is pillaged, and Eastern rite as well as Latin Christians are massacred especially at the Armenian monastery of St. James. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre is pillaged and the citadel ('Tower of David') is besieged. The governor and the Preceptor of the Hospitallers are killed in a sortie, but an appeal for help to An-Nasir leads to him sending a force to rescue the garrison. The Damascene army arrives and forces the 'Khwarizmians' to offer the garrison safe-conduct, but does not attempt to reconquer the city.

23 August. The garrison and refugees from the citadel leave Jerusalem for Jaffa; end of the Christian military presence there. Around a third of the column however turns back to the city on seeing captured Frankish flags displayed on the towers and thinking it is a relief-army arriving, and

they are attacked and massacred; the others are attacked by brigands on the road and only around 300 reach Jaffa safely.

The Army of the Kingdom assembles outside Acre, reinforced by troops sent by Ibrahim of Homs; An-Nasir Dawud brings his troops from Damascus and (4 October) they set out south for Jerusalem. Philip of Montfort and Count Walter of Jaffa command the Kingdom's c. 600 knights, and the Orders have c. 300 knights each.

With Rukn al-Din Baibars and an Egyptian army of c. 5,000 waiting at Gaza, the Christian-Moslem coalition moves to confront them; 27 October the two armies confront each other on the plain north of Gaza, near 'La Forbie' (Herbiya); as the 'Khwarizmians' arrive to join Baibars Ibrahim recommends waiting until these undisciplined irregulars become impatient and leave, but Walter persuades the army to attack. At the resulting battle, the Christians are on their right wing, the Damascenes in the centre, and An-Nasir's Oultrejourdan troops on the left. They charge on the Egyptians but are held, and the 'Khwarizmians' charge the pro-Kingdom Moslems; the Damascenes break, and An-Nasir withdraws to avoid being surrounded but Ibrahim holds firm. The Christians face the full force of the 'Khwarizmian' charge, and casualties (c. 6,000) include the Grand Master of Templars and the Archbishop of Caesarea; the Grand Master of Hospitallers and Count Walter are captured.

Philip of Montfort and the Patriarch escape to Ascalon, whence the main army is evacuated as the Egyptian fleet arrives to blockade the port. Baibars brings his army to Ascalon and parades Walter with an order to him to tell the garrison to surrender or he will be killed, but Walter shouts to them to hold out and is not killed. The 'Khwarizmians' demand lands in Egypt from Baibars and his master Ayyub, but are refused lest they start plundering there too; they desert the Egyptian army and move off to plunder north to the outskirts of Acre and then ravage Galilee.

27 November. Bishop Galeran of Beirut sails to Europe to appeal for aid.

In the following weeks another Egyptian army under Mu'in al-Din arrives in Palestine to overrun the region west of the Jordan and expel An-Nasir's garrisons, and the 'Khwarizmians' return to their allegiance to Ayyub but are not trusted.

Death of Ayyubid ruler Al-Muzaffar Mahmud of Hama; succeeded by son al-Mansur Mohammed.

ITALY/FRANCE

December. Pope Innocent crosses the Mont St. Cenis pass into the Rhone valley, and summons a 'General Council' to Lyons for 1245.

King Louis IX is seriously ill and vows to go on Crusade.

Sources

1205

Latin Empire/Byzantine successor states: Villehardouin, ch. 86–104.

1205–10

Antioch/Syria: Claude Cahen, *La Syrie du Nord*, pp. 612–13.

Greece: Chronicle of the Morea: (a) French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 137–71; (b) Greek version, ed. Schmitt, lines 1770–85 and 2096–2634; also A. Bon, *La Moree Franque* (Paris: de Boccard, 1969), pp. 58–64.

Cyprus: *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 15–16; R. Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, pp. 72–83.

1205–15

Baltic: James A. Brundage, ed. and tr. *The Chronicle of Henry of Livonia* (2003); David Lindholm and David Nicolle, *The Scandinavian Baltic Crusades, 1100–1500* (Oxford: Osprey, 2007); William Urban, *The Baltic Crusade* (DeKalb: North Illinois University Press, 1994).

1206

Latin Empire/Byzantine successor states: Villehardouin, ch. 105–21.

Palestine/Cyprus: Ernoul, p. 407; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, p. 305.

1207

Latin Empire etc.: Villehardouin, ch. 121–33.

1208

France: Zoe Oldenburg, *Massacre at Montsegur: A History of the Albigensian Crusade* (London: Phoenix, 2006), pp. 3–4.

1208–10

Acre: Ernoul, pp. 407–8; *Estoire d'Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 305–8.

1209

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, *Historia Albigensis*, tr. W. A. and D. Sibley (Boydell, 198): ch. 82 (assembly at Lyons), 89–91 (Beziers), 92–8 (Carcasonne), 110–14 (Castres).

Oldenburg pp. 109–16 (Beziers); M. D. Costen, *The Cathars and the Albigensian Crusade* (Manchester: Manchester UP, 1997) pp. 92–113 (Carcasonne).

1210

Palestine: Abu Shama, vol. ii, p. 158; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 310, 316.

314 *The Sixth Crusade 1205–1244*

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 145 (Alaric), 147 (Foix), 152–6 (Minerve), 173 (Termes) and general events, 148–93; Costen pp. 142–68.

1210–15

Papacy: A. Fliche, *La Chretienite Romaine* (Paris: Bloud and Gay, 1950) pp. 156–216.

1211

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 194–286. Costen pp. 194–276.

1212

Children's Crusade: D. C. Munro, 'The Children's Crusade' in *American Historical Review*, vol. xix (1924).

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 287–366. Costen pp. 286–366.

1213

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 367–487, especially ch. 446–66 (battle of Muret); Costen, pp. 447–84.

1214

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 487–542; Costen, pp. 528–34.

1215

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 543–72; Costen, pp. 554–9, 569, 573.

1216

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 573–600 (break in text during 1216).

1217

Fifth Crusade commences: *Gesta Crucigeronum Rhenanorum*, in R. Rohricht, *Scriptores Minores Qui Belli Sacri* (Geneva: Publications du Societe de l'Orient, 1879) pp. 29–34; *De Itinere Frisonum*, in Rohricht, pp. 59–68.

Fifth Crusade in Palestine: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 163–4; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 322–5; Oliver Scolasticus, *Historia Damiatana* (Tubingen: Litterarischer Verien in Stuttgart, 1894) pp. 165–7.

Albigensian Crusade: Peter of Vaux-de-Cernay, ch. 602–12, ending with the death of Simon de Montfort (ch. 607–12).

1218

Fifth Crusade: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 164–70; De Itinere Frisonum, pp. 69–70; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 229–30 (death of Al-Adil), 325–6, 360; *Gesta Crucigeronum*

Rhenanorum, pp. 37–40; *Gestes des Chiprois*, ed. Raynaud (Geneva, 1887) p. 98; ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 116 and 148 (death of Al-Adil); James of Vitry, *History of Jerusalem*, pp. 118–19; Matthew of Westminster, *Flores Historiarum*, ed. Luard, 3 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1890) vol. ii, p. 167; Oliver, *Historia Damiatana*, pp. 131–2, 190–7.

1219

Fifth Crusade: Abu Shama, pp. 176–7; Ernoul, pp. 426, 433; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 340–2; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 119–22; ibn Khallikan, vol. iv, p. 143; James of Vitry, *Epistolae*, nos. V and VI (in ZKG, vol. xv pp. 582–3 and vol. xvi, pp. 74–5); John of Tulbia, *De Domino Johanne Rege Jerusalem*, in Rohricht, ed., *Scriptores Minores* (Geneva: Publications du Societe de l'Orient, 1879), pp. 132–3, 139; Maqrissi, vol. ix p. 490; Oliver, *Historia Damiatana*, pp. 192–206, 213–22, 236–40.

1220

Fifth Crusade: Ernoul, pp. 421–4, 427, 429–30, 439–43; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, p. 249; John of Tulbia, p. 139; Oliver, *Historia Damiatana*, pp. 231–5, 240–5, 248, 252–3, 257; Roger of Wendover, *Chronica*, ed. Howlett, vol. ii (London: Longman, 1886), pp. 260–1.

1221

Fifth Crusade: Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 180–5; Ernoul, pp. 441–7; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 122–4, 158; James of Vitry, *Epistola* no. vii, (in ZKG, vol. xvi, p. 86); Oliver, *Historia Damiatana*, pp. 257–76.

1221–6

Armenia and Antioch: Cahen, *La Syrie du Nord*, pp. 628–32; Ibn Al-Athir vol. ii, pp. 168–70.

1220–5

Palestine/Cyprus and Italy: Annales de Terre Sainte, p. 437; Ernoul pp. 448–9, 451–2; Estoire d'Eracles, pp. 355–66; Gestes des Chiprois pp. 22–3.

1225–30

Germany/Italy/Palestine: Annales de Terre Siente, p. 438; Ernoul, pp. 458–66; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 303–5, 365–80; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 30–3, 37–50, and 50–76 (1230 Cyprus war); Richard of San Germano, *Chronicon*, ed. Pertz (MGH series vol. xix) pp. 348, 350; also Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, pp. 87–8, 100–07, and Historical Documents of Frederick II, vol. iii, pp. 37–48, 86–7, 90–5, 101–2, 138–9. Abu Shama, vol. ii, pp. 187–91; Al Aini, *Perles d'Histoire*, tr. in *RHC Orientales*, vol. ii, part ii, pp. 186–93; Ibn al-Athir vol. ii, pp. 162–8, 173–4, 180; Maqrissi vol. ix, pp. 470–511, 516–18, 525–6; vol. x, pp. 24809.

1225–30

Baltic: Erik Christiansen, *The Northern Crusades* (London: Penguin, 1997), pp. 82–3.

1228

Death of Queen Yolande/Isabella: Ernoul, p. 454; Estpire d'Eracles vol. ii, p. 366; Historical Documents of Frederick II vol. i, p. 858.

1229–30

Iraq/Syria: Cahen, *La Syrie de Nord*, pp. 644–6; Ibn al-Athir, vol. ii, pp. 176–8; Ibn Khallikan, vol. iii, pp. 242, 488–9; Maqrisi vol. x, pp. 250–2.

1231–5

Cyprus: Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 386–402; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 77–117.
Palestine/Cyprus: Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 406–7; Gestes des Chiprois, p. 86–7, 112–13; Rohricht, *Regesta Regni Hierosolymitani*, pp. 269–70.
Baltic: Walter Wyatt, *A History of Prussia* (London: Longmans, 1876), vol. i, pp. 99–101.

1235–40

Palestine/Syria: Abu'l Feda p. 110–12; Annales de Terre Sainte, p. 436; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 403–5; Kemal al-Din pp. 88–99 (death of Al-Kamil 1238 and aftermath); Ibn Khallikan vol. ii, pp. 445–6; vol iii, pp. 242–6 (death of Al-Kamil and aftermath); Maqrisi vol. x, pp. 297–330.
Baltic: William Urban, *The Teutonic Knights: A Military History* (Cambridge: Greenhill, 2003), pp. 52–7.

1239–40

Crusade: Abu'l Feda, pp. 115–19; Abu Shama, vol. ii, p. 193; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 413–20; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 118–22; Kemal al-Din pp. 98–104; Maqrisi vol. x, pp. 340–2; Manuscript of Rothelin, pp. 528–36, 551–5.
Richard of Cornwall's expedition: Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 421–2; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 123–4; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 555–6; M Powicke, Henry III and the Lord Edward, pp. 197–200.

1241–5

Palestine/Cyprus/Syria/Iraq: Al-Aini, p. 197; Abu'l Feda, pp. 119–2; Annales de Terre Sainte, p. 441; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii pp. 420–2; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 124–36; Kemal al-Din vol. vi, pp. 3–6; Maqrisi, vol. x, pp. 355–7; Historie des Patriarches pp. 350–1.
Baltic: Urban, p. 98; Wyatt, pp. 151–205.

1244

Loss of Jerusalem and battle of La Ferte: Al-Aini p. 198; Francesco Amadi, *Chronique d'Amadi et de Strambaldi*, ed. Mas Latrie (Paris: Imprimerie Nationale, 1891) pp. 201–2; *Chronicle of Mailros/Melrose*, ed. Joseph Stevenson (London: Rolls Series, 1886) pp. 159–60; Estoire d'Eracles vol. ii, pp. 427–31; Gestes des Chiprois pp. 145–6; Maqrisi vol. x, pp. 358–60; Matthew Paris, *Chronica Majora*, vol. iv, pp. 307–11, 338–40.

1244–5

France: Joinville, ed. Ethel Wedgwood (New York: Dutton, 1906) ch. iv, pp. 45–54; William of Nangis, *Life of St. Louis*, in RHF vol. xx p. 352; William of St. Pathus, *Vie de St. Louis*, ed. Delaborde (Paris: Picard, 1899) pp. 21–2.

9 The Sixth Crusade and after 1245–1261

1245 | SYRIA/PALESTINE

Patriarch Albert of Antioch leaves for the Church Council, and the Greek Orthodox Patriarch David leads both communities in the city.

April. Mu'in al-Din's Egyptian army and the 'Khwarizmians' besiege Damascus; Ismail cuts the dykes to flood the suburbs and the attackers are forced to move back from the walls and rely on a blockade.

FRANCE

March. Pope Innocent sends the Franciscan friar John of Pian del Carpine as ambassador to the court of the Mongol 'Great Khan' at Karakorum, Mongolia to seek aid against the Moslems and convert him to Christianity. The Mongol throne is still vacant as of the death of Genghis' son Ogodai in 1241, but an election is expected shortly and Innocent proposes that the new 'Great Khan' sends an army to Palestine.

Innocent sends the Franciscan friar Lorenzo of Orta to the Greek Church in Antioch to promise full Catholic privileges to all Greeks who accept Papal supremacy, and to assure that their community need only obey local Catholic clerics where there is a historical precedent.

28 June. Opening of the 'Council of Lyons', with 'Latin Emperor' Baldwin II seated at the Pope's right hand. Church money is promised to Baldwin to defend his Empire, and Louis IX's decision to go on Crusade is confirmed and approved. The Cardinal-Bishop of Frascati is sent to preach the Crusade in France.

27 July. Innocent pronounces Frederick deposed and confers Crusading privileges on those who join a Papal war to remove him from power. That Crusade is to be preached by Papal officials in Germany and Italy.

Death of Patriarch Albert of Antioch.

SPAIN

Fall of Cartagena to Castile-Leon.

SYRIA

October. After facing unrest from the starving citizens, Ismail opens negotiations with Mu'in al-Din and surrenders in return for an appanage at Baalbek. The 'Khwaizmians' are dismissed from the Egyptian army.

ITALY

Frederick and his illegitimate son Enzo of Sardinia attack Milan from two sides but are driven off.

1246 TURKISH SULTANATE

Early or Late 1245? Death of Sultan Kaikhusraw, nominating his 7-year-old youngest son Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad as heir; ministers resist this and associate the Sultan's older sons, 11-year-old Izz-ed-Din (son of Greek priest's daughter) and 9-year-old Rukn-al-Din Kilij Arslan, with him as nominal rulers; Izz-ed-Din subsequently accepted as senior ruler.

PORTUGAL

January. The incompetent rule, and Church-denounced marriage, of King Sancho II, who his feuding nobles are openly defying, leads to a coup by his younger brother Alfonso backed by the Church; Alfonso is proclaimed 'Defender of the Kingdom' and takes over power from his brother, who is driven into exile within weeks. Alfonso is married to Matilda of Dammartin, ruling Countess of Boulogne, so he can call on northern French help for his campaigns.

ITALY

February? Frederick abandons his Lombard campaign on hearing of a Moslem revolt in Sicily.

EPIRUS

Spring. Michael II of Epirus retakes Gulf of Pagasae ports, Thessaly, from Venice; *early Summer?* he invades central Greece but is held up at fortress of Lamia by Marquis Pallavicini; Guy de la Roche and Morean troops come to rescue and defeat Michael.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Spring. As-Salih Ismail marches on Damascus from Baalbek with a force of 'Khwarizmian' mercenaries and starts siege; Ayyub pays regent Toghril of Aleppo and Prince Ibrahim of Homs to march southwards on his behalf and force Ismail to retreat.

Early May. Ismail is heavily defeated on the Baalbek-Homs road, and the 'Khwarizmians' are virtually wiped out. The survivors flee to Iraq to take service with the Mongols and Ismail accepts his restriction to rule of Baalbek.

CYPRUS/PALESTINE

Death of Queen-Mother Alice of Cyprus, aged in early 50s, the daughter of Queen Isabella of Jerusalem and the third husband Henry of Champagne. Her regency of the Kingdom of Jerusalem as next heir to the absentee Conrad goes to her son, King Henry of Cyprus. He confirms Balian of Sidon as bailli and real ruler.

MOREA

Death of Geoffrey II of Villehardouin, succeeded by his younger brother William who with Venetians besieges independent Greek fortress of Monemvasia.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/ARMENIA

April. Friar John's mission arrives at the new capital of Batu's part of the Mongol empire, usually known as the 'Golden Horde', at Serai on the lower Volga; Batu sends them on to Karakorum. As Ogodai's younger son Guyuk is elected 'Great Khan' the Mongol vassal princes, including King Hethoum of Armenia, are ordered to go to Karakorum to swear allegiance to him.

22 July. Arrival of Friar John's mission at Karakorum; the envoys present the Pope's letter to Guyuk, but he says that the Western rulers must come and pay homage before he will aid them. They discourage the Mongols from sending envoys back with them, in case the sight of the small European kingdoms under quarrelling rulers encourages them to invade again.

NICAEA/THESSALONICA/BULGARIA

September. Kaliman of Bulgaria dies, succeeded by half-brother Michael Asen under regency of latter's mother, Theodore Angelus Ducas' daughter, Irene.

Vatatzes takes all Eastern Macedonia, from Melnik to Velbuzd on the Strymon and up the Maritza to Stenimachus, and Vatatzes then goes west to take Prilep and Pelagonia; *November?* Michael Asen recognises Nicaean conquests; at Melnik Vatatzes hears of a Thessalonican conspiracy against Despot Demetrius, and conspirator Campanus arrives to negotiate a 'Chrysobull' confirming all Thessalonica's rights and privileges in return for surrender.

Campanus returns to Thessalonica to be arrested but Demetrius is reassured as secret co-conspirator Spartenus ‘interrogates’ him with pretended beating and assures he is innocent; *late November* Vatatzes besieges Thessalonica; Demetrius rejects ultimatum but sea-gate is opened from inside during skirmish and Nicaeans enter; Vatatzes persuades Demetrius to surrender citadel and deports him to Bithynia.

SPAIN

Ferdinand III of Castile attacks and takes Jaen, and closes in on Seville. Emirate of Granada becomes tributary to the kingdom of Castile.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

November. Friar John’s embassy leaves Karakorum for the West.

1247 FRANCE/ITALY/SYRIA

Pope Innocent sends Friar Ascelin the Lombard to Syria and then Iraq to meet the Mongol general Baichu, defeater of the Seljuk Sultanate, and acquire Mongol help to reconquer Jerusalem; he appoints his own nephew Opizon Fieschi as the new Latin Patriarch of Antioch and sends him to Syria to take over the Catholic Church from the Greek Patriarch David.

IRAQ

May. Ascelin’s Papal embassy arrives at Baichu’s camp and finds him arrogant, but he agrees to aid the Christians against Ayyub as well as dealing with his principal target, the Abbasid Caliph Al-Mutasim at Baghdad. The Mongol envoys Aiibeg and Serkis are sent back with Ascelin to the Pope.

ITALY

June. Revolt in Parma, aided by anti-Imperialist exiles, holds up Frederick’s plan to send his army from Lombardy over the passes into Burgundy to attack the Pope.

PALESTINE

Egyptian army besieges Tiberias, which (*17 June*) falls; they then retake the fortresses of Mount Tabor and Belvoir.

The Hospitaller base at Ascalon is also besieged, and Henry of Cyprus sends his Seneschal Baldwin of Ibelin and c.100 knights to Acre in eight galleys; the ‘Commune’ of Acre and the Italian merchant communities add seven more ships, and the Egyptian fleet sets out from Ascalon to

attack them but is wrecked on the shore by a storm. The Christian ships reinforce Ascalon, but the bad weather continues so they retire rather than stay out in unprotected anchorage at Ascalon. The Egyptians bring up timber to make siege-engines.

SPAIN

July. Ferdinand III opens the siege of Seville.

PALESTINE

September. Death of bailli Balian of Ibelin (son of John of Beirut and grandson of Queen Maria Comnena), who is succeeded by his brother John, lord of Arsuf in that office and by his son John at Beirut.

15 October. Fall of Ascalon to surprise attack; the garrison are killed or captured and the walls are demolished to make the town useless if it is retaken.

Sultan Ayyub visits Jerusalem en route from Egypt to Damascus, and orders its walls to be rebuilt.

FRANCE

November. Friar John reports to the Pope that the Mongols are not Christians as hoped but are pagans who are only interested in conquest.

FRANCE/LATIN EMPIRE

Queen-Mother Blanche loans Baldwin II 20,000 marks so that he does not have to proceed with the planned sale of his County of Namur, which he is in Flanders to arrange.

1248 SPAIN/PORTUGAL

8 January. Death of deposed King Sancho II of Portugal in exile at Toledo, aged 40; his brother and regent Alfonso II (born *5 May 1210*) takes the throne.

ITALY

February. Frederick, ill and his troops harassed by sorties by the defenders, has to abandon his siege of Parma; this confirms the survival of Papal power in the 'Romagna' and the end of Imperial attempts to reconquer the Papal States. However his illegitimate son Frederick of Antioch (conceived during his visit to Palestine?) succeeds in capturing Florence.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

March. Sudden death of ‘Great Khan’ Guyuk during a military confrontation in Turkestan with his rebel cousin Batu; Guyuk’s widow Oghul Qamish is regent during truce as the Mongol rulers and princes await a new election. At an election ‘Kuriltai’, in the lands of Jagatai’s descendants in Transoxiana, Qaidu (grandson of Ogodai?) is elected but is not recognised by the family of Genghis Khan’s eldest son Juchi (including Batu) or that of Genghis’ youngest son Tolui (including his sons Mongke and Kubila).

SPAIN

3 May. A Castilian flotilla under Ramon Bonifaz sails up the Guadalquivir river to Seville to cut off the city from its southern hinterland and supplies, by destroying the Triana pontoon-bridge. Fall of Alicante to Castilian forces.

SYRIA

Summer. An-Nasir Yusuf of Aleppo expels Prince Al-Ashraf Musa of Homs, of the line of Saladin’s uncle Shirkuh; Musa appeals to Ayyub for help.

TURKISH SULTANATE

? Rukn-al-Din Kilij Arslan visits overlord, Mongol ‘Khan of Golden Horde’ Batu, in person to do homage and secures charter making him sole sultan. He is backed by ambitious autonomist emirs who are resisting the central government of the chief minister Shams al-Din Isfahani, now married to Kilij Arslan’s brother Sultan Izz ed-Din’s mother.

ITALY

Summer. Pope Innocent gives the campaign against Frederick the status of a Crusade.

FRANCE

12 August. Louis IX leaves Paris for Crusade with his wife Margaret of Provence (sister of Queen Eleanor of England) and his brothers Counts Robert of Artois and Charles of Anjou, having raised massive taxes on the country to pay for the expedition. He has sent envoys Frederick to invite him to join an attack on Egypt, to no effect as Frederick is on good terms with Ayyub (who he reputedly warns); Venice refuses to loan Louis ships and keeps to its trade-treaty with Egypt, but Genoa and Pisa aid the French. Duke Hugh of Burgundy, Count Peter of Brittany, the

Lusignan family of past Crusading fame (their Poitou lands now under French rule), and Count William of Dampierre, ruler of Flanders, join Louis as do Earl William of Salisbury from England and Earl Patrick of March (who dies en route) from Scotland. Henry III bans more English nobles from joining the expedition.

The Sixth Crusade embarks at Aigues-Mortes, in the Camargue, and at Marseilles and sails to Cyprus.

LATIN EMPIRE

Autumn. Baldwin II returns to Constantinople, but sends wife Maria of Brienne west to mortgage his lands there; he has to send his young son Philip to Venice as surety that he will pay his debts there.

FRANCE

November. Pope Innocent sends Aibeg and Serkis back to Baichu with complaints at his delay in attacking Syria.

SPAIN

23 November. Surrender of starved-out Seville to Ferdinand III's Castilian army; by this agreement the garrison in the fortress ('Alcazar') has a month to submit and open the gates to the Christians.

23 December. Ferdinand enters Seville in triumph to take possession of the city and fortress; completion of the main phase of the southern 'Reconquista'.

CYPRUS

December. Louis arrives in Cyprus. At Nicosia he receives (Nestorian Christian) envoys from the Mongol commander encamped at Mosul, Aljigidai, sympathising with the Christians over the loss of Jerusalem.

SYRIA

December? The Ayyubid princes of Syria do homage to Ayyub as their overlord at Damascus and prepare to resist the French invasion; Syria is regarded as its likely target.

SPAIN

Fall of Seville to Castile; the Moslems in Spain are now restricted to the isolated mountainous/coastal realm of Granada east of Cadiz, ruled by the Nasrid dynasty.

1249 | **CYPRUS/SYRIA/LATIN EMPIRE**

January. Louis sends Andrew of Longjumeau and his brother, Arabic-speaking Dominican friars, as envoys to Mosul to deliver holy relics and an appeal for aid to Aljigidai.

Louis appeals to the Italian merchant city-states for shipping to attack Egypt, but Venice refuses; *March.* Genoa agrees but then loses ships in a commercial dispute with Pisa as their rival communities in Acre and Syria start fighting. After three weeks John of Arsuf mediates a five-year truce between the Genoese and Pisans in Acre and Louis receives ships.

Empress Marie of Brienne arrives in Cyprus to ask Louis for aid in the 'Latin Empire' but he says that the Crusade must take precedence.

TURKISH SULTANATE

March. Rukn-al-Din arrives home with his Mongol charter and military aid rallies opposition to his brothers, aided by Mongol troops; Izz-ed-Din's minister Karatay murders the obstinate Vizier Shams-al-Din Isfahani to negotiate surrender and halt Mongol ravaging and negotiations follow over division of Sultanate among the brothers.

PALESTINE/SYRIA/CYPRUS/EGYPT.

May. William of Villehardouin and 24 ships arrive in Cyprus to help Louis, and Bohemund V of Antioch is given 600 archers to drive off raids by Turcoman brigands in the chaos of the Seljuk-Ayyubid-Mongol borderlands in northern Syria.

13 May. Around 120 larger ships and other smaller ones sail from Limassol for Egypt; they are scattered by storms and about a quarter of the expedition under Louis sails ahead of the others.

4 June. Louis' force arrives near Damietta; Ayyub abandons his siege of Homs and leaves his son Turan Shah, governor of the 'Jazirah', to command in Syria while he sends the Bedouin 'Banu Kinana' and stores to Damietta and follows more slowly with his army. Ayyub reaches Asmun-Tinnah, by the Eastern branch of the Nile, as Louis lands.

5 June. Louis refuses to wait for the rest of the fleet and lands on the west side of the Nile, opposite Damietta. The Ayyubid advance-force commander, Fakhr-ed-Din, attacks but is driven back by Louis and by John of Jaffa's Palestinian cavalry. At nightfall the Moslems retire over their 'bridge of boats' into Damietta; Fakhr-ed-Din orders the army to retreat south up-river, and the 'Banu Kinana' burn down the bazaar to deny contents to the Christians. The citizens panic.

6 June. Christians in Damietta inform Louis that the garrison has fled, and the gates are opened; the Crusaders enter to turn the main mosque back into a cathedral (as in 1220), appoint a bishop, and apportion streets

to the Orders and the Pisans and Genoese (not the non-combatant Venetians, who complain). Queen Margaret and her household are summoned from Acre, and the Coptic Christians welcome Louis.

King Henry of Cyprus goes home, leaving his Seneschal Baldwin of Ibelin and brother Guy the Constable to lead the Cypriot troops.

Baldwin II arrives from Constantinople to visit Louis and seek aid.

NICAIA

May. Pope sends John of Parma, minister-general of Franciscans, to negotiate with Vatatzes on report from his sister-in-law Mary of Hungary that he could accept Church reunion.

MOREA

May. William of Villehardouin joins Louis IX's Crusade to Egypt.

NICAIA

Vatatzes receives John of Parma, who has been authorised to agree to a 'General Council' in the east if Nicaeans accept 'filioque'; envoys sent to Pope in return.

PORTUGAL

Completion of the conquest of the Algarve. However Castile still retains a claim to it, as ex-overlord of its defunct Moslem emirate.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Izz-ed-Din and Rukn-al-Din meet at Aksaray to negotiate, but emirs start a skirmish and Rukn-al-Din flees; he is deposed and ex-Greek freedman 'atabeg' Karatay secures Izz-ed-Din's sole rule.

EGYPT/PALESTINE

Ayyub offers to hand over Jerusalem, but Louis refuses; supplies run short in Damietta and epidemic breaks out, as Louis awaits the end of the Nile summer floods and the arrival of reinforcements under his brother Count Alphonso of Poitou so he can march upstream.

Ayyub falls ill but has himself carried with his army to join the retreating army from Damietta at Mansurah, on the route up the east bank of the Nile to Cairo; Fakhr-ed-Din is temporarily disgraced for fleeing but is restored due to loyalty. Snipers harass the Christian camp outside Damietta and Louis has to dig a network of trenches to protect it.

20 November. The Christians set out southwards from Dameitta to attack the Sultan's army, leaving Queen Margaret and the Patriarch of Jerusalem in the city.

23 November. Death of Ayyub at Mansurah, aged around 48; his widow Shajar ad-Dur, the (eunuch) palace organisation controller Jamal ad-Din Mohsen, and Fakhr-ed-Din forge an order by the 'ill but alive' Ayyub appointing the latter as the new commander-in-chief and send an urgent message to Turan Shah to come and assume command. The Sultan's death is concealed, and Turan Shah has reached southern Syria en route for Egypt by the time that news leaks out.

The Crusaders cross a succession of canals under Egyptian harassment.

7 December. The Egyptian cavalry intercept the Crusaders but are defeated at Fariskur; the Templars chase them for miles despite Louis' orders and are nearly cut off by Moslem reinforcements.

14 December. Louis' army arrives at Baramun.

21 December. Louis' army arrives on the north bank of the canal blocking the route to the enemy headquarters at Mansurah, the 'Bahr es-Saghir'.

An Egyptian attack across the Nile on Damietta is driven back by Charles of Anjou.

IRAQ

Late. Aljigidai receives Louis' envoys and sends them on to Karakorum.

1250 EGYPT

Early February. A Copt from Salamun comes to Louis' camp and offers to show him a way across a shallow stretch of the canal.

6 February. At dawn Robert of Artois, the Templars, and the English contingent lead the van of the Crusaders across the ford; the others follow except Hugh of Burgundy who guards the camp. Robert ignores his brother's orders to wait for everyone to cross before attacking the Egyptian camp, and persuades the Templars to join him in surprise attack. The enemy panics and flees, and Fakhr-ed-Din is among those killed. Robert charges on through the enemy camp into Mansurah town, but there the young but militarily veteran Mameluke general Baibars (victor of the 1239 battle) rallies the troops and townsfolk to launch counter-attacks down the narrow streets. The Crusaders are caught and heavily defeated, and Robert is driven to take refuge in a house and killed; the Count of Brienne and the Earl of Salisbury also fall. Five out of 290 Templars manage to extricate themselves, as does the wounded Count of Brittany, and they retreat to inform Louis. The King is still arranging for engineers to build bridge over the canal to speed up reinforcements, and he hurries to assume command and protect the troops already across

from successive Egyptian attacks. He leads a counter-charge, but is driven back by the Mameluke regiment of Cairo's Turkish guardsmen and nearly driven into the canal. By dusk the bridge is complete and crossbowmen reinforce the Crusaders on the south bank to drive the Moslems out of range.

The Egyptians attack Louis' camp outside Mansurah, but Charles of Anjou on the left wing and the Cypriots in the centre hold them back as Louis rescues the hard-pressed Templars and French on the right wing; the Templar Grand Master William is killed and Alphonso of Poitou is surrounded but is rescued by camp-followers.

Louis keeps the enemy at bay for several weeks, but pins his hopes on civil war in Egypt; this proves erroneous as Turan Shah arrives in Egypt and (28 *February*) arrives at Mansurah to take over the army.

ENGLAND

6 *March*. King Henry III, Louis IX's old rival who still claims the confiscated Angevin/Aquitaine lands but also husband to his wife's sister, takes the Cross for Crusade.

EGYPT

Turan Shah orders the Egyptians to carry boats by camel overland to the Nile below Louis' camp and launch them to cut off his supply-route down the river to Damietta; Louis' ships are intercepted and his army starts to starve.

16 *March*. 32 Christian ships are lost in one ambush on the Nile.

Early April. Louis opens negotiations with Turan Shah and offers him Damietta in exchange for Jerusalem; he is ignored and told to surrender.

5 *April*. Louis commences the retreat down the east bank of the Nile, nobly ignoring advice to leave on a ship to avoid the risk of capture and insisting in sharing his men's hardships; his army does not demolish the bridge over the 'Bahr es-Saghir' built in the battle on 10 *February* so large numbers of Egyptians can cross at once and attack his men. The Crusaders are harassed all day, and that night Louis is taken ill.

6 *April*. The Crusaders struggle on, but eventually, near Sharinshah, it is agreed to send Philip of Montfort to Turan Shah to offer Damietta in return for safe passage to the coast. Louis is taken to a cottage to rest by his bodyguard commander Geoffrey of Sargines, but then a bribed Crusader officer, Marcel, rides along the French lines claiming that Louis has ordered surrender and the troops throw down their weapons. They are rounded up, and Louis is arrested and taken in chains to Mansurah with his senior commanders. The army is taken to the Moslem camp to be held to ransom or enslaved with all who cannot march being killed,

and Louis and his officers are lodged in houses in the town under guard. 300 prisoners are killed every day for a week, and Louis' ransom is set at a million bezants; Turan Shah tells him to surrender the Kingdom of Jerusalem but he argues successfully that legally only Conrad or Frederick can do that.

28 April. Louis and the other leaders are taken to Fariskur to be interned, while at Damietta Queen Margaret (who has just given birth to son John 'Tristan') and the civilian leadership try to raise the ransom. She has to plead with the Genoese and Pisans, who are planning to embark at once, not to take all the food in the city with them and pay £360,000 for it.

Margaret and the Court embark for Acre, and negotiations by the leadership remaining in Damietta with Turan Shah for the handover are extended beyond the planned date of *30 April*.

Dowager Sultana Shajr-al-Dur writes to her later husband's Mameluke military commanders complaining that Turan Shah is threatening to confiscate the property which Ayyub left her.

2 May. A victory banquet given by Turan Shah for his Mameluke commanders at Fariskur turns into an argument over his giving jobs in Egypt to his own loyalists from the 'Jazirah' at their expense. Encouraged by Shajar al-Dur's complaints, at the end of the banquet Baibars and the officers of the 'Bahrid' regiment attack Turan Shah who is wounded but escapes to a wooden tower on the bank of the Nile. The mutineers follow and set fire to it, and he runs out onto the mud offering to abdicate and return to the 'Jazirah'; Baibars chases after him and cuts him down.

Effective end of the Ayyubid rule of Egypt; an infant great-nephew of Ayyub's, Al-Ashraf Musa, is appointed nominal Sultan under the regency of the senior Mameluke general Aibek, who marries Shajar al-Dur.

Patriarch Robert arrives from Damietta to negotiate the handover to be arrested in violation of Turan Shah's safe-conduct, which the new regime declares they will not recognise, and some Mameluke officers brandish their swords in front of Louis and demand a reward for killing his enemy Turan Shah. His dignity and integrity impress them, and after a few days negotiations resume and the original terms are confirmed; Louis is to be freed on the payment of £400,000 (half the ransom) and surrender of Damietta, the rest to be paid once he is at Acre.

6 May. Geoffrey of Sargines hands over Damietta to the Egyptian army; Louis and the Mameluke leadership enter Damietta, and Louis hands over the £170,000 which he has at his headquarters while his allies make up the rest; the Templars have to be threatened into adding their galley full of treasure. Prince Alphonso, Louis' brother, is hostage until the rest of money is paid. That evening the Crusader fleet sails.

6 May. Arriving at Acre after storms, Louis proceeds to raise the rest of ransom. He holds a Council and refuses a request by letter from his mother and regent Queen Blanche to return quickly to France.

3 July. Louis announces that he is staying in the Kingdom, which needs his leadership, and takes those volunteers among his lords who wish to stay into his personal service; John of Joinville, the historian of the expedition, is among them; *mid-July.* The rest of the army, led by Louis' brothers Alphonso and Charles, sails for France leaving around 1,400 men with the King at Acre.

Louis refuses a demand from the leader of the 'Assassin' sect in the north Syrian mountains for money.

SYRIA

9 July. An-Nasir Yusuf enters Damascus to assert control now that his main Ayyubid rivals in Egypt are dead; he offers alliance to Louis against Egypt, but Louis refuses to commit himself.

Autumn. An-Nasir Yusuf marches on Egypt.

ITALY

Autumn. Frederick's troops recover Parma and Piacenza.

13 December. Death of Emperor Frederick II at Fiorentino, Apulia, aged 56; succeeded by son Conrad (now in Germany) in southern Italy and Sicily. Frederick's illegitimate son Manfred becomes 'bailio' (regent) of the 'Regno'.

1251 ITALY

Manfred and his German general Berthold of Hohenburg face revolt in central Italy (the 'Terra di Lavoro') over allegations that he is planning to seize the kingdom of Naples/Sicily from the absentee King Conrad; the Papal Legate Capaccio reasserts Papal military power over central Italy.

Pope Innocent plans to break up the 'Regno' and hand it over to autonomous nobles and city 'Communes', leaving no military rival to the Papacy in Italy; Manfred sends forces to replace the suspected governor of Sicily, Peter Ruffo.

SYRIA/EGYPT/PALESTINE

2 February. At the battle of Abbasa in the Nile delta, An-Nasir Yusuf is unable to break the Egyptian lines due to the coherence of the regent Aibeg's regiment of Mamelukes. Their Turkish compatriots in An-Nasir's army desert and he has to flee; Egypt secure.

Spring. An-Nasir sends a second embassy to Louis, and he sends John of Valenciennes to Egypt to warn Aibeg that he will go over to An-Nasir if the remaining Christian prisoners in Egyptian hands are not returned. Aibeg does so, and returns the Hospitaller Grand Master who was captured in 1244.

ITALY

May. Pope Innocent arrives at Genoa to rally his forces against the Hohenstaufen armies. His troops make progress in Piedmont, but the German/Sicilian army holds out to the East.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

1 July. Following a military intervention in Mongolia by an expedition sent by Batu of the 'Golden Horde', a new 'Kuriltai' of those princes allied to Batu elects Mongke (son of Tului, youngest son of Genghis Khan) as 'Great Khan'. The families of Tului's elder brothers Jagatai (who rule Transoxiana) and Ogodai refuse to recognise him.

PALESTINE/EGYPT/SYRIA

John of Valenciennes returns to Louis; 300 Moslem prisoners are handed over in return for 3,000 Crusader captives.

Louis sends Yves the Breton as envoy to An-Nasir Yusuf, and the alarmed Aibeg hastens to open negotiations with Louis, sends him an elephant and zebra as a goodwill gesture, and offers to return all remaining prisoners without ransom and recognise Frankish rule of Palestine as far as the Jordan in return for alliance. The Templars refuse to agree to the Egyptian alliance until Louis rebukes their leadership in public.

An-Nasir Yusuf sends an army to Gaza to make sure that Louis does not link up with the Mameluke army, and the French/Palestinian force waits in vain at Jaffa for an Egyptian army to arrive and join them. The campaign peters out.

CYPRUS

King Henry marries (3) Plaisance of Antioch, daughter of Bohemund V.

BALTIC

Baptism of Duke Mindaugas (Mindovg) of Lithuania, neighbour and ally of the Teutonic Knights against the pagan Prussians. This is a personal act and the majority of his realm remains pagan through the 13th century into the 14th century, thus justifying attacks by the Knights in the coming decades.

1252 ITALY

January. Conrad, refused passage across central Italy by the Papal forces, sails to Apulia to assume power in the 'Regno'; he opens war against rebels in the 'Terra di Lavoro', restricts Manfred's power and lands, and cancels Manfred's grants to his maternal kin, the Lancias.

SYRIA

January. Death of Bohemund V of Antioch, aged probably in late 40s. His son Bohemund VI succeeds, aged 15, and the latter's mother Lucienne is regent and gives offices to her Italian relatives to the annoyance of the barons. Bohemund VI asks the Pope for permission to come of age early so he can end her unpopular regency, and receives his legal authority to do so; he then visits Acre to be knighted by Louis.

PALESTINE/EGYPT/SYRIA

March. The remaining Crusader prisoners from 1250 are handed over to Louis. The Syrian army advances to Gaza to confront Aibeg's army, and the two remain in place without attacking for weeks while Louis refortifies Jaffa. The 'Assassins' send a more conciliatory embassy to Louis with gifts, and a treaty is agreed; Yves the Breton visits the 'Assassins' at Masyad.

ENGLAND

April. Henry III sets his date for leaving on Crusade as 24 *June* 1256.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

Mongke appoints his younger brother Hulagu as viceroy of Persia, with a mandate to deal with the 'Assassins' at their Persian headquarters (Alamut) and with the Caliph at Baghdad. He sends his Nestorian Christian general Kitbugha ahead to Azerbaijan to prepare for the wars.

SPAIN

30 *May.* Death of Ferdinand III, king of Castile since 1217 and of Leon since 1230, aged 53, at Seville; succeeded by his son by Elizabeth of Hohenstaufen (Frederick II's first cousin), Alfonso X, aged 30. Alfonso has a claim on the Hohenstaufen lands and the Empire to, being grandson of Philip of Swabia (d. 1208).

FRANCE

November. Death of Louis' mother and regent, Queen Blanche.

ITALY

November. The anti-Papal 'Ghibbelines' secure Rome with the election of Brancalcione degli Andalò as Senator.

1253 | CYPRUS

18 January. Death of King Henry; succeeded by 1-year-old son by Plaisance, Hugh II. The Queen is regent.

NICAEA/EPIRUS

Vatatzes' envoy George Acropolites delivers treaty to Michael II to sign confirming new frontier, and Theodore Angelus Ducas is handed over and deported to Anatolia where he soon dies (probably aged over 80).

SYRIA/CALIPHATE

An-Nasir Yusuf asks Caliph Al-Mutasim to mediate between him and Sultan Aibeg of Egypt.

LATIN EMPIRE

February. Pope appoints his chaplain Pantaleone Giustiniani, son of Philip Giustiniani the Venetian Lord of Ceos and Seriphos, Patriarch.

PALESTINE/TREBIZOND/MONGOL DOMINIONS

Emperor Manuel of Trebizond, weaker rival of Nicaean rulers as Byzantine claimant to Anatoian dominions, sends envoys to Louis IX at Sidon for marriage-alliance; Louis replies that he should support Baldwin against Nicaea.

Louis hears that Batu's son Sartaq, one of the junior princes of the 'Golden Horde', has converted to Christianity. He sends an embassy under the Dominican friars William of Rubruck and Bartholomew of Cremona to Serai to ask him for military aid. Louis is offered safe-conduct to visit Jerusalem, but accepts barons' advice to follow the honourable precedent of King Richard in 1192 who refused to enter (or even see) it if he could not also conquer it for Christendom. If Louis gives up on entering the city as a conqueror and is content to do so as a pilgrim on Moslem sufferance, will other kings in future follow his precedent?

April. An-Nasir Yusuf and Aibeg come to terms, with Aibeg being recognised as ruler of Egypt and of Palestine as far north as Galilee.

An-Nasir Yusuf withdraws his army from Gaza, and en route back to Damascus it passes through the Kingdom and sacks Sidon with thousands of inhabitants being killed; Louis marches as far east as Banyas.

Louis plans an aborted march to Nablus/Samaria, but the danger of being caught by a superior Moslem force is too great; he sends a mixed force of French (including Geoffrey of Sargines and the Crusade's chronicler

Joinville) and locals (Philip of Montfort, lord of Tyre, and Templars) to raid Caesarea Philippi, where the initial penetration of the town is driven out but the second battalion to arrive, en route to attack the nearby hilltop castle, retakes it. The Crusaders probe the castle's defences but are showered with rocks from above and have to retreat under cover of burning scrubland.

July. Arrival of William of Rubruck's Papal embassy at Batu's capital, Serai; he is sent on to Karakorum.

BALTIC

Conversion and (6 *July*) coronation of King Mindaugas of Lithuania, following a 1251 treaty with his neighbours the Livonian Order; by the terms of this he agrees to transfer territory to the Teutonic and Livonian Orders, and the latter are able to found a new major castle at Memel.

ITALY

December. Death of the potential Papal candidate to replace Conrad, the Hohenstaufen prince Henry; the Pope blames it on poison by Manfred.

1254 BALTIC

German-led Crusade to Prussia, organised under Papal auspices to help the Teutonic Knights deal with strong resistance by the local pagans. It is assisted by King Premysl Ottakar of Bohemia. Foundation of 'Konigsberg' ('King's Town') as fortress-town of the Knights.

PALESTINE

Louis organises a truce of two years, six months, and forty days with An-Nasir Yusuf at Damascus, taking effect on 21 *February*.

SYRIA

Louis arranges the marriage of the young Bohemund VI of Antioch to Sibylla, daughter of King Hethoum of Armenia.

ENGLAND

March. Henry III decides not to go on Crusade, and sends an embassy to Pope Innocent suggesting that his younger son Edmund should take over the Kingdom of Sicily/Naples from the Hohenstaufen as a reliable Papal ally, Innocent agrees and (*May*) in return allows Henry to postpone his Crusade.

PALESTINE

24 April. Louis sails from Acre for France, leaving Geoffrey of Sargines as his representative and Seneschal of the Kingdom; John Ibelin of Jaffa resigns as bailli and is succeeded by his cousin John of Arsuf.

Louis is nearly wrecked in a storm off Cyprus, but Queen Margaret prays to Saint Nicholas and the storm abates.

ITALY

21 May. Death of Conrad, at Lavello in Apulia, aged 26; he leaves the Kingdom of Naples and Sicily to his 2-year-old son by Elizabeth of Bavaria, Conradin, with Berthold as regent of Apulia and Ruffo as regent of Sicily and the Pope as their ‘protector’. However the Papacy reclaims rule of southern Italy and Sicily as a revolt breaks out in Sicilian towns and the citizens proclaim independent ‘Communes’, and advances to Anagni with troops. Conradin remains with his mother in Germany.

PALESTINE

21 May. Conradin becomes titular King of Jerusalem.

ITALY

Berthold sends Manfred to negotiate with the Pope, but he agrees to accept the Pope as regent of the Kingdom until Conradin is of age; Berthold refuses to accept this but Manfred returns and Berthold has to resign. Manfred becomes ‘bailio’ of the ‘Regno’ but in *August* faces the arrival of a Papal army in Apulia, paid for by Henry III of England.

FRANCE

July. Louis and his company arrive in Provence en route back to Paris.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

August. William of Rubruck ends visit to Karakorum, shortly before the arrival of King Hethoum of Armenia.

NICAEA

Nicaean embassy to Rome – Vatatzes offers to accept Papal rulings on theology and convene Eastern Church Council on ‘filioque’ if Pope recognises Patriarchate of Nicaea not that of Constantinople and returns capital to rightful owners.

Innocent replies that he cannot summon Baldwin to judgement but if Greek Church submits he will use his ‘good offices’ on theological dispute

and accept Patriarchate of Nicaea to rule both Greek and Latin churches in Constantinople if recaptured.

September. John Vatatzes has a serious epileptic fit and journeys from Nicaea to Nymphaeum as son Theodore is at Philadelphia negotiating with Seljuks.

ITALY

6 October. Pope Innocent and his army cross the River Garigliano into Apulia. Manfred comes to his camp to submit to head off an invasion and leads his suzerain's horse, but Innocent sends his representatives around the Kingdom administering oaths to himself. Innocent offers Manfred's lands in Calabria to governor Ruffo of Sicily, and when Manfred arrives at Teano to find his lands at Monte Gargano being confiscated he is furious. He rides to complain to Innocent, but is ambushed by the new owner of Monte Gargano who he kills in self-defence and decides on revolt.

Late October. Manfred seizes the treasury of the 'Regno' at Lucera, the garrison-town of Frederick II's 'Saracen' regiment who join him in revolt.

27 October. Innocent, ill, enters Naples.

NICAEA

3 November. John dies at Nymphaeum, aged probably 62/63.

Theodore II succeeds, aged 32, and uses surname 'Lascaris' not Vatatzes as he stresses his descent through mother from Imperial line in Constantinople; a serious epileptic and talented but unstable.

25 December. Theodore crowned at Nicaea, and his chief minister is low-born boyhood friend George Muzalon, new 'Grand Domestic', amidst jealousy of nobles; Theodore's uncles Manuel and Michael Lascaris restored to favour.

ITALY

2 December. Manfred, reinforced by deserters from Berthold's now pro-Papal army, defeats the Pope's army near Foggia; he secures Apulia and the Papal general De Fieschi (at Troia) faces mutiny from unpaid troops and retreats.

7 December. Death of Innocent IV at Naples.

12 December. Rinaldo Conti, nephew of Gregory IX, elected Pope (Alexander IV). Southern Italy seized in revolt by Manfred and Ruffo in Sicily recognises his authority.

1255 | **MOREA**

War between William of Villehardouin and the ‘tetrarchs’, lords of Euboea, over his claim to lands owing to late wife Caterina della Carceri; Guy de la Roche and the Lords of Salona and Boudounitsa join his enemies.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

Aibeg makes ten-year truce with the Kingdom.

William of Rubruck’s Papal mission to Karakorum arrives back at Acre.

ITALY/ENGLAND

May. Pope Alexander transfers the location of Henry III’s promised 1256 Crusade from the Holy Land to Sicily, to dispossess Manfred.

Manfred drives the suspected pro-Papal Ruffo out of southern Italy; Ruffo loses control of Sicily to revolt by autonomist ‘Communes’ in the towns. Manfred sends recognition of Conradin as his King to the latter’s uncle and guardian in Germany, Lewis of Bavaria.

A Papal army under Cardinal Octavian invades Apulia, but is deserted by Berthold; Octavian attacks Manfred in Lucera but is blockaded at Foggia and (*September*) has to give up and recognise him as the Papal regent of southern Italy for Conradin. The Pope is ceded Sicily, which is out of Manfred’s control anyway.

October. The Bishop of Bologna invests Prince Edmund of England as Papal-recognised King of Sicily.

PALESTINE

December. Pope Alexander appoints a French shoemaker’s son, James Pantaleon, as Patriarch of Jerusalem.

1256 | **NICAEA/EPIRUS**

Papal envoy Constantine, Bishop of Orvieto, sent to Nicaea.

PERSIA/IRAQ

January. Hulagu crosses the Oxus from Samarcand to Khorasan, and proceeds towards the ‘Assassin’ heartland with a huge siege-train. His Nestorian wife, Dokuz Khatun, is a hopeful sign for the Christian potentates of Outremer of his hostility to the Moslem powers.

Summer. Hulagu besieges and capture the ‘Assassin’ castles in the Elburz mountains, centred on Alamut. The ‘Jagatai Khanate’ princes of

Transoxiana and Batu's 'Golden Horde' are forced to assist him on Mongke's orders.

PALESTINE

January. John of Ibelin, lord of Jaffa, returns from a period in Cyprus to take over as bailli at Acre from his cousin John of Arsuf; he and Seneschal Geoffrey of Sargimes raid into Moslem Galilee to capture a large caravan of camels.

Janauary/February. A new dispute between the Venetian and Genoese communities in Acre over the boundaries of their quarters, which are separated by the hill of Montjoie; it becomes the 'War of St. Sabbas', named after the Greek Orthodox monastery of St. Sabbas on the hill which Venice owned but which is now seized by Genoa. After Venice protests at an overnight occupation of the monastery the Genoese raid their quarter next morning and loot property, joined by the Pisans; eventually the two parties accept mediation.

During the war, Philip of Montfort takes the opportunity to turn the Venetians out of their quarter at Tyre.

March. The Mameluke (Egyptian) governor of Jerusalem sets out with expedition to punish the Christians but is defeated in a skirmish and retires.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

Death of Batu, Khan of the 'Golden Horde' (Volga valley and Ukraine steppe); succeeded by son Sartaq.

EGYPT

? Aibeg sends Baibars and other over-powerful officers to take charge at Damascus and lessen the risk of a coup against him in Cairo.

PALESTINE

The Venice/Genoa dispute flares up again as Genoa fails to mediate in the Tyre dispute and is blamed by Venice for encouraging Philip of Montfort; the Venetian consul at Acre, Marco Guistiniani, sets up an anti-Tyre coalition involving John of Arsuf the bailli (who fears that Philip wants to declare Tyre independent of the weakening Kingdom), John of Arsuf (who was nearly assassinated by the Genoese), the jealous Pisans, and the Marseille merchants at Acre; Marseilles' Catalan merchant rivals back Genoa. The Templars and Teutonic Knights back the Venetians; the Hospitallers back Genoa.

The government at Acre is powerless to stop the Genoese overrunning the Pisan quarter to seize possession of the inner harbour, but the arriving Venetian admiral Lorenzo Tiepolo breaks the chain that the Genoese have put up over the harbour-entrance and lands his men on the quays to drive the Genoese back into their quarter. Later the Venetians retake the Monastery of St. Sabbas and blockade the Genoese quarter.

SELJUK SULTANATE

Rukn-al-Din arrives at Mongol 'Ilkhan' Hulagu's camp in Persia to submit and is recognised as Sultan and sent to join the invaders in his brother's lands; Izz-ed-Din and his Turcoman and Nicaean allies are defeated in battle by the Mongol general Baichu and the vanquished Sultan flees; as Izz-ed-Din hides with Turcomans at Laodicea Baiju installs his brother in Konya/Iconium with viceroy ('pervane') Muin-al-Din Sulaiman.

ITALY

Manfred has his rival Ruffo murdered, and suppresses revolt in southern Italy.

PERSIA

December. The Master of the 'Assassin' Order, Rukn al-Din Khursay, surrenders to Hulagu as Alamut is besieged; his officers hold out in the castle but it is stormed. End of 'Assassin' power except in northern Syria.

1257 ENGLAND

March. Papal embassy arrives in England to confirm the offer of the throne of Sicily to Prince Edmund; *16 March* Edmund is presented to the magnates in Apulian dress; *2 April* the archbishop of Messina addresses the English leadership at Westminster Abbey and tells them to pay up for the campaign, and £57,000 offered.

EGYPT

Aibeg quarrels with Sultana Shajar al-Durr, who is ruling as his legal equal – the first female ruler of Egypt since Cleopatra and the only female Islamic ruler outside isolated Yemen (12th century) and Delhi (1240s Sultana Radiyya).

15 April. Shajar al-Durr gets Aibeg's eunuchs to murder him in the bath; the Mameluke generals quarrel over whether she was justified, and decide that she is a threat to them; *2 May* Shajar al-Durr is executed and Aibeg's 15-year-old son Nur al-Din Ali is made puppet Sultan for a cabal of generals.

PERSIA/SELJUK SULTANATE

Baiju returns to Persia, and *May* while Rukn-al-Din and Sulaiman are campaigning in north-east Izz-ed-Din is restored to Konya by Nicaean troops; Turcomans and Kurds also revolt against Mongol rule.

ITALY/NICAEA

Manfred of Naples sends fleet to conquer north Epirot coast which the Nicaeans have recently occupied from rule by Michael II of Epirus; Nicaeans surrender Dyrrachium and Avlona.

Theodore sends Bishop of Orvieto home with no advance in talks.

ENGLAND

April. Henry III persuades the Papal envoy Roland Masson that the Pope's financial demands for the Sicilian campaign are too high as his barons are refusing to pay up for his foreign wars, with his brother-in-law Simon de Montfort (ex-Crusader) leading the resistance. De Montfort and others go to Rome to appeal for lower payment.

ITALY

Manfred recovers control of rebel areas of Sicily.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/CALIPHATE/SELJUK SULTANATE

Mongke orders Rukn al-Din Khursay, the 'Assassin' leader, to return from Karakorum to Persia to see that his remaining fortresses, Girdkuh and Lembeser, surrender. While he is en route Mongke orders him and his family to be executed, and instructs Hulagu to round up and kill all 'Assassins'; the Ismaili 'heresy' is to be exterminated. The 'Assassin' library at Alamut is examined by Hulagu's Moslem chamberlain Juveni and removed to the Mongol court at Karakorum, but the books identified as 'heretical' are burnt.

Hulagu is sent to Iraq to confront Abbasid Caliph al-Mutasim and his large but ineffective army (120,000 cavalry) and Baichu is ordered to take his main army from the Seljuk lands to join the campaign.

? Al-Mutasim rejects an order by Hulagu to accept Mongol suzerainty.

May. Izz ed-Din returns to Iconium/Konya with Nicaean aid after Baichu has left for Iraq, while Rukn al-Din and Sulaiman are away in north-east Anatolia relieving rebel siege of Tokat; the Ortoqids of Mardin and the Ayyubids of Mayyafariiqin join in the rebellion against the Seljuk/Mongol government to take over Amida.

BULGARIA

Michael Asen murdered in Trnovo by conspirators, led by cousin Kaliman (II) who seizes throne and marries widow; the latter's father, Serb prince Rostislav, invades to take Trnovo, kill Kaliman, and install Michael's distant cousin Constantine Tichomir as King.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Uneasy division of Sultanate between Izz-ed-Din, at Konya, and Mongol-supported Rukn-al-Din, at Malatya; continuing disturbances in East.

ITALY/ENGLAND

October. Pope Alexander sacks his representative in England, Masson, for being too conciliatory over the financial cost of the Sicilian war; he sends Henry III an envoy (Arlotus) ordering him to have troops in Sicily by *March 1259* or else.

IRAQ/CALIPHATE

Late. Hulagu leaves Hamadan to start invasion of Baghdad, and Baichu advances south-east from Mosul; Kitbugha attacks west from Kuzestan and Hulagu himself is to the latter's north. The Caliph's army under his secretary

Aibeg marches against Hulagu but then turns west against Baichu as the latter crosses the Tigris.

1258 IRAQ/CALIPHATE

Aibeg reaches Anbar, 30 miles from Baghdad; *11 January* Baichu retreats to lure him across low-lying plain and has the dykes cut behind him.

12 January. Baichu attacks Aibeg and drives his army back into the floods; they are slaughtered and Aibeg flees.

18 January. Hulagu starts the siege of Baghdad. He concentrates on the weaker walls protecting the newer districts east of the Tigris, and refuses to see an embassy by the vizier and the Nestorian Patriarch. The Mongols' Chinese siege-engines break down the walls of Baghdad.

10 February. The Mongols storm Baghdad and start ruthless sack of the Abbasid capital, centre of government for the Caliphate since 762; the Caliph al-Mutasim and his leading officials surrender and the Caliph's Christian wife Dokuz Khatun persuades Hulagu to spare the Christian community, but around 80,000 Moslems are massacred.

15 February. Hulagu enters Baghdad to take over the palace and order the Caliph to reveal the location of his hidden treasures; Al-Mutasim and his family are massacred. The Nestorian Patriarch is given a palace and the Christian community are treated well.

March. Hulagu leaves for Hamadan and sends a convoy of loot to Karakorum. He sets up his headquarters (palatial camp) at Shaha on the banks of Lake Urmia in Azerbaijan.

The Sharif of Mecca, guardian of the Islamic ‘Holy Places’, recognises the Hafsids at Tunis (Abu Abdallah) as the new Caliph; he takes the title of ‘Al-Mustansir’. The Mameluke regime in Egypt does not back this appointment.

CYPRUS/PALESTINE

February. Queen Plaisance of Cyprus takes her son Hugh II to Tripoli to hold talks with the government of the Kingdom of Jerusalem and its Italian communities about the ‘War of St. Sabbas’; backed by her brother Bohemund VI of Antioch, she proposes that Hugh be recognised as heir to and effectively ‘stand-in’ for the absentee Conradin, with herself as Regent of the Kingdom. They march on Acre and summon the ‘High Court’ there with Templar and Teutonic Knights acquiescing, but the Hospitallers hold out for the claim that nothing can be agreed without Conradin’s acceptance. A majority vote however accepts Plaisance as Regent, and John of Arsuf is confirmed as bailli.

Hugh Revel succeeds William de Chateauneuf as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

Patriarch James Pantaleone of Jerusalem persuades the Pope to summon representatives of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa to Viterbo to mediate in the ‘War of St. Sabbas’.

June. Genoa sends a new squadron to the Levant to assist its ships at Tyre.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Early. Seljuk representatives at Mongol court at Karakorum achieve ‘Great Khan’ Mongke’s agreement to division of Sultanate between Izz-ed-Din at Konya and Rukn-al-Din at Kayseri.

EPIRUS

Manfred sends Admiral Philip Chinardo to command at Dyrrachium.

MOREA/EPIRUS

Defeated in Euboea, William of Villehardouin, lord of the Morea, marches on Thebes and *May/June* defeats its lords and allies Guy de la Roche,

Pallavicini, and d'Autremencourt at battle of Karydi; he besieges them in Cadmeia citadel until they agree to his terms on Euboean lands.

Michael II of Epirus sends envoys to arrange alliance, daughter Anna Angelina marrying Villehardouin with dowry of 60,000 'hyperpera' and some Thessalian castles.

PALESTINE

23 June. Genoese squadron under Della Turca arrives at Tyre to collect local Genoese support for attack on the Venetians at Acre; Philip of Montfort sends troops to assist them on land. The Venetian commander Tiepolo readies his flotilla at Acre, aided by Pisans.

24 June. The Venetians and Pisans win naval clash against Genoa off Acre; the Genoese lose 24 ships and retire to Tyre but are not pursued at sea due to storm. The militia of Acre defeats Philip of Montfort's army, which is chased back to Tyre.

July. Venetian, Genoese, and Pisan envoys sail from Italy to Palestine to implement the Papal-sponsored truce; Genoa has to accept the loss of its quarter in Acre.

ITALY

10 August. Manfred crowned King of Sicily at Palermo, cutting out rights of late King Conrad's son Conradin who is rumoured dead in Germany.

NICAEA

Theodore II's epilepsy becomes critical and *late August* he dies aged 36 at Nymphaeum, leaving George Muzalon as regent for 7-year-old son John IV assisted by brother Andronicus; Theodore buried at Sosandra monastery and Muzalon, aware of unpopularity, offers his resignation to an assembly of civil and ecclesiastical leaders but is assured by Theodore's cousin and general Michael Palaeologus that he is acceptable.

Early September. At memorial service at Sosandra nine days after Theodore's death, Western mercenaries demonstrate outside church demanding to see John IV and on doing so charge into the church and kill Muzalon's secretary Theophylact who is sent out to investigate; Muzalon, Andronicus, and a brother are dragged out of hiding-places and butchered while Michael Palaeologus, organizer of murder, physically restrains Muzalon's wife, his sister Eulogia's daughter Irene.

Nobles quarrel over regency, but Palaeologus as Grand Constable organizes demonstrations by his mercenaries and persuades Patriarch Arsenius that a strong ruler is needed; he is appointed Grand Duke (admiral) and John's guardian, and controls treasury at Magnesia so he can distribute bribes to win over doubters to his side.

SYRIA

Autumn. Bohemund VI of Antioch faces revolt by Bertrand Embriaco of Jebail and his own cousin John of Botrun; he is besieged in Tripoli by an army of rebels and wounded in a sortie by Bertrand, but the rebels retire inland as the Templars arrive to assist the Prince. Later Bertrand is murdered in an ambush in orchard by armed rustics, and the other rebels retire to Jebail.

EPIRUS/MOREA

September. Treaty between Michael II and Villehardouin signed, and latter marries Anna at Patras; honeymoon at Mistra, mountain-top castle on ridge above Sparta; later Michael arrives to sign military alliance against Nicaea.

NICAEA

September. Michael Palaeologus' brother John 'Grand Domestic', and sent to Thessalonica as Michael II's bastard son John, new ruler of Thessaly, and Vlachs open hostilities.

October/November. Michael Palaeologus raised on shield as Michael VIII at Magnesia, and promises Arsenius to resign once John IV of age; *25 December* he and wife Theodora are crowned by Arsenius and John IV receives only a chaplet of pearls.

ENGLAND/ITALY

18 December. The Pope has to cancel the grant of Sicily to Prince Edmund, after Henry III is forcibly subjected to baronial control by a committee of rebel lords led by Simon de Montfort and his excessive expenditure and foreign ambitions (e.g. Sicily) are denounced.

1259 NICAEA/EPIRUS/ITALY

Michael II offers daughter Helena to the widowed Manfred in return for troops to fight the threat of Nicaean attack. Stephen of Serbia sends 600 archers, Béla IV of Hungary 1,500 cavalry, and Bulgaria and Turcomans send troops to Nicaea, and Duke of Carinthia brings 300 knights to Nicaea; *March* 2,000 Cumans join Nicaean military rendez-vous at Adrianople while Michael II waits at Castoria but is defeated in surprise attack by John Palaeologus, now 'Sebastocrator', and flees to Avlona on coast to await Sicilians.

PALESTINE

April. Arrival of Papal legate, Thomas Agni of Letino, Bishop of Bethlehem (in absentia), to mediate between Venice and Genoa at Acre.

1 May. On death of John of Arsuf, Regent Queen Plaisance arrives at Acre and appoints Geoffrey of Sargines as bailli. John is succeeded in Arsuf by his son Balian.

NICAEA/EPIRUS

Arsenius resigns Patriarchate due to opposition to Palaeologus; John Palaeologus takes Ochrid and Berat; *May* Manfred's envoys arrive at Avlona to collect Helena who is married to Manfred at Trani; 2 *June* Villehardouin and the Moreans cross Gulf of Corinth to Naupactus, and join Athenian and Theban lords at Lamia; they advance to Thessaly as 400 Sicilian cavalry join Michael II to besiege Berat.

Late June. John Palaeologus and the main Nicaean army from Adrianople wait at Pelagonia as Michael II links up with his son John of Thessaly and the Frankish lords; John Palaeologus gets peasants to burn scrub and raise dust to present image of larger Nicaean force, and as William of Villehardouin and Michael II lose nerve John of Thessaly quarrels with Frankish lords, is called a low-born bastard by William, and leaves the army with his men; he allies secretly with John Palaeologus.

Michael II and his son Nicephorus withdraw too at night; next day William is persuaded he can still win and battle of Pelagonia commences with Frankish charge; Carinthian knights rout opposition though their Duke is killed, and Cumans shower arrows onto Franks who are heavily defeated with leaders captured; William is found hiding in haystack near Castoria in disguise and recognised by his prominent teeth.

The prisoners are sent to Michael VIII, and his new 'Grand Domestic' Alexius Strategopulus reaches Naupactus; Nicaeans enter Arta as Michael II flees his capital to Orsini relatives on Cephallonia.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

11 *August.* Death of 'Great Khan' Mongke at a siege in China; his younger brother Kubilai, with the army on the campaign, claims the Mongol leadership but is defied by their youngest brother Ariqboqa who is in control of Karakorum with support on the Mongolian and Turkestan steppes.

IRAQ/PERSIA

Hulagu receives 'atabeg' Badr ad-Din Lulu of Mosul's submission, and the two Seljuk Sultan brothers arrive to have the division of the Sultanate confirmed. An-Nasir Yusuf of Syria sends his son Al-Aziz to pay homage but this does not deflect Hulagu from his intention to invade the region.

September. Hulagu marches up the Euphrates from Baghdad, heading for Syria, with Kitbugha commanding the Mongol vanguard; he crosses the Euphrates at Birejik and sacks Sinjar.

Hulagu besieges Mayyafariqin. His ultimate objective is expected to be Egypt.

NICAEA/EPIRUS

Autumn. After John Palaeologus' departure for Levadia in Central Greece, John of Thessaly goes to see his refugee father and persuades him to return as Nicaean occupiers are unpopular; Michael reoccupies Arta and sends Nicephorus to relieve siege of Ioannina and then obtain more aid from Manfred.

AFRICA

Following the end of the Abbasid Caliphate, Hafsid Emir Abu Abdallah Mohammed of Tunis (acceded 1249) proclaims himself Caliph.

EGYPT

December. The young and feeble Sultan Nur ad'Din Ali is deposed by his chief general, the Mameluke commander Qutuz; Qutuz becomes sultan and recalls the senior officers who were exiled to Damascus, among them Baibars.

1260 ITALY/BALTIC

January. Pope Alexander issues a Bull for a Crusade in the Baltic against the 'rebel' Samogitians, who are refusing to accept their ex-overlord King Mindaugas of Lithuania's transfer of their territory to the control of the Livonian Order; a two-year truce in 1259 has ended abruptly with a Samogitian attack (en route back from a raid on Courland) on the Knights, in which 33 of the latter were killed, and the Knights have a major campaign inland from Memel planned.

SYRIA

Early. Mayyafariqin is stormed with local Iraqi Christians and Georgians in the vanguard of the Mongol assault, and the Ayyubid ruler Al-Kamil is killed.

18 January. While the siege of Mayyafariqin, is still underway, Hulagu's main army arrives outside the walls of Aleppo. An-Nasir Yusuf (lord of Aleppo and Damascus) offers his submission to Qutuz in return for Mameluke aid but receives no troops.

Mongol envoys are sent to Qutuz to order him to pay tribute but are executed – a declaration of war.

An-Nasir Yusuf gathers his army with his cousins from the minor Ayyubid principalities of Hama and Kerak, but some Turkish officers plot against him with one of his brothers and on being discovered they flee to Egypt; he does not advance to rescue Aleppo lest he lose Damascus to the Mamelukes.

24 January. The Mongols storm the walls of Aleppo, and the main city of northern Syria is sacked and the Moslem population are put to the sword; the Christians are spared except by mistake. Yusuf's uncle Turan Shah holds out in the well-fortified citadel.

February. Hama sends a delegation to Hulagu with the keys of the city.

Late February. Turan Shah surrenders the citadel of Aleppo in return for safe conduct for his garrison. An Ayyubid prince from Homs, Al-Ashraf, is installed as the Mongol governor under Mongol military supervision, but the treasury is looted.

The frontier castle of Harenc refuses to surrender unless a Moslem guarantees Hulagu's offer or safe conduct in return for submission; it is stormed and the garrison are massacred.

Bohemund VI and the (Catholic) Patriarch of Antioch arrive at their frontier to submit to Hulagu as he reaches it, and he returns Lattakieh/Laodicea but requires the Patriarch to hand over Antiochene churches to the Greek Orthodox community under Patriarch Euthymius.

Hethoum of Armenia arrives at Hulagu's camp; An-Nasir Yusuf flees Damascus to throw himself on the Mamelukes' mercy but changes his mind, head back north, and is captured by the Mongol advance-troops; the citizens of Damascus send embassy with the city's keys to Hulagu.

1 March. Bohemund VI and Hethoum accompany Kitbugha as the Mongol advance-guard enters Damascus – the only time that a Crusader ruler enters a submissive Syrian Moslem capital is by Mongol permission.

The citadel holds out (until *6 April*).

PALESTINE/SYRIA

May. Mongol troops enter Nablus and Gaza; the Kingdom of Jerusalem ignores orders to submit despite the opinion of the majority of the barons and appeals to King Louis IX's brother Charles of Anjou to come to their aid.

Julian of Sidon leads a raid into the Buqaia, now ruled by the Mongols, and kills Kitbugha's nephew who has been sent to intercept him; Kitbugha sends a detachment to storm Sidon, but although the town is sacked the citadel holds out and is reinforced by a Genoese flotilla.

Hethoum of Armenia. Julian's father-in-law, intercedes with Kitbugha for him and claims he was forced to attack by his creditors the Templars; as Julian is blamed for the sack of Sidon and has run out of money to defend it he has to accept Templar foreclosing on his lands and Templar military command of Sidon and Beaufort Castle.

John of Ibelin, lord of Beirut, and the Templars raid Galilee but are driven off by Mongol troops.

ITALY

25 May. Pope Alexander calls for a Crusade against the Mongols (Papal Bull 'Audiat Orbis') and excommunicates Bohemund VI of Antioch for allying himself with them.

NICAEA/LATIN EMPIRE/EPIRUS

May. After the senior 'Latin Empire' baron Anseau of Cahieu, captured at Pelagonia, has offered to arrange opening of a gate at Constantinople, Michael VIII returns to Thrace to take Selymbria and then blockade the city.

A would-be traitor turns up to tell him that Baldwin is suspicious and has taken his keys to gate so Michael resorts to unsuccessful siege; *September* he agrees one-year truce with Baldwin and retires.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

Spring. Ariqboqa holds an election 'Kurilitai' at Karakorum and has himself elected 'Great Khan', but Kubilai refuses to attend due to fear of treachery and holds a rival 'Kuriltai' in China which elects him; civil war follows, with Kubilai in command of China and Ariqboqa in command of the western steppes.

SPAIN/AFRICA

King Alfonso X of Castile's new fleet of 37 ships, intended to carry the 'Reconquista' to Africa, sacks but fails to hold onto Sale on the Algerian coast. The king is furious at the retreat.

BALTIC

13 July. Battle of Durbe (near Liepaja, Latvia): a large force of the Livonian Order, led by their Master, Burchard von Hornhausen, their Teutonic Knights allies from Prussia, and local Estonian tribesmen are heavily defeated by the rebel Samogitians while intercepting their current raid on Courland. Burchard and around 150 knights are killed, and a major revolt against the two merged Orders in east Prussia follows.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

26 July. Qutuz's army invades Palestine and overwhelms the Mongol garrison under Baidar at Gaza. Some 'Khwarizmian' survivors and the Ayyubids of Kerak join his army as it advances, and he sends envoys to Acre for help. Most barons are sympathetic, but Teutonic Knights' Grand Master, Anno of Sangerhausen, warns that if the Mamelukes win they could become so confident that they attack the Kingdom next. The Mamelukes are offered safe passage and supplies but no troops, and in Damascus indignant Moslems attack the Christian community.

August. Qutuz arrives outside Acre, and some emirs are allowed in as visitors as supplies are delivered; among the tourists is Baibars, who does some military reconnaissance of the defences and unsuccessfully suggests to the Sultan that he launch a surprise attack.

Kitbugha, besieging Baalbek, advances south to cross the Jordan; Qutuz advances east via Nazareth.

2 September. Qutuz arrives at Ain Jalut, the 'Pool (or 'Springs') of Goliath'.

3 September. The Mongols arrive to attack the Mamelukes but due to a lack of local scouts are unaware of the exact position of their army. Qutuz conceals his main army in the hills, and sends out a small advance-force under Baibars to lure the Mongols on. The latter see Baibars' force and attack them; they flee and lure the Mongols into a trap where the rest of the Mameluke army surrounds them. The Mongols nearly smash through the Egyptian lines, but Qutuz rallies his troops and the Mongols are virtually annihilated at the 'Battle of Ain Jalut'; Kitbugha is captured and executed.

Control of southern Syria passes to the Mamelukes; *8 September* Qutuz enters Damascus. The Ayyubids are restored to the rule of Hama, and Al-Ashraf of Homs surrenders and is restored to the rule of Homs as the Mongol army flees northwards.

Hulagu retires from Aleppo into Iraq to position himself for the civil war between his brothers Kubilai and Ariqboqa; his protégés Izz-ed-Din and Rukn-al-Din the Seljuk leave his army to return home.

October. The Mameluke army enters Aleppo.

Qutuz returns to Egypt, and denies Baibars the governorship of Aleppo.

23 October. During a hunt in the Nile Delta, Baibars and his friends surround the Sultan and one seizes his hands from in front before Baibars stabs him in the back. The murderers return to the camp, where the army chief-of-staff Aqtai asks them who did the killing and when Baibars admits it seats him on the throne.

Baibars is accepted as Sultan of Egypt, but in Damascus Emir Sinjar al-Halabi seizes power.

Late? A Mongol army returns from Iraq to besiege Aleppo. Baibars heads for Syria to put down his rivals.

NICAEA

Late. Genoese ‘Captain of People’ sends envoys William Visconti and Guarnerio Giudice to Michael VIII to conclude alliance; Michael sends envoys to Constantine Tichomir.

1261 PALESTINE

January. The ‘High Court’ adjudicates settlement between Venice/Pisa and Genoa over their quarters at Acre; the Genoese are to be based at Tyre and the other Italian communities at Acre. The Italians soon resume skirmishes.

SYRIA

17 January. Baibars defeats Sinjar outside Damascus; it is besieged and captured and annexed to the Mameluke state. The Ayyubid Emir of Kerak is invited to visit Baibars and is murdered and his lands are annexed; the Emir of Hama is allowed to remain as a Mameluke vassal.

NICAEA

13 March. Michael VIII and Visconti and Giudice sign Treaty of Nymphaeum – permanent alliance of Nicaea and Genoa against Venice; 50 Genoese ships hired; Genoese quarters at principal Nicaean ports, including Constantinople at reconquest, under own jurisdiction; Genoese assist Nicaean cities’ defence and Nicaeans exclude Genoese enemies from their waters.

PALESTINE

April. Balian of Arsuf leases it to the Hospitallers as he is unable to mount adequate defence.

EGYPT

‘Al-Mustansir’, an alleged Abbasid prince living in Syria, is brought to Cairo by Baibars for installation as his puppet Caliph; this diplomatic and religious coup implies that the Sunni Moslem community should pay homage to the Mamelukes as the Caliph’s protectors (with the line continuing until 1517), but in western north Africa the Hafsids are still recognised as Caliphs.

ITALY

25 May. Death of Pope Alexander.

LATIN EMPIRE/BYZANTIUM

Michael sends envoys to Genoa; 10 July Genoa ratifies treaty.

Constantinopolitan Greek residents visit Michael's general; Strategopulus, with army at Rhegium near city, after the Venetian fleet under 'Podesta' Marco Gradenigo sails off to attack Daphnusia island near Heraclea in Black Sea; they offer secret way into city while it is virtually undefended.

24–25 July. At night Strategopulus' troops enter city, either along disused aqueduct or through Gate of Fountain; they spread out around city and Baldwin II abandons Blachernae Palace to flee to Boucoleon leaving behind his crown and sword; Italian houses near Golden Horn fired to discourage Venetians who return, accept the city is lost, and collect Baldwin and other refugees before sailing for Euboea; Strategopulus takes over city and forbids assemblies during day and imposes curfew but remaining Latins allowed to stay.

Michael is awoken at camp at Meteoron by sister Eulogia tickling toes with feather and told the capital is his but refuses to believe it until he receives Baldwin's crown and sword; 15 August he leads triumphal procession into city behind icon of Virgin Hodegetria to celebrate service of rededication at Hagia Sophia; late August Michael, wife Theodora, and 2-year-old son Andronicus crowned but John IV left at Nymphaeum.

Michael reoccupies 'Great Palace' and brings in settlers to repopulate the semi-deserted city, and he provides treasure and new roofs for many damaged buildings and carries out extensive rebuilding and works of charity; two of Baldwin's secretaries retained and soon sent to reassure Pope of goodwill to no effect.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

William of Villehardouin, still prisoner, declines to return Argos or Nauplia to Byzantium as under Athenian suzerainty, and insists he cannot surrender any territory without consent of feudal barons under Achaian constitution; Michael proposes handover of Mistra, Monemvasia, and Maina, three principal castles of south-east Peloponnesse, and William agrees subject to barons' approval; his nephew Geoffrey of Bruyères, lord of Karytaina, sent to inform Princess Anna.

ITALY

29 August. James Pantaleon, the Patriarch of Jerusalem, elected Pope Urban IV. As a Frenchman, he turns to his sovereign Louis IX for help

against Manfred and the idea of putting Louis' brother Charles of Anjou on the Sicilian throne soon emerges.

TURKISH SULTANATE

13 August. Rukn-al-Din enters Konya with Mongol army after removal of their charter granting Izz-ed-Din status as co-ruler; Izz-ed-Din flees to Constantinople and Muin-al-Din Sulaiman the 'Pervane' rules as effective Mongol viceroy, imposing harsh taxes but resisted by Turcoman tribes.

CYPRUS

September. Death of Queen Plaisance, regent for young King Hugh II who is now aged 8. Hugh's father King Henry's sisters' sons, Maria's son Hugh of Brienne and Isabella's son (by Bohemund VI's uncle Henry) Hugh of Antioch, are the claimants for regency. Hugh of Brienne, son of the elder sister, defers his claim and Hugh of Antioch becomes regent.

PALESTINE

September. On death of the Regent, Queen Plaisance, the above dilemma also occurs for the Kingdom of Jerusalem; for the moment, the bailli Geoffrey of Sargines exercises power as acceptable for his capable peace-making between the rival Italians and rival Military Orders.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Early September? 'Parliament of Ladies' (captive lord's wives) at Nikli agrees to accept surrender of the three castles to Michael, though Guy de la Roche, just returned from France where Louis IX granted him status of Duke of Athens, attempts to propose ransom instead to be told they cannot afford it.

October. William swears to the terms in Constantinople and does homage to Michael before returning to Achaia to prepare handover.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

Late Autumn. Baibars sends troops to Aleppo to remove the insubordinate governor; John of Beirut and John of Arsuf, the Ibelin cousins, lead an embassy to him to ask for return of some prisoners and for Qutuz's promise to hand over Zarin (Galilee) to be respected but are sent home empty-handed. The prospects for good relations between the Kingdom and the new Egyptian-Syrian Moslem power look bleak given Baibars' military skills and hostility.

BYZANTIUM

Late. Michael has John IV blinded and removed to Dadibryze castle on Black Sea; Patriarch Arsenius is furious and withdraws to Paschasius monastery outside Nicaea as popular demonstrations at deposition of Lascarids show their popularity in Anatolia – the new Emperor's reputation in old Nicaean lands never recovers.

Sources

1245

Palestine/Syria: Abu Shama, p. 432; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, p. 432; Ibn Khallikan vol. iii, p. 246; Maqrissi vol. x, pp. 361–5.

1246–9

Palestine/Cyprus: Al-Aini, p. 200; *Annales de Terre Sainte*, p. 442; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, p. 432–5; *Gestes des Chiprois*, p. 146; Maqrissi vol. x, p. 315.

1248

Sixth Crusade expedition sets out: *Gestes des Chiprois*, p. 147; Joinville, ch. v, pp. 55–64; Matthew Paris, *Chronica Majora* (London: Longmans, 1872) vol. v, pp. 23–5 (French); vol. iv, pp. 628–9 and vol. v, p. 41, 73–6 (English/Scots)
Moslem world: Abu'l Feda, p. 125; Maqrissi, vol. x, pp. 198–9.
Moslem embassy to Louis on Cyprus: Ms. of Rothelin, p. 469; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 80, 87.

1249

Arrival at Damietta: Joinville, ch. vi, pp. 65–75.
Also: Abu'l Feda, p. 126; al Aini, p. 201; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 436–7; Ms. of Rothelin, p. 589; Maqrissi, vol. x, pp. 200–01; Matthew Paris, vol. v, p. 70.
Landing at Damietta, battle on the beach, Moslems retreat: Joinville, ch. vi, contd; Abu'l Feda, p. 126; Al Aini, pp. 201–3; Abu Shama, vol. ii, p. 195; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 147–8; Ms. of Rothelin, p. 589–91; Matthew Paris, vol. v, p. 81, and vol. vi, pp. 152–61; Maqrissi, vol. xiii, pp. 203–4; William of Nangis, p. 371.
Occupation of Damietta: Joinville, ch. vii, pp. 76–84; Al Aini, pp. 202–6; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 592–4; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 105–7 (misdating November 1249 events to February 1250) and vol. vi, pp. 160–1.

1250

March to Mansurah and camp between two branches of the Nile: Joinville, ch. viii, pp. 85–90; Abu'l Feda, p. 127; Al Aini, p. 207; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 597–9; Maqrissi, vol. xiii, pp. 208–16; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 107–8.
The Crusaders try to bridge the Bahr as-Saghir and build causeway: Joinville, ch. ix, pp. 91–101.

- Battle of Mansurah: Joinville, ch. x, pp. 102–24; Al Aini, p. 208; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 599–608; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 147–54 and vol. vi, pp. 191–3.
- Moslems attack the Crusader camp and driven off: Joinville, ch. xii, pp. 129–39, Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 608–9.
- Stalemate – Turan Shah arrives in Egypt; the Crusaders are surrounded and face famine; they cross the river and retreat under harassment: Joinville, ch. xiii, pp. 140–51; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 87–8.
- Crusaders are surrounded and have to surrender; massacre of the sick and capture of fugitives: Joinville, ch. xiv, pp. 152–70; Abu'l Feda, p. 128; Al Aini, pp. 209–13; Maqrissi, vol. xiii, p. 227; Ms. of Rothelin pp. 612–16; Matthew Paris, book v, pp. 157–68, vol. vi, pp. 193–7; William of Nangis, p. 376; William of St. Pathus, pp. 74–5.
- Turan Shah is killed in coup; Louis and the Moslems sign treaty: Joinville ch. xv, pp. 171–84; Abu Shama, pp. 198–209; Abu'l Feda, p. 129; Al Aini, pp. 213–14; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 616–19; Maqrissi, vol. xiii, pp. 230–2; Matthew Paris, vol. v, p. 164 and vol. vi, pp. 196–7.
- Surrender of Damietta: Joinville, ch. xvi, pp. 185–216; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 619–20.
- Anecdotes of the retreat/Queen Margaret and court in Damietta until Louis is released: Joinville, ch. xvii, pp. 197–208.
- Louis is released and goes to Palestine: Joinville, part iii, ch. i–ii, pp. 203–24; Ms. of Rothelin pp. 619–20; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 173–4; William of Nangis, p. 383; William of St. Pathus, p. 91–2.
- Syria events: Abu Shama, p. 200; Ibn Khallikan, vol. ii, p. 446.

1250–60

- Greece: Chronicle of the Morea, French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 88, 109; Greek version, ed. Schmitt, lines 3586–3607 and 4204–4323.

1251–3

- Louis in Palestine: Joinville, ch. iv to x, pp. 233–42 (at Caesarea), 273–9 (at Jaffa), 290–300 (at Sidon); also Abu'l Feda, pp. 131–2; Abu Shama, vol. ii, p. 200; Al Aini, p. 215; Estpire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 440–1; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 623–8; Matthew Paris vol. v, p. 342 and vol. vi, p. 206.
- Death of Queen-Mother Blanche and Louis' return home: Joinville, ch.s xii–xiii, pp. 310–46; Ms. of Rothelin, pp. 629–30; Matthew Paris, vol. v, pp. 434, 452–4; William of St. Pathus, pp. 29–30.

1254

- Germany/Acre/Cyprus: Annales de Terre Sainte, p. 446; Ms. of Rothelin, p. 630; Matthew Paris, vol. vi, pp. 459–60, 522.

1256–60

- Palestine/Cyprus/Syria: Annales Januenses, in MGH Series vol. xviii, pp. 238–40; Annales de Terre Saintem p. 446; Estoire d'Eraclesm vol. iim pp. 443–7; Gestes des Chiproism pp. 149–60; Ms. of Rothelinm pp. 631–3, 643.
- Egypt: Abu'l Fedam p. 135.
- Baltic: W. Urban, *The Baltic Crusade* (Chicago: Lithuanian Research and Studies Center, 1994 edition), pp. 246–8.

1259–60

Mongols in Iraq/Syria/Palestine and events in Egypt: Abu'l Feda, pp. 143–5; Annales de Terre Sainte, p. 449; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 165–6; Kirakos of Gantzag, (Armenian) *History*, tr. Brosset (St. Petersburg: publisher unknown, 1870), pp. 177–9; Ms. of Rothelin, p. 637; Maqrissi, *Sultans*, vol. i, pp. 110–13; Rashid ad-Din, *History of the Mongols*, tr. Quatremere (Paris: Publications de l'Ecole des Langues Vivantes Orientales, 1836), pp. 326–31, 341–7.
Battle of Ain Jalut: Abu'l Feda, pp. 103–4; Maqrissi, vol. i, pp. 104–6; Rashid ad-Din, pp. 349–52.

1259–61

Latins and restoration of the Byzantine Empire: George Acropolites, *Opera*, ed. A. Heisenberg, 2 vols (Leipzig: Teubner, 1903) pp. 165–70; *Chronicle of the Morea*, ed. P. Kalonaros (Athens: publisher unknown, 1940), cols 3602–3690 (battle of Pelagonia 1259) and 4324–4348 (re-conquest 1261); Nicephorus Gregoras, *Historia Byzantina*, vol. i, pp. 71–5; George Pachymer, *De Michaele Paleologo: De Andronico Paleologo*, ed. I. Bekker, 2 vols (Bonn: Weber, 1835), pp. 83–6 and (re-conquest 1261) 88–9.
Also: Geanakopoulos, *Michael VIII Paleologus*, pp. 47–74 (1258–9) and 121–47 (1260–1); Donald Nicol, *Despotate of Epirus*, pp. 169–85.

1261

Cyprus: Hill, *History of Cyprus* vol. ii, pp. 151–4.

10 The Seventh Crusade and the end of Outremer 1262–1291

1262 ITALY/GREECE

Ex-emperor Baldwin arrives from Manfred's court in Sicily at Pope Urban's residence, Viterbo, and receives verbal support as legitimate ruler; he also intercedes for Manfred, who is summoned to Viterbo for *1 August* but obtains delay until *November*.

Baldwin goes on to France to encourage Louis IX to announce new Crusade for him; *June* Michael VIII writes to Pope offering to receive new legates and assuring that now ownership of Constantinople is sorted out reunion of churches should follow; Pope offers to recognise Manfred's rule of Naples and Sicily in return for tribute and re-admission of all exiles which he refuses.

July. Pope Urban absolves William of Villehardouin from his oath of loyalty to Michael VIII as latter is a schismatic and usurper.

Venice and Epirus ally with Pope and Baldwin, and Michael II attacks Byzantine outposts in Macedonia again; Villehardouin agrees to Papal proposals to join coalition.

1263 PALESTINE/CYPRUS

February. John of Jaffa visits Baibars' camp on Mount Tabor to arrange a truce and exchange of prisoners. Baibars agrees, but the Templars and Hospitallers will not return their prisoners who include useful craftsmen; Baibars breaks off negotiations and soon afterwards sacks Nazareth.

4 April. Baibars attacks Acre by surprise in forced march down from Galilee, and the army emerges to fight him in the suburbs; Geoffrey of Sargines is badly wounded but the Mamelukes are driven back. Baibars retires without attempting a siege. It is suspected that Philip of Montfort and the Genoese supported him in a desire to overthrow the government and the dominant Venetians/Pisans but pulled out of sending troops to aid the attack.

Spring. Princess Isabella, aunt of King Hugh and mother of the Regent Hugh of Cyprus, arrives at Acre to claim the regency for Conradin with

her husband, Henry of Antioch (uncle of Bohemund VI). The 'High Court' accepts her as regent but the barons will not swear allegiance without the presence and permission of King Conradin. She appoints her husband Henry as bailli and returns to Cyprus.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Summer. Constantine Palaeologus, the Emperor's brother, lands army at Monemvasia from Byzantine and Genoese ships to take over as much as possible of the Morea. The Byzantines besiege Lacedaimon and invade Arcadia, where Villehardouin retires to Corinth to summon Frankish lords from all over Greece; Byzantines cross the pass at Karytaina into Elis unopposed in absence of Lord Geoffrey de Briel, and Skorta hillmen join them; they reach Olympia and Turks burn Latin monastery of Isova, but elderly Lord Jean de Catavas and his knights defeat them in heroic charge; Constantine retires into hills and to Laconia as Villehardouin advances.

Michael II of Epirus defeated by Imperial troops and has to sign treaty and hand over Ioannina.

Genoese fleet defeated by Venetians at battle of Spetsai in the Aegean; annoyed at their failure, Michael decides he has backed wrong Italian power, and negotiates with Venice.

ITALY

Pope Urban negotiates with Louis IX's younger brother Charles, Count of Anjou and Provence, to evict Manfred and take over southern Italy and Sicily as his vassal.

July. Pope sends friendly if non-committal letter to Michael VIII on Church reunion, proposing to send four Franciscan friars to negotiate.

ATHENS

Death of Duke Guy de la Roche after 38-year rule; succeeded by elder son John.

ITALY

July. Charles of Anjou signs treaty with Pope, promising to hold southern Italy and Sicily as vassal, not take any other lands in Italy, and supply troops on demand.

SYRIA

Bohemund VI and his father-in-law Hethoum of Armenia kidnap Patriarch Euthymius of Antioch (Greek Orthodox protégé of Hulagu and

his wife Dokuz Khatun) and remove him to Armenia. The Catholic Patriarch of Antioch, Opizon, is restored to control of the local Church but Hulagu is not pleased at the insult to his arrangements.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

Kubilai's forces regain control of the 'Jagatai Khanate' in Transoxiana, reopening the link from the victor's Chinese-Central Asian dominions to Hulagu's viceroyalty in Persia and Iraq.

1264 BYZANTIUM

Early. Michael receives Greek Catholic southern Italian bishop, Nicholas of Cotrone, and sends him to Pope with favourable report on likelihood of Church reunion.

PALESTINE

Early. The Templars and Hospitallers unite to capture Lizon (Megiddo, site of major battle between Egypt and Babylon in 7th century BC).

ENGLAND

14 May. The terminology and insignia of a Crusade are used by the ex-Crusader Simon de Montfort, rebel brother-in-law of king Henry III and son of the leader of the Albigensian Crusade, as he and his army fight and defeat the King's forces at Lewes; their cause of restricting Royal power to curb misrule is claimed by their propagandists to be holy and is backed by oaths sworn in church. They fight under a banner of the Cross, wearing the cross on their surcoats, after celebrating Mass and confessing their sins.

BYZANTIUM

May. Michael deposes Patriarch Arsenius, who has denounced his usurpation, for omitting his name from services and giving communion to Moslem emir. No bishop will assume Patriarchate and lift Michael's excommunication.

Michael II invades Macedonia against weakened forces and Michael VIII marches west. Michael II sues for peace before he can be attacked, and in new treaty agrees to marry Emperor's widowed niece Anna Cantacuzene.

Urban's Franciscan friars return home with positive reports about Church reunion. Michael VIII is attacked in Thrace en route home by Mongols from south Russian steppes, summoned by ex-Sultan Izz-ed-Din who he hands over.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

Death of Princess Isabella of Cyprus (by marriage of Antioch), regent of Jerusalem. Her office is handed to her son Hugh, regent of Cyprus, though his cousin Hugh of Brienne puts in a claim on it as his mother was Isabella's older sister so he is genealogically senior.

Hugh of Cyprus combines the regencies of Cyprus and Jerusalem and uses Geoffrey of Sargines as his bailli and deputy in his absence.

Early Summer. Christian forces raid to Ascalon.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

? Two Venetian merchant adventurers who have arrived in Bukhara after their route back to the Crimea from the Volga was cut by the Mongol civil war, Niccolo and Maffeo Polo, join a local embassy to Kubilai's court in China.

Defeated in three-year war in the steppes, Ariqboqa comes to Kubilai's headquarters and formally submits to him; his leading associates are executed and he is pardoned but dies (conveniently?) soon afterwards.

IRAQ/SYRIA

July. Hulagu holds an assembly of his vassals in Azerbaijan; Bohemund VI and his father-in-law Hethoum of Armenia attend and have to explain their defiance of Mongol orders in removing the Greek Orthodox Patriarch Euthymius of Antioch (now in Constantinople seeking Michael's aid).

PALESTINE

Autumn. The French troops in Acre, financed by Louis IX, raid to Beisan; in retaliation Baibars' troops raid the outlying districts south of Mount Carmel, ruining agriculture and leading to evacuation by farmers but not yet approaching the isolated Christian fortresses.

ITALY

2 October. Death of Pope Urban; prolonged conclave as Charles and Manfred try to influence result.

SYRIA

Autumn. Renewed Mongol attack from Iraq on northern Syria, as Hulagu is no longer distracted by the Mongol civil war.

1265

IRAQ/PERSIA

8 February. Death of Hulagu, now first 'Ilkhan' of Persia as Kubilai's local viceroy, at his encampment in Azerbaijan. His widow Dokuz

Khatun, a Nestorian Christian and crucial ally of the Christians (and Crusaders?) at the court, secures succession of his son Abagha, governor of Transoxiana, who is summoned to court.

PALESTINE

February. Baibars invades Palestine from Egypt in what will prove to be the start of final reconquest. The campaign is made possible by news of the repelling of a Mongol attack on Aleppo. He marches to the area inland of Arsuf, pretends that he is busy hunting, and then swoops down on Caesarea in a repeat of his tactics in the 1263 attack on Acre.

27 February. Fall of Caesarea, except the castle, to surprise Mameluke assault; *5 March* the castle surrenders in return for safe passage; the town and castle are razed to the ground to prevent defence if reoccupied by the Christians.

c. 10 March. Fall of Haifa to Mameluke assault, as those who can escape flee by ship; the rest are massacred and the town is razed.

Baibars unsuccessfully besieges Athlit castle (to *21 March*), decides not to waste time on long blockade, and marches on Arsuf; 270 Hospitaller knights in the castle lead the defence. The Mamelukes batter down the walls with siege-engines. At Acre, the government sends an appeal to their regent, Prince Hugh of Cyprus.

25 April. Hugh and reinforcements land at Acre.

26 April. The town of Arsuf is stormed; the castle holds out but has lost a third of its defenders.

29 April. The Hospitaller commander surrenders the castle of Arsuf in return for safe passage, but once the garrison emerge they are all taken prisoner in violation of promise. With Hugh having enough troops to defend Acre adequately, Baibars calls a halt to the campaign but now has control of all the territory except Jaffa south of Mount Carmel.

ITALY

5 February. Guy of Foulques, Archbishop of Narbonne and close to French royal family, elected Pope (Clement IV) and confirms agreement with Charles; *28 June* Clement's envoys invest him with Manfred's kingdom, and as 'Senator of Rome' by popular acclaim he drives off Manfred's attack.

BALTIC

Duke Albert of Brunswick-Luneburg and Margrave Henry of Thuringia aid the Teutonic Knights to defeat the Prussian rebellion (underway since 1260), but fighting continues through the late 1260s.

IRAQ

June. Arrival and enthronement of the new ‘Ilkhan’ Abagha in Azerbaijan.

ITALY

October. Charles marches south from Lyons, France to Rome with large French army of feudal Lordships and volunteers to attack Manfred.

MONGOL DOMINIONS

Niccolo and Maffeo Polo arrive at Kubilai’s court in China.

1266 ITALY

January. Charles in Rome; he marches quickly into Campania and through the hills to Benevento, outflanking Manfred’s positions.

ARMENIA

Early Spring. Having refused to renew the Mameluke arrangement for buying timber from his forests in Cilicia for shipbuilding to pressurise Baibars, Hethoum hears that an army is being readied to invade. He heads for Azerbaijan to appeal to Abagha for help.

ITALY

Friday 26 February. Manfred defeated and killed by Charles of Anjou’s French army at battle of Benevento; *7 March* Charles enters Naples, and Manfred’s widow Helena Ducaena tries to flee to Epinus but is caught at Trani by Papal agents and returned for life imprisonment with Manfred’s children (her daughter and three illegitimate sons); Charles imposes strict French government on the kingdom, but clemency to nobles at first.

Charles lays claim to Corfu and other ‘dower’ lands handed over by Michael II with Helena; Manfred’s admiral Chinardo holds out there.

SYRIA/PALESTINE/ARMENIA

Spring. Death of John of Ibelin, lord of Jaffa; succeeded by son Guy.

May. Baibars invades Palestine and heads for Acre, while his emir, Qalavun, takes another army north to link up with the Ayyubid Prince Al-Mansur of Hama and raid into Tripoli to keep Bohemund VI from aiding either Acre or Armenia.

1 June. Baibars arrives outside Acre, but retires as reinforcements from France have recently landed. He marches on the Teutonic Knights’ castle of Montfort, then quickly moves on to Safed (Templar) to launch siege.

7 July, 13 July, 19 July. Assaults on Safed defeated. As he cannot storm the walls, Baibars announces an amnesty for any local Eastern rite Christians who wish to defect; this arouses Templar suspicions of their local auxiliaries and some quarrels ensue.

Late July. Some of the locals desert, and the under-manned garrison sends a local Christian, Leo, to seek terms. Baibars offers safe conduct to all who wish to leave for Acre; the Templars accept but when they surrender and emerge he arrests and beheads them.

Toron is soon captured, and the Eastern rite Christian village of Qara between Homs and Damascus is sacked and the adults killed and children enslaved for alleged spying for the Crusaders. Baibars marches on Acre again, but regent Hugh has brought Cypriot reinforcements so he destroys the local villages and (*September?*) retires.

ARMENIA

Qalavun and the second Mameluke army avoids the waiting Armenian army, under Hethoum's sons Leo and Thoros, at the 'Armenian Gates' pass and the local Templars at Baghras. He crosses the Amanus mountains further east and invades Cilicia; the Armenians return to meet them.

28 August. The Armenians are heavily defeated and Prince Thoros killed and Leo captured; Armenian military power is destroyed. Qalavun sacks Ayas, Adana, and Tarsus while Al-Mansur's Hama contingent sacks the capital, Sis. The Mamelukes retire with 40,000 prisoners, leaving Armenia devastated, and Hethoum returns with a small Mongol contingent too late.

PALESTINE

Hugh launches a counter-raid towards Safed with the French reinforcements, led by Geoffrey of Sargines, but (28 October) the vanguard is ambushed by the garrison. His camp attacked by local Bedouin, Hugh retreats.

ITALY/FRANCE

The Papal legate Ottobuono launches the Seventh Crusade (in planning by Pope since 1263) with preaching-tour.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Or 1265. The Mongol overlords' local ally, 'Pervane' (chief minister) Muin al-Din Sulaiman, murders Sultan Rukn-al-Din; the latter's infant son Kaikhusrau is his puppet-ruler.

EPIRUS

Michael II reaches agreement with Chinardo, offers him hand of his sister-in-law, and then sends agents under cover of alliance to arrange revolt; Chinardo assassinated but *Late* Charles' troops arrive to prevent Epirot takeover.

C. BYZANTIUM

1266

Michael VIII sends his illegitimate daughter Maria ('Despina Khatun') to Persia to marry Mongol 'Ilkhan' Abagha.

1267 ITALY/MOREA

February. Charles of Anjou and William of Villehardouin exchange embassies; William recognises Charles as his new feudal Lord in place of Emperor Baldwin as Charles better able to defend his dominions, and Charles is to arrange it with Pope and Baldwin; William's aid to Charles' planned attack on Constantinople to restore Baldwin is promised, and presumably the question of William's daughter and heiress marrying Charles' son Philip is first broached.

ENGLAND

February. Legate Ottobuono receives a lukewarm response to his call for a Crusade at the Royal 'Parliament' held at Bury St. Edmunds.

FRANCE

March. Louis IX, who has promised to return to the 'Holy Land' when possible, and his sons take the Cross to go on the new Crusade; the Royal council are not enthusiastic.

PORTUGAL/SPAIN

April. Treaty of Badajoz between Kings Alfonso III of Portugal and Alfonso X of Castile; it regularises their frontier so that Castile accepts the Portuguese conquest of the Algarve, to which it has a claim as ex-overlord of the Moslem emirate there. King Alfonso transfers the titular 'kingdom of the Algarve' to his elder son and heir, Denis (born 1261), but the kings of Castile continue to use the title.

ITALY/MOREA

May. Baldwin joins Pope Clement and Charles at Viterbo, and treaty of alliance arranged – Baldwin cedes right to Queen Helena's dower-lands and suzerainty over Achaia and all of Aegean except Venice's territory and Lesbos, Chios, Samos, and Amorgos; Charles to receive one third of

Latin Empire (not Constantinople) when recaptured; Baldwin's son Philip to marry Charles' daughter Beatrice; Charles to provide 2,000 knights for a year to attack Constantinople.

17 May. Clement sends uncompromising letter to Michael VIII on Church reunion – Greek Church must submit to his terms for it and no negotiations.

PALESTINE

May. Baibars attacks Acre by surprise, using captured Templar and Hospitaller banners from 1266 so his troops can get up to the walls without arousing the alarm. They are driven back, so he ravages the district and destroys agriculture. The Kingdom sends envoys to him at Safed for a truce, and he lines the walls with executed Christian prisoners' heads to terrorise them.

BALTIC

Crusade of King Premysl Ottakar of Bohemia to east Prussia, to assist the Teutonic Knights against the local 'rebel' pagan tribesmen.

ITALY

July. Castilian Prince Henry, former ally of Manfred, replaces Charles as 'Senator' in Rome and turns against Pope and Charles.

PALESTINE

16 August. A Genoese squadron of 27 ships under Luccheto Grimaldi arrives at Acre from Genoese-dominated Tyre in renewed dispute with Venetians in the city over the demarcation of their quarters. (Venice and Pisa dominate Acre.) He storms the 'Tower of Flies' at the end of the breakwater and forces his way into the harbour.

28 August. Grimaldi and 15 ships leave for Tyre for repairs; once he is out of the way 26 Venetian ships arrive to reinforce their countrymen. They attack the remaining Genoese squadron at Acre, which fights its way out with the loss of five ships and flees to Tyre.

ITALY/SPAIN/PERSIA/IRAQ

Backed by Pope Clement, the would-be Crusader King James I of Aragon sends envoy (James Alaric of Perpignan) to 'Ilkhan' Abagha to announce that James and King Louis IX will be sailing to Palestine shortly on the Seventh Crusade and to ask him for help against Baibars. It is hoped that Abagha's new Byzantine bride, Michael VIII's illegitimate daughter Maria ('Despina Khatun'), symbolises his commitment to the Christian alliance.

ITALY

Autumn. Revolt in Sicily, led by Manfred's ex-governor Conrad Capece, as Conrad of Hohenstaufen's son Conradin invades northern Italy from Bavaria to reclaim the kingdom of Sicily. The 'Infante' Henry, as 'Senator', receives Manfred's uncle Frederick Lancia, now working for Conradin, in Rome and promises him aid despite papal anger.

CYPRUS

December. Death of King Hugh II, aged 15; succeeded by his cousin and regent, Hugh (III), who is also regent of the Kingdom of Jerusalem.

24 December. Coronation of King Hugh III.

1268

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Baibars invades southern Palestine from Egypt and heads for Jaffa, without formally ending the truce agreed with the late lord John.

7 March. Fall of Jaffa to assault by the Mamelukes; the town is sacked. The castle holds out but the garrison is allowed to leave for Acre unmolested, with Baibars keeping his word for once. The castle is demolished.

3–15 April. Siege of Beaufort castle, the eastern stronghold of the lordship of (Julian of) Sidon which the Templars now garrison. After a 12-day bombardment it surrenders; the women and children are freed and the men enslaved.

1 May. Baibars arrives outside Tripoli, but it is strongly garrisoned so he moves north. The Templars of Safita and Tortosa send envoys to secure a truce, which is granted. Prince Bohemund VI remains at his usual residence, Tripoli, as Baibars heads for Antioch; Constable Simon Mansel, married to an Armenian lady, leads the capital's defence.

14 May. Siege of Antioch, while one Mameluke force takes the port of St. Simeon and a second guards the 'Armenian Gates' pass against interference from ruined Armenia. Constable Philip Mansel is captured in a sortie as the Moslems close in and is ordered to call for surrender, but his men ignore him.

15 May. Unsuccessful assault on the walls of Antioch; it is defeated and the garrison open negotiations to no avail.

18 May. Fall of Antioch at the second general assault on all the walls at once. The capital of the Principality falls after 170 years and is sacked and the populace massacred or enslaved. The refugees hiding in the citadel are forced to surrender and rounded up for slavery.

19 May. Baibars orders the collection and general distribution of the loot. A few of the wealthier citizens and senior officials are ransomed but most are sold into slavery.

The Templars abandon Baghras and ‘La Roche de Roussel’; Lattakieh, the last Christian port in the area, survives with the Principality of Tripoli as Bohemund VI’s last possessions.

Summer. King-regent Hugh sends envoys to Baibars for truce; Baibars sends envoy Muhi-ad-Din to Acre to negotiate a year’s truce, and the ambassador jeers at Hugh’s parade of his troops that there are far more Christian captives in Cairo.

ENGLAND

June/July. The midsummer ‘Parliament’ at Northampton approves of the planned Crusade. Henry III’s sons Edward (victor of the battle of Evesham over Simon de Montfort in *June* 1265) and Edmund (ex-claimant to Sicily), their cousin Henry ‘of Almayn’ (Germany) – son of the Crusader Earl Richard of Cornwall – and the Earl of Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, take the Cross. The expedition is intended to restore baronial unity after the recent civil war of 1264–5. Gloucester, the most powerful of the south Wales ‘Marcher’ magnates and a personal rival of Edward’s, soon tries to back out of the expedition and resents Edward having command; he is supposedly talked round by Earl Richard and promises to go but does not.

EGYPT/SYRIA/ARMENIA

Baibars agrees to negotiations with King Hethoum of Armenia to regain an important Mameluke commander, Shams ed-Din Sonqor al-Ashkar (the ‘Red Falcon’), captured by the Mongols at Aleppo, who Abagha has handed over to his ally Hethoum as a bargaining-counter.

August. Mameluke-Armenia treaty agreed; Hethoum has his heir Leo returned if he hands over the Amanus mountains fortresses of Darbsaq, Behesni, and Raban. Leo is allowed to leave captivity on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, en route home.

Bohemund VI is included in the Mameluke-Acre truce.

ITALY

April. Conradin arrives at Pisa by sea; 2 *May* his army under Frederick of Baden joins him after eluding the Angevin forces in Lombardy.

June. He reaches Siena and by-passes Pope Clement at Viterbo.

25 *June.* He enters Siena as Charles’ lieutenant in Tuscany, John of Brayseve, is ambushed and captured near Arezzo; 24 *July* he enters Rome to public rejoicing.

14 *August.* Conradin and around 6,000 men leave Rome to invade Naples.

Charles, besieging Manfred's former Saracen regiment at Lucera, intercepts Conradin on march from Avezzano into Apulia and 23 *August* destroys his army near Tagliacozzo; this time Charles is merciless to Hohenstaufen partisans and 29 *October* Conradin and his friend Frederick of Baden are executed at Naples. The legitimate Hohenstaufen claims pass to Alfonso X of Castile, but the late (illegitimate) King Manfred's daughter Constance, queen of Aragon, is their nearest relative.

Rome surrenders to Charles and elects him as 'Senator' for life.

PALESTINE

29 *October*. The execution of Conradin means the end of the direct line of the Kings of Jerusalem, descended from Queen Isabella (d. 1205/6?) and Conrad of Montferrat's daughter Marie (d. 1212). Isabella's daughter by her next husband Henry of Champagne left an elder daughter Alice, Queen of Cyprus (d. 1246), whose senior heir is King Hugh III of Cyprus, regent of the Kingdom of Jerusalem.

Hugh claims the throne of Jerusalem, with his mother Isabella's older sister Maria's son Hugh of Brienne now out of the way in Athens as married to a De La Roche. But Marie of Montferrat's younger half-sister Melissende, next full sister of Queen Alice, married Bohemund IV of Antioch (d. 1233) and their daughter Maria put in a claim to the 'High Court'. She argues that as she is a generation closer to the senior line than Hugh (a grand-daughter of Queen Isabella, not a great-grandson) she should have the throne, and is backed by the Templars. Hugh counters that the Kingdom recognised Alice as its Regent and later his own mother and then him, so its laws accept their seniority as next heirs. Maria claims that was a mistake.

MOREA

William de Villehardouin takes small force to Italy to assist Charles and is present at Tagliacozzo; Charles presses him to accept the proposed marriage-alliance but with technically illegal stipulation that if William's daughter Isabella dies childless her husband and his father, Charles, are her heirs not her sister Margaret.

ITALY

29 *November*. Death of Pope Clement at Viterbo; his cardinals cannot elect a new Pope as the French nominees he has appointed will not accept an Italian. The long vacancy in Papacy means no more proposals on Church reunion possible, but Charles continues plans to attack Byzantium.

1269 | **BYZANTIUM**

Michael VIII sends two embassies to Louis IX reassuring him on his support for Church reunion and insisting that a voluntary reunion is more Christian and more likely to last than one imposed by Charles by reconquest.

PALESTINE

Spring. Death of the Seneschal and commander of the French regiment at Acre, Geoffrey of Sargines. Robert of Crecques succeeds as Seneschal. More troops are arriving from Louis IX and he is expected to sail to Palestine soon on the Seventh Crusade – but his brother Charles of Anjou, King of Naples, has other ideas.

Spring–Summer. The ‘High Court’ adjudicates the succession-dispute and rules in Hugh’s favour. Hugh is accepted as rightful king as a proven administrator and warrior used to the Kingdom, but (*September*) Maria sails for Italy to complain to the next Pope.

Hugh secures a settlement with Philip of Montfort, lord of Tyre and upholder of the Geneose community there in their long-standing dispute with the Venetians at Acre. Philip, vulnerable to Mameluke attack and reduced to one town, agrees to let Hugh be crowned in Tyre as tradition has laid down, and to let his son John marry Hugh’s sister Margaret.

ITALY

28 August. Surrender of Lucera, headquarters of the rebels against Charles of Anjou in Apulia.

September. Wiliam L’Estandart takes over command of the French/ Angevin army in Sicily against Conrad Capeche’s local rebels and secures success within the next few months. He is assisted by the refugee English rebel nephews of King Henry III, Guy and Simon de Montfort. The Infante, Frederick of Castile, and Manfred’s lieutenant, Lancia, assisting the rebels, are forced to surrender and leave – and go to Tunis, which will encourage Charles to divert the Crusade there.

SPAIN

1 September. King James of Aragon, son and successor of the King Peter II killed by the Albigensian Crusaders at Muret in 1213, leads a naval expedition from Barcelona on Crusade. They are hit by a massive storm and most return home, the King included.

PALESTINE

24 September. Hugh crowned King of Jerusalem at Tyre by the Bishop of Lydda.

Early December. The French regiment at Acre, now under Oliver of Termes, and the new Seneschal Robert of Crecques raid the Montfort area from Acre, unaware that Baibars is approaching the capital for another attack.

December. Arrival of the remnants of the Aragonese fleet at Acre, led by the King's illegitimate sons Fernando and Pedro.

Baibars invades again before the truce has expired and shows part of his army before the walls of Acre while most hide in ambush in the hills.

Hugh remains behind the walls, and the Orders talk the Aragonese 'Infantes' into doing so too in case the cunning Baibars has an ambush planned.

The French troops returning from the Montfort area find the Mameluke army assembled (only a part of it visible), and Robert of Crecques proposes to attack it. Oliver of Termes prefers to retire into Acre quickly, but Robert's suggestion is followed and the French fall into Baibars' trap. Most of them, including Robert, are killed; the Aragonese wisely do not attempt a rescue.

ITALY

Niccolo and Maffeo Polo arrive back in Venice from their mission to the 'Great Khan', with a request from Kubilai for 100 missionaries and some oil from the lamp of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem for the Nestorian Church in Beijing.

C. BYZANTIUM/EPIRUS

1269

Death of Michael II of Epirus, succeeded by son Nicephorus; his illegitimate half-brother John retains Thessaly and signs alliance with Michael VIII.

1270 PALESTINE

Early. The Aragonese return home.

ITALY/MOREA/France/TUNISIA

Spring. Charles prepares for expedition to Constantinople in Apulian ports, but his brother Louis IX is about to lead Crusade and Charles has to postpone campaign to assist him.

End of the revolt against Charles in Sicily, led by Conrad Capeche.

Surrender of Pisa, which had backed Conradin against Charles, to his new governor of Tuscany, the Frenchman John Britaud.

Charles sends to Louis' headquarters at Aigues-Mortes in Provence, and persuades him not to attack his own ally, Baibars. He alleges that Al-Mustansir, the Hafsid ruler of Tunisia who has harboured Sicilian rebels and refused to continue the tribute which he paid to Manfred, is considering converting to Christianity and if Louis' army lands in his realm he will be able to defy Moslem opinion and do so. Louis agrees to go to Tunis.

17 June. Marriage-treaty between Charles' son Philip and William of Villehardouin's daughter Isabella concluded, confirming that Philip and Charles are heirs to Achaia if Isabella is childless.

1 July. Louis IX sails from Aigues-Mortes for Tunis, with French army including his sons, his son-in-law Count Theobald of Champagne (King of Navarre), his nephew Robert of Artois, and the Counts of Britany and La Marche; *8 July* Charles sails from Naples for Sicily.

13 July. Charles arrives at Palermo.

18 July. Louis lands at the ancient site of Carthage, near Tunis. Al-Mustansir refuses a summons to convert to Christianity and retires into his capital to withstand siege.

Epidemic breaks out in the French camp.

ENGLAND

July. Parliament at Winchester finalises arrangements for the Crusade.

Edward plans to sail from Portsmouth to his lordship of Gascony to meet his wife's brother Alfonso X of Castile and then go on to Provence, but is held up by the death of his relative, Archbishop Boniface of Canterbury, and the election of a new Archbishop.

20 August? Edward crosses the Channel from Kent to France and heads south.

PALESTINE

17 August. Philip of Montfort is murdered by an 'Assassin' while praying in chapel, though his son John escapes; the crime is believed to have been organised by Baibars to remove one of the most senior Christian lords ahead of his next attack, and the 'Assassins' to have agreed to do it in return for the end of the tribute they used to pay the now-defunct Antiochene Hospitallers.

FRANCE/TUNISIA

3 August. Death of Louis IX's youngest son John 'Tristan', ironically born during his father's last and equally disastrous Crusade at Damietta.

25 August. Louis IX dies at Tunis, aged 56; Charles arrives with Sicilian fleet that evening. Charles presses for an attack on Tunis with his fresh troops and the promise of an English contingent arriving shortly, and wins a few minor skirmishes. The Seventh Crusade is abandoned as Al-Mustansir requests a truce, with Louis' eldest son Philip III seriously ill.

Charles remains in Tunis to help nephew Philip III negotiate treaty with Al-Mustansir.

Mid-September? Prince Edward and the English contingent arrive at Aigues-Mortes, and hear of the diversion of the Crusade to Tunisia. They sail for Tunis.

ITALY

28 October. On the Feast of Ss. Simon and Jude, an anti-Papal and anti-Charles 'Ghibelline' conspiracy led by the Doria and Spinola families seizes control of Genoa. The losses caused to Genoese shipping and personnel in the Tunisian expedition revived anti-French feeling.

TUNISIA/ITALY

1 November. Charles and Philip sign agreement with Al-Mustansir and arrange to go home. The Tunisians pay tribute to Charles, pay a third of the expenses of the expedition, allow a Sicilian merchant-community in their capital, and release all Christian prisoners. The Crusade to Palestine is to be postponed for three years.

c. 8 November. Edward's English army arrives at the French camp. Edward is furious at the treaty.

November. As the combined French-Naples-English fleet returns to Sicily it is severely damaged by storms. Edward announces that he is going on to Palestine unless the new Pope forbids it, or his father Henry III dies and/or civil war breaks out in England. The sick King Theobald of Navarre (Count of Champagne) dies as the army lands at Trapani, and a few weeks later King Philip III's wife Isabella is killed falling from her horse on the journey north.

ARMENIA

Abdication of Hethoum after 44-year reign; succeeded by son Leo III who has recently returned from Syria via Jerusalem.

1271 ITALY

January. Edward of England hires ships to take his army to Palestine. He persists when a letter, dated 6 February, reaches him from England informing him that the King has been seriously ill and asking him to return

home. He appoints his cousin Henry ‘of Almayn’ to return home on his behalf and if necessary head the government.

Henry travels north across Italy with the armies of Kings Philip III and Charles.

March. The royal armies arrive at Viterbo, where the ‘Curia’ is still locked in indecision about electing a new Pope and the Kings put pressure on them. Henry negotiates with Charles about handing over the captive Henry of Castile, brother of Edward’s wife Eleanor, to his family. He is murdered in the church of San Silvestro at Viterbo by the refugees Guy and Simon de Montfort, sons of Edward’s aunt Eleanor and her late husband Simon de Montfort, in revenge for the killing of Earl Simon and his eldest son Henry by Edward’s troops at Evesham in 1265.

Edward decides to accept the Papal administration’s offer to hunt Guy down, and goes on to Palestine; *April?* he sails from Trapani.

SYRIA

February. Baibars attacks the isolated fortress of Safita (Templar) at the northern extremity of the County of Tripoli. The small garrison put up a fight but accept their Grand Master’s advice to surrender in return for a promise of safe conduct to Tortosa. Baibars fulfils his promise, presumably to encourage his next targets to surrender too.

3 March. Baibars besieges the ‘Krak des Chevaliers’, the remaining Templar stronghold in the north of the Tripoli domains.

4 March. Arrival of an ‘Assassin’ force and troops from Hama to assist Baibars. Rain delays the bombardment and assault.

15 March. The Mamelukes take the gatehouse of the outer walls, at the foot of the main fortress-rock. The inner ‘bailey’ on top of the rock holds out.

29 March. Storming of the inner fortress on the rock; the Templars are killed and the local Christians taken prisoner. The main tower on the south walls holds out.

8 April. The garrison of the south tower surrenders in return for safe conduct to Tripoli.

17 April–1 May. Siege of Aqqa, the Hospitaller fortress protecting the approaches to Tripoli from the south of the Buqaia.

The fall of Krak des Chevaliers (and Aqqa) leaves the County of Tripoli at Baibars’ mercy; Bohemund sends to him from Tripoli for a truce and is insultingly asked to pay the expenses of the Mameluke campaign. He refuses.

9 May. Edward of England and his expedition arrive at Acre. He sends envoys (Reginald Russell, Godfrey Welles, and John Parker) to Abagha

for assistance, and is furious with the Venetians for selling military supplies and food to the Egyptian government. The Venetians produce charters to show that their actions are legalised by the Acre 'High Court'.

Hugh of Cyprus/Jerusalem and Bohemund VI arrive at Acre to join Edward. Hugh endeavours to persuade his Cypriot barons to agree to serve in Acre for the projected campaign.

Late May. Having failed to take the offshore rock-fortress of Maraclea near Tortosa, Baibars offers Bohemund a ten-year truce provided that he accepts the recent conquests. Bohemund agrees, and Baibars leaves for Palestine to await expected Crusader reinforcements.

5–12 June. Siege and surrender of Montfort castle (Teutonic Knights) to Baibars. Acre is now left to face attack without any inland possessions.

12 June. Baibars arrives at the gates of Acre. Nobody emerges to fight him, and he moves off.

Failure of a Mameluke fleet to attack Limassol in the absence of King Hugh at Acre, due to ships running aground.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM/MOREA

May. Wedding of Philip, son of Charles of Anjou and Naples, to Isabella of Achaia secures Angevin influence in Achaia.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS/SYRIA

Late June? Edward raids east to St. Georges-de-Lebeyne, about 15 miles from Acre; some burning and looting but little is accomplished due to lack of troops.

Edward arbitrates between King Hugh and the barons of Cyprus (led by James of Ibelin) over whether they are, as Hugh says, legally bound to offer military service to him in the Kingdom of Jerusalem. He is supposed to have said that they should obey English orders as King Richard was once their sovereign. The eventual compromise agrees that the barons should do service on the mainland for four months a year if Hugh pays them.

August? Mongol army of 10,000 cavalry sent by Abagha from eastern Anatolia advances south into the Orontes valley as requested by Edward; panic in Damascus as the Mameluke garrison of Aleppo flees to Hama.

September. Earl Edmund of Cornwall, Edward's brother, arrives at Acre with English reinforcements.

November. Edward, the English troops, and the forces of Jerusalem, Cyprus, and the Orders raid around Qaqun, 40 miles south-east of Acre. Baibars (at Damascus) is distracted by defending Syria, and Qaqun is sacked, around 1,000 Moslems (Turcomans) killed, and loot taken.

The castle holds out, and as Mameluke reinforcements approach the Crusaders retire to Acre.

The Christian success is limited, not least as their victims were irregular cavalry not ‘main-line’ Mameluke troops.

ITALY

1 September. Tebaldo Visconti, archdeacon of Liège who is a keen Crusader and currently in the Holy Land with Edward’s expedition, elected Pope; *October?* he is informed. He takes title of Gregory X, and believed to be more sympathetic than predecessors to voluntary reunion of Churches so Michael VIII prepares initiative.

PALESTINE

Niccolo and Maffeo Polo, accompanied by Niccolo’s son Marco, arrive in Acre en route to Kubilai’s court in China. They consult the new Pope, who sends a message with them to the ‘Great Khan’.

12 November. Baibars leaves Damascus for Hama to confront the Mongols; they soon retire into Anatolia.

December. Baibars advances from Damascus on Acre, camps outside the city, but is forced to withdraw by heavy rains.

1272 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Pope Gregory writes to Michael VIII informing him of longing for reunion of Christendom. The Crusade is his other priority. *January* he returns to Italy to take up residence at Viterbo (*10 February*), and *27 March* is consecrated at Rome where Charles as ‘Senator’ is in charge of the official welcome.

31 March. Gregory issues Bull summoning General Church Council for *1 May 1274* to discuss reunion of Churches, Crusade to Palestine, and Church reform.

PALESTINE

Baibars agrees to a truce, which was possibly suggested by Edward to King Hugh to postpone war until more Christian help arrives. Most sources say Edward opposed the truce.

Birth of Edward and his wife Eleanor’s daughter Joan ‘of Acre’ at the city.

22 May. Truce agreed at Caesarea; to last for ten years, ten months, ten days, and ten hours (i.e. until *March 1283*). The current territory of the Kingdom is guaranteed, as is the pilgrim-route to Nazareth.

16 June. Edward is attacked by an ‘Assassin’ disguised as a local Christian in his chamber at Acre, and manages to kill him despite a knife-wound (with a poisoned dagger?). The instigator is alternatively suggested as the Emir of Ramleh or Baibars himself. The wound goes septic despite medical treatment by the Grand Master of the Templars and needs drastic action. According to a popular story, the Prince’s wife Eleanor sucks the poison out; others name his Savoyard officer, Otto de Grandison.

While he is convalescing, Edward has a new tower built at Acre at his expense and entrusted to the ‘Order of St. Edward of Acre’.

22 September. Edward and his company sail for Italy.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Michael sends money to Charles’ enemies in Italy, especially the anti-papal ‘Ghibelline’ (ex-Hohenstaufen) factions in cities including the ‘Society of St. Simeon and St. Jude’ in Genoa under Oberto Spinola and Oberto Doria.

Gregory tells Italian states to make only temporary treaties with Michael to put pressure on him for union but requires Charles to postpone expedition and give safe-conducts to Byzantine emissaries through territory.

Gregory commissions ecclesiastical reports on the failure of and lack of enthusiasm for recent Crusades.

October. Papal legates sent to Constantinople to discuss Council and reunion, but on understanding that reunion to be on Latin terms.

ENGLAND/ITALY

16 November. Death of Henry III; Edward ascends the English throne while en route home from Crusade, and hears the news at Charles of Anjou’s court at Trapani in Sicily. He does not hurry his journey home, possibly as still convalescent.

Late. Guy de Montfort does penance in front of Pope Gregory for the murder of Henry ‘of Almayn’ and is allowed to seek pardon.

1273 SPAIN

2 January. Death of Mohammed al-Ghalib, founding Nasrid emirate of Granada, aged around 80, after a 42-year reign (35/6 in Granada); succeeded by his son Mohammed ‘Al-Faqih’, ‘the Lawgiver’ (born 1234). A local war against rebellious tribes which is underway continues.

ENGLAND/ITALY

January. Edward journeys north through Italy; *early-mid February*. He arrives at the Papal court at Orvieto.

May. Edward leaves Italy via the Alps to Savoy.

PALESTINE

Death of Hamo L'Estrange, the English (Norfolk?) husband of Isabella of Ibelin, Lady of Beirut and probably a companion of Edward I on his Crusade; he leaves the fief and his wife (former mistress of Julian of Sidon) under the protection of Sultan Baibars rather than his overlord King Hugh, and the latter has Isabella kidnapped so he can marry her off to a loyal baron. Baibars threatens war if she is not returned, and Hugh has to do so. She is protected by a Mameluke contingent.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Legates return to Italy with Michael's assurances about reunion, and Pope Gregory sends Michael invitation to send delegates to Church Council; he insists Greek Church must accept primacy of Rome and Western doctrine on 'filioque' etc.

Michael negotiates with Gregory ahead of Council, warning reunion on those terms extremely unpopular but assuring his personal agreement to them and commitment to imposing them on his Church; he starts propaganda campaign to convince Byzantine Church leadership of necessity of Union, assisted by respected Greek-born Franciscan friar John Parastron, and assures that it is only paying lip-service to Latin customs and theology that will not be enforced in Constantinople as Pope unlikely to come and enforce terms.

'Chartophylax' of Hagia Sophia, John Beccus, leads opposition as the practical advantages of end of Crusade threat outweighed by theological differences, and Patriarch Joseph supports his stance that Latin faith suspect; lay opposition led by Michael's elder sister Eulogia, who is exiled but flees to her daughter Maria in Bulgaria. Epirot and Thessalian church denounce Union too and encourage rulers Nicephorus and John to oppose Michael.

Michael arrests Beccus, and 'feeds' him details of more acceptable Western theology in prison until he is persuaded that the differences are not that great; on release he leads a strengthening party of moderate opinion in favour of necessity of Union.

Michael sends delayed acceptance of papal invitation to council, and Gregory instructs Charles to postpone invasion for a year to see if Michael submits to reunion.

June. Gregory leaves Orvieto for France to hold the Church Council free from the political pressures of Italy.

FRANCE

November. Gregory arrives in Lyons to prepare for the Church Council there. He invites most of the sovereigns of Europe to the Council, but only Philip III of France joins him. Edward I of England claims it will clash with his coronation so no English bishops can attend.

ITALY

15 October. Charles' daughter Beatrice marries Baldwin II's son Philip.

December. Baldwin II dies, aged 56, and Philip succeeds to claim as Emperor of Constantinople and is recognised nominally by Pope; Philip effectively Charles' puppet.

IRAQ/MONGOL DOMINIONS

Abagha sends Dominican friar David, who serves Patriarch Thomas of Jerusalem, with letter to Edward I asking when the next Crusade will take place; conveyed via Acre.

1274 BYZANTIUM/ITALY/France

Pope Gregory receives his reports into the failure of Crusades. The Franciscan friar Gilbert of Tournai's *Collectio de Scandalis Ecclesiae* blames quarrels of the secular leadership and the abuse of Crusading indulgences by greedy clerics for causing cynicism; Bishop Bruno of Olmutz (Bohemia) says that Crusades in the Levant are pointless given Moslem power and they should be directed to converting the heathen in the Baltic, preferably by a coalition of rulers united in general peace under a strong Emperor like his own sovereign King Premysl Ottakar of Bohemia. The Outremer Dominican friar William of Tripoli favours conversion by preaching in the East, especially to the Mongols, not direct warfare; only the ex-'Master General' of the Dominican Order, Humbert of Romans, favours a Crusade in the Levant for which he says abandonment of European laziness and cowardice by moral renewal is essential. He calls on the Church to sell off some of its treasure to fund the Crusades not impose more unpopular taxes.

January. Patriarch Joseph sent to monastery pending outcome of Council; Synod meets and under Imperial pressure accepts primacy of Papacy; right of appeal to Rome, and papal name in liturgy; signed document sent to Pope with professions of faith from Michael and Andronicus.

March. 'Grand Logothete' George Akropolites, former Patriarch Germanus, and Bishop Theophanes of Nicaea lead delegation to Italy for Council, though shipload of treasures and icons for Pope sunk in storm off Cape Malea.

William of Beaujeu, the new Grand Master of the Templars, and Bishop Paul of Tripoli lead the delegations from Outremer to the Council; the only secular ruler to turn up (apart from the exiled Baldwin) is King James of Aragon.

Maria of Antioch, rival claimant to the Kingdom of Jerusalem to King Hugh of Cyprus, turns up for the Council to acquire Papal backing.

Monday 7 May. Council opens at cathedral in Lyons, out of reach of Charles' influence, with Pope presiding. Further vacancies in the Papacy are to be resolved by quicker elections, with only ten days' grace allowed after the date set for conclave for latecomers to arrive and then the Cardinals are to meet in private and have their living-conditions gradually worsened to induce them to a quick election. The Crusade is discussed without agreement, and its only lay enthusiast King James of Aragon soon leaves to rejoin his mistress Berengaria. The French ambassador Erard of St. Valery claims a general Crusade to Holy Land is futile.

24 June. Byzantine delegation arrives and greeted with kiss of peace by Pope and Cardinals; *6 July* reunion of Churches confirmed as Michael's and synod's submissions are read out in translation and Akropolites swears adherence to papal primacy and Latin creed (including 'filioque') in Michael's name; Pope preaches sermon on gratitude that Greeks have freely seen in error of their ways.

4 July. Sixteen Mongol envoys attend the Council on Abagha's behalf to arrange Crusade and concurrent Mongol attack on Syria; one is baptised. The Pope sends a message back without giving the date.

Michael's army invades Charles' Albanian dominions from Berat, captures Butrinto, and unsuccessfully besieges Dyrrachium and Aviona.

Nicephorus and John reject Michael's embassies' calls to accept reunion of churches; Michael's brother John Palaeologus invades Thessaly and besieges John in Neopatras while Cuman mercenaries rampage, but John escapes from town and goes to Thebes to secure aid of Duke John of Athens; 300 Athenian knights relieve siege and Palaeologus retreats, protected from pursuit by Byzantine fleet under Philanthropenos in Gulf of Volos; John Palaeologus dies *Autumn?* on return to capital.

Philanthropenos' fleet attacks Latins on Euboea; Venetian ships aid Lombard Lords and attack Byzantines at sea off Demetrias, and Byzantine ships are driven ashore but Palaeologus' men in port reinforce their crews and they rejoin battle and win; Latin fleet heavily defeated but Philanthropenos wounded and Athenian reinforcements save Euboea as Byzantines land.

28 July. Gregory writes to Charles, Philip of Courtenay, and Michael requesting a one-year truce between them and Abbot Bernard of Monte Cassino visits Naples and Constantinople; one-year truce from *1 May*

1275 agreed but in effect none in Albania or Achala.

Michael promises to support Gregory's Crusade if Charles refrains from attacking him.

? Michael hires landless knight from Vicenza, Licario, a brilliant naval captain, to raise fleet and retake Aegean islands.

1275 ITALY

January. Genoa and its 'Ghibbeline' allies in northern Italy recognise Alfonso X of Castile as their sovereign in return for his military aid against Charles.

BYZANTIUM

Licario launches brilliant campaign in Aegean against Duke Marco Sanudo, Venetian lord of Naxos (and feudatory of the defunct 'Latin Empire'); retakes the Sporades, Ceos, Siphnos, Los, Amorgos, Santorini/Thera, and Cythera.

Licario lands in Euboea and retakes all towns and castles except capital of Chalcis/Negroponte; he defeats William of Villehardouin and Charles' Marshal Dreux de Beaumont when they come to the Lombards' aid; Michael grants Euboea to Licario as fief.

Michael grants Phocaea as fief to Genoese brothers, Benedict and Manuel Zaccaria. Geoffrey de Briel, Lord of Karytaina, and Angevin reinforcements save Achaia from Byzantine invasion that reaches Skorta, but all of Laconia is now permanently lost.

9 January. Patriarch Joseph dismissed and replaced *26 May* by Michael's pro-'Union' convert, John Beccus; dismissals and imprisonment for most of clerical and lay leadership to accept Union.

ITALY

May. Pope persuades Alfonso of Castile to abandon his Genoese allies and their league against Charles, but the rebels continue successes against Charles' nephew Robert of Artois in Lombardy.

Summer. Genoese fleet raids Trapani in Sicily and raids the Bay of Naples.

ARMENIA/EGYPT

Baibars raids the Cilician plain but does not enter the highlands.

FRANCE

Philip III takes the Cross to go on Crusade, but does not proceed with any plans.

SPAIN

Moroccan ‘Marinid’ dynasty Caliph Abu Yusuf Yaqub undertakes a rare expedition to Spain to assist the Moslem ‘fight-back’ from Granada, marching across Andalucia nearly to Seville.

GERMANY

Emperor Rudolf of Habsburg takes the Cross.

September. At the Pope’s prompting he agrees alliance with Charles of Anjou, but this does not save the Angevins from military collapse in Lombardy.

PALESTINE

Death of Bohemund VI of (Antioch and) Tripoli, aged in late 30s; his son Bohemund VII is only 14 so King Hugh claims the regency as the nearest male relative. His claim is denied by Bohemund VI’s Armenian widow Sibylla, who assumes the regency as per Armenian custom and sends her son to her brother King Leo III’s court; Bishop Bartholemew of Tortosa assumes control of the government. Hugh arrives at Tripoli and is denied support as Sibylla and Bartholemew are purging the unpopular Roman intruders put into office by the late Countess Lucienne, and the latter’s relative (Bohemund VII’s uncle) Bishop Paul of Tripoli is left isolated apart from Templar support.

Hugh however succeeds in rescuing Lattakieh, the last town of the Principality of Antioch, which Baibars’ army has besieged as it is not technically covered by the Mameluke truce with Tripoli; Hugh negotiates withdrawal in return for 20,000 dinars per annum.

ITALY

December. Urging his legates to press the kings of Europe on Eastern expedition and require them to spend Church tithes only on Crusade, Gregory falls ill at Florence.

1276 ITALY

10 January. Death of Gregory X at Arezzo; *21 January* Dominican friar Pierre of Tarantaise, ex-Archbishop of Lyons (so has worked with Charles of Anjou, as ruler of Provence), elected Pope Innocent V as placatory gesture by the cardinals to Charles.

Charles comes from Rome to meet Innocent at Viterbo and escort him to Rome; *22 February* Innocent consecrated at Rome.

Charles has to abandon war with Genoa and recognise their ‘Ghibelline’ government.

Weakening under Charles' anti-Byzantine pressure, Innocent promotes Crusade including Byzantine participation but also warns Michael that Charles has justice on his side as Latins were violently ejected from Constantinople; he insists that Byzantine lay and clerical leadership take individual oaths to Union to reassure him of their sincerity but 22 *June* dies as his legates set out.

ITALY

11 *July*. Charles' partisan Ottobuono Fieschi (Genoese) elected Pope Hadrian V in election held at the Lateran, surrounded by Charles' guards.

SPAIN

27 *July*. Death of King James I of Aragon, aged 68, after a 63-year reign (the longest in Spanish history); succeeded by his elder son by Yolande of Hungary, Peter III (born 1239) who is married to Constance of Hohenstaufen. Peter's younger brother James becomes the first king of the sub-kingdom of Majorca.

ITALY

18 *August*. Pope Hadrian dies suddenly at Viterbo.

Senior cardinal John Orsini leads cardinals to reject any more French allies as the next Pope.

8 *September*. Portuguese theologian, Archbishop Pedro of Braga, elected Pope John XXI; Innocent's terms for continued reunion and restraint of Charles endorsed.

Michael sends John a copy of his personal oath to Union, and son Andronicus writes endorsing his adherence; Patriarch John and his synod send endorsement of Papal primacy and 'filioque' clause.

Licario continues successes in Aegean, and Venetians reopen talks with Michael; John of Thessaly defeats a second Byzantine attack; Michael releases Duke John of Athens on payment of large ransom.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/ITALY

Autumn. Abagha sends two Georgians, John and James Vaseli, to Italy to visit the Pope and then go on to Edward I, promising assistance for the next Crusade.

PALESTINE

October. The Templars buy the village of 'La Fauconnerie' near Acre, without bothering to seek legal permission from the weakened government

of King Hugh (whose resources are less than those of the Orders since Baibars restricted his realm to a few places on the coast). This is apparently the final insult for the King, who is on poor terms with the Templars (and the Venetians) since he reconciled with the Montforts of Tyre (Genoese allies), and he returns to Tyre, en route to Cyprus, without bothering to appoint a bailli to act as his regent at Acre.

Patriarch Thomas, the Hospitallers (now only owning Marqab inland), the Teutonic Knights, the Genoese, and the 'Commune' of Acre send to ask Hugh to appoint a bailli; he eventually relents and names Balian of Sidon, son of the late John (of Ibelin) of Arsuf, but leaves for Cyprus anyway.

BYZANTIUM

Winter. Patriarch John holds synod in Constantinople to reaffirm loyalty to Union; in Neopatras John of Thessaly holds an anti-Union synod of bishops from Epirus and Thessaly and they anathematize Michael, Patriarch, and Pope.

Nicephorus of Epirus sends embassy to Charles.

TURKISH SULTANATE

While 'pervane' Sulaiman is escorting Sultan Kaikhusrau's sister to Azerbaijan to marry 'Ilkhan' Abagha, a coalition of the great emirs ruling semi-autonomous districts revolts against Mongol tutelage in secret alliance with Sultan Baibars of Egypt; Baibars fails to come to their aid and Sulaiman returns with Mongol troops to defeat them.

1277 ITALY/PALESTINE

18 March. Formal cession by Maria of Antioch of her claim to Jerusalem to Charles of Anjou, in return for 1,000 lb, of gold and £4,000 per annum.

EGYPT/ARMENIA/TURKISH SULTANATE

Baibars invades Anatolia to end Mongol influence over the Seljuks, assisted by dissident emirs; *16 April* he defeats Seljuk/Mongol army with support of rebel emirs and Turcomans at Albistan; *23 April* he occupies Kayseri and claims rule of the Sultanate, but is short of supplies and with Abagha's Mongols advancing he retires to Syria.

May. 'Karamanid' dynasty, now autonomous rulers of Isauria, and the 'Menteshe' dynasty of Caria sack Konya/Iconium and install a pretended son of Izz-ed-Din, Cimir, as their puppet ruler; other disturbances in western Anatolia as Abagha marches into Kayseri to restore Mongol rule and execute dissenters.

ITALY

20 May. Pope John XXI dies of injuries after roof of study collapses.

ITALY/PALESTINE

Charles of Anjou secures the disputed title of King of Jerusalem by purchase from King Hugh's rival, his aunt Maria (see entry above and for 1268).

He sends Roger of San Severino, Count of Marsico, to Acre to act as his representative, supported by Hugh's rivals the Templars and Venice. Roger arrives and presents his appointment as bailli and documentary backing from Maria and Pope John; Balian objects, but as the Hospitalers will not fight for him he hands over the citadel to Roger. Roger raises Charles' standard and calls on all to do homage to him as bailli, and the barons (objecting to Roger's ignoring of the 'High Court's right to adjudicate) send to Hugh to ask him to release them from their oaths of loyalty to him. He does not reply, and Roger threatens to confiscate the estates of anyone who does not do homage but allows a final appeal to Hugh. He does not reply, so they do homage.

The new government has easier relationship with Baibars, Charles' ally in Sicilian-Egyptian commercial treaty.

Roger appoints Odo Poillechien as Seneschal, Richard of Neublan as Constable, and James Vidal as Marshal; all Angevin loyalists.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Spring. Byzantine/Venetian treaty renewed, and Venetians ask for protection against Licario.

April. Michael and his son Andronicus swear to uphold primacy of Rome and Creed in service at Hagia Sophia, and signed documents sent to Pope.

Death of Charles' son Philip of Anjou, married to Isabella of Achaia; Charles insists that terms of marriage-alliance stand and he is Isabella's heir to Achaia not her sister.

PALESTINE

King Hugh lands at Tyre unexpectedly to attempt to rally support against the Angevin government at Acre under Roger of San Severino; John of Montfort, lord of Tyre, backs him but the Templars under William of Beaujeu back Roger and nobody defects. After a four-month stalemate the time allotted for Cypriot vassals to attend their King on the mainland expires and they refuse to stay longer; Hugh has to retire to Cyprus.

EGYPT/SYRIA

1 July. Sudden death of Sultan Baibars, aged around 60, after allegedly drinking poisoned wine which he intended to use on one of the vassal-rulers with his army on the Anatolian campaign, the Ayyubid ruler Al-Qahir of Kerak. He is succeeded by his weak son Baraka Khan, who is overshadowed by the senior Mameluke generals.

TURKISH SULTANATE

2 August. Abagha executes 'Pervane' Sulaiman and institutes closer Mongol rule of Sultanate; Konya and other cities retaken from Turcomans and Fakhr-al-Din Ali of Kutayha/Cotyaenum and the 'Germiyan' dynasty of Phrygia are among pro-Mongol lords who assist weakened central government; Mehmed Beg's Karamanid dynasty increasingly independent in south-east.

SYRIA

Bohemund of Tripoli goes back on his promise of giving the heiress of the Aleman family to John Embraico, his cousin and brother of Guy the lord of Jebail; the replacement candidate is the nephew and nominee of powerful chief minister Bishop Bartholemew of Tortosa, but Guy kidnaps the girl and carries out the marriage in defiance of them. He flees to the Templars for support, and Bohemund demolishes their headquarters at Tripoli and chops down their forest at Montroque. Grand Master William of Beaujeu leads a Templar demonstration of force outside Tripoli and then sacks the Prince's castle of Botrun, but 12 of his knights are captured during an unsuccessful attack on Nephin castle.

Bohemund marches on Jebail but is defeated in a fierce skirmish outside by the Embriaco troops and Templars; his cousin Balian of Sidon is killed. He accepts a truce leaving Jebail in revolt.

ITALY

Four Italian and four French cardinals meet at Viterbo to elect Pope, with the requirements for quick election laid down by Pope Gregory repealed so their stalemate lasts for months; eventually the citizens of Viterbo pull the roof off their meeting-place to pressurise them.

25 November. Cardinal Giovanni Gaetano Orsini elected Pope (Nicholas III). The senior serving cardinal, he is a proud Roma aristocrat suspected both of nepotism for the Orsini family and of a grudge against Charles for refusing them a marriage-alliance.

1278 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

Nicholas forbids Charles to attack Byzantium but instructs legates in Constantinople to secure personal, verbal commitment to Union from

Michael, Andronicus, and every member of clergy; a papal legate to reside permanently at Constantinople and Byzantine Church to beg for absolution for schism.

Michael agrees to legates' demands, but complains of antipathy of majority of his own people including senior generals and bishops that makes it difficult to enforce Union and claims to find it hard to recruit trustable officials to carry out orders, Trebizond, Epirus, and Thessaly named as leaders of Eastern opposition.

Patriarch John Beccus, disheartened, retires to monastery.

MOREA/ITALY

Death of William of Villehardouin; under terms of treaty with Charles, his daughter Isabella succeeds under Angevin tutelage despite the fact that her husband, Philip's death would normally leave his father Charles with no rights on her lands. Charles sends out bailli Galeran of Ivry who installs harsh French officials.

30 August. Charles renounces the senatorship of and garrison in Rome in order to satisfy Pope Nicholas and secure alliance against Emperor-elect Rudolf; Nicholas makes his brother Matteo Orsini 'senator'.

Nicholas' nephew Cardinal Malabranca replaces Charles as Vicar of Tuscany.

SPAIN

Mohammed 'al-Faqih', Nasrid emir of Granada, conquers his only serious remaining Islamic rival in Al-Andalus, the emirate of Malaga; he gives the town's governorship to his son-in-law.

SYRIA

Bohemund is defeated attacking Jebail at the end of the truce, but a Templar naval attack on Tripoli is driven back by a storm. Bohemund then launches a naval raid on Templar castle at Sidon. Hospitaller Grand Master Nicholas Lorgue arranges another truce, preserving the status quo with the Embriacos and Templars defying Bohemund.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

October. Pope Nicholas' legates sent to Constantinople with instructions to tour Empire enforcing adherence to Union, require personal adherence of leadership to faith, excommunicate opponents, and require Papal confirmation of all church appointments.

1279 | PORTUGAL

16 February. Death of King Alfonso III, aged 68, during revolt by his elder son Denis (born *9 October 1261*); Denis becomes king but is initially challenged by his younger brother on the grounds that the Church had not recognised his parents' marriage when he was born.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

Spring. Bishop Bartholomew of Grosseto's legates in Constantinople, and inform perturbed Michael of Pope's terms; he shows them chained Imperial relatives in prison to show how far he will go to enforce Union, and exiles ex-Patriarch Joseph to Black Sea island.

Spring. Nicephorus of Epirus becomes Charles' ally and vassal.

August. Legates address synod at Constantinople, and they sign a complicated statement that is impossible to translate precisely into Latin with Michael adding forged signatures of those bishops not present as Patriarch resumes duties.

SPAIN/TUNISIA

Peter III of Aragon sends expedition to assist a friendly candidate, Ibrahim, win the Hafsids throne at Tunis in succession-dispute, in return for trading-privileges.

EGYPT

August. The senior Mameluke general Qalavun leads rebel army from Syria on Cairo and forces Sultan Beraqa Khan to abdicate in favour of his younger brother Salamish; Qalavun is the real ruler.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

August. Charles of Anjou appoints giant Burgundian knight, Hugues de Sully, as commander-in chief in Albania, based at Dyrrachium, to prepare invasion of Empire.

? John of Procida, leader of pro-Hohenstaufen refugees from Sicily in Aragon, in Constantinople to secure aid from Michael for revolt.

EGYPT

December. Qalavun deposes Sultan Salamish and proclaims himself Sultan.

1280 | BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Michael sends second son Constantine to defeat invasion down Vardar valley by Stephen Dragutin of Serbia, Charles' ally.

Michael drives Turkish raiders back from around Nicaea and rebuilds fortresses in Sangarius valley. His son Andronicus campaigns further south to recover the upper Maeander valley and rebuilds the town of Tralles, but the gains are temporary.

ITALY

Spring? The anti-Angevin plotter and Hohenstaufen loyalist John of Procida, exiled partisan of Manfred living in Aragon as the Royal Chancellor, follows up secret visits to Sicily and to Emperor-elect Rudolf by a call on Pope Nicholas at Viterbo. He allegedly receives Papal approval to arrange revolt in Sicily against Charles in the name of Manfred's daughter Constance, married to King Peter III of Aragon. He then goes on to visit Michael VIII in Constantinople and receives 30,000 oz. of gold.

EGYPT/SYRIA

April. Sonqor Al-Ashqar, the 'Red Falcon', senior Mameluke general governing Damascus, revolts against Qalavun and proclaims himself Sultan; Qalavun prepares to invade.

June. Qalavun attacks Damascus and wins battle near the city; Sonqor flees to northern Syria and seeks Mongol aid.

ITALY

22 August. Sudden death of Nicholas III at summer residence, Soriano; prolonged election as Charles tries to secure favourable candidate.

? John of Procida secures backing of Sicilian plotters and returns to Aragon to persuade King Peter to invade in 1282.

TURKISH SULTANATE

After death of Izz-ed-Din in exile in Crimea, *Summer* his son Ghiyath-al-Din Mas'ud returns to Anatolia with local Turcoman support, rescues his brother Siyavush who has been captured at Sinope trying to raise revolt, and goes to Persia to secure a Mongol 'yarliq' as co-ruler of Sultanate, based in Karamanid areas in south-east; Kaikhusrau remains main ruler under tutelage of Mongol general Qongqurtay, and Mas'ud's nephew Ala-ed-Din Kalqobad fails to secure Taurus area in revolt and flees.

BYZANTIUM

Autumn. Hugues de Sully leads Charles' army into Macedonia and besieges Berat; Michael prepares relief-force.

SYRIA

September. A Mongol army sent by Abagha crosses the Euphrates to occupy Aintab and Darbsaq and advances to seize Baghras, commanding the Amanus range near Antioch.

28 October. The Mongols enter Aleppo which is pillaged, and refugees flee south.

The Hospitallers raid from Marqab into the Buqaia, reaching the vicinity of Krak des Chevaliers, while Qalavun is busy collecting his army at Damascus to fight the Mongols. Qalavun advances north, and the smaller Mongol army retreats to the Euphrates; a Mamluke detachment is sent against the Hospitallers but is defeated outside Marqab.

PALESTINE

Autumn. An ambassador from Abagha arrives saying that he will send 100,000 men to Syria in *Spring 1281* and asking for support; he is sent on to tell King Edward I.

ATHENS

Duke John de la Roche dies; succeeded by brother William.

1281 ITALY

22 February. Simon of Brie, French ex-chancellor to Louis IX and Angevin partisan, elected Pope; takes title of Martin IV and sanctions Charles' attack on Byzantium. Charles is restored as 'Senator' in Rome and the Orsini officials sacked and replaced by Angevin partisans.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

'Grand Domestic' Tarchaneoites and 'Grand Stratopedarch' John Synadenus lead expedition to relieve Berat, accompanied by Nicephorus of Epirus' refugee brother Demetrius/Michael Ducas who has defected to Byzantium and married Michael VIII's daughter Anna; *Spring* Tarchaneoites floats supplies down-river on rafts past besiegers to Berat, and then de Sully is captured by Turkish mercenaries while reconnoitring Byzantine lines; his troops panic and Tarchaneoites attacks, and siege is broken as Angevins flee with many officers being captured.

Prisoners are paraded in Constantinople, led by giant de Sully; Michael holds thanksgiving-service and portrays victory on walls of Blachernae Palace.

SYRIA/PALESTINE

April. Qalavun sends an embassy to Acre to suggest extending the current truce with the three Orders (in force to 1282) for another ten years. Some of the ambassadors warn the Christians that there is no point in negotiating with Qalavun as he will soon be overthrown, and bailli Roger of San Severino sends to Qalavun to warn him of the plot. The conspirators are arrested and (3 May) a new truce is signed.

June. Qalavun buys off the rebel Sonqor with rule of Antioch and Apaema provided that he abandons alliance with Abagha.

16 July. Bohemund VII signs a new truce with Qalavun's ambassadors.

ITALY

May. Charles and Rudolf's earlier plan for reconciliation, based on revival of the Kingdom of Arles in the Rhone valley for Charles' eldest son Charles' son Charles Martel, receives Papal approval. Charles Martel is to be married to Rudolf's daughter Clementia. The plan is opposed by Charles' late wife's sister Queen Margaret of France (Louis IX's widow) who wants that part of Provence, her father Count Raymond Berengar's lordship, for herself; she tries to set up a coalition of lords to take it by force. The Duke of Burgundy and Counts of Savoy and St. Pol back her.

3 July. Charles, Philip of Courtenay, and Venice sign alliance under Papal auspices at Orvieto; Venice supplies 80 ships and the others at least 8,000 men for expedition to restore Philip by *April 1283*.

July. Pope Martin excommunicates Michael and *18 November* reaffirms it, declaring Union invalid due to Greek evasion.

SPAIN/TUNISIA

Peter of Aragon receives appeal for help from rebel governor of the port of Constantine, who allegedly offers to become Christian in return for aid against the Hafsid of Tunis; he prepares for an expedition, to Tunisia but ready to be used in Sicily if a revolt occurs.

SYRIA/ARMENIA

September. Abagha sends an army to the Euphrates to recover the fortresses held by the Mamelukes. His brother Mangu Timur simultaneously links up with Leo III's troops in Armenia and advances into the Orontes valley to take Aleppo.

Qalavun advances from Damascus on Homs, as the Hospitallers at Marqab send a few knights to support the invaders in defiance of their Order's official truce with the Mamelukes.

30 October. Mangu Timur clashes with the Mameluke army near Homs; the Hospitallers and Georgians are on the right wing with Leo III's Armenians. The Christians rout the Mameluke left wing, which is led by the ex-rebel Sonqor backed by Turcomans, while the Mongol left wing holds back the Ayyubid troops from Hama on the Mameluke right wing; in the centre Qalavun attacks Mangu Timur's own troops, and the Mongol prince is wounded and orders a retreat. The Armenians have to extricate themselves and fight their way to safety.

The Mongols retire across the Euphrates; the Mamelukes march as far as the river, which remains the frontier in an uneasy truce.

EPIRUS

September. Nicephorus signs alliance with Charles and Venice.

BYZANTIUM/ARAGON/ITALY

Autumn. Benedict Zaccaria, co-Lord of Phocaea, arrives in Aragon as Michael VIII's envoy after a call on Genoa, bringing King Peter II promises of Byzantine money in return for securing his wife Constance (Manfred's daughter)'s claim to Naples and Sicily and deposing Charles.

? Michael's agents join John of Procida's conspirators in Sicily to stir up revolt as Charles' armada assembles at Messina; Michael is supposed to have promised 60,000 'hyperpera' per annum.

1282 SYRIA

January. Guy Embriaco smuggles himself into Tripoli to lead a coup against his foe Prince Bohemund VII, but finds on his arrival at the Templar headquarters that despite their pre-arrangement the commander is not there. He suspects treachery and retires to the Hospitaller headquarters to hide, but Bohemund is told and arrives with his knights to arrest him. Guy is cornered in a tower of the Hospitaller building with his brothers and cousin and a few hours later they surrender on promise of their lives. Bohemund then has them taken to Nephin and starved to death.

The Genoese back their co-nationals the Embriacos, as do the Montforts of Tyre, but their force fails to reach Jebail before Bohemund; he annexes Jebail.

ITALY

Charles prepares for his expedition to Constantinople, at Naples; he is warned by his nephew Philip III of France that Peter of Aragon's armada assembling at the mouth of the Ebro may be aimed against him not Tunis.

Easter Monday 30 March. At Church of the Holy Spirit, Palermo, a French sergeant called Druet insults a young married woman, her husband kills him, and French party are massacred, then the Vespers bells sound as locals spread the news and join in – hundreds of French killed in 'Sicilian Vespers' massacre.

31 March. The 'Justiciar' of Sicily, John of St. Remy, who has fled Palermo, and the garrison at the castle of Vicari near Palermo, are massacred during surrender-talks.

'Commune' declared in Palermo and revolt spreads across Sicily, though Charles' garrison holds Messina under the Vicar of Sicily, Herbert of Orleans, holds out for another month; the 'Commune' of Palermo appeals to the Pope to take Sicily under his protection. The Genoese merchant Cassano is deputed to go to Constantinople where Michael VIII gives thanks and declares he was God's instrument in delivering the Sicilians.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/EGYPT

1 April. Death of 'Ilkhan' Abagha. His brother Teguder succeeds him and soon converts from Nestorian Christianity to Islam as 'Ahmed'. He abandons the Christian alliance and agrees peace with Qalavun, but faces complaints by his disgruntled senior lords to his suzerain Kubilai. Backed by Kubilai, Abagha's son Arghun soon commences a rebellion.

ITALY

28 April. Charles' fleet at Messina captured and burnt as revolt breaks out in the town, and 'Mategriffon' castle is forced to surrender.

The 'Communes' of rebel Sicily send envoys to the Pope, but he denounces them and (7 May) excommunicates the rebels.

Pope Martin supports Charles' rights to Sicily in vain; *25 July* Charles' army lands at Messina for ineffective siege, while King Peter of Aragon sails to north Africa on planned Crusade and sets up base at Collo, but keeps in touch with events. The governor of Constantine has been executed and the town retaken so his original purpose in invading is ended.

Sicilian emissaries come to Peter declaring his Hohenstaufen wife Constance their legitimate sovereign and *30 August* he lands at Trapani; *4 September* Peter proclaimed King by 'Commune' at Palermo; Charles is advised by his military strategists to retire and return with a larger army later, preferably once the Sicilians are tired of Aragonese rule.

17 September. Charles receives Peter's ambassadors, denies he or Constance has any claim on Sicily, but offers to evacuate the island as Thomas of Acerra advises him.

The Angevins abandon siege of Messina and *2 October* Peter enters; he blockades Reggio on mainland and *11 October* his fleet defeats a sortie by Charles' ships.

Peter lands troops in Calabria to besiege Reggio after Charles leaves, and in the following months an idea is floated to save lives by a 'duel of the kings' over the rule of Sicily, Peter versus Charles in single combat. As Charles is much older, it is suggested more hopefully that each king will name 100 champions and they will have a mass-duel in Bordeaux in *1285*, with Edward I of England arbitrating.

MOREA

Needing all his troops to fight Sicilians and Achaian goodwill, Charles appoints local Achaian lord Guy de Dramelay of Chalandritza as bailli of Achaia.

BYZANTIUM

Late Summer. Michael tours the Sangarius frontier again, and plans war against John Ducas of Thessaly for attack on frontier; *September* he returns to Constantinople and *October* joins army, and 4,000 Tartars sent by son-in-law Nogaj, in Thrace to prepare campaign.

Michael is unwell and assures Empress Theodora he will not go further than Thrace; *late November* he sails from Selymbria to Rhaedestus through storm, but illness worsens as he reaches camp; *Friday, 11 December* he dies at village of Pachomius, aged 58, proclaiming Andronicus his heir.

Andronicus II succeeds aged 23, and proclaims 5-year-old son Michael co-Emperor; Michael VIII is buried in mound near camp without church service as excommunicated in West and thus technically in East too, but later buried at Selymbria.

Andronicus renounces the Union of Churches; all Michael's lay and clerical prisoners released.

26 December. Patriarch John Beccus exiled to monastery in capital; *31 December* sick and elderly ex-Patriarch Joseph restored to Patriarchate on stretcher amidst popular rejoicing; monks mutilated and blinded for anti-Unionism paraded as martyrs, Hagia Sophia purified, and those who favoured Union or took communion with Latins required to do penance.

1283 ITALY

January. Pope Martin issues Crusading indulgences for troops fighting for his champions the Angevins against Aragon in Sicily.

BYZANTIUM

Anti-Unionist campaign continues amid calls for trials of pro-Unionist leaders like Beccus as traitors; *January* Beccus found guilty of heresy and exiled to Brusa, and all documents relating to Union burnt; Michael VIII refused Christian burial or customary Church commemoration.

23 March. Joseph dies; Andronicus II chooses eminent lay scholar George of Cyprus as non-controversial successor and *Palm Sunday, 28 March* he is installed as Patriarch Gregory; Empress Theodora and Patriarchs of Antioch and Alexandria have to recant of Unionism.

ITALY

13 January. Pope Martin pronounces the war against King Peter to be a Crusade and offers full Crusading indulgences to all volunteers. A major political blunder, this openly aligns the Papacy and its control of nominating Crusades with one Italian alliance.

13 February. Charles' eldest son, Charles, the Prince of Salerno, evacuates Reggio; after the Angevin army leaves King Peter lands nearby to occupy the town. Peter invites the Calabrians to revolt; at San Martino Prince Charles holds 'Parliament' to promulgate reforms and reassure the locals of the Angevins' good governance.

The Pope sends envoys to Philip III of France to persuade him to invade Aragon and depose him.

16 April. Peter's wife Constance, heiress of Sicily, and their younger children join him in Mesina; *19 April* he announces that his second son James will succeed him in Sicily and his eldest son Alfonso inherit Aragon.

6 May. Peter leaves Trapani for Aragon, with Constance remaining as Regent and John of Procida as Chancellor. He proceeds to Bordeaux to await the arrival of Charles for the proposed mass-duel of champions.

The Pope has banned it so King Edward does not turn up to preside, but his governor of Guienne, Jean de Grailly, arranges it.

1 June. To avoid accusations of cowardice, both Peter and Charles do turn up but they each parade at the Bordeaux tournament-ground separately to claim the other has failed to turn up so they are the victors. Once the charade is over they leave.

ITALY

Roger of Lauria, veteran Hohenstaufen Sicilian admiral now in Aragonese service, destroys the new Angevin fleet en route to relieve the Aragonese siege of Malta. On land, the war is bogged down as the two armies confront each other near Reggio; both are short of money and Peter is failing to send enough money from Aragon to avoid extortionate demands of the Sicilians to pay for his troops.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Qongqurtay, Mongol Viceroy in Sultanate, marches into Persia to dispute succession of Abagha's brother Teguder (Ahmad), taking with him Sultan Kaikhusrau, but dies en route; Teguder decides to recognise Ghiyath al-Din Mas'ud as sole Sultan in retaliation.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

June. Qalavun sends envoys to Acre and proposes the extension of the truce for ten years; chief commander Odo Poilechien arranges for the 'Commune' of Acre and the Templars (Athlit and Sidon) to sign the new truce as well as him so the agreement is not only in the name of a regime unrecognised by King Hugh (and backed by the collapsing power of Charles of Anjou). Tyre and Beirut are not covered by the truce; the latter has now passed from the late ruler Isabella to her sister Eschiva, wife of the Lord of Tyre's brother Humphrey who is thus anti-Acre.

Late July. King Hugh sails for Acre, backed by the Montforts of Tyre, to challenge the Angevin regime in Acre; *1 August* the wind blows him to Beirut not Acre.

Hugh sails to Tyre, but his land-forces are ambushed en route down the coast by local Moslems and he blames Templars for arranging it; he arrives at Tyre, but none of the communities of Acre send assistance to him and the stalemate of his previous invasion occurs again.

FRANCE

August. Cardinal John Cholet arrives in Paris to offer the throne of Aragon to Philip III's younger son, Count Charles of Valois, if Philip will invade. The Papal project has the backing of Peter's jealous younger brother King James of Majorca, an Aragonese feudatory who has been promised independence.

PALESTINE

3 November. Death of Hugh's son Bohemund disheartens him; after Hugh's brother-in-law and recent host John of Tyre dies too he has to rely on the latter's younger brother Humphrey, whose accession he

confirms in return for a promise that he can buy Tyre back at will for 150 bezants.

December. The four months' service legally required of Cypriot nobles on the mainland expires; they return home.

1284 FRANCE

3 February. Philip III accepts the offer of Aragon for Charles of Valois. He pressurises the Pope to offer him more Church tithes (which can be used for a Crusade) to pay for the war.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

4 March. Death of King Hugh at Tyre, aged around 45; succeeded by his eldest son John, aged 17.

13 May. John crowned King of Cyprus at Nicosia; he is later crowned King of Jerusalem at Tyre.

TURKISH SULTANATE

March. Ghiyath-al-Din Mas'ud installed in Konya as sole ruler; Mongols execute cousin Kaikhusrau; Fakhr-al-Din Ali appointed as Vizier.

SPAIN

4 April. Death of King Alfonso X of Castile and Leon, aged 62, after a 31-year reign; succeeded by his younger but only surviving son by Violante of Aragon, Sancho IV (born *13 May 1258*). The latter's elder brother Ferdinand de la Cerda dies in *July 1275*, and his sons Alfonso and Ferdinand are disinherited and later make trouble for their supplanters.

ITALY

May. As Charles of Anjou leaves Provence with new fleet, Sicilian admiral Roger of Loria blockades Naples and raids coastal ports; *5 June* he captures Charles of Salerno in battle in Bay of Naples and destroys his fleet; the younger Charles is taken to Sicily and in prisoner-exchange Sicilians force Angevins to free Manfred and Helena Ducaena's daughter Beatrice after 18 years in prison.

6 June. Charles of Anjou arrives at Gaeta with reinforcements, too late to save his main fleet.

Charles of Anjou returns to Naples to face more revolts against French in Italy, *August* he unsuccessfully besieges Reggio, and retires to Brindisi abandoning Calabria.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

10 August. ‘Ilkhan’ Teguder/Ahmed murdered in a palace conspiracy by leading nobles annoyed at his turning Moslem and his pro-Mameluke orientation; his rebel brother Arghun, holding out in Khorasan, is invited to take the throne and returns the ‘Ilkhanate’ to a pro-Crusader orientation. He relies for advice on the new, Chinese Nestorian Patriarch of the Nestorian Church, Mark (Yahbhallaha).

1285 ITALY

7 January. Charles of Anjou dies at Foggia, aged 58; with his heir Charles of Salerno in captivity, French officials under Count Robert of Artois run regency but war continues on papal insistence. Charles has willed that if his son is not released the latter’s son Charles Martel will become Count of Anjou and Provence and King of Naples/Sicily.

MOREA

Regency government of Angevin lands installs Duke William of Athens as bailli of Achaia.

TURKISH SULTANATE

January. The late Sultan Kaikhusrau’s widow persuades new Mongol ruler Arghun to grant their small sons half the Sultanate; Arghun’s brother Geikhatu with army installs them at Konya.

ITALY

29 March. Death of Pope Martin IV at Perugia; *2 April* Giacomo Savelli, aristocratic Roman, elected (Honorius IV) and continues Martin’s plan to back Philip III of France in invading Aragon.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

17 April. Qalavun arrives with siege-train at Marqab, the Hospitaller headquarters in County of Tripoli, to open siege. The Order’s weakened neighbours, Eschiva of Beirut and Margaret of Tyre, secure truces from the Mamelukes so do not send help to the castle.

20 May. Death of King John, aged 18. His 14-year-old brother Henry succeeds as king of both realms.

23 May. The ‘Tower of Hope’ at Marqab collapses as a mine is set afire underneath it during an assault, although the collapsing stonework drives back a simultaneous Mameluke attack on the walls. The garrison open talks.

25 *May*. Surrender of Marqab; the 25 Hospitaller knights inside are allowed to leave on horseback with their weapons, but everyone else has to leave without possessions. They retire to Tortosa en route to Tripoli.

24 *June*. Henry crowned King of Cyprus. He sends envoy Julien le Jaune to Acre to ask for recognition as its rightful king and the transfer of allegiance back to the House of Lusignan from that of Anjou, with Charles of Anjou's death and his heir's captivity making the Angevin alliance useless to Acre. The 'Commune' and the Orders agree, the Templars most reluctantly; Odo of Poillechien however refuses to resign as bailli and the French regiment backs him.

SPAIN

May. The Crusade against Aragon opens as King James of Majorca lands in Rousillon to join the French; *June*. Philip III besieges Gerona but his vastly superior army cannot take the town and is hit by an epidemic.

4 *September*. The French fleet off the Rousillon coast is destroyed by Roger of Lauria, who has been summoned from Sicily.

5 *September*. Fall of Gerona. However Roger's fleet lands troops at Rosas to cut the French supply-route, and with the army undermined by sickness King Philip agrees to retreat.

5 *October*. Death of Philip III at Perpignan; he is succeeded by his elder son Philip IV, aged 17, who abandons the Crusade and asks Edward I to mediate with Aragon.

10 *November*. Death of King Peter of Aragon, aged 46; succeeded in Aragon by his eldest son Alfonso (III), aged 21, and in Sicily by his second son James, aged 18, under the regency of Queen Constance.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

Arghun writes to Pope Honorius asking for a military alliance against the Moslems.

1286 PALESTINE

4 *June*. Henry arrives at Acre to be welcomed as King Henry II, but the Grand Masters of the Orders boycott the ceremonies to avoid annoying the Angevins and Odo Poillechien refuses to let the King into the castle.

Henry assures the French regiment and Odo that they can have safe conduct out, and the Church mediates; the decision of the Grand Masters to ask Odo to leave is crucial in his agreement to do so.

29 *June*. Henry enters the castle of Acre and takes up residence in the royal quarters there.

FRANCE/SPAIN

July. Fourteen-month truce between France and Aragon agreed in Paris.

PALESTINE

14 July. Coronation of Henry as King at Tyre, by Bishop Bonnacorso of Gloria. The final coronation of a King of Jerusalem in the Holy Land.

A few weeks later, after celebrations at Acre, he returns to Cyprus leaving his uncle Baldwin of Ibelin as regent.

ITALY/SPAIN

King Charles II of Naples, now an Aragonese prisoner in Catalonia, agrees to abandon his claim to Sicily (and Reggio and the tribute due from Tunis) and hand it over to the Aragonese claimant King James. The treaty however needs Papal approval, which is not forthcoming. The Papal legate in Naples, Cardinal Gerard, rallies the regency to pay for a new invasion of Sicily.

1287 BYZANTIUM

Easter. ‘Ilkhan’ Arghun’s ambassador to Western princes offering help for an attack on Moslems, the Chinese Nestorian monk Rabban Sauma, visits Constantinople on his way to Italy from the Mongol court in Azerbaijan. Originally a pilgrim from the Chinese Nestorian community in Beijing to Jerusalem in c. 1282, Rabban Sauma was unable to progress beyond Iraq due to the unsettled state of the countryside and has been living at the Nestorian monastery of Mar Michael; his pupil and fellow-pilgrim Mark has been made the Nestorian Patriarch and suggested him as ambassador to Arghun

ITALY

3 April. Death of Pope Honorius IV; long vacancy in office due to factional struggles.

PALESTINE

Early April? Qalavun sends troops to occupy earthquake-damaged Lattakieh, claiming that it is part of the ex-Principality of Antioch so not covered by the current truce with Tripoli. His emir, Turantai, cannot take the offshore island fort where the defenders flee, and has to blockade it.

20 April. The fort surrenders after Turantai repairs the causeway to it and prepares to attack.

April. A Genoese fleet under Thomas Spinola and Orlando Ascheri arrives off the coast; Ascheri attacks Pisan shipping and then lands at Tyre while Spinola sails to Alexandria to secure Mameluke neutrality. The intention is to attack the Pisans at Acre from Tyre, but the Venetian community there helps the Pisans to block the harbour-entrance.

31 May. Ascheri defeats the Pisan and Venetian fleets off Acre but cannot enter the harbour. Spinola arrives to join him for a blockade of the coast of the Kingdom, until the Grand Masters mediate and persuade them to allow free movement of local shipping.

ITALY

May–June. Unsuccessful papal-financed naval expedition from Naples to Sicily to besiege Augusta, near Syracuse; the siege is abandoned.

15 June. Rabban Sauma, arriving in Italy, witnesses the eruption of Mount Vesuvius.

23 June. Roger of Loria's fleet destroys French/Angevin expedition, ready to reinforce the invaders of Sicily, under Count of Flanders in Bay of Naples, watched by the Mongol ambassador Rabban Sauma. The Count and many of his Flemish and Provençal noble lieutenants are captured and ransomed.

Rabban Sauma arrives in Rome and presents Arghun's message to the cardinals; they arrange for him to tour the pilgrim-sites of the city as no negotiations are possible until a new Pope is elected.

ITALY/FRANCE

July. With Edward I of England mediating, Aragon and the captive Charles II agree term of treaty of Oleron, Bearn; Charles to be freed in return for 50,000 pieces of silver and his three eldest sons and 50 noblemen as hostages; he is to mediate a settlement satisfactory to all parties and if he fails in three years he will either return to captivity or hand over Provence to Aragon. The Papacy and France will have to approve.

BYZANTIUM

Expedition recovers Dyrrachium and Avlona from preoccupied Angevin Kingdom's garrisons.

MOREA/ATHENS

Death of Duke William of Athens; succeeded in Athens by 14-year-old son Guy II and in Achaia as bailli by Nicholas of St. Omer, co-feudatory of Thebes; Guy's mother Helena Ducaena, daughter of John of Thessaly, regent in Athens.

FRANCE/ENGLAND

September. Rabban Sauma goes on to Paris to present letters from Arghun to Philip IV, who expresses approval of a joint Crusader/Mongol attack on the Moslems in Palestine and offers to assist it; he then does likewise to King Edward I of England who is currently residing at Bordeaux. Edward's enthusiasm is more obvious but neither will set a date for the campaign.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

19 October. Death of Bohemund VII of Tripoli; succeeded by his sister Lucia, married to the Angevin noble Narjot de Toucy and living in Apulia. The residents do not want them to come to rule, so they offer Tripoli to Dowager Princess Sibylla. She accepts, but proposes her unpopular ally Bishop Bartholemew of Tortosa as the new bailli and they tell her he is unacceptable due to past misrule; she insists on his nomination, so they depose her and proclaim a 'Commune'. Bartholemew Embriaco, brother of Bohemund VII's victim William, is elected as Mayor.

ITALY

Christmas. Rabban Sauma arrives at Genoa on his journey home, with Philip IV's ambassador, Gobert of Helleville

1288 ITALY

15 and 22 February. Election of Franciscan friar Girolamo Maschi, former Vicar-General of the Order, as Pope Nicholas IV.

March. Rabban Sauma, at Genoa, hears of the election of the new Pope and hurries to Rome to open negotiations; he attends the Holy Week ceremonies and shows how the Nestorians celebrate them. After Easter he leaves for Arghun's court with a letter offering Papal encouragement for an attack on the Mamelukes.

PALESTINE/SYRIA

Spring. Lucia, rightful Lady of Tripoli, and her husband Narjot de Toucy arrive at Acre from Apulia, secure Hospitaller support, and go on to enter Tripoli territory and occupy Nephin; the 'Commune' refuse to accept her and offer their sovereignty to Genoa, which sends its admiral Benito Zaccaria with five ships; the Grand Masters of the three Orders go to Tripoli to argue with the 'Commune', but they are rejected. As the Genoese insist on more rights and an extended quarter in Tripoli the citizens are alarmed, as they are at Bartholemew Embriaco of Jebail offering to recognise Qalavun as his lord in return for Mameluke help to take over Tripoli.

Lucia receives an offer of recognition from the ‘Commune’, and insists that she reach agreement with Zaccaria too so there will be no Genoese attack; he accepts her succession provided that she confirms the new privileges for Genoa at Tripoli, and she is invited to take over Tripoli by the ‘Commune’ provided she recognises their rights too. Lucia arrives in Tripoli, but Embriaco(?) appeals to Qalavun for assistance.

ITALY

Prolonged negotiations over terms of Charles II’s release between his captor, Peter of Aragon’s eldest son and successor Alfonso, his brother James of Sicily, and other interested parties especially France and the Papacy; *October* treaty at Canfranc confirms earlier agreement at Oléron; Charles is freed and escorted from Aragon to France. Philip IV is not welcoming, preferring to extort better terms out of Aragon by a longer war, and sends troops with him to Italy ready to renew the war there.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Summer. Andronicus sends embassy to Charles II’s younger son Robert, regent in Naples, to ask for the hand of Philip of Courtenay and Beatrice of Anjou’s daughter and heiress Catherine, heiress to Latin ‘empire’ claim, for his eldest son Michael; Pope Nicholas lends approval to proposition but tells Robert to proceed carefully, and Byzantine envoys go on to Philip IV in France.

EGYPT/PALESTINE

? Venice sends secret envoys to Cairo to warn Qalavun that allowing Genoa to control the trade of Tripoli will give it disproportionate power in the Middle East and ask for him to intervene.

1289

SYRIA/PALESTINE

February. A Mameluke army arrives from Egypt in northern Syria; Emir Badr ad-Din Bektash al-Fakhri warns his secret ‘contact’ William of Beaujeu, Grand Master of the Templars, that Tripoli is the target and he warns Tripoli. He is not believed.

Late March. The Egyptian army crosses the Buqaia to approach Tripoli. The ‘Commune’ give authority to Countess Lucia to lead the defence, and the Templar Marshal Geoffrey of Vendac and the Hospitaller Marshal Matthew of Clermont lead reinforcements there. Jean de Grailly leads the French regiment from Acre, and King Henry sends his brother Amalric from Cyprus.

April. The Mameluke siege-engines batter down the walls of Tripoli. The ‘Tower of the Bishop’ (south-east corner) and the ‘Tower of the Hospital’

to its west are badly damaged, and the Venetian colony packs their ships with possessions and leaves by sea. On their departure the alarmed Genoese decide to follow.

26 April. As Zaccaria and his Genoese ships leave the harbour, the assault on Tripoli is renewed. The south-east walls are stormed as the citizens panic; Lucia, Prince Amalric, and the Orders' Marshals get away on ships but the Templar Commander Peter of Moncada and Bartholemew Embriaco are killed. The city is sacked and all Christian men are killed and women and children enslaved; the refugees who manage to cross to the offshore island of St. Thomas are slaughtered as the Moslem cavalry ride through the shallows to take the island.

Tripoli is destroyed to prevent it being any use if recaptured, and Botrun and Nephun are abandoned; end of the County of Tripoli after 180 years. Jebail survives briefly as a Mameluke dependency.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

Easter. Arghun sends a Genoese, Buscarel of Gisolf, to Italy and France to announce that he intends to set out with his army for Syria early in 1291 so the Christians had better co-ordinate their plans with him. A letter is sent to Philip IV, and probably another one to Edward I.

PALESTINE

29 April. King Henry arrives at Acre, too late to try to relieve Tripoli. Qalavun sends to complain that he and the Orders breached the truce by reinforcing Tripoli, but he replies that the truce only covers the Kingdom of Jerusalem not Tripoli otherwise Qalavun himself breached it first.

The truce is renewed for ten years, ten months, and ten days, to *March 1300*.

ITALY

Charles II returns to Italy to be greeted as Papal champion and *Whit Sunday* Nicholas crowns him King of Naples and Sicily but insists he pursue the war against Alfonso and James despite his promises on release to accept loss of Sicily.

Alfonso brings an Aragonese fleet to attack Naples, while the news of the fall of Tripoli induces Edward I to ask the warring kings to reach a truce and arrange a new Crusade.

Charles secures a truce with Alfonso when the latter unsuccessfully attacks Gaeta and is blockaded nearby by Robert of Artois and Charles Martel; the Papal agents with Charles' army, including Benedict Gaetani (later Pope Boniface VIII), fail to stop the agreement. Charles remains at war with James of Sicily.

ITALY/MOREA

Charles II appoints Guy de Charpigny, bailli of Vostitza, as bailli of Achaia, and at urging of Achaian knights in his service allows Isabella de Villehardouin to leave Italy and return home for proper rule after ten years being held at Angevin castles; he selects Flemish nobleman, Florent d'Avesnes from Count's family, as her husband to ensure a genuine Villehardouin heir as Achaians demand; on their wedding-day Charles resigns as Prince of Achaia in their favour to repair his father's mistakes.

FRANCE

Having satisfied his honour by turning up at the Aragonese frontier for 're-arrest' on the date he promised to surrender himself if he could not arrange peace (nobody takes him into custody), Charles II proceeds to Paris to negotiate peace between Philip IV and Aragon.

ARMENIA

Death of King Leo III, probably in his mid-50s; succeeded by his son Hethoum II.

PALESTINE/CYPRUS

September. King Henry returns to Cyprus, leaving his brother Amalric as bailli in Acre. Jean de Grailly is sent to the West to appeal for help.

1290

FRANCE/ITALY/MONGOL DOMINIONS/SPAIN

April. The Pope issues a general summons for a Crusade.

The Pope writes to the European sovereigns asking for military aid for Acre, but gets no concrete response. He sends Giovanni di Monte Corvino as ambassador to Kubilai Khan to ask for military aid.

19 May. In the French royal family's 'Pact of Senlis' arranged by Charles II, Philip IV's brother Count Charles of Valois abandons his claim to Aragon when the Pope approves (he has just received Maine and Anjou from his brother the King), and Philip reaches peace with Aragon when the Pope agrees and in the meantime pays the Papacy 200,000 pieces of gold to carry on the war between Naples and Sicily.

An enthusiastic but badly-armed collection of volunteer Crusaders from Lombardy and Sully rally to the Pope's appeal, and are put under the command of the refugee Bishop of Tripoli. Venice, alarmed for Acre and their community there, lends them 20 galleys under the Doge's son Nicholas Tiepolo; Tiepolo and the military commanders, Jean de Grailly and Roux de Sully, receive 1,000 pieces of gold each from the Pope. They sail from Venice, and are joined by five ships sent by King James of Sicily.

PALESTINE

August. The Italian volunteers arrive in Acre, but are in no military condition for an expedition and are kept in the city lest they provoke the Moslems by a raid. Instead, they take the lead in a drunken riot when it is supposed that a Christian woman is propositioned by a Moslem merchant and start killing any Moslem that they find (and local Christians who look Moslem with beards). The authorities manage to rescue some Moslems and arrest the ringleaders, but a complaint is made to Qalavun.

Qalavun demands the handover of all the arrested perpetrators, but they cannot be singled out from among the inmates of the city gaol; a proposal at an emergency council meeting to hand over all the inmates is resisted by the populace so nobody is surrendered; the Mameluke envoys leave empty-handed.

Qalavun orders the Syrian army at Damascus to move to the Caesarea area and start to build siege-engines to attack Acre, allegedly for an African campaign. The Emir Fakhr warns Grand Master William of Beaujeu of the Templars that Acre is the target; he tells the government but is disbelieved. A Templar embassy is sent to Cairo, and Qalavun tells them that he will accept a payment of one ‘sequin’ per inhabitant of Acre to call off the war; William puts the proposal to the Acre government but it is turned down.

ITALY

Late Autumn. French/Aragonese talks commence at Perpignan; the English preside at mediation. The Pope, Philip IV, Charles II, Alfonso of Aragon, James of Sicily, James of Majorca, and Charles of Valois send delegates.

EGYPT/PALESTINE

A few Christian reinforcements arrive at Acre, including Edward I's Savoyard lieutenant Otto de Grandison.

4 November. Qalavun leaves Cairo for Syria en route to attack Acre.

10 November. Death of Qalavun at Marjat at-Tin, aged around 60; his son Al-Ashraf Khalil promises him to complete the campaign.

Khalil suppresses a mutiny in Cairo led by the Emir Turuntai; the campaign is postponed for a few months.

1291 PALESTINE/EGYPT

January? Acre envoys Philip Maileboeuf (Acre citizen and Arabic scholar), Bartholemew Pisan the Templar, and secretary George are sent to Cairo; they are refused an audience and imprisoned.

FRANCE/ITALY/SPAIN

19 February. Peace-settlement reached at Brignolles. France-Aragon and Naples-Aragon peace achieved, and the Kingdom of Naples retains the official designation of 'Naples and Sicily'. Alfonso returns the confiscated Kingdom of Majorca to his uncle King James and goes to Rome to seek Papal terms for his reconciliation with Papacy, and thus implicitly abandons his brother James' Sicily so Charles II stands a better chance of reconquering it.

ITALY

'Liber Recuperationis terae sanctae', literary encouragement and plans for the re-conquest of the Holy Land, is dedicated to Pope Nicholas by its author, the Franciscan friar Fidenzio of Padua. He was in Palestine in 1266 to witness the fall of Safad, and was asked to write a survey of the state of the region by Pope Gregory c. 1272 and travelled through the Middle East. He advocates a naval blockade of Egypt to pressurise the Mamelukes and advises on how many troops would be needed for a land-expedition in Palestine and whether to travel by sea or through Anatolia. The work is presented just before the fall of Acre.

29 March. Pope Nicholas hopefully proclaims a new Crusade for *24 June 1293*; King Edward I is to command, but as events turn out he is distracted by arbitrating the succession to Scotland after the last of the direct Royal Family, his sister's grand-daughter Queen Margaret (the 'Maid of Norway'), died in *March 1290*.

PALESTINE/EGYPT

6 March. Khalil leaves Cairo for Palestine with the Egyptian army, and goes to Damascus before leading his troops on Acre.

The Syrian army and its siege-train moves down from Hama to the coast and on towards Acre from the north; *6 April* Khalil arrives and the bombardment of the walls and towers commences. His combined army is estimated at around 60,000. Shiploads of non-combatant civilians leave for Cyprus, and Genoa does not send any help from its colony at Tyre.

15 April. Night-time sortie into the Moslem camp, led by the Templars and including de Grandison, raids the quarters of the Hama troops but is beset by confusion in the dark; the Knights fall over ropes of the tents and it is driven back with the loss of 18 Knights. A few nights later the Hospitallers make another raid but the Mamelukes have lit torches round their camps so they are spotted easier.

4 May. King Henry arrives with 100 cavalry and 2,000 infantry in 40 ships, and takes command.

As the siege wears down the defences, Henry sends Templar knights William of Cafran and William de Villiers to Khalil to ask why he broke

the truce and ask for complaints against the city that can be met; he says the only embassy he is interested in is one with the city's keys, and they say the inhabitants would hold anyone as traitors if they surrendered; as a stone fired from the ramparts narrowly misses them he has to be restrained from killing the envoys.

8 May. The defence abandons the barbican of King Hugh, about halfway along the main outer salient of walls (north-west to south-east) and at an exposed corner, after bombardment and mining. A few days later the 'Tower of the English' (paid for by Edward I) and 'Tower of the Countess of Blois', next to it to the west, are abandoned too. The outer walls by the gate of St Anthony (next to them to the west) and the Tower of St. Nicholas (to the south-east of the barbican of King Hugh) start to collapse.

15 May. The wall by the 'Tower of King Henry', on the inward side of the lost barbican, starts to collapse; the tower is abandoned.

16 May. The tower of King Henry is taken, and the line of outer walls is abandoned. An attack on the Gate of St. Anthony is repulsed.

Friday, 18 May. General attack ordered on the main, inner wall, from St. Anthony's Gate south-east to the Patriarch's Tower at the south end of the wall by the sea. The 'Accursed Tower' at the north-east corner of the wall, behind the tower of King Henry, is the main target. The tower eventually falls, and its French and Cypriot garrison retires west along the inner wall to St. Anthony's Gate where the Templars and Hospitallers rally the defence. To the south-east, Jean de Grailly and Otto de Grandison are holding on along the eastern wall until the fall of the 'Accursed Tower' brings the Mamelukes along the walls to seize the Gate of St. Nicholas. The first Moslem troops enter the city, and the Christians fail in a last desperate attempt to retake the 'Accursed Tower'. The Templar Grand Master, William of Beaujeu, resting exhausted, charges out from the Templar headquarters to lead the assault without putting on all his armour and is mortally wounded in the attack. He dies after evacuation to the Templar headquarters; the Hospitaller Marshal Matthew of Clermont, who has escorted his entourage to safety, returns to the battle to be killed. The Hospitaller Grand Master John de Villiers is wounded and taken to a ship by his men; King Henry and Prince Amalric leave by ship some time before the city is all overrun and are later accused of cowardice.

Fall of Acre; those who can escape by sea, though Patriarch Nicholas is drowned as his boat capsizes when he lets more refugees jump on and they overload it; those who cannot escape are indiscriminately killed or enslaved. The later leader of the 'Catalan Company' in the Byzantine Empire in the early 1300s, Templar knight Roger de Flor, allegedly extorts money from civilians to let them board his galley. Only the fortified Templar headquarters holds out, under the Marshal, Peter of Sevrey.

19 May. Fall of Tyre, which is abandoned to advancing troops from the main Mameluke camp at Acre by the commander, Adam of Cafran.

After a few days Khalil offers free passage to the Templars in return for surrender, which is accepted. But the Mameluke troops allowed in to hoist their flag and supervise the evacuation start seizing civilian prisoners and attacking women and boys, and the furious Templars kill them and lower the Moslem flag. Under cover of darkness, Peter evacuates the Templar Treasury to Sidon. Next day Khalil repeats the offer, but when Peter and some knights emerge to discuss it with him he has them executed and the defenders shut the gates and fight on.

28 May. As the mines dug under the landward walls are set afire, the nearest part of the Templar headquarters starts to collapse; the leading attackers who are storming the building are among the casualties as the place collapses.

Acre is demolished so it will be useless if any new Christian expedition arrives.

SPAIN

18 June. Death of King Alfonso III of Aragon, aged 25/6; his next brother, King James of Sicily is his heir but uniting the kingdoms will be difficult due to the Papal/French military threat to Aragon.

PALESTINE

The Templars rally at Sidon, and elect the commander of the evacuation from Acre, Theobald Gaudin the former ‘Turcopolier’ (commander of Turkish mercenaries), who has 30 years’ experience of local warfare, as the new Grand Master; *late June.* The Mameluke army arrives under Emir Shujai to commence siege. The garrison abandons the town, which has too long a wall for their numbers to hold, to the offshore ‘Castle of the Sea’, and the Mamelukes build a causeway. Gaudin sails for Cyprus but fails to return with reinforcements.

14 July. The garrison abandon Sidon for Tortosa; Shujai orders its demolition.

21 July. Shujai besieges Beirut. The leading military officers of Beirut obey a summons to Shujai’s camp and are arrested; the citizens decide to evacuate the town.

30 July. Khalil takes the abandoned Haifa; he proceeds to burn the monasteries on Mount Carmel.

31 July. Shujai occupies Beirut.

3 August. The Templars abandon Tortosa.

4 August. The Templars abandon Athlit castle. End of the 'Kingdom of Jerusalem' after 192 years; the offshore castle of Ruad near Tortosa is the last Christian stronghold on the Levantine coast.

The Templars and Hospitallers relocate their headquarters to Cyprus; the Teutonic Knights move to Venice but are soon considering moving to their other lands in Prussia. The Hospitaller Grand Master is criticised for leaving Acre for Cyprus in May 1291 not falling in defence of the Holy Land; the Pope suggests that the Templars and Hospitallers should merge to prevent more quarrelling between them.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Summer. Byzantine ambassadors sent to Charles II and Robert in Naples with full powers for settlement of Angevin/Byzantine conflict and marital alliance.

Charles II appoints Florent to resume diplomatic relations with Nicephorus Ducas of Epirus, and marriage of Charles' younger son Philip to Nicephorus' daughter Thamar is proposed.

ITALY

Collapse of Angevin/Aragon and Sicily peace-efforts after 18 June death of Alfonso of Aragon, as his brother James of Sicily succeeds but refuses to give up Sicily to their youngest brother Frederick as Alfonso required.

23 July. James sets sail from Trapani to Aragon, leaving Frederick as lieutenant of Sicily.

The Papacy and Charles II of Naples insist on no union of Aragon and Sicily, so war with James resumes.

Sources

1262–5

Palestine/Syria: Abu'l Feda, pp. 145–50; Al Aini, pp. 216–21; *Annales de Terre Sainte*, pp. 450–2; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 444–450; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 167–71; Maqrisi, vol. i, part i, pp. 116, 148–64, 194–7; part ii, pp. 7–16; Rashid ad-Din pp. 417–23.

Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, pp. 153–4.

Italy: Geanakopoulos, Michael Paleologus, pp. 121–47; E. Jordan, *Les Origines de la Domination Angevine en Italie* (Paris: Picard, 1909) pp. 468–75, 486–90, 494–500, 516–33, 592–8.

Greece: *Chronicle of the Morea*, Greek version, ed. J. Schmitt (London: Methuen, 1904), lines 4678–4850.

1266

Italy: E. Jordan, pp. 593–6; Steven Runciman, *The Sicilian Vespers*, pp. 90–8.
E. Jordan, *L'Allemagne et l'Italie aux XIIe et XIIIe Siecles*, in *Histoire Generale du Moyen Age*, vol. 4, part 1 (Paris: Presses Universitaires de France, 1939) pp. 366–75.

1266–70

Palestine/Syria/Cyprus: Abu'l Feda, pp. 151–2; Al Aini, pp. 222–8; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 455–6, 484–5; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 179–90; Maqrissi, vol. i, part ii, pp. 28–30, 50–1; Vahram, *Rhymed Chronicle*, pp. 522–3.

1267–70

Italy: *Chronicle of the Morea*, Greek version, ed. Schmitt, lines 7215–7226 (on 1268); Geanakopoulou, pp. 192–3; Jordan, *L'Allemagne . . .*, pp. 386–405; Runciman, *Sicilian Vespers*, pp. 113–44, especially pp. 110–13 (Battle of Tagliacozzo, 1268).
Fall of Antioch: Abu'l Feda, p. 152; Al Aini, pp. 229–34; *Estoire d'Eracles* vol. ii, pp. 456–7; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 190–1; Maqrissi, vol. i, part ii, pp. 52–3.
After Antioch: *Annales de Terre Sainte*, p. 454; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 457–8, 463; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 183–5 and 194–8 (Spanish Crusade), and pp. 190–3; Maqrissi, vol. i, part ii, pp. 80–3.
Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, pp. 161–5, 178.

1270

Louis IX's Second Crusade: Joinville, ed. E Wedgwood, part iv, ch. xiv: pp. 378–90.
Annales Januenses pp. 267–9; William of Nangis, pp. 440–62; William of St. Pathus, pp. 153–5; *Chronicle of Walter of Guisborough*, ed. H. Rothwell, vol. lxxxix (London: Camden Society, 1957), p. 206; *Annales Monastici*, ed. H. Luard (London: Rolls Series, 1864–9), vol. ii; *Annals of Winchester*, p. 109.
Also for English participation, covering 1268–71: F. Powicke, *Henry III and the Lord Edward*, vol. ii (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1966), pp. 564–8; M. Prestwich, *Edward I* (London: Methuen, 1988) pp. 68–73. S. Lloyd, 'The Lord Edward's Crusade 1270–2: its setting and significance' in *War and Government in the Middle Ages*, ed. J. Gillingham and J. Holt (Woodbridge: Boydell and Brewer, 1984); S. Lloyd, 'Gilbert de Clare, Richard of Cornwall and the Lord Edward's Crusade' in *Nottingham Medieval Studies*, vol. xxxi, (1986).

1271

Fall of Krak des Chevaliers: Abu'l Feda, p. 154; Al Aini, pp. 237–9; *Annales de Terre Sainte* p. 455; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, p. 460; *Gestes de Chiprois*, p. 199; Maqrissi, pp. 84–5.
Aftermath: Abu'l Feda, p. 154; Al Aini, pp. 239–40; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, p. 460; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 199–200.

1271–2

Edward I in Palestine: Abu'l Feda, p. 154; *Annales de Terre Sainte*, p. 455; *Estoire d'Eracles*, vol. ii, pp. 460–4; *Gestes des Chiprois*, pp. 200–1; Ibn al-Furat, *Ayyubids, Mamelukes*

410 *The Seventh Crusade 1262–1291*

and Crusaders, ed. and tr. U. and M. C. Lyons (Cambridge, 1971) pp. 155–9; *Liber de Antiquis Legibus: Chronica Maiorum et vicecomitum Londoniarum*, ed. T. Stapleton (London: Camden Society, 1846) pp. 131, 143, 158; Maqrîsi, vol. i, part ii, pp. 86, 101–3; Chronicle of Walter de Guisborough, pp. 206–10; *Chronicle of William de Risehanger*, ed. J. O. Haliwell (London: Camden Society, 1840) pp. 69–71.

End of Louis' Crusade: William of Nangis, *Gesta Philippi, III*, ed. Bouquet (RHF, vol. xx), pp. 476–8.

1271–4

Italy: Annales Januenses pp. 273–4, 280–3; Geanakopoulos, pp. 200–45; Jordan, *L'Allemagne . . .*, pp. 407–20; Donald Nicol, 'The Greeks and the Union of the Churches: the Preliminaries to the Second Council of Lyons, 1261–74' in *Studies Presented to A. Gwynn* (Dublin: The Three Candles, 1961) pp. 464–72; Runciman, *Sicilian Vespers*, pp. 144–60.

1271–80

Greece: Chronicle of the Morea, Greek version ed. Schmitt, lines 7215–7250; also Miller, *The Latins in the Levant* (New York: Dutton), pp. 131–41.

1272–5

Palestine/Cyprus: Estoir d'Eracles, vol. ii, p. 462; Gestes des Chiprois, p. 202.

1274

Council of Lyons: Geanakopoulos, pp. 245–60; Runciman, pp. 161–6.

1275

Italy: Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, pp. 161–5; Runciman, pp. 169–70.

1276–80

Palestine/Cyprus: Abu'l Feda, p. 165; Estoire d'Eracles, vol. ii, pp. 466–7, 474–9; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 206–15; Maqrîsi, pp. 144–5; Marino Sanudo, *Chronique de Roamnie*, in Mas Latrie, *Nouvelles Veuves*, pp. 227–8; William of Nangis, pp. 540, 564.

1276–80

Italy/Byzantine Empire: Nicephorus Gregoras, *Historia Byzantina*, vol. i, pp. 109–11; George Pachymer, *De Michael Paleologo; De Andronico Paleologo*, ed. I. Bekker, 2 vols (Bonn: Weber, 1835), pp. 324–6, 410–13, 449–66, 505–19.

Geanakopoulos, pp. 235–317; Hill, vol. ii, pp. 174–5.

1277–80

Death of Baibars and after in Moslem states: Abu'l Feda, pp. 157–66; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 208–9; Maqrîsi, vol. i, part ii, pp. 150, 171; Maqrîsi, vol. ii, part i, p. 26.

1281–5

Palestine/Syria: Amadi, pp. 214–15; Abu'l Feda, pp. 158–60; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 210–16; Maqrissi, vol. ii, part i, pp. 28–37; Sanudo, pp. 39–40.
Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vol. ii, p. 176.

1281–5 *Italy/Byzantine Empire*:

A. Laiou, *Constantinople and the Latins: the Foreign Policy of Andronicus II 1282–1328* (Cambridge MS: Harvard UP, 1972).
1281: Runciman, pp. 210–11.
1282: Bartolomeo of Neocastro, *Historia Sicula*, ed. C. Paladino vol. xiii (Muratori: RIS, New Series, 1922) pp. 11–30; Geanakopoulos, pp. 344–67; Gregoras, pp. 144–6 and (death of Michael VIII) pp. 150–5; Runciman, pp. 214–32; Giovanni Villani, *Cronica*, 8 vols (Florence: Il Magheri, 1823) vol. ii, pp. 242–6.
1283: Runciman, pp. 232–42; Villani, pp. 267–70.
1284: Runciman, pp. 243–53; Bartolomeo of Neocastro, pp. 55–69; Villani, pp. 270–93.
1285: Bartolomeo of Neocastro, pp. 70–81; Runciman, pp. 254–62.

1281–5

Greece: Chronicle of the Morea, Greek version, ed. Schmitt, lines 7800–10 (1281 campaign in Albania), 8110–8458; French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 197–211.
Death of Hugh of Cyprus: Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 216–17.
Andronicus II's marriage: Gregoras, vol. i pp. 167–8; Pachymer, vol. ii, pp. 87–8.
Death of John of Cyprus: Pachymer, vol. ii, p. 217.
Marqab: Abu'l Feda pp. 160–1; Amadi, p. 216; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 217–18; Maqrissi, vol. ii, part i, pp. 80, 86.

1286–90

Palestine/Syria: Abu'l Feda, p. 162; Amadi, pp. 216–18; Annales Januenses, pp. 322–6; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 218–30, and (Tripoli, 1288) 231–4; Sanudo, p. 229 (Tripoli, 1288).

1286–90

Italy/Byzantine Empire: Bartolomeo of Neocastro, pp. 81–111; Laiou, op. cit.; Runciman pp. 263–7.

1289

Fall of Tripoli: Abu'l Feda, pp. 163–4; Amadi, p. 218; Annales Januenses, p. 326; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 234–7; Maqrissi, pp. 101–3.

1289–90

Palestine/Syria/Egypt: Abu'l Feda, p. 163; Amadi, pp. 218–19; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 238–40; Maqrissi, pp. 109–12; Sanudo, p. 229.

1291

Fall of Acre: Amadi, pp. 220–5; Abu'l Feda, pp. 163–5; *De Excidio Urbis Acconis*, in *Amplissima Collectio*, ed. Martene and Durand (Paris: publisher unknown, 1724) vol. v, cols 670–82; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 241–3, and 243–54 (siege and fall), 254–5; Maqrissi, vol. ii, part i, pp. 120–6; Thaddeus of Naples, *Historia de Desolacion et Conculcacione Civitatis Acconensis et totius terre sancta*, ed. Riant (Geneva: Publications du Societe de l'Orient Latin, 1873) pp. 18–23.

After the fall of Acre, including Tyre: Abu'l Feda, p. 164; annals de Terre Sainte p. 460; Gestes des Chiprois, pp. 254–9; Maqrissi, pp. 126, 131.

11 The Crusades after the loss of the Holy Land 1292–1456

1292 ENGLAND

February. Church Council at Canterbury adopts the idea that the Templars and Hospitallers should merge.

ITALY/SPAIN

Early Spring. An Aragonese embassy arrives in Rome to reach settlement between King James, who is short of money and troops from Aragon to save Sicily, and the Papacy; Pope Nicholas accepts James' formal submission.

4 April. Death of Pope Nicholas; long vacancy follows and no moves can be made for Crusade or settlement of the dispute over Sicily.

King Sancho IV of Castile takes the Moroccan-held port of Tarifa from the Marinids, aided by the emirate of Granada.

1293 BYZANTIUM/MOREA/ITALY

After a Byzantine attack on Arta, Nicephorus of Epirus rewards the Latin lords of Achaia for their assistance and marries his daughter Maria to Count Richard Orsini's son; Nicephorus' son Thomas is sent to Achaia as a guarantee to Florent that the Despot will pay large debts to him for the campaign.

Charles II persuades Nicephorus that when Tamar marries his son Philip they, rather than Thomas, should be heirs to Epirus; Lepanto/Naupactus and three other castles garrisoned by Angevins as guarantee that it will be carried out.

CYPRUS

April. Death of Theobald Gaudin, interim leader of the Templars; a new Grand Master is soon elected, James (Jacques) of Molay (near Besancon), a minor member of the nobility of Franche-Comte.

ARMENIA

Hethoum faces a Mameluke invasion of the Cilician plain and has to cede key fortresses to save what is left of his kingdom.

ITALY/SPAIN

Autumn. Charles II of Naples and James of Aragon reach preliminary agreement for a treaty and agree truce, at Figueras; James agrees to abandon Sicily to its fate provided that he is bought off, although by now Charles has other plans for the Angevins beyond reconquering Sicily as his wife Mary's brother King Ladislas of Hungary's death (1290) and the childlessness of the new King Andrew III implies that his son Charles Martel could well succeed to Hungary.

October. The cardinals assemble at Perugia for the Papal election.

EGYPT

12 December. Assassination of Sultan Khalil by his Mameluke general Baydars al-Mansuri. The latter seizes the throne in the second usurpation of a senior officer against the second generation of a new Mameluke dynasty, a pattern which is to become common in the 15th century. He is, however, quickly killed by the late Sultan's loyal officers, who enthrone Khalil's half-brother Al-Nasir Mohammed (aged 9).

1294 ITALY/FRANCE/ENGLAND

James of Molay stages a fund-raising tour through Europe to raise money for the Templars ahead of a counter-offensive in the Holy Land.

He commences his tour in Italy, and then goes on to France that winter.

May. Charles II arrives at Perugia to pressurise the cardinals to hasten the Papal election so the new Pope can confirm his private agreement with James of Aragon on the resolution of the Sicilian war.

BYZANTIUM/MORES/ITALY

21 May. Coronation of Andronicus' son Michael IX; Charles II's envoys attend during their mission to negotiate marriage of Catherine of Courtenay to Michael; then Andronicus sends monk Sophronius to Naples (and on to Rome after Papal election) with proposals that Catherine's dowry include the right to 'Latin Empire' and on marriage Charles and Pope accept lapse of her claim.

SPAIN

King Sancho IV of Castile attacks Moroccan-held Algeiras, but does not receive any Crusade-proclaiming assistance from the embattled Papacy

so he reissues old Papal bulls of Innocent IV and Clement IV granting indulgences to encourage recruitment.

ITALY

5 July. Election of elderly prophetic hermit Peter of Morrone (b. 1209/10), prior of San Spirito, Maiella and abbot of Santa Maria di Faifula (Abruzzi) and since 1293 resident in a hermitage grotto on Mount Murrone, as Pope Celestine V, under pressure on the dilatory cardinals by Charles II.

The nomination is made by Cardinal Martino Malabranca, who reveals Peter's prophecy of Divine retribution on the cardinals if they leave the Church leaderless for any longer. Peter's high reputation for holiness and prophetic powers 'taps in' to enthusiasm for the rejuvenation of the Church (and re-conquest of the Holy Land?) under a wonder-working Pope at the end of the current Christian era.

29 August. Celestine is consecrated at L'Aquila, having been escorted there on a donkey (like Christ) by Charles II and his eldest son Charles Martel. The Angevins seek to use the new Pope as their client.

September. Charles II marries his younger son Philip of Taranto to Nicephorus' daughter Thamar, and cedes the suzerainty of Achaia and Athens to him. Thus Charles' eldest son Charles Martel, now ruling Croatia, is designated to rule in Hungary, second son Robert to rule Naples, and third son Philip to take over the vassal states in Greece.

Charles offers John of Procida, still the Aragonese chancellor of Sicily, the return of his mainland estates in return for abandoning the Sicilian cause, and Philip IV of France offers the island's regent, James' brother Frederick of Aragon, marriage to Catherine of Courtenay, claimant to the 'Latin Empire' in Constantinople, if he abandons his charge. Charles pressurises Pope Celestine to hand over large sums of Papal taxes to pay for reconquering Sicily, not the Holy Land. The austere, scrupulous, and unworldly Pope loses enthusiasm for his post.

Andronicus sends influential Patriarch Athanasius of Alexandria to King Henry of Cyprus and his new brother-in-law Hethoum of Armenia to establish closer links, but mission halted when his ship attacked at Phocaea by pirates.

1 October. Celestine V confirms Charles II's secret agreement with James of Aragon on Sicily, and restores Pope Gregory's measures to speed up a Papal election. He creates 12 new cardinals named by Charles (seven of them French).

5 November. Charles II installs Celestine V in residence at the Castel Nuovo, Naples, under his own supervision, rather than allow him independence of action in the Papal States; this increases resentment by the non-French cardinals at Angevin domineering.

13 December. Abdication of Celestine V at Naples, the first voluntary Papal abdication – blamed on the pressures of office and especially on King Charles’ use of him. The crucial legal advice that a Papal resignation is possible is apparently given by Cardinal Benedict Caetani.

24 December. The forceful Cardinal Benedict Caetani is elected Pope Boniface VIII, apparently after agreeing to assist the Angevin war on Aragon and Sicily. He has ex-Pope Celestine kept under guard rather than allowed to go back to his hermitage on Mount Morrone so he cannot go back on his abdication or be used by ambitious monarchs as a rival to him.

EGYPT

December. Deposition of the child Sultan al-Nasir Mohammed by the senior Mameluke officers in favour of an experienced adult general, Kitbugha.

1295 ITALY

23 January. Consecration of Pope Boniface at Rome, where he has returned the Papal residence to be free of Angevin control. He nullifies most of Pope Celestine’s pro-Angevin measures, and offers to mediate between Venice and Genoa so they can use their fleets for a Crusade not against each other.

ENGLAND

Spring. James of Molay in England on fund-raising Templar tour.

ITALY

Ex-Pope Celestine escapes but is recaptured and imprisoned in the Castle Fuome near Ferentino by the fearful Boniface.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

Arghun is succeeded by his brother Ghazan as ‘Ilkhan’. Ghazan is a Moslem but avoids Teguder’s fate by maintaining the policy of friendship to the Christians and opposition to the Mamelukes.

SPAIN

25 April. Death of King Sancho IV of Castile, aged 36 and 11 months, at Toledo; succeeded by his son Ferdinand IV (born *6 December 1285*) under the regency of his widow, Mary of Molina (to *1303*).

ITALY

Boniface refuses to give assent to the marriage of Catherine and Michael IX and surrender of Latin Empire title, as Charles informs Andronicus. Catherine is wanted for a much more useful suitor, Frederick of Sicily, as an incitement for him to abandon his people.

12 June. James' envoys agree terms for peace with Charles, in treaty signed at the Pope's family palace of the Gaetani at Anagni. He will abandon his claim on Sicily and let Charles reconquer it, return Majorca to King James and Charles' hostage sons to their father, and marry Charles' daughter Blanche. The Courtenay heiress Catherine will be married off to his brother Frederick, who will thus gain the Papal-backed claim to the 'Latin Empire', in return for him abandoning Sicily.

Frederick decides to stand by the Sicilians and carry on the war, as advised by his mother Queen Constance, despite the appeals of (Angevin-bribed) John of Procida and admiral Roger of Loria; *12 December* he is crowned King of Sicily.

1296 BYZANTIUM/ARMENIA/ITALY

16 January. Marriage of Michael IX and Rita/Maria of Armenia; King Hethoum (?) is in Constantinople for the wedding and negotiates with Andronicus.

March. Return of ambassador Sophronius from Italy, with a message from Frederick III of Sicily, James' brother who has taken over Sicily; he offers Andronicus his daughter Yolande, unaware of Michael's marriage, and an alliance against Charles II but no reply.

ITALY

19 May. Death of ex-Pope Celestine; the Colonna family, a powerful Roman dynasty in dispute with the new Pope's Caetani family over estates in the Campagna, allege that Boniface poisoned him.

ARMENIA

King Hethoum is deposed by his brother Sembat.

EPIRUS

Death of Nicephorus; widow Anna regent for son Thomas; Philip of Taranto, son of Charles II of Naples, is suzerain.

EGYPT

7 December. Death of Sultan Kitbugha; succeeded by his colleague, Lachin Al-Mansur.

1297 | **MOREA**

Death of Florent of Hainault, husband of Countess Isabella. Isabella appoints Count Richard of Cephalonia to run principality from Andravida as bailli and resides at castle of Nesi on Gulf of Coron.

ITALY/FRANCE

July. Pope Boniface deprives and exiles two Colonna cardinals after (*May*) Stephen Colonna, whose family has questioned the legitimacy of his election, seizes a convoy of Papal treasure; the Colonna have been putting pressure on him over a land-dispute by backing claims by the pro-ascetic Spiritual Franciscans that Celestine V's abdication was invalid. He proclaims a Crusade against them in the Campagna to seize their estates.

11 August. Pope Boniface canonises Louis IX of France; this is particularly seen as an encouragement to sovereigns to emulate him and go on Crusade, and politically as a gesture to the French-Angevin alliance.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. Venetian fleet arrives at Constantinople demanding compensation for confiscations and accusing Andronicus of inciting Genoese attacks; Andronicus refuses their large demand so they set fire to houses along Golden Horn, blowing smoke through windows of Blachernae Palace, then sail off to plunder around Sea of Marmora; they return with prisoners who they string up from their masts until their relatives pay ransoms, thus acquiring compensation.

ITALY

October. Fall of Palestrina ends the Papal Crusade to evict the Colonna family from the Campagna.

1298 | **TURKISH SULTANATE**

Sultan Mas'ud deposed by Mongols for backing rebel against 'Ilkhan'; succeeded by nephew Ala-ed-Din Kalqobad.

ITALY

March. King James of Aragon, now a Papal ally, goes to Rome for a Papal-sponsored 'summit' to meet Charles II's brother Robert (now heir to Naples) and marry off his sister Violante to him. Violante and her mother Queen Constance, both in Sicily with King Frederick, obey James' summons. James and Charles are now allies for joint attack on Sicily, and James brings admiral Roger of Lauria over to command invasion-fleet; the Pope gives James the lordship of Corsica and Sardinia and Roger the lordship of the Tunisian island of Djerba.

ARMENIA

Invasion by the Mamelukes and major devastation, which undermines the government of King Sembat.

1299 EGYPT

26 January. Death of Sultan Lachin Al-Mansur; the ex-Sultan Al-Nasir Mohammed, now fourteen or fifteen, is restored by the senior Mameluke officers to rule as he is old enough to govern.

ARMENIA

Ex-King Hethoum recovers power from his brother Sembat.

ITALY

4 July. Roger of Lauria, with the Aragonese-Angevin fleet, heavily defeats the Sicilian fleet.

September. King James abandons the campaign to go home to Aragon.

October–November. An Angevin invasion of Sicily is halted when King Frederick captures its commander, Charles II's younger son Philip of Taranto.

SYRIA/MONGOL DOMINIONS/CYPRUS

Ilkhan' Ghazan sends envoys to King Henry and the Grand Masters in Cyprus, suggesting that they should send troops to assist his invasion of Syria. None are forthcoming but the West is alerted to the invasion and its potential for re-conquest.

Autumn. Ghazan invades Syria.

December. Ghazan defeats the Mameluke army at Homs and occupies most of Syria. The news causes great excitement in the West, and rumours say he is overthrowing Mameluke power as far south as Egypt.

ITALY

Pope Boniface encourages preparations for a campaign to assist the Mongol invasion and retake the Holy Land. He asks all the Kings who have previously served against the Moslems to come on a new Crusade and all European states to send troops, and James of Aragon offers ships and supplies. Boniface proclaims 1300 a 'Jubilee Year' with special rewards for all who come on pilgrimage to Rome, and uses the opportunity to plan to preach the Crusade there.

1300 SYRIA/MONGOL DOMINIONS/CYPRUS

January. Damascus falls to the Mongols.

Ghazan expresses willingness to restore Palestine to the Christians, but no expedition to the mainland is forthcoming. There are naval attacks on the Egyptian coast and shipping by Cypriot and Military Orders vessels.

ITALY

Millenarian excitement during the ‘Jubilee Year’ in Rome at the prospect of 1300 seeing the fall of the Mamelukes and an expedition to reconquer the Holy Land, encouraged by the Pope. An official ‘passagium’ to Palestine is proclaimed at Genoa. At Rome, around 200,000 pilgrims visit the holy sites and Boniface appears at a ceremony brandishing both a sword and sceptre as representing the union of secular and religious power in his office. He proclaims a Crusade to reconquer Tortosa in Syria, the nearest port to the Templar island fortress of Ruad and to the Mongol route of invasion.

MOREA

Isabella goes to Rome for ‘Jubilee’ celebrations, leaving Nicholas of St. Omer as ‘bailli’; she marries Count Philip of Savoy as second husband, with Pope Boniface’s blessing but the opposition of Charles II who prefers to retain Angevin influence without rival Piedmontese influence. Philip brings unpopular Piedmontese adventurers to Achaia and extortion and resentment follow.

SYRIA

Summer? A Templar and Italian volunteer force arrives at the last Templar stronghold in the Holy Land, the offshore island of Ruad near Tortosa, and lands at Tortosa to wait for the expected Mongol invasion of the coastal parts of Syria. After some months’ inaction most of the volunteers go home.

1301 HUNGARY

January. Death of King Andrew III, last male of the Arpad dynasty; Pope Boniface backs the claim of Charles II’s and his Hungarian wife’s grandson Charles Robert (son of the late Charles Martel). Charles Robert arrives with a Papal-backed Angevin army and is crowned a few weeks later at Esztergom, but most of the nobles refuse to recognise him and desert to a rival claimant descended from Bela IV (d. 1270), Wenceslas of Bohemia (son of King Wenceslas II).

SYRIA

February. A Mongol and allied Armenian army arrives at Tortosa, too late for the Italian Crusaders who have left for home.

FRANCE/ITALY

Philip IV of France's younger brother, Charles of Valois, marries Catherine of Courtenay under Papal auspices; he thus appears as new champion for Latin claims in the East as the titular 'Latin Emperor'.

July. Truce in Sicily between Charles II's son Robert, whose armies hold Catania in northern Sicily, and Frederick of Sicily; talks for a peace-treaty to free Italian troops for the next Crusade but Charles himself prepares for one final effort to invade Sicily.

HUNGARY

27 August. Coronation of King Wenceslas at Szekesfehervar; most of the nobility claim that Charles Robert's coronation is invalid, and he has to restrict his Papal-recognised rule to an area centred on Dalmatia.

ITALY/FRANCE

Philip IV arrests and deprives Bishop Bernard Saisset of Pamiers (Gascony) for alleged blasphemy simony, and treason, without seeking Papal confirmation as he is legally required to do. His giving sanctuary to the two refugee Colonna cardinals at his court is infuriating the Pope.

5 December. Boniface condemns Philip's action as illegal and restores Bernard, in the bull 'Ausculta Fili'; he summons the French clergy to Rome to discuss the violation of their privileges. Philip refuses to allow them to attend.

1302

BYZANTIUM

Michael IX takes command of a contingent of 'Alan' (north Caucasus) tribal refugees from the Mongols as part of his first military command, and marches south through Turk-afflicted Aegean provinces to Magnesia where he is surrounded.

Alans request release but Michael persuades Andronicus to raise new taxes to pay them to stay on for another three months; *late Summer?* at end of that period they start to desert and Michael is stranded.

SPAIN

8 April. Death of Emir Mohammed 'al-Faqih' of Granada, aged 68, allegedly poisoned by his son and successor Mohammed III (d. 1309).

ITALY

May. Charles of Valois lands in Sicily on new Papally-backed expedition against Frederick; his army struggles across island to south coast but wilts in heat and his cousin Philip IV recalls him to France and forces him to open talks; *31 August* he and Robert sign peace-treaty with Frederick at Caltabellotta – Angevin troops withdraw, Charles II of Naples retains title of King of Sicily, and Frederick King of the Island of Sicily for lifetime and marries Charles' daughter. The Angevins supposedly have Sicily returned when Frederick dies (but do not in the event).

BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE

Byzantines in Bithynia are driven back by Turks under Emir Osman 'Ghazi', founder of the Ottoman dynasty and chieftain ruling principality in Sangarius Valley; the first appearance of the Ottoman state in international politics.

27 July. General Muzalon is defeated by Osman at Bapheus.

Michael IX holds out with remnants of his army at Pergamum.

SYRIA

Blockade of Ruad island by a Mameluke fleet leads to its surrender by the Templar garrison. The commander, Hugh of Dampierre, is promised safe conduct for his men but when they leave they are all enslaved or executed; some are reported as living as woodcutters by the Dead Sea as late as 1340. The end of Christian military presence in the Levant.

ITALY/FRANCE

November. Papal synod of the French bishops, with 39 of them attending in defiance of Philip. Boniface asserts the plenitude of Papal power over all sovereigns and his right to take those erring to task.

18 November. Papal Bull 'Unum Sanctum' confirms the supremacy of the Pope over all secular rulers.

1303 FRANCE

Philip IV and his Colonna allies publish condemnation of Pope Boniface for alleged crimes including sexual offenses and heresy; a Church Council is to be summoned to France to try him.

THESSALY/EPIRUS

Death of Constantine of Neopatras, son of John I and ruler of Thessaly since c. 1288, succeeded by son John II; he leaves Guy II of Athens as

regent, and Guy appoints Frankish bailli Antoine de Flamenc and grants other titles and castles to countrymen; regent Anna of Epirus objects and seizes border castle, so Guy raises army to invade – allegedly 900 Frankish knights and 6,000 Thessalian light cavalry.

Anna backs down; Guy attacks Thessalonica instead in unprovoked act but Empress Yolande/Irene, residing there after recent quarrel with Andronicus, persuades him to be honourable and withdraw.

ITALY/EPIRUS

Charles II demands that Anna hand over Epirus to Tamar as Nicephorus promised, or at least accept strict Angevin control; she refuses so on his orders Philip of Savoy (Achaia) and Richard Orsini's son John (heir to Cephallonia) unsuccessfully attack Arta.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. Michael IX retires to Pegae and falls ill; Aegean provinces abandoned to Turks.

Emirate of Monteshe establishes itself in Caria, south of Maeander; Aydin and his sons in central Thracesion, closing in on Smyrna; Sarukhan in Lydia around Pergamum; Karasi in Mysia and Troad.

September. Andronicus invites Roger de Flor, ex-Templar southern Italian knight (reputedly the son of Emperor Frederick II's falconer) in command of large mercenary company that has been fighting for King Frederick in Sicily, to Constantinople to fight in Asia Minor. C. 6,500 members of the 'Catalan Company' arrive in capital, with Roger promised double normal mercenary rates for his men and Andronicus' niece Maria and title of Grand Duke for himself.

Roger marries Maria, but Catalans prove unruly in capital and after brawls are moved to Cyzicus for the winter, they drive Turks out of district but pillage themselves.

SYRIA

Mamelukes regain control of Damascus.

ITALY/FRANCE

6 September. On the eve of Pope Boniface's planned excommunication of Philip IV, the latter's minister William Nogaret leads an armed posse (including Colonna retainers) to the Papal palace at Anagni to kidnap the Pope. Guarded by a few Templars and Hospitallers, Boniface defies them to kill him and is arrested. A few hours later he is rescued by the citizens and the attackers flee.

25 September. Boniface, shattered by his ordeal, returns to Rome.

11 October. Death of Boniface VIII; the cardinals ban their two Colonna colleagues from the resultant conclave. *22 October* Benedict XI (Niccolo Boccasino), a pious and scholarly Dominican and Papal legate to install Charles Robert in Hungary in *1301*, elected Pope.

BALTIC/ITALY

Disputed deposition of Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights, Gottfried of Hohenlohe; succeeded by Siegfried of Feuchtwangen.

1304 BYZANTIUM

Early. Roger de Flor and Catalans leave Cyzicus, paying compensation for damage, and march south with c. 500 remaining Alans, most of whom desert; they reach Pegae, but Michael refuses entry due to reputation; *April* they relieve besieged Philadelphia.

ITALY

March. Pope Benedict moves to Perugia, and absolves Philip IV and the others involved in the attack at Angani apart from Nogaret and the Italian members of the kidnap-force; Frederick II is confirmed as King of Sicily on pledge of vassalage.

BYZANTIUM

Roger de Flor marches to Magnesia on the River Hermus and down to Ephesus to make contact with ships; he makes Magnesia his headquarters and stores booty there, but most of it is pillaged from local population not recovered from Turks; he marches along south coast of Anatolia to Pisidia while his fleet takes Chios and Lesbos.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

11 May. Death of 'Ilkhan' Ghazan; succeeded by brother Oljeitu, another Moslem. Resident at the new city of Sultaniyeh in Azerbaijan, Oljeitu is not interested in assisting the potential Crusades in Syria.

HUNGARY

Summer. The Papal-backed candidate for kingdom, Charles Robert of Anjou, gains control of most of the country thanks to a Papal-brokered alliance with the German Empire (under his uncle Albert of Habsburg) to invade his rival Wenceslas' father's realm of Bohemia. Wenceslas leaves for home, and later transfers his rights to his kinsman Otto of Bavaria.

ITALY

7 July. Death of Pope Benedict XI at Perugia. The conclave reaches stalemate over the attempts of the French cardinals to insist on a candidate who will pardon the disgraced pro-Philip IV Colonna cardinals.

BYZANTIUM

Theodore Svetoslav of Bulgaria invades Thrace, and Andronicus recalls Roger to deal with him; he marches back to Magnesia whose inhabitants refuse him entry, and *Autumn* on to Gallipoli, where *October* 1,300 more Catalans have landed under Berenguer d'Enteca to join campaign and require payment.

October. Fall of Ephesus to Aydin's Turks.

Roger de Flor winters at Gallipoli, and gives Berenguer his new title of Grand Duke (granted to Roger by Andronicus 25 *December*) as he is official representative of their sovereign, James of Aragon.

CEPHALLONIA

Death of Count Richard Orsini; succeeded by son John.

1305 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Early. Roger de Flor demands 300,000 'hyperpera' compensation for loot lost at Magnesia, while Berenguer decides Byzantine cannot pay him and returns home in disgust, trying to persuade Genoese to join him against Andronicus.

February. Andronicus grants Roger rank of 'Caesar', more money, and right to all of Anatolia he can reconquer but not to Byzantine-held Brusa and Nicaea; Roger agrees to new campaign but goes to Adrianople first to meet Michael IX, and 30 *April* while visiting his camp near city is murdered by an Alan in blood-feud from 1304; Alans kill Roger's bodyguards and the remaining Catalans refuse Byzantine apologies and seize Gallipoli to start ravaging Thrace.

Berenguer de Rocafort elected Catalan commander at Gallipoli, and it is proclaimed Aragonese territory; 28 *May* Berenguer takes town of Heraclea on the Propontis and slaughters populace; 30 *May* Rhégium pillaged; however Genoese fleet sinks Berenguer d'Enteca's ships and captures him.

ITALY

5 *June*. Pope Clement V elected – a Frenchman, Bertrand de Goth, archbishop of Bordeaux. He is widely believed to be a puppet of Philip IV, and defers to the King's insistence in abandoning his initial plan for

a Papal inauguration at Vienne to coincide with an Anglo-French royal ‘summit’ to arrange a new Crusade.

BYZANTIUM

June. Michael IX attacks Gallipoli peninsula but is defeated in two battles; in a third, at Apros near Rhaedestus, he is wounded and his Turkish mercenaries desert, and while he retires to Didymoteichon Catalans massacre population of Rhaedestus and use it as base.

July. Genoese admiral Andrea Murisco temporarily secures control of Hellespont, but he is later killed and Catalans bring Turkish mercenaries over to join army.

SPAIN

The Crusading theorist Raymond Lull, a Majorcan friar, proposes in ‘Liber de Fine’ that the Templars and Hospitallers should be amalgamated and headed by a monarch, probably Charles of Naples, who should lead the next Crusade and become the new King of Jerusalem when it is reconquered. Due to the difficulties of the campaign, Lull prefers a first expedition to reconquer the easier target of the Moslem kingdom of Granada before moving on to the east.

FRANCE

14 November. Consecration of Pope Clement at Lyons. Philip IV, Charles of Valois, and Count Henry of Luxembourg (leading pro-Papal warrior magnate in the Low Countries and soon to be candidate as German Emperor) attend.

16 November. Clement proclaims a Crusade.

29 December. Philip IV takes the Cross.

1306 FRANCE

Pope Clement mediates between Philip IV and Edward I of England, and grants Philip a tenth of the Church’s revenues in France to pay for Crusade. Philip apparently favours the merger of the Templars and Hospitallers under himself as the Grand Master.

Peter Dubois writes a tract for Philip IV on the recovery of the Holy Land, going into the logistics and finance in detail and advising the merger of the two main Crusading Orders of Knights. As a patriotic Frenchman he also proposes that Philip take over and use the Papal States to run the Crusade as the pre-eminent king in Christendom, and ‘pack’ the College of Cardinals to secure a compliant Pope.

BYZANTIUM

Catalans and Turkish allies devastate Thrace.

Andronicus negotiates with Genoa for naval aid against Catalans, and *Spring* a naval expedition reaches Constantinople but the Genoese price for attacking the Catalans is too high.

Andronicus offers Catalans 100,000 ‘hyperpera’ for truce but refused.

BYZANTIUM/RHODES

June. Arrival of a joint Hospitaller/Genoese expedition at Castellorizo, near the island of Rhodes which is then invaded. It is intended to set up an autonomous Hospitaller base on the (loosely) Byzantine-held island, whose capital holds out for another year or two. The new base can be used against Byzantines, Anatolian Turks, and Christian ships trading with Egypt.

CYPRUS

July. Coup by the epileptic King Henry’s younger brother Amalric, who seizes power as Regent aided by the Templars.

BOHEMIA

August. Assassination of Wenceslas III, former anti-Papal claimant to Hungary (1301–5) and now King of Bohemia; extinction of the male line of the dynasty. His brother-in-law Duke Henry of Carinthia and the neighbouring ruler of Austria, Emperor-elect Albert of Habsburg, fight over the throne.

FRANCE

Autumn. Pope Clement summons the Grand Masters of the Orders to Poitiers for 1 November 1306 to discuss the Crusade, but delays it due to his illness.

1307 FRANCE

May? James de Molay arrives from Cyprus at Poitiers to meet the Pope. He and the Grand Master of the Hospitallers advise the latter on the form a Crusade should take, i.e. an expedition via Cyprus to attack the Mamelukes’ coast, and de Molay proposes an army of 15,000 cavalry and 50,000 infantry. The Pope and the Hospitallers’ Grand Master, Fulk of Villaret, agree on a smaller, specific expedition (‘passagium particulare’) to take Rhodes as a base for attacks on the Asian mainland.

BYZANTIUM

May/June. Catalans are joined at Gallipoli by the Infante Ferdinand of Majorca, Frederick II's nominee as their commander; Berenguer refuses to accept his leadership but they eventually accept Ferdinand's proposal to move on in search of new plunder and set out for Macedonia.

Catalan leadership quarrels again, and Berenguer d'Enteca is murdered by Berenguer de Rocafort; other commander Fernan Ximenes de Arena deserts to Byzantium on the march, and Ferdinand leaves the company.

FRANCE/ITALY

Pope Clement V excommunicates Andronicus at the behest of his patron Philip IV of France; he appoints Philip's brother Charles of Valois, as Catherine of Courtenay's husband, to lead new Crusade.

MOREA

Philip of Taranto, as suzerain of Achaia, dismisses Isabella and Philip of Savoy as his governors and they return to Italy obediently, abandoning Isabella's patrimony and the rights of her daughter (by Florent) Mahaut; Nicholas of St. Omer appointed bailli.

ARMENIA

King Hethoum II abdicates in favour of his nephew Leo; they are both executed on a visit to the Mongol general Bilarghu, viceroy of upper Iraq, to secure acceptance of the new arrangement. He is succeeded by his brother Oshin as King.

ENGLAND

7 July. Death of the Crusader King Edward I, aged 68, on his way into Scotland to deal with the seizure of the confiscated kingdom by Robert Bruce. He is succeeded by his 23-year-old son Edward II, who dislikes the military ethos and has no interest in Crusading.

HUNGARY

Autumn. A 'Diet' of most of the nobility recognises Charles Robert of Anjou as the rightful King, as support for Otto of Bavaria dwindles; however the latter hangs onto the 'Holy Crown' until 1310, denying his rival a fully legal coronation.

BYZANTIUM

August/September? Catalans arrive in the Chalcidice peninsula near Thessalonica, and pillage the area; Charles of Valois establishes contact,

and John Monomachus, governor of Thessalonica, approaches Charles about alliance.

FRANCE

James de Molay asks for a formal enquiry into charges made against the Templars, apparently by renegade expelled members including Esquet de Floyran (who informed King James of Aragon and later Philip IV c. 1305), Bernard Pelet, and Gerard of Beyzol.

24 August. Clement writes to Philip IV announcing that he has instituted an enquiry although he finds the allegations difficult to believe. He asks the King not to act precipitately himself.

5 September. Clement issues a bull confirming the Hospitallers in possession of Rhodes.

Mid-September. Philip issues secret orders for the co-ordinated arrests of all the Templars in France on *Friday 13 October*. It is presumed that lack of money since the wars with England, Aragon, and Sicily in the 1290s is the principal reason for his intention to seize all Templar property via the complaisant Pope.

12 October. James of Molay attends the funeral in Paris of Catherine of Courtenay, titular 'Latin Empress' and wife of Philip IV's brother Charles of Valois.

Friday 13 October. Arrest of all the Templars in France. James of Molay is arrested outside the Templar headquarters in Paris (later the final prison of the French Royal Family in 1792–3, which some have seen as secret 'Templar'/Freemason revenge) by Philip's henchman Nogaret and Reginald Roy.

15 October. Royal officials and allied Dominican friars (who staff the Inquisition) explain the reasons for the arrest to a public meeting in the Royal gardens in Paris. William of Paris, the chief Inquisitor, is Philip's confessor and probable co-arranger of the arrests.

The Templars are rounded up and tortured by the Inquisition to produce 'evidence' of corruption, heresy, and assorted misdemeanours, and their property is confiscated; the allegations of heresy centre on alleged worship of a severed head, and of an object of worship ('Baphomet') which is confused with a Christian name for the Prophet Mohammed. Abusing sacred Christian symbols and homosexual orgies are also alleged. James of Molay is among 134 of the 138 arrested Templars in Paris who is supposed to have confessed to heinous crimes.

The Pope protests at the unilateral Royal action to no avail.

Some regard this as a nominal protest to ward off allegations of collusion. A few Templars escape in disguise; around 25 are said to have been tortured to death.

24 November. In the official letter ‘*Pastoralis praeeminentiae*’ the Pope asks all European sovereigns to arrest all the Templars in their dominions and investigate them as is being done in France.

SPAIN

Resistance to the Papal orders to dissolve the Templar Order and arrest the members and take their property, especially in Aragon where King James is unconvinced by the charges and sends an indignant reply; the Pope informs him of James of Molay’s confession and he acts, and the Templar Master in Aragon, Exemen of Lenda, is arrested but some Templar castles refuse to surrender including Asto, Catnavieja, Chalamon, Monza, and (in Roussilon) Miravet.

CYPRUS

October/November. Regent Amaury, who was backed by the Templars in his 1306 coup, is embarrassed by the orders to arrest the Templars but does so; some resist and have to be captured by royal troops after skirmishes.

1308 FRANCE

Rising pressure among the Curia, at Poitiers, to abandon the prosecution of the Templars and accept at least some of their denials or recantations, with James of Molay telling Papal visitors to his prison that he was tortured; in reply, Philip’s partisans make threatening accusations of corruption in the Papal administration to encourage Clement to co-operate.

February. Clement asks the Inquisition to suspend its investigations, amid numerous indications of forced and unreliable confessions. King Philip’s legal experts tell him that the Templars are under Papal jurisdiction so only the Pope can try them and dissolve their Order.

SPAIN

February. King James instigates a blockade of the resisting Templar castles; at Miravet the commander, Ramon San Guardia, warns that they do not trust the Pope while he is under French influence and asks King James to guarantee to protect the Order as long as Clement is Philip IV’s ally but is ignored; Miravet and Monzon hold out for many months.

FRANCE

April. After Easter, the Estates-General meets at Tours to hear the ‘evidence’ against the Templars and lend secular support to the King in pressurising the Pope.

29 May. The King and his advisors meet the Pope and his officials at Poitiers, and the Royal minister William of Plaisans puts the Royal case and 'evidence' to the Curia. Some Templars are brought to repeat their confessions. In subsequent negotiations Philip agrees to accept that he is only the trustee of the confiscated Templar property for the Church if the proceedings will receive Papal approval.

CYPRUS

May. Regent Amaury proceeds reluctantly with a trial of the arrested Templars, but they are strongly defended by his Seneschal, Philip of Ibelin, who says that it is their secrecy which has led to rumours about orgies and idol-worship, and many others. He postpones any punishment, and the Pope is not satisfied and orders his local Legate, Bishop Peter (of Pleine-Cassagne) of Rodez, to hold a new trial but has no power to enforce his orders.

SPAIN

Treaty of Alcala de Henares: Castile (Ferdinand III) and Aragon (James II) agree to divide up north Africa and Granada when they are conquered, so the two Christian powers are not at odds over the 'Reconquista'. Ferdinand agrees to attack Algeciras while James attacks Almeria – Castile will have most of Granada and Aragon the eastern sixth. The Marinid Sultan of Morocco 'signs up' too, so he can get Christian acceptance of his gaining Ceuta from Granada, so it is not technically as totally Christian alliance but Pope Clement V later agrees to grant it Crusading status and levy a tax on the clergy for it.

BYZANTIUM

Ferdinand of Sicily, having turned pirate with Aragonese shipping in the Aegean en route home and pillaged Halmyrus, is attacked and captured and ships dispersed near Euboea by Thibaut de Cepoy, Charles of Valois' local commander; Thibaut hands him over to Guy II of Athens for captivity (Guy sends him home) and goes on to Cassandreia to negotiate with Berenguer who wants himself to rule restored 'Kingdom of Thessalonica'.

Chandrenus leads Byzantine army into Macedonia to fight Catalans; Berenguer, losing confidence of men, is deposed and deported to Naples by Cepoy, but he cannot win over Catalans to Charles' plans and abandons them too.

ATHENS

Death of childless Duke Guy II; succeeded by Walter of Brienne.

FRANCE

July–August. The Pope issues bulls approving of the arrests of the Templars and appointing commissioners in each diocese to try those who have been charged; a Council of the Church will meet at Vienne in 1310 to deal with the Templars and arrange a Crusade. The Templar leaders, imprisoned at Chinon, will be examined by a committee of cardinals and a Papal commission will decide what to do with the Order.

August. The Pope announces that he will transfer his residence to Avignon, a Papal-owned enclave in Provence; commencement of what is subsequently called the ‘Babylonish Captivity’ of the Church. He agrees to a posthumous trial of Pope Boniface to satisfy Philip (this peters out amidst Papal discouragement) and to absolve Nogaret provided that he goes on Crusade. The Papal entourage then leaves Poitiers for the Rhone valley.

BALTIC

September. Invited by Duke Wladyslaw ‘the Short’ of Poland to assist his claim to the Danzig region by evicting the Brandenburgers who local nobles have invited in, the Teutonic Knights besiege Danzig, expel the Brandenburg garrison, and massacre the townsfolk.

Occupation of Danzig by the Teutonic Knights; the Poles have to accept it as they cannot buy them off.

1309 GERMANY

January. Papal ally Count Henry of Luxembourg is elected as Emperor after the assassination (1 May 1308) of Albert of Habsburg. Clement ignores Philip IV’s attempt to get him to back Charles of Valois as the next Emperor instead. Henry duly becomes the Papal candidate to restore order in northern and central Italy.

FRANCE

March. The Papal residence is established at Avignon.

BYZANTIUM

Spring. Leaving two main parties of Turks behind, the Catalans invade Thessaly via Vale of Tempe and start pillaging countryside; John II appeals to Chandrenus for aid.

Chandrenus leads Byzantine army into Thessaly; the Catalans are hemmed in against the sea, but Duke Walter of Athens refuses to join coalition against them and proposes to hire them to restore his authority over Thessaly.

ITALY

April. The Pope grants the status of a Crusade to Cardinal Arnold Pellegrue's expedition in the 'Romagna' to recover the Papal-allied city-state of Ferrara, which has been seized on the death of 'Signor' Azzo VIII of Este by Venice for its nominee, his illegitimate son; the expedition is a success.

FRANCE

Spring–Summer. Popular enthusiasm for and exaggerated rumours about the imminent Crusade lead to a large and unruly assembly of northern European volunteers camping outside Avignon, asking the Pope to direct an expedition for them. He sends them home.

SPAIN

Failure of the Castilian siege of Algeciras and the Aragonese siege of Almeria; the only successes of the anti-Granada Crusade offensive are the Catalan capture of Gibraltar for Castile and the Marinid capture of Ceuta.

BALTIC

Grand Master Siegfried of Feuchtwangen of the Teutonic Knights relocates their headquarters from Venice to the fortress-town of Marienburg by the Vistula in Prussia. From now on the Knights are permanently based in the Baltic.

September. Treaty of Soldin: the Knights purchase the rule of Pomerelia, east of the mouth of the Vistula, from Poland.

ENGLAND

September. Papal commissioners and Inquisitors Dieudonne, Abbot of Lagny, and Sicard of Vaur, a canon of Narbonne, arrive in England to examine arrested Templars with the Bishop of London. As torture is illegal in England there are no useful confessions to be produced.

October–18 November. Hearings in London into the arrested Templars; nobody admits to any charges.

24 November. The Inquisitors secure support from the Canterbury provincial Church Council to ask King Edward II to allow the use of torture to examine the prisoners; still no success. The King will not guarantee to hand over the Templars' property to the Church without baronial permission, and the Archbishops are pressurised by the Pope and Philip IV to urge the King to support the French precedents in the prosecutions.

FRANCE

22 November. The Papal commission into the Templars opens its proceedings, at the Archbishop's residence in Paris. Gilles Aicelin, Archbishop of Narbonne, heads the commission and other Royal allies dominate the membership.

26 and 28 November. Grand Master James of Molay makes his defence, and assures his orthodoxy; confused about what he has confessed, he claims to be illiterate and offers to defend his faith in trial by combat.

28 November. The commission ends its first sitting.

SPAIN

November. Surrender of the Templar fortress of Miravet.

Raymond Lull's *Liber de acquisitione terrae sanctae* – a plan for the next Crusade to recover the Holy Land.

1310 FRANCE

3 February. Second sitting of the Templar commission in Paris opens; Ponsard of Payns, Preceptor of Gizey, alleges that all his confessions are false due to torture and that the prisoners would have confessed anything. 332 more Templars have recanted their confessions similarly by 27 February.

14 March. The full list of 127 charges are read out to 90 Templars who have volunteered to defend the Order; others volunteer to do so too in later sessions.

Late March. Two Templars are chosen to defend the Order – Reginald of Provins, Preceptor of Orleans, and Peter of Bologna, the Order's former Procurator at the Papal court.

1 April. The two Templars appear before the court with two more who have served in the Holy Land – Wiliam of Chambonnais, preceptor of Blaudeix (Auvergne), and Berrrand of Sartiges, preceptor of Carlat (Rouergue). Reginald complains that the Grand Master and Chapter

should have chosen the advocates, the heresy charges were proceeded with by illegal means, and the defence should be allowed hired lawyers and be in Church not Royal custody. Peter of Bologna, presumably trained at that university, denounces the confessions and says that the charges of heresy deny common sense. The trial is stalemated.

Postponement of the planned Church Council of Vienne from *October 1310* to *October 1311*, largely due to the long delays in assembling enough evidence against the Templars to justify their suppression.

French minister William de Nogaret advises Philip IV to insist that if he is to lead the next Crusade the Church taxation granted to fund it should be handed to him so he does not have to borrow money and then run up debts; alternatively he could seize all the Templars' assets to fund it.

ITALY

Spring. A limited Papal/Hospitaller/French naval force of galleys assembles at Brindisi for an expedition to aid Armenia, but Philip IV does not lend any help; it eventually sails to Rhodes.

THESSALY

Spring. Byzantine and Thessalian armies reach agreement with the Catalan Company who are to move on into their new employer Duke Walter of Athens' lands, and they start to march south.

Walter is unwilling to receive Catalans in his territory, but they seize Lamia and negotiations are unsuccessful.

CYPRUS

Summer. Assassination of Amaury, regent of Cyprus, by partisans of his brother King Henry; the latter is restored to power.

The Papal commission into the Templars, under Peter of Rodez, is able to carry out its orders and re-try the local Templars, who are duly found guilty as the Pope requires.

BOHEMIA

Emperor-elect Henry's son John of Luxembourg is chosen as the new King after the expulsion of Duke Henry of Carinthia; he is married to the late King Wenceslas III's sister Elizabeth.

1311 ITALY

January. Arrival in Lombardy of Henry of Luxembourg (Emperor Henry VII) for his coronation as its King, by an uneasy alliance with the Visconti

dynasty of Milan. Start of the attempt by Henry to restore Imperial control over the turbulent cities of northern and central Italy as a Papal ally, with the suspicious King Robert of Naples as the Papal vicar of the 'Romagna' (northern Papal states).

SPAIN

March. The Pope orders the Archbishop of Tarragona and the Bishop of Valencia to extract Templar confessions by torture; however these are later retracted in court.

The Papal commissions sent to Spain to try arrested Templars in 1311–12 achieve success in finding Templars guilty in Navarre, a French ally due to its late Queen being Philip IV's deceased wife (Joanna), but not in Castile or Portugal.

GERMANY

The Archbishops of Trier and Mainz decide that the Templars are innocent after a lack of evidence at their ecclesiastical investigations into the Order.

ATHENS

March. Duke Walter and most of his feudal levy are killed by Catalans in battle of Cephissus, near site of Orchomenus in Boeotia, as their heavy cavalry sinks in marsh and is assailed with arrows; de Stromoncourt, Pallavicini, and most of senior lords killed.

Catalans take over the fiefs of Athens and Thebes, under titular government of Roger Deslaur as Bonifazio of Verona (of Euboea) refused honour; Walter's widow and son escape to West to appeal for aid. Walter's family retains control of Argos and Nauplia.

The Catalans ask their nominal sovereign King Frederick II of Sicily, of their own Aragonese blood and in whose service some of them have fought, to nominate a ruler for them as his deputy. He selects his son Manfred as their Duke, and Don Berenguer Estanol serves as Vicar-General to 1316.

FRANCE

April. Pope Clement manages to persuade King Philip to end his posthumous trial of Pope Boniface VIII, on condition that the current Pope restores the expelled Colonna cardinals, abolishes all Boniface's anti-French acts, pardons Nogaret, and canonises Pope Celestine V.

10 May. Archbishop Philip (of Marigny) of Sens, brother of Philip IV's senior minister Enguerrand of Sens, convenes his ecclesiastical court –

with jurisdiction over the see of Paris and its courts – to take over the Templar hearings from the stalemated ecclesiastical commission. The Templars appeal to the commission to stand up to him, but they decide that he has legal rights to proceed. The Archbishop's court duly proceeds, and (11 May) decides to burn 54 of the Templars at once as relapsed heretics for retracting their confessions and does so despite the commission's appeal. Four more are executed later, and the Templars' defenders Reginald and Peter 'disappear' from prison which hampers the survivors' defence.

Summer. Reports of the Templar examinations across Europe start to arrive, belatedly, at the Papal headquarters at the priory of Grazean near Vienne; only France has provided concrete 'evidence' of heresy, and elsewhere the information is mostly hearsay.

Saturday 16 October. General Council of the Church opens at Vienne on the lower Rhone. No sovereigns are present. The Crusade, Church reform, and the dissolution of the Templar Order are the main priorities.

Seven Templars turn up in response to an invitation from the Pope (not meant to be accepted?) for them to defend themselves and the Council votes to hear them despite French objections, but the decision to dissolve the Order proceeds under French pressure. King James of Aragon asks for the Templars' property in Aragon to be transferred to the local Order of Calatrava.

BALTIC

Charles of Trier succeeds Siegfried of Feuchtwangen as Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1312 FRANCE

17 February. As the French Estates start to assemble at Lyons under a plan by Philip IV to pressurise the Church Council over the Templars' suppression, Pope Clement receives a delegation of senior French nobles headed by Philip's heir Prince Louis. Philip writes from Macon to ask for the Order's property to be transferred to a new Order – which it is expected one of his sons will head. Clement proposes that the property should be transferred to the Hospitallers, and Philip says he will accept that – saving for whatever rights are legally reserved to his decision in his kingdom.

20 March. Philip, his sons, and a large armed escort arrive in Vienne.

22 March. The Council's committee on the Templars votes to dissolve the Order in a secret meeting, evidently hurried up due to Philip's arrival.

FRANCE

3 April. At the Council's special service at the cathedral of St. Maurice in King Philip's presence, Clement announces the dissolution of the Templar Order (bull 'Vox in excelso').

13 April. Clement announces a new Crusade at the cathedral – a 'passagium generale' to be led by the Kings. It is meant to occur in *1319*.

3 May. Papal bull 'Ad Providam' – all Templar property is to be transferred to the Hospitallers, except in Castile, Aragon, Portugal, and Majorca where the allocation will be decided later. In the event, new Orders are set up in Portugal (the 'Order of Christ') and parts of Aragon to take on the Templar properties, and part of their property passes to the King in France and England (and probably Scotland, currently in civil war).

Clement agrees to Philip IV's proposal that the Crusade taxes are partly to be used to fund an expedition by Philip of Taranto to conquer Constantinople as 'Latin Emperor'-designate and fiancé of 'Empress' Catherine (daughter of Charles of Valois and the late Catherine of Courtenay); his soldiers are granted Crusading indulgences.

May. End of the Council of Vienne.

Pentecost. At ceremonies in Paris, Philip IV and his three sons, brother Charles of Valois, and nephew Philip all take the Cross and pledge to join the next Crusade.

ITALY

29 June. Henry of Luxembourg is crowned as Holy Roman Emperor by three cardinals, on Clement's behalf, in the Lateran Basilica in Rome. The Vatican is in the hands of Henry's enemy King Robert of Naples.

Clement asks Henry to leave the Papal States and observe a year's truce with Robert, and the Emperor has to pull back into Tuscany as his troops start to go home.

SPAIN

7 September. Death of king Ferdinand IV of Castile, aged 26; succeeded by his son by Constance of Portugal, Alfonso XI (born *13 August 1311*) under a long regency.

1313 FRANCE/MOREA/ITALY

Philip IV of France arranges that his niece Catherine, daughter of Charles of Valois and 'Latin Empress' Catherine of Courtenay, heiress to 'empire' claim, marries Philip of Taranto.

Margaret of Akova, Isabella's passed-over younger sister and widow of Richard Orsini of Cephallonia, proposes to Frederick II that her daughter Isabella of Sabran marry Ferdinand of Majorca (ex-leader of Catalans) and they take over Achaia instead of Louis of Burgundy.

ITALY

24 August. Death of Emperor Henry VII near Siena; anarchy resumes in northern Italy. The Emperor's son King John keeps Bohemia, while Lewis of Bavaria emerges as the strongest ruler in Germany.

CYPRUS

The possessions of the Templars are handed over to the Hospitallers.

1314 FRANCE

Grand Master James of Molay and the Preceptor of Normandy, Geoffrey de Chagny, withdraw their confessions after they are sentenced to perpetual imprisonment. They are quickly condemned to death as obdurate heretics. De Chagny may have been the custodian of the 'Shroud of Turin', which first appears in his family's possession in the mid-14th century. (It has been suggested that it was a 'miraculous likeness' of Christ acquired as a relic from Constantinople in the Fourth Crusade, possibly the 'Mandelson' taken from Edessa to the city in 944. It may have been the secret 'severed head' relic linked to the Templars by garbled reports during the confessions of 1307.)

18 March. Burning of James of Molay and Geoffrey of Chagny for heresy on the banks of the River Seine in Paris. James is supposed to have summoned the Pope and Philip IV to answer before the tribunal of God within a year.

20 April. Death of Pope Clement.

MOREA

Margaret of Akova escorts daughter Isabella to Aragon to marry Ferdinand of Majorca, but is arrested and imprisoned by Angevins on her return to Achaia.

SPAIN

Death of Emir Nasr of Granada, younger son of Mohammed II 'al-Faqih', after five-year reign; succeeded by his cousin Ismail (d. 1325), grandson of the founding mir Mohammed al-Nasr's younger brother Ismail.

GERMANY

October. Disputed Imperial election: several Electors each choose the two principal candidates, Lewis of Bavaria and Frederick ‘the Handsome’ (Habsburg) of Austria.

FRANCE

29 November. Death of Philip IV after hunting-accident, aged 46; succeeded by his eldest son Louis X, King of Navarre through his mother Joan.

1315 MOREA

Margaret of Akova dies in captivity and her daughter Isabella after childbirth, but *June* Ferdinand of Majorca arrives at Clarenza with Aragonese troops to claim rule of Achaia; Angevins hold out at Patras and *Autumn* Mahaut and Louis of Burgundy arrive in Messina as Angevin nominees.

1316 ATHENS

Death of titular Duke Manfred, succeeded by brother William under regency of bastard brother Alfonso.

FRANCE

March. Belated Papal election-conclave assembles at Lyons under pressure from King Louis X’s brother Philip, Count of Poitou. The French royal family and King Robert of Naples are the main secular parties interested in backing their nominees.

15 June. Death of King Louis X, aged 27, without a son; a regency is installed under his brother Count Philip of Poitou until it is known if his pregnant wife Clementia’s baby will be a boy.

7 August. Jacques Duese, a French Papal notary, Bishop of Avignon since 1310, and former Chancellor of the Kingdom of Sicily, is elected Pope (John XXII). He asserts the alleged Papal rights to govern the Empire during a vacancy, not recognising the current claimants to the throne and demanding their submission to him.

13/14 November. Birth and accession of King John I, posthumous son of Louis X.

19 November. Death of King John I; his uncle Philip succeeds as King Philip V, and also rules Navarre as his mother Joan was its heiress.

MOREA

Civil war between Aragonese and Angevins over Achaia ends with battles in Elis, as 2,000 Byzantines from Mistra and Count John of Cephallonia assist Princess Mahaut and her husband Louis of Burgundy; *July*. Ferdinand defeated at Manolada, captured and executed and Mahaut and Louis rule Achaia, but Louis soon dies (*August*) and King Robert of Naples, as suzerain of lands, appoints his own governors rather than letting a woman rule. He attempts to persuade Mahaut to marry his brother John of Gravina as his next chosen viceroy, but she refuses.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

16 December. Death of 'Ilkhan' Oljeitu; succeeded by the 12-year-old Abu Said, resident in Iraq, under a regency. This marks the start of the break-up of the Mongol realm and the end of any threat to the Mamelukes.

1317 MOREA

Robert deposes and deports Mahaut of Achaia to Naples and asserts direct Angevin rule.

ATHENS

The new regent and Vicar-General Alfonso Fadrique seizes most of Euboea (centred on Karystos) from the Italian lords ('trierarchs'), claiming it as the inheritance of his wife, the late trierarch Boniface of Verona's daughter.

November. Death of Manfred of Sicily, titular Duke of Athens for the Catalan Company; succeeded by brother Duke William, another illegitimate son of King Frederick of Sicily.

1318 FRANCE

Philip V appoints the Crusading enthusiast Louis of Bourbon, Count of Clermont, as his lieutenant to organise a 'passagium particulare' (limited Crusade) for *1319*. Ten galleys are collected to take troops to the east. The first move will be to assist Armenia against the (now Moslem) Mongols.

THESSALY

Death of John II Ducas; principality lapses into chaos as rival lords claim independence, Byzantium retakes north, and regent Alfonso of Athens claims Neopatras.

EPIRUS

‘Despot’ Thomas Angelus Ducas is murdered by his sister’s son, Nicholas Orsini the new Count of Cephallonia, who marries his widow Theodora, Andronicus II’s grand-daughter.

1319 FRANCE/ITALY

The French troops intended to be sent to Cyprus en route for Crusade are diverted to Italy to help the Pope’s army under Cardinal Bertrand de Poujet against local dynasts in the war-torn Papal States.

August. Peace-treaty in Flanders (in revolt against France since 1302) frees Philip V to go on Crusade.

Winter. Discussions are held at the French Court on arrangements for an imminent Crusade, which never occurs.

RHODES

Helion of Villeneuve succeeds Fulk de Villaret as Grand Master of the Hospitallers. He spends much of the following period to the early 1330s touring Europe to raise money to pay off the 80,000 florins debts the Order owes for recent campaigns in the eastern Aegean and the fortification of Rhodes.

1320 BALTIC

20 January. Accession of Wladyslaw ‘the Short’, ruler of Little Poland as King of Poland – reunification of the divided kingdom. This diminishes the potential for annexations on the northern border by the land-hungry Teutonic Knights, but sporadic wars continue. Their main effort is now concentrated against the still-pagan Lithuanians.

FRANCE

Spring. ‘Shepherds’ Crusade’ of disorderly countrymen, allegedly inspired by Louis of Clermont’s collecting of volunteers for the coming Crusade. An ‘army’ of enthusiasts proceeds to Paris and then south into Languedoc, massacring Jews and attacking wealthy citizens en route, and has to be dispersed.

BYZANTIUM

12 October. Michael IX dies aged 43.

Andronicus II refuses to recognise his grandson Andronicus, Michael’s son, as heir after a recent scandal where Andronicus’ henchmen killed

his mistress' alleged rival lover who turned out to be his brother. Civil war follows.

ARMENIA

Death of King Oshin; succeeded by his nephew Leo IV.

1321 ITALY

Autumn. Pope John gives Crusading indulgences for participants in his army's campaigns against the Visconti of Milan (led by cardinal Bertrand de Poujet, legate in Italy since 1319) and the Estensi of Ferrara, who are both encroaching on the Papal States.

1322 FRANCE

3 January. Death of Philip V; his brother Charles IV succeeds to the combined thrones of France and (their mother Joan's inheritance) Navarre.

ITALY

Papal and allied Naples forces have some success against Matteo Visconti of Milan and his general Federico di Montefeltro in central/northern Italy.

ITALY/ACHAIA

King Robert of Naples proclaims his younger brother John of Gravina Prince of Achaia, his deputy to rule his Peloponnesian fiefs, and has him ceremonially invested by the Pope at Avignon.

1323 FRANCE/ITALY

January. King Charles holds a conference to organise a Crusade, with special reference to recent Mongol raids on Armenia. It is decided that a first contingent will leave France in 1323, followed by a 'passagium particulare' in 1324 or 1325. Amaury of Narbonne is to lead the first contingent, and six ships are collected; the Papal Curia however asks for a delay to the project, claiming they will need more specific plans and cannot pay the French all the money which Charles wants (200,000 livres for the first contingent and thereafter 1,600,000 livres per year).

EPIRUS

Nicholas Orsini murdered by brother John (II) who marries widow and seizes power.

1324 FRANCE/ITALY

23 March. Pope John excommunicates Lewis of Bavaria, who defies his claims of Papal supremacy over lay rulers and calls in the philosopher Marsilius of Padua to formulate a polemical reply to them ('Defensor Pacis').

CYPRUS

15 April. Death of the epileptic King Henry II, aged 53, the last crowned King of Jerusalem; succeeded by his son, Hugh IV.

BYZANTIUM

Andronicus II sends Genoese Bishop of Caffa to Italy and France to encourage league against Turks.

BALTIC

Werner of Orseln becomes Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1325 PORTUGAL

7 January. Death of King Denis, aged 63, at Lisbon after a highly successful reign of nearly 46 years; succeeded by his son Alfonso IV (born *8 February 1291*).

SPAIN

End of the regency in Castile for the young King Alfonso XI (b. *1310*); the new regime sees the warlike young King reassert the 'forward policy' of his ancestors and resume the 'Reconquista', which stalled under the regency in *1312–25*.

6 July. Death of Emir Ismail I of Granada, aged 45/6, assassinated by his cousin Mohammed the governor of Algeciras in an argument over possession of a recently-captured Castilian slave-girl. Succeeded by his 10-year-old son Mohammed IV.

1326 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE

Spring. Fall of Brusa to 'Ottomans'/'Osmanlis', the tribal state of Osman ibn Ertorgul in Bithynia, who take the city as their new capital; Osman's son Orhan succeeds him as their Emir.

Andronicus II sends envoys to Papal ‘curia’ at Avignon and France about alliance.

October. Andronicus III marries his grandfather’s choice to be his second wife, Anna of Savoy.

1327 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Venetian representatives in Constantinople approach Andronicus II concerning his joining their planned naval league against Turks.

October. Andronicus III arrives at Selymbria in defiance of Andronicus II’s orders, and refuses instructions to return to Didymoteichon; Andronicus II sends a delegation to present his complaints to his grandson.

SPAIN

5 November. Death of King James II of Aragon, aged c. 63; succeeded by his son Alfonso III (born 1302).

1328 FRANCE/ITALY

January. Pope John declares a Crusade against Lewis of Bavaria as the latter invades central Italy and enters Rome for his coronation.

17 January. Sciarro Colonna, leader of the local Roman dynasty renowned for defying Pope Boniface, crowns Lewis as Emperor Lewis IV in his capacity as ‘Captain of the People’ in Rome; the coronation is not recognised as legal by the Papacy.

1 February. Death of King Charles IV of France. His widow, Jeanne of Evreux, is pregnant so a regency follows until the child is born.

1 April. As Charles IV’s posthumous child turns out to be a girl, his cousin Philip of Valois succeeds him and becomes King Philip VI. He revives plans for a Crusade, making the most of his eastern Mediterranean links as the son of Charles of Valois and half-brother of ‘Latin Empress’ Catherine.

18 April. Lewis’ tame synod declares Pope John deposed for heresy.

12 May. Twelve pro-Imperialist Roman clerics elect a Franciscan friar, Pietro Rainulducci, as Pope Nicholas V to replace John XXII; not recognised except by Lewis’ partisans. He sets up his own Curia, and is recognised by the Kingdom of Sicily which acquires a new Archbishop for Monreale.

4 August. Lewis, his army, and Anti-Pope Nicholas leave Rome for northern Italy on campaign.

BYZANTIUM

Andronicus III attacks Constantinople. Venetians blockade Constantinople and Galata by sea in pursuit of trade-dispute with Genoa; 23 May at night Andronicus III, his lieutenant John Cantacuzene, and c. 800 men arrive at the walls and guard-commander near Gate of St. Romanus let down ropes to enable men to climb walls and open gates.

24 May Tumult as Andronicus III's men advance through city finally alerts Andronicus II at palace; the old Emperor takes refuge with icon of Virgin but on grandson's arrival he is assured that no harm intended and is deposed but allowed to live in palace with insignia.

Andronicus III secures capital, and new government includes his friend, future emperor John Cantacuzene, as 'Grand Domestic'.

BALTIC

Crusade expedition of King John of Bohemia to Prussia to assist the Teutonic Knights against the Lithuanian pagans. This is the most famous of a series of special 'Reisen' ('journeys') made by senior European chivalric figures to assist the Knights during the 14th century.

1329 ITALY

19 February. Lewis, Anti-Pope Nicholas and his philosopher ally William of Ockham are among the guests at a ceremony of condemnation and degradation of a straw effigy of John XXII at Pisa. In reality, their control over central and northern Italy is slipping away as the Visconti of Milan return to allegiance to the Pope.

April. Lewis moves on to northern Italy, leaving Nicholas in Pisa; he ends up taking refuge with the Count of Doronatico.

The Papal Crusade against Lewis is militarily hampered by the death of its commander, Castraccio Castracani, but is broadly successful.

BALTIC

King John of Bohemia's expedition ends up assisting the Teutonic Knights against the Christian Poles in a conflict over Dobrzyn and Plock.

BYZANTIUM

Andronicus III and Cantacuzene collect army of c. 2,000 army veterans from Constantinople and more from Thrace to relieve Ottoman pressure on Nicaea; 3 June at Pelekanon they sight Orchan and c. 8,000 men camped in hills; 10 June they challenge Turks to fight, and c. 300 mounted archers descend to attack Byzantines in plain; as Orchan's main army will not engage, Cantacuzene advises retreat to camp and during withdrawal

Turks attack again and Andronicus wounded in knee; that night rumour spreads that Andronicus is dead and panicking soldiers abandon camp and flee to coast; *11 June* Andronicus is carried on stretcher to coast for a ship, and Cantacuzene vainly tries to restore discipline as two high-ranking officers killed in Turkish attack on army outside the town; survivors flee to ships at Chrysopolis.

1330 ITALY

Early. Lewis IV abandons his Italian campaign and returns to Germany.

The Pope brings in King John of Bohemia to invade northern Italy and set up a pro-Papal kingdom in Lombardy, as a counter-balance to Milan and Venice.

25 July. Handed over to Pope John's agents at Pisa and promised his life if he abdicates, Anti-Pope Nicholas renounces his office and is taken by ship to Provence and house-arrest at the Papal palace at Avignon.

ATHENS/ITALY/FRANCE

The late Walter of Brienne and Athens' son Count Walter, claimant to Athens and a lord in the service of Robert of Naples, secures a grant of Crusading status from Pope John for his planned expedition to retake Athens from the Catalans. He recruits a mixed French and Tuscan army of c. 1,300 men for his invasion.

Nicholas Lancia succeeds Alfonso as Sicilian governor ('Vicar-General') of Athens.

SPAIN

Alfonso XI of Castile besieges Teba, one of the outlying fortresses near Malaga; the siege sees 500 Portuguese knights and a number of foreign Crusader recruits fighting for the Castilians, most notably Sir James Douglas, 'Black Douglas', the companion of Robert Bruce in the wars for Scotland's independence. Douglas is taking the Bruce's heart to Jerusalem as requested by the late King (d. *June 1329*), and according to Bruce's biographer, John Barbour, during an ambush he throws the casket into a crowd of attackers to spur his party on to charge them and regain it; Douglas is killed in the melee. The siege ends successfully after a major battle (August), when the Granadan mercenary Berber commander Uthman ibn Abi-I-Ula tries to trick the Christians into a trap by sending a force across the nearby river to lure him away from their camp which he will then attack from a hidden position. But the wary Castilians only detach a small force to hold the Moslems at the river, and Uthman is surprised to be confronted by the main Christian force in his attack and is routed.

FRANCE

Autumn. Peter of Palud, titular Patriarch of Jerusalem, returns from embassy to the Mameluke court and calls on the King and his nobles to mount a new Crusade.

1331 BYZANTIUM

2 March. Surrender of Nicaea to Ottomans; Orchan allows those citizens who want to leave to do so with holy relics.

MOREA

Death of Philip of Taranto; his widow Catherine sole overlord of Achaia.

EPIRUS

August. Walter of Brienne's son Walter (now a landowner in Apulia) restores Angevin suzerainty over John II Orsini of Epirus by naval attack. He sails from Brindisi to Leucas (Santa Maura) and captures Arta, making John submit, and then goes on to cross the mountains to attack his father's former domain of Thebes.

FRANCE

Autumn. Pope John commences preaching for a Crusade under encouragement from King Philip VI.

BALTIC

Luther of Brunswick becomes Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1332 FRANCE

February. Papal-French negotiations open for the organisation of the new Crusade.

An anonymous Dominican submits a treatise on the best method of Crusade, *Directorium ad passagium faciendum*, to the French court. It recommends a land campaign across the Balkans and Anatolia, but Philip's advisers prefer a naval expedition via Cyprus.

BYZANTINE/ITALY/France

September. Pope John organizes formation of Maritime League of anti-Turkish powers on the basis of Venice's plan of 1325, on proposals of Venetian Crusading enthusiast Marino Sanudo Torcello; Andronicus is invited to join Venice and the Knights Hospitaller of Rhodes in supplying

10 ships for campaign, but Pope is not enthusiastic admitting schismatics to the league.

ATHENS

Walter of Brienne returns to Italy.

1333 FRANCE

July. Agreement is reached between Philip VI's envoys and Pope John's negotiators on the Crusade – there is to be a tax of a tenth throughout Christendom for a Crusade commencing in *August 1336*, commanded by Philip.

16 July. The cardinals approve the date and nature of the Crusade.

SPAIN

Reconquest of Gibraltar from Castile by the Moslems under the Marinid Sultan/Caliph of Morocco, Abu Al-Hassan, who Emir Mohammed IV of Granada has asked for help despite the threat of his being overrun by Morocco later; Pope John grants Alfonso XI of Castile Crusading status for his campaigns to increase recruits and funds.

Mohammed IV's Marinid alliance annoys his autonomist nobles, who assassinate him en route home from Algeciras (*25 August*), aged 18; he is succeeded by his 15-year-old brother Yusuf.

BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE

August. Andronicus brings supplies to Turk-blockaded Nicomedia in person, stays for a week, and meets Orchan in person; he secretly pays 12,000 'hyperpera' tribute to secure what is left of Bithynia.

MOREA

John of Gravina cedes Achaia to his nephew, Philip of Taranto and Catherine's son Robert.

FRANCE

1 October. King Philip and many of his nobles take the Cross at an assembly near St.Germain-des-Pres, outside Paris. He offers assistance to the planned 'naval league' in the Aegean, as this will remove the Turkish pirate threat and make his expedition easier. The plan is for a 'primum passagium' in *1334* and then an expedition by Louis of Clermont in *1335*, followed by the King in *1336*.

1334 | ITALY/AEGEAN

Early. Papal-led league against Turks confirmed and contributions are arranged but run by the Papacy, France, Venice, and Cyprus without Byzantine participation, due to obduracy over admitting Greek Orthodox schismatics by the Papacy.

Summer. A fleet of c. 80 vessels proceeds to Aegean and campaign against Turkish pirates, defeating Emir of Karasi off Adramyttion; however they fail in objective of attacking Smyrna.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Two Papal envoys, Dominican friars, in Constantinople for theological arguments about differences between Churches; Orthodox representatives at debate include Greek theologian Barlaam of Calabria, head of philosophy at Patriarchal academy.

SPAIN

Truce between Alfonso XI of Castile and the new Emir Yusuf of Granada; meanwhile the latter's uncomfortably powerful ally Abu al-Hasan of Morocco is diverted by a war against the Algerian city-state of Tlemcen.

ENGLAND/FRANCE

September. Edward III sends envoys to Philip VI to arrange a meeting for them to resolve their disputes ahead of joining the Crusade; no success.

ITALY/FRANCE

October. Philip instructs Louis of Clermont to abandon his plan to lead the 1335 expedition to the East and assist him in 1336 instead.

4 December. Death of Pope John XXII, aged around 90 and one of the oldest-surviving Popes; the Crusading fleet in Aegean postpones further activities.

20 December. Benedict XII (Jacques Fournier, a Languedoc theologian and as Bishop of Pamiers used to interrogating heretics) elected Pope. Allegedly the 'front-runner', Cardinal John de Commignes, refused to stay in France rather than return to Rome and was deserted by the French cardinals.

1335 | FRANCE

February. As tension with England mounts over the claims of Edward III to the French throne as the son of Charles IV's sister Isabella (and France giving sanctuary to King David Bruce of Scotland, evicted by the English

in 1333/4), the pressure in France to divert the funds and men needed for Crusade to domestic purposes rises.

EPIRUS/BYZANTIUM

? Anna Angela Ducaena poisons her husband John II Orsini and rules as regent for their son, Nicephorus II.

FRANCE/ENGLAND

Late Autumn. Papal efforts to mediate between Philip and Edward III, with pressure on Philip to abandon the claim to Scotland by his client King David Bruce whose partisans have lost control of most of the country.

MONGOL DOMINIONS/IRAQ

30 November. Death of the last ‘Ilkhan’, Abu Said. The rule of Iraq now passes to the Jalayrid dynasty of Baghdad, headed by Abu Said’s chief minister Hassan-i-Burzug.

BALTIC

Dietrich of Altenburg becomes Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1336 SPAIN

24 January. Death of Alfonso III of Aragon, aged 33/4; succeeded by his son Peter IV, aged 17.

FRANCE/ENGLAND

The Crusade is postponed at Philip VI’s request, and is soon overtaken by the ‘Hundred Years’ War’ between France and England.

1337 ITALY

25 January. Death of Frederick (II) of Sicily, aged 70 or 71; succeeded by his son Peter II.

BYZANTIUM/EPIRUS

Following trouble from Albanian banditry around Berat and Kroia, Andronicus decides on campaign en route to Epirus and hires 2,000 Turkish mercenaries from Emir Umur of Aydin; the Byzantine practice of employing Turks gives the latter useful experience of the Balkans.

Anna of Epirus arranges to surrender her principality to Andronicus in return for promise that Nicephorus can succeed to Despotate on majority; he insists on unconditional surrender, and Anna agrees.

Andronicus goes to Epirus to receive Anna's surrender; he tours the Despotate receiving submissions. Nicephorus has disappeared and is discovered to have been taken to Catherine of Courtenay's court at Taranto by some rebel nobles.

Fall of Nicomedia to Turks.

1338 MOREA

Autumn. Catherine of Courtenay and her son Robert arrive at Patras to govern Achaia in person, accompanied by Nicephorus of Epirus whose supporters in Epirus plan revolt.

1339 EPIRUS

Achaian knights accompany Nicephorus Ducas Orsini to Epirus as rebellion breaks out, and Catherine's galleys establish him at coastal fortress of Thomokastron; governor Synadenus is imprisoned in revolt in Arta. Andronicus III prepares army in his capital.

Fall of Chrysopolis, on the opposite shore of the Bosphorus from the capital, to the Turks.

SPAIN

End of the truce between Castile and Granada leads to the latter renewing alliance with the aggressive Marinid Sultan Abu al-Hasan of Morocco.

POLAND/TEUTONIC KNIGHTS

Papal mediators between Poland and the Knights agree that legally areas of Pomerania occupied by the Knights during the pre-1320 division and anarchy in Poland belong to Poland and should be returned; the Knights ignore it and in 1343 Poland has to accept this.

SPAIN

Alfonso XI of Castile executes the Master of the Crusading Military Order of Alcantara.

1340 SPAIN

April. Defeat of the Castilian fleet by the Moroccans, opening the seas for a Moroccan crossing to invade Castile which Yusuf of Granada has promised to assist.

BYZANTIUM/EPIRUS

Andronicus and his lieutenant John Cantacuzene proceed to Thessalonica and *Spring* invade Epirus.

After six months' siege, Arta surrenders; Nicephorus and Italian/Achaian garrison hold out at Thomokastron and as Andronicus falls ill Cantacuzene goes to the siege and claims he persuaded rebels to surrender.

POLAND

August. The Pope grants Crusade status and preaching to the Polish campaign by King Casimir to conquer (Russian Orthodox) Galicia, its weakening eastern neighbour which is in danger of being overrun by the Mongols and whose pro-Catholic ruler Boleslaw George has been murdered by his nobles.

SPAIN

October. Crusading status and preaching assists recruitment for the campaign of Alfonso IX of Castile and Alfonso IV of Portugal against an invasion of southern Spain by Abu al-Hasan, the Marinid ruler of Morocco and Algeria. The latter and his Granada allies besiege Tarifa, and the two Alfonsos move in to relieve it. The two kings' alliance is personally fraught, as Alfonso IV's daughter Maria, Alfonso IX's wife, has been abandoned for a mistress leading to a recent reprisal Portuguese invasion of Castile.

30 October. The two Spanish kings relieve the Moslem siege of Tarifa and win a major victory at the River Salado, which is seen as the 'high-point' of the early-mid 14th century 'Reconquista'; the Castilians defeat the larger Moroccan contingent while the Portuguese tackle the Granadans and the garrison of Tarifa joins in to take the Moslems in the rear.

EPIRUS

Nicephorus is promised Cantacuzene's daughter and various honours, and rebellion ends; John Angelus to govern Arta.

1341 EGYPT

5 June. Death of the Sultan Al-Nasir Mohammed, son of Qalavun and brother of Khalil, aged 57; end of the stability of the dynasty and start of prolonged court strife in Cairo. He is succeeded by his son Abu Bakr, who is soon displaced by his brother Al-Ashraf Kuchuk.

BYZANTIUM

Andronicus III falls seriously ill and *14/15 June* dies aged 44; eldest son John V succeeds aged 9; *18 June* Anne takes up rôle as regent and prefers to turn to Patriarch John Calecas for support rather than mistrusted Cantacuzene. New admiral Alexius Apocaucus, enriched by judicious dealings as treasurer and resented as low-born by aristocrats, encourages Anna against Cantacuzene.

July. Crisis over John Alexander of Bulgaria demanding refugee predecessor Michael Sisman's extradition and a Serb incursion; Cantacuzene persuades Umur of Aydin to lend ships to threaten Bulgaria, and goes to western Thrace to sign a new treaty with Stephen Dusan of Serbia.

Envoys from Morea meet Cantacuzene at Didymoteichon offering to arrange for disgruntled Achaian baronial allies to revolt against Angevins and transfer allegiance to Byzantium.

CYPRUS/RHODES/France

Cypriot and Hospitaller envoys arrive at the Papal court asking for help against the Turkish pirates in the Aegean and eastern Mediterranean.

ARMENIA

Death of Leo IV; interregnum in disputed succession among rival candidates.

LITHUANIA

Grand Duke Gedimin is succeeded by his son Olgerd (Algirdas), who with his brothers Kenstutis and Narymont proves an able foe of the Teutonic Knights.

BYZANTIUM

23 September. Cantacuzene leaves for Didymoteichon; Admiral Apocaucus encourages Anne's fear of his rival and tells Patriarch John Calecas that Cantacuzene wants to replace him. The Patriarch turns on Cantacuzene and Anne declares him dismissed from command and orders his arrest; Apocaucus Prefect of City and Patriarch regent.

20 October. Cantacuzene proclaimed Emperor by supporters at Didymoteichon. Riots follow by the poor in the capital and sacking of his wealthy supporters' homes; they flee and popular government declared which Apocaucus and Patriarch recognize; similar occurrences in other cities and towns. Commencement of ruinous civil war.

1342 | FRANCE/ITALY

25 April. Death of Pope Benedict XII.

7 May. Election of Pierre Roger, Archbishop of Rouen, from the Limousin, as Pope Clement VI. He is the chosen candidate of Philip VI, though he is elected before the Royal envoys arrive at Avignon to back him.

BALTIC

Ludolf Koenig elected as Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights to succeed Dietrich of Altenberg (d. 1341).

ARMENIA/CYPRUS

Spring. Cyprus backs the successful seizure of the Armenian throne by King Hugh IV's cousin Guy of Ibelin, the son of the late Prince Amalric of Cyprus (k. 1309) and the sister of Kings Hethoum and Oshin of Armenia.

HUNGARY

16 July. Death of King Charles Robert, nephew of King Robert of Naples, aged 54; he is succeeded by his eldest son Louis 'the Great'. Louis' younger brother Andrew is by now married to Robert of Naples' grand-daughter and heiress Joanna.

ITALY

15 August. Death of Peter II of Sicily; succeeded by his elder son Louis.

BYZANTIUM

Cantacuzene leaves Didymoteichon as Imperial army approaches and leads around 2,000 men to Serb frontier to appeal to Stephen Dusan; July they meet at Pristina; Cantacuzene refuses to surrender most of Macedonia but is allowed to recruit mercenaries.

August? Cantacuzene invades Thrace again, but is halted at Serres by Imperial troops and most of his men desert; he is successfully invited to take over Thessaly; his wife Irene and her brother Manuel Asen hold Didymoteichon. Irene is aided by sea from Umur of Aydin who lands large fleet at mouth of river Maritsa and marches to the town.

1343 | ITALY

20 January. Death of King Robert of Naples, aged over 70; as his son Charles of Calabria is dead (1328) the latter's daughter Joanna succeeds

to Naples. The promiscuous Joanna is soon seeking to rid herself of her husband, her cousin Prince Andrew of Hungary.

CYPRUS/FRANCE/ITALY

King Hugh IV of Cyprus sends Bishop Lambertino of Limassol to Avignon to encourage Pope Clement to organise multi-national naval aid for Cyprus and the Hospitallers in an attack on the Turkish-held eastern shore of the Aegean.

Clement VI organises Papal, Hospitaller, Venetian, and Cypriot naval alliance to fund a new expedition in Aegean, aimed at Unur's port of Smyrna as main source of raiding. Selected ecclesiastical provinces are taxed to raise the funds.

BYZANTIUM

Spring. Cantacuzene attacks Thessalonica, but Stephen Dusan is alarmed at his success and withdraws his troops from army. Apocaucus brings fleet to save Thessalonica; Cantacuzene is blockaded in Macedonia, but Umur of Aydin brings 60 ships and 6,000 men to aid Cantacuzene and Apocaucus retires to capital; Serbs take over most of western Thrace. Cantacuzene fights way back to Didymoteichon.

BALTIC

23 July. Treaty of Kalicz between Poland (King Casimir 'the Great') and the Teutonic Knights; Poland recovers the province of Kuavia from the Order but recognises their rule of Poemerelia, and Casimir becomes patron of the Order.

1344 SPAIN

March. Fall of Algeciras to expedition led by King Alfonso XI.

ITALY/AEGEAN SEA

The Papal Crusading fleet, of c. 30 ships, assembles at Negroponte, the main port of the island of Euboea; *May* it defeats a Turkish fleet off Pallene, on the east coast of Attica; it crosses the Aegean to attack Unur's emirate.

28 October. The Crusaders storm the city of Smyrna, Unur's capital, while he is absent but he returns to reinforce his garrison who are holding out in the citadel. A Papal-appointed Captain commands the Christian garrison of the city.

ARMENIA

17 November. King Guy, seen as too pro-‘Latin’ and resisted by the locals for attempting to bring the Church closer to the Papacy, is murdered with his entourage of 300 knights in a revolt by barons; he is succeeded by the baron Constantine (III), lord of Negrin, a descendant of Hethoum I’s (1226–70) relatives and married to King Oshin’s daughter Mary.

1345 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE

Early. Emir Orhan sends Ottoman Turkish troops to Thrace to aid Cantacuzene despite an offer from Empress Anna; Cantacuzene advances close to the capital and is interviewed in his camp by the Franciscan ‘General of Order’; he withdraws to Didymoteichon as good will gesture; Manuel Apocaucus now surrenders Adrianople to him.

FRANCE

May. Dauphin Humbert, lord of the Dauphinois (Vienne) in the lower Rhone valley, attends festivities at Avignon and persuades the Pope to appoint him as ‘captain of the holy Apostolic see’, leader of a new Crusade which he will organise. He assembles an enthusiastic but militarily useless ‘army’ of locals, and others volunteer in northern Italy in a mood of excitement over exaggerated versions of the success at Smyrna and a miraculous apparition of the Virgin at l’Aquila.

ITALY

18 September. Assassination of Queen Joanna’s consort, Andrew of Hungary, at Aversa; he is lured out of his bedchamber late at night and strangled in the nearby gallery then hung over a balustrade. The Queen’s partisans and her cousins, the families of the princes of Taranto and Durazzo, are blamed. Suspicion falls on the heavily pregnant Queen (who does not bother to conduct any serious investigation) and the Taranto and Durazzo brothers. War with Andrew’s brother King Louis of Hungary follows; he sends a delegation to Avignon demanding that the Pope depose Joanna.

FRANCE/ITALY

November. Humbert’s expedition leaves Venice by sea for the Aegean.

BALTIC

Henry Dusemer succeeds Ludolf Koenig as Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1346 | ITALY

13 April. Pope Clement announces the deposition and excommunication of his arch-foe Emperor Lewis IV; he now has a plan to replace him with a Papal champion, King John of Bohemia's son and heir Charles, the candidate from the Bavarian dynasty's Luxembourg rivals and grandson of Emperor Henry VII.

March. Arrival of a Papal mission in Naples to examine the conspiracy alleged to be behind King Andrew's killing leads to torture and executions of 'guilty' personnel identified by the power-hungry Taranto brothers, Louis and Robert, who end up fighting a civil war over who is to marry Joanna.

BYZANTIUM//OTTOMAN EMIRATE

Based at Selymbria, Cantacuzene arranges his daughter Theodora's marriage to Orhan in exchange for military aid.

16 April, Easter Sunday. Stephen Dusan crowns himself Emperor of the Serbs and Greeks at Skopje – a challenge to existence of the Empire as independent state.

21 May. Patriarch Lazarus of Jerusalem crowns Cantacuzene and his wife Irene at Adrianople.

Naval expedition under Dauphin Humbert of Vienne sails into Aegean, fails to take Chios for Venice, and (*late June*) reinforces Crusader garrison at Smyrna.

Early Summer. Orhan arrives at Selymbria in Thrace for grand but non-religious wedding-ceremony to marry him to Theodora, who is to be allowed to remain Christian and not join harem; they return to Bithynia.

BALTIC

The Teutonic Order purchases Estonia from the hard-pressed new king of Denmark, Valdemar IV.

ITALY/GERMANY

11 July. Charles of Luxembourg/Bohemia is elected as 'King of the Romans', Emperor-elect, by the Pope's anti-Bavarian coalition. Lewis defies him.

FRANCE/ENGLAND

26 August. King John of Bohemia, now blind and led into battle by his squires, is among the many noble casualties in the French army as King Edward III of England defeats Philip VI at Crecy in Picardy. His son

Charles (Duke of Moravia), the Papal candidate against Lewis IV as Emperor, succeeds to Bohemia and his son Wenceslas to Luxembourg.

AEGEAN

November. The Pope allows Humbert of Dauphine to return home early despite his vow to stay in the East until 1348.

Dieudonne of Gozon succeeds Helion of Villeneuve as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1347 BYZANTIUM

Late January. John VI leads troops to capital as conspirators ask him to be at Golden Gate on a certain night.

2 February. At night conspirators hack open walled-up gate and John VI leads about 1,000 men in; *3 February* amidst popular acclaim the Cantacuzenists surround Palace which resists; Anne's Genoese allies try to cross Golden Horn but are forced back and John VI opens negotiations; *8 February* as angry troops storm the Palace John V persuades Anne to surrender.

Agreement that John VI will be senior Emperor for ten years and then rule as equals, and amnesty ordered for all prisoners.

FRANCE

May. Humbert of Dauphinois returns home to the Rhone valley.

ITALY

Summer. The Pope recognises the seizure of Rome (*May*) in a populist coup by the demagogic champion of 'reform' and order, the 'tribune' Cola di Rienzo, who has visited him at Avignon in 1344 to win support.

Autumn. King Louis of Hungary arrives by land to invade Apulia with an army of Hungarians and Germans, as Joanna has persuaded her ally Venice not to let him cross the Adriatic.

GERMANY

11 October. Emperor Lewis IV is killed hunting; his partisans desert to his Papal-backed rival Charles of Bohemia.

22 October. Queen Joanna of Naples marries her cousin Louis of Taranto, now commander of the forces resisting the Hungarian invasion.

26 November. Charles is crowned Emperor in Bonn.

CYPRUS/SICILY

November. Arrival of the ‘Black Death’ plague.

FRANCE/ITALY

December. Arrival of the ‘Black Death’ in Provence and Liguria, apparently by ship at Genoa and Marseilles.

The Pope abandons the populist ruler of the city of Rome, Cola di Rienzo, and a Legate sent to Rome declares him dismissed and excommunicated. He flees to a Franciscan convent in the Abruzzi, and in 1352 ends up in Prague.

1348 EUROPE

Disruption of life and diminishment of potential for a Crusade by the ‘Black Death’, which causes catastrophic losses in the population.

ITALY

13 January. Louis of Hungary enters Benevento.

22 January. King Louis receives Charles of Durazzo and his brothers and his cousins, the brothers Robert and Philip of Taranto, at Aversa as they arrive to do homage. He accuses Charles of killing his brother Andrew, and has him seized for a ‘kangaroo court’ trial and (*23 January*) executed; the others are imprisoned. A Neapolitan mob attacks the princes’ partisans and loots their homes; Charles’ widow Maria, Queen Joanna’s sister, has to hide at a convent and is smuggled out to safety disguised as a friar. The Queen flees by sea to Provence (*20 January*) and appeals from Aix for help to the Pope.

27 January. King Louis enters Naples and assumes the title of ‘King of Naples and Jerusalem’. He proves no more popular than Joanna, and with resentment of his foreign troops rising he leaves for Hungary to deal with the disaster of the ‘Black Death’ in April. Joanna unsuccessfully appeals for help to the Pope, but Joanna’s new husband Louis of Taranto, the only Angevin prince still at liberty, escapes Naples with the Florentine banker Niccolo Acciajuoli and they persuade Clement to change his mind.

15 or 19 March. Joanna clears herself of the charges that she was complicit in Andrew’s murder, in an epic speech to the Pope and his lawyers in open court; Clement orders her restoration to Naples and tells his legate to stop Louis of Hungary being crowned.

BYZANTIUM

March. John VI calls on Umur to aid campaign against Serbians and Thessalonica; Orchan supplies a large army under his elder son Sulaiman.

May Umur killed fighting Crusaders at Smyrna.

Serbia replaces Byzantium as the main power in the Greek peninsula.

FRANCE/ITALY

June. Joanna sells the city of Avignon to the Papacy in return for 80,000 gold florins for her invasion-force; meanwhile her partisans in Naples, mostly nobles but also Acciajuoli's son Lorenzo (who holds Melfi), revolt against the Hungarians whose brutality is causing anger. The rebels seize the city of Naples but not main fortresses; Acciajuoli assembles a Papal-backed army in Florence to invade.

August. Joanna returns to power in Naples while Louis is home in Hungary raising troops, but the Hungarians hold out in the city's castles; *December.* The Hungarian garrisons are evicted from the south by her husband Louis of Taranto.

1349 ITALY

January. Surrender and evacuation of the last Hungarians in Naples; however King Louis refuses to give up.

SPAIN

King Alfonso XI besieges Gibraltar in another 'Reconquista' campaign which has Crusading status.

Ex-King James (III) of Majorca lands on the island with a Papal-supplied expedition to reconquer it from Aragon, but is defeated and killed; his son James (IV) spends the next 14 years in a cage before escaping to Naples.

MOREA

John VI sends second son Manuel to rule the Byzantine principality as 'Despot'. Commencement of the use of the Despotate as a Byzantine Imperial Family appanage, which lasts to 1460.

ITALY

Summer. Louis of Taranto accuses his wife Joanna of adultery with her chamberlain and deprives her of political power, backed by Acciajuoli; King Louis of Hungary invades to attack Aversa (*June*) and the Queen's sister Maria, mediating to try to secure their male cousins' release from Hungary, treacherously offers to marry King Louis herself so they can replace Joanna; Joanna appeals to the Pope.

1350 | SPAIN

26 or 27 March, Good Friday. Death of King Alfonso XI of Castile, aged 38, of the plague during the siege of Gibraltar, which is abandoned. The ‘Reconquista’ is halted under the kingship of his energetic but paranoid son Peter ‘the Cruel’ (born *30 August 1334*) during 1349–69.

ITALY

Spring–Summer. Unsuccessful second invasion of Apulia by King Louis of Hungary, the Pope mediates peace, and Louis of Hungary agrees to leave for Rome (*October*).

FRANCE

26 August. Death of King Philip VI, aged 57; succeeded by his son, John II, who is the widower of Emperor Charles IV’s sister Bona.

1351 | POLAND

Papal grant of Crusade taxes to King Casimir to pay for the defence of conquered Galicia, and neighbouring areas of Ruthenia which are being taken from the pagan Lithuanians.

1352 | HUNGARY/LITHUANIA

At the climax of a ‘Winterreise’ Crusading expedition to assist the Teutonic Knights (in a personal capacity not with his national army) against the pagan Lithuanians, King Louis of Hungary receives the surrender of Lithuania’s Grand Duke Olgerd (Algirdas). He promises to become a Christian under Louis’ sponsorship, but escapes from his camp en route to Buda for baptism and returns home. Lithuania escapes either another Hungarian attack or conversion.

The Pope grants Crusading status and taxes to aid the Polish King’s and Teutonic Knights’ wars with Lithuania.

FRANCE

Trial and acquittal of Cola di Rienzi at the Papal court at Avignon, to which the refugee ex-ruler of Rome has been sent as a prisoner by Emperor Charles.

6 December. Death of Pope Clement VI.

18 December. Election of Pope Innocent VI (Stephen Aubert of the Limousin, Bishop of Clermont and administrator of the see of Avignon) after a two-day conclave, with the French cardinal Talleyrand of Perigord as ‘kingmaker’. The best candidate, the Prior-General of the Carthusian

Order, was blocked over fears of his stopping corruption at the Papal court. Innocent decides to use Rienzi to restore Papal control of Rome. Innocent brings austerity to the court and orders resident priests to return to their benefices, and Talleyrand uses him to pressurise Louis of Hungary into allowing the Durazzo princes (Talleyrand's nephews) to go back to Naples.

1353 BYZANTIUM

March. John VI decides to proclaim his son Matthew co-Emperor, but Patriarch Callistus refuses to co-operate and retires to monastery.

April. Matthew proclaimed co-Emperor; Callistus flees to Galata, thence to Tenedos to join John V.

ITALY

June. Pope Innocent sends the Spanish 'strongman' Gil de Albornoz, a veteran of the 'Reconquista' in his homeland who once saved King Alfonso XI's life in battle but was exiled by King Peter in 1350, as Legate to the Papal States to restore order.

RHODES

Peter of Corneillan succeeds Dieudonne of Gozon as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1354 BYZANTIUM/TURKISH EMIRATE

2 March. Devastating earthquake hits Constantinople and Thrace, most severely Gallipoli; Turkish soldiers move into the undefended ruins to pillage and take control; Orhan's son Sulaiman takes over the town for Ottomans, securing them control of entry to Europe; the town is refortified and garrisoned, and Orhan tells John VI he cannot return what providence put in his hands.

SPAIN

King Peter of Castile asks the Pope for Crusading privileges for an expedition to Morocco to help the Emir of Montesclaros turn Christian and defy the Marinids.

ITALY

1 August. Cola di Rienzo returns to Rome as 'Senator' by Papal appointment, to assist the legate Albornoz by using his popularity to restore order in the turbulent city.

8 *October*. Rienzo is killed in a riot in Rome.

Autumn. Philip of Taranto, younger brother of Joanna's husband Louis, marries the Queen's sister and heiress Maria to secure succession for his family, thus beating their Durazzo cousins to the prize.

SPAIN

19 *October*. Death of Emir Yusuf of Granada, aged 35/6; succeeded by his 16-year-old son (by slave-girl Burayna), Mohammed V.

BYZANTIUM

22 *November*. One stormy night John V and a few followers sail up Propontis and enter Harbour of Heptoscalion on south side of Constantinople; no fighting at once, but despite sending outside city for reinforcements John VI wavers and 23 *November* crowds attack his supporters' houses and loot the arsenal; John V advances to Blachernae, and crowds joining in storm and set fire to fortified outworks of Palace as Catalan mercenaries fight back.

24 *November*. John V sends negotiator into Palace, and John VI agrees to treaty – he remains senior Emperor, but accepts John V as colleague; Matthew to have Adrianople and imperial title for life, and is ordered not to attack.

25 *November/3 December?* John VI abdicates in Palace ceremony and becomes the monk Joasaph. John subsequently moves to Mangana monastery.

1355 PORTUGAL

7 *January*. King Alfonso leads an army to his son Peter's residence at Coimbra to arrest and kill his mistress/wife Ines de Castro, former lady-in-waiting of Peter's late wife Constance of Penafiel (d. 1345), in an effort to stop his son making children by Ines not son by Constance his heirs. He is apparently talked out of the murder by Ines' pleading children, but after he has left he sends some courtiers back to carry out the deed. This leads to a civil war with Peter, which is eventually resolved.

ITALY

5 *April*. Coronation of Emperor Charles IV in Rome, by the Cardinal-Bishop of Ostia on the Pope's behalf; he does not attempt to assert any authority in Italy and leaves quickly for Germany.

Death of King Louis of Sicily of the plague; succeeded by his younger brother, Frederick III 'the Simple', aged 14.

FRANCE/ITALY

Pope Innocent declares a Crusade against Francesco Ordelaffi, lord of Cesena and Forli, and the Manfredi dynasty of Faenza for resisting the reconquest of the 'Romagna' by his legate Albornoz.

SERBIA

July. Death of Stephen Dusan, aged c. 47; he is succeeded by his son Stephen V, but the unwieldy Serbian 'empire' in the Balkans starts to break up; the Byzantines in Thrace are distracted by the mutual dislike of John V and Matthew Cantacuzene.

BYZANTIUM/FRANCE

13 December. John V writes to Pope Innocent VI, requesting 20 ships, 500 knights and 1,000 infantry to serve against Turks and domestic enemies for six months in return for residence of Papal legate to help oversee new Church appointments favourable to reunion; John's second son Manuel to reside at Avignon as hostage for father's good intentions and can be educated and married by Pope if John fails in obligations for reunion; three colleges to be set up to train Byzantine youth in Latin language and literature, and John's eldest son Andronicus to be educated in those subjects; if all goes well Pope to send a larger force under captain-general to fight Turks, and if Byzantine people refuse union John to submit personally.

ITALY/RHODES

Pope Innocent threatens to confiscate the Templar lands from the Hospitallers and set up a new Military Order if they do not use them better to organise activity against the Moslems. The progress of the Hospitallers in Crusading from Rhodes is judged inadequate.

1356 EPIRUS

Spring. Nicephorus II Ducas Orsini returns to Arta with local support and restores his rule there; he rules over most of southern Epirus, and abandons his wife Maria Cantacuzene to marry a Serbian heiress.

IONIAN ISLANDS

Queen Joanna, their overlord, restores the 'County of Cephallonia' as title and lordship for an Orsini relative, Leonardo Tocco.

1357 | ITALY

Bernabo Visconti, ruler of Milan, hires the German mercenary commander Conrad of Landau and his troops to oppose the Papal forces under Cardinal Albornoz; Pope Innocent preaches a Crusade against them.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

April. Peter Thomas, Carmelite Bishop and ex-ambassador to Serbia and William Conti, Latin Bishop of Sozopolis, arrive in Constantinople to convert John V and as many others as possible and prepare way for union; John V's hope of offer of military aid dashed but talks take place and according to Peter Thomas' later biographer John is converted to Catholicism.

PORTUGAL

28 May. Death of King Alfonso IV, aged 66; succeeded by his son Peter I (born *18 April 1320*). The latter notoriously has his murdered mistress/wife Ines de Castro exhumed and forces his courtiers to pay homage to her as she should have been his queen.

ITALY

October. Cardinal Albornoz bribes Conrad of Landau to abandon the Visconti cause; their truce ends the first Crusade against the 'Free Companies' of mercenaries now roaming western Europe.

The unexpected Papal truce with Bernabo Visconti of Milan causes its opponent Albornoz to resign as Papal legate and commander in northern Italy.

1358 | MOREA

Catherine of Courtenay appoints her wealthy Florentine chamberlain Niccolo Acciajuoli, minister to Queen Joanna and banker to the late John of Gravina (d. *1335*), as governor of Corinth; foundation of family estates in Greece.

CYPRUS

24 November. King Hugh IV abdicates authority in favour of his son Peter, a Crusading enthusiast.

1359 | BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE/AEGEAN

Death of Suleiman son of Emir Orhan, commander at Gallipoli; Orhan's younger son Murad is now his heir.

Peter Thomas is made Papal Legate in the eastern Mediterranean to co-ordinate attacks on the Turks and lead Crusade preaching. He is to visit the Crusading garrison at Smyrna to report on the military situation there. He accompanies a new Italian naval expedition that arrives at the port to fight Turkish pirates and raids Lampsacus in the Straits of Gallipoli.

SPAIN

August. Overthrow of Emir Mohammed V of Granada by his half-brother Ismail, son of Yusuf I and slave-girl Mariam. He flees to Castile.

CYPRUS

10 October. Death of ex-King Hugh IV; succeeded by his son Peter I (b. 1329).

(OR
1358)

EPIRUS

Nicephorus II killed fighting Albanians near Acheloos; anarchy in the disintegrating principality.

1360

CYPRUS

Peter I commences his re-conquest of strategic ports on the south coast of Anatolia, now held by the Turks as pirate-bases, with the seizure of Corycus.

SPAIN

Overthrow of Emir Ismail of Granada by his second cousin Abu Said (who reigns as ‘Mohammed VI’), great-grandson of a daughter of Mohammed II.

1361

FRANCE

January. Pope Innocent preaches a Crusade against the ravaging mercenary ‘Free Companies’ in the Rhone valley, who are attacking Avignon. *March* he has to pay Sir John Hawkwood and his ‘White Company’ 14,500 gold florins to leave the region and fight for him against the Visconti of Milan in Italy.

CYPRUS

King Peter reconquers the Anatolian port of Adalia/Attaleia from the local Turks.

ATHENS

Pedro de Pou Vicar-General of Athens for the Kingdom of Sicily; he expels James Fadrique, a predecessor, from his castle of Salona.

SPAIN

Peter I of Castile invades Granada to restore ex-Emir Mohammed V.

BYZANTIUM

November. Fall of Didymoteichon to Ottomans.

1362 OTTOMAN EMIRATE/SULTANATE

Death of Emir Orhan, probably in his fifties; succeeded by his younger son Murad, who has to fight rebellious brothers.

ATHENS

‘Vicar-General’ Pedro de Pau killed in uprising at Thebes by rebellious Catalan barons, led by Marshal Roger de Lluria (Loria) who becomes real ruler for the titular governor, restored James Fadrique.

MOREA

Niccolo Acciajuoli adopts his cousin, Giovanni’s brother Nerio, who becomes his heir to extending estates in Achaia and his deputy at Corinth.

SPAIN

March. Emir Mohammed VI flees from Granada as Castilians attack; his cousin Mohammed V is restored to power as King Peter’s vassal. The deposed emir takes refuge in Castile but (25 April) Peter has him murdered.

ITALY

24 May. Death of Louis of Taranto, king-consort of Naples. This leads to Acciajuoli’s recall to court and the revival of Aragonese fortunes on the divided island.

CYPRUS

July. King Peter sends a letter to the sovereigns of Europe, announcing that he intends to lead a Crusade.

FRANCE

12 September. Death of Pope Innocent VI.

28 September. Pope Urban V (Guillaume de Grimoard, a southern French Benedictine lawyer and Papal diplomat, abbot of St. Victor at Marseilles) is elected during his absence on a mission to Naples.

27 October. The Pope-elect arrives at Marseilles.

31 October and 6 November. He is enthroned and crowned at Avignon. The election of a pro-Joanna cleric from her Provençal domains emboldens her to arrange her third marriage, to James (IV) the claimant to Majorca.

CYPRUS

October. Peter leaves for Europe to arrange his Crusade.

1363 FRANCE/CYPRUS

March. King Peter visits Avignon and arranges the details of the Crusade with the Pope and King John II of France. John will lead the Crusade in 1365, and there will be a six-year tax on the French Church to finance it.

Cardinal Talleyrand is to be the Papal legate; he and the two Kings lead the way in taking the Cross.

May. Peter secures Papal agreement that he can lead a ‘passagium particulare’ in the interim before King John sails – this is probably a ‘back-up’ in case the King is unable to leave his war-torn country, where he still owes a large sum of money to Edward III of England as part of his ransom from capture at Poitiers in 1356. Peter goes to Brabant and the Rhineland on a recruiting-mission.

ITALY

May. Queen Joanna of Naples remarries to the exiled king of Majorca, James (IV), who has recently escaped from Aragonese captivity.

ENGLAND

November. Peter arrives on a recruiting-mission for the Crusade; Edward III entertains him and his other visitors, King John II of France and King David II (Bruce) of Scotland, at a tournament at Smithfield, London.

ITALY

Pope Urban assures his legate Cardinal Albornozy, effectively governor of the now pacified Papal States, that he will not allow preaching for a

Crusade abroad (and thus the diversion of Italian troops there) until the Visconti of Milan have been dealt with. This is soon abandoned.

ARMENIA

Death of Constantine III; succeeded after an interregnum by his cousin Constantine IV, son of the Chamberlain Hethoum.

1364 FRANCE

January. As the outstanding balance of his 1356 ransom has not been paid, King John II fulfils the terms of his earlier release and returns to England as a hostage; he is lodged at the Savoy Palace in London, where he dies (8 *April*) aged 45. His son Charles V succeeds him, and had no interest in the Crusade.

CYPRUS/WESTERN EUROPE

King Peter goes on to France, where his efforts are dealt a major blow by the death of his ally King John II on 8 *April*; he then goes on to Aquitaine, Bohemia, and Poland.

November. Peter arrives via Austria at Venice to organise shipping for the Crusade.

MOREA

Death of Robert of Taranto, ruler of Achaia and claimant to the 'Latin Empire' title; brother Philip succeeds.

1365 ITALY/AEGEAN/EGYPT

27 *June.* New Crusade under King Peter of Cyprus leaves Venice; Peter Thomas is to serve as the Papal legate.

August. The expedition arrives at Rhodes, where with Cypriot and Hospitaller reinforcements it numbers 165 ships – possibly around 10,000 men and 1,400 horses. The Pope's instructions refer to either the Turks (i.e. in Anatolia) or the Mamelukes as the target. It proceeds to Egypt on Peter's advice, and 10 *October* lands outside Alexandria while the governor is away on pilgrimage. The 'Pharos' (ancient lighthouse) peninsula is occupied and a low spot on the walls is noticed and scaled, and the city is occupied within hours. It is the first major Christian capture of a Moslem city since Louis IX of France took Damietta in 1250. The city is sacked and 70 shiploads of loot are removed, and as a relief expedition approaches King Peter and Peter Thomas argue in favour of holding the city but the French commander, William Roger, Viscount

of Turenne, says it is impractical. The main use of Alexandria is to use as a negotiating-tactic to exchange it for Jerusalem, as Louis IX intended to do with Damietta in 1250, as suggested by Peter Thomas. Peter Thomas' standard-bearer in the attack is one of the English contingent, Sir John Grey of Codnor.

16 October. The Crusaders abandon Alexandria and sail back to Cyprus.

One modern theory has it that the attack on Alexandria was intended to wreck the current use of Alexandria as a major Levantine entrepot with the Mamelukes by the Italian merchant-cities, which the Pope has not banned despite Peter's appeal, and force them to use Famagusta in Cyprus and boost the Cypriot economy instead. (At the time, the Alexandria expedition was the most famous Crusade of the 14th century; Chaucer makes his 'Knight' one of the participants.)

ITALY/MOREA

Death of Niccolo Acciajuoli, the Florentine chamberlain and senior minister of the Kingdom of Naples and a major investor in Achaia; his lands, including Corinth, go to his cousin Nerio.

BYZANTIUM

Late. After King Louis 'the Great' of Hungary attacks Bulgaria and takes John Alexander's son Stracimir prisoner, John V believes that his army could be used against Turks and decides on a personal appeal. John leaves Constantinople and sails via Black Sea to Buda, with entourage including younger sons Manuel and Theodore; eldest son Andronicus left in capital.

1366 CYPRUS

Abortive talks between Cyprus, pressurised by the Italian merchant-republics, and the Mamelukes; Peter proposes that the Sultan return Jerusalem and the core of the old Kingdom in return for peace. This was originally intended to be the price for returning Alexandria, but he gambles on the disruption to Mameluke trade forcing the Sultan to give way anyway; no success.

BYZANTIUM

John conducts inconclusive talks with Louis of Hungary about aid, and is obliged to leave Manuel as a hostage at Buda as he sets off home.

Arriving at Vidin, John is refused permission to cross Bulgaria by suspicious John Alexander and is stranded; his son Andronicus, the Bulgarian ruler's son-in-law, is in no hurry to intervene as it prolongs his regency at Constantinople.

SPAIN

March. The despotic King Peter of Castile is driven out by an expedition sent from France by his enemy King Charles V, who has backed his exiled half-brother Henry of Trastamara and diverted unemployed brigand ‘Free Companies’ and French troops from the Hundred Years’ War to assist him. England and France are currently at peace, but the war is a ‘proxy’ for both given that Peter is pro-English and the large Castilian fleet would be invaluable for France if Henry took over. Henry has the aid of the greatest French guerrilla commander and general from the recent wars with England, Bertrand du Guesclin, and of Marshal D’Andrehem – plus some mercenary English captains defying English orders. Peter flees with his two daughters via Portugal (*June*) to English-held Bordeaux, and interests (bribes?) its governor, Edward, Prince of Wales (the so-called ‘Black Prince’), to restore him to the throne as an English client. He offers his daughters to Edward’s younger brothers, Constance to Duke John of Lancaster and Isabella to Edmund of York, and to pay all English war-expenses.

CYPRUS

Most of the Crusaders have gone home, but Peter plans a new attack; this time his target is Beirut, one of the main ports of Syria. This is abandoned but naval skirmishes continue with the Mamelukes and (*August*) Pope Urban embargoes Italian cities’ trading with Egypt.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

June. John V’s cousin, Duke Amadeo VI of Savoy, leaves Venice with 15 ships and c. 1,800–3,000 men on his own crusade; the Venetians tell him that Peter has signed peace with the Mamelukes, inaccurately, to make sure he does not assist the King in further damaging their trading-relationship with the Mamelukes by another major attack. He decides to go to the Aegean instead.

August. Amadeo arrives at Euboea en route to Byzantium to discover that there is no hope of Louis of Hungary joining him, and attacks and takes Gallipoli from the Turks, assisted by Francesco Gattilusio.

MOREA

Hugh of Lusignan, nephew of King Peter of Cyprus and son by first marriage of the late Robert of Achaia and Taranto’s widow Marie de Bourbon, invades Achaia against the current ruler, Robert’s brother Philip.

2 September. Amadeo arrives in Constantinople, accompanied by Papal envoy Paul of Smyrna. Hearing of John V’s plight, Amadeo sails into

Black Sea to attack Bulgaria *October*; he besieges Varna and sends envoys to John Alexander at Trnovo demanding John V's release.

December. John crosses Bulgaria to join Amadeo at Mesembria for Christmas; Peter Thomas, Papal envoy, starts talks with John on reunion.

1367 PORTUGAL

18 January. Death of King Peter I, aged 46; succeeded by his son (by Constance of Penafiel), Ferdinand 'the Handsome' (born *31 October* 1345).

CYPRUS

January. Peter's fleet resumes attacks on the Mamelukes' shipping in the eastern Mediterranean.

SPAIN

Prince Edward of England and a large army invade Castile via the Basque passes to restore Peter 'the Cruel', and take Henry of Trastamara by surprise. *3 April* Edward defeats Henry and Du Guesclin at Najera in northern Castile, taking the French commander and many others prisoner for ransom, and restores Peter to the throne. Henry flees; Peter is however unable to pay his debts to the English and the Prince runs out of money and plunders for recompense before returning ill to Gascony.

BYZANTIUM

April. John and Amadeo return to Constantinople; talks with Papal envoy Paul, Latin Patriarch, about a new Church Council.

CYPRUS

King Peter raids Tripoli, the new Mameluke port in Syria which has replaced the demolished Crusader capital.

ITALY

Pope Urban sets up residence at the Vatican as the Lateran Palace is in ruins.

1368 EPIRUS

Death of John (the younger) of Gravina, ruler of Dyrrachium/Durazzo, cousin to Queen Joanna of Naples and to Philip II of Taranto, Prince of Achaia; his daughter Joanna's husband Louis of Evreux hires a

mercenary army of Navarrese to invade independent Albanian lands inland from the town.

SPAIN

October. Henry of Trastamara invades Castile again with French help, and King Peter's brutality and extortion assists desertions; Peter is abandoned by most of the nobility of central, southern, and eastern Castile and the 'cortes' at Burgos recognises Henry as King. He takes Valladolid and captures Peter's lieutenant ex-King James of Majorca, estranged consort of Joanna of Naples; Joanna has to ransom James and on his return divorces him. Peter retreats into Galicia.

1369 CYPRUS

17 January. Assassination of King Peter I, aged 40, by some disgruntled nobles; he is succeeded by his 14-year-old son Peter II under the regency of the latter's uncle John. End of the aggressive Cypriot policy towards the Mamelukes. Queen-Mother Eleanor plots against the regency, blaming the regent for involvement in Peter I's murder.

SPAIN

23 March. Assassination of the captured tyrant King Peter 'the Cruel' of Castile, aged 34, trapped in the castle of Montiel by his half-brother Henry of Trastamara, in hand-to-hand combat. Henry I (also born 1334) assumes full control. This brings the 'House of Trastamara' to power in Castile, which they will rule for a century, and revives aggressive policies against the Moslems and England and an alliance with France.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Fall of Adrianople, third city of the Empire, to the Turks.

John V sets out for Italy with entourage including brother-in-law Francesco Gattilusio and chief minister Demetrius Cydones; Andronicus left to govern Constantinople and Manuel to govern Thessalonica.

August. John reaches Naples; he goes on to Rome and when Pope arrives *18 October* John presents his declaration of Catholic faith to three cardinals; they draw up definitive document which he seals; *Sunday, 21 October* John prostrates himself before the Pope on steps of St. Peter's and exchanges ritual kisses of peace before they celebrate with Mass in cathedral.

1370 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

January. John V issues a document confirming that he is now a Catholic; Pope Urban permits him a mobile altar provided that only Latin priests use it.

Queen Joanna's sister Maria's daughter Margaret is married off to her first cousin Charles of Durazzo, grandson of the youngest brother of King Robert (d. 1343); Charles is the protégé of King Louis of Hungary, who is aiming for him as the next ruler of Naples.

March. John leaves Rome to sail via Naples to the Adriatic and visits Venice; he arrives in the city for first Imperial visit to the former Byzantine territory to find that he has insufficient money to pay for fare home.

John proposes to sell Tenedos to Venice, in return for the crown jewels that his mother pawned to the city and a loan of 50,000 'hyperpera' (25,000 ducats).

John's eldest son Andronicus, as regent in capital, refuses to surrender Tenedos, probably encouraged by Genoese; John asks him to sell Church treasures to pay for his return journey, but he refuses so John is stranded.

Late. Manuel takes the necessary funds to Venice from Thessalonica to obtain John's release.

CYPRUS

Peace signed with the Mamelukes.

POLAND/HUNGARY

5 November. Death of King Casimir 'the Great' of Poland, last of the direct line of the old royal family, aged 60, after 37-year reign; succeeded by his sister's son King Louis of Hungary, uniting the kingdoms.

FRANCE

September. Pope Urban arrives back in Marseilles from Rome, having abandoned the city despite appeals from Petrarch and warnings from St. Bridget of Sweden about the consequences for him.

19 December. Death of Pope Urban.

30 December. Pierre Roger, nephew of Pope Clement VI and from the Limoges region of France, is elected unanimously as Pope Gregory XI; he is only 41 but in poor health.

1371 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

John and Manuel pay over the money owing to Venice; *March* John's remaining debts are cancelled and loan arranged; he receives provisions and ships and sails back to Constantinople, leaving Manuel as security for return of loaned money once John reaches home.

SERBIA/BYZANTIUM

John Ugijesa of Serres and his brother Vukasin of Prilep lead army into the Maritsa valley to try to retake Adrianople as the raiding Turks encroach on their lands; 26 *September* they are heavily defeated and killed at battle of Crnomen and Thrace is permanently lost.

Death of Simeon Uros, Dusan's brother, lord of Thessaly.

2/4 *December*. Death of Stephen V of Serbia; succeeded by Lazar.

1372 CYPRUS

Peter II comes of age; end of regency. Tension between the Genoese and Venetian communities in Cyprus over who is to have direction of the weak government.

October. A riot at Peter II's coronation causes casualties among the Genoese, who are stirred up against the government by Queen Eleanor who asks Genoa to help her avenge her late husband's murder.

Genoa agrees to send forces to intervene in Cyprus.

1372/3 BYZANTIUM

Conclusion of treaty between John V and Murad; John becomes the Turkish Sultan's vassal; the Empire is to pay tribute.

1373 ITALY

Pope Gregory puts the Visconti of Milan, led by Bernabo, under an Interdict for taking over Papal States territory (Reggio) and organises an expedition against them, to be led by Count Amadeo of Savoy and given Crusading status. Savoy, Naples, and Provence are to attack Milan from different directions.

CYPRUS

March. Genoa sends seven galleys to reinforce their community in Cyprus.

BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN EMIRATE

Spring. John attends Murad's camp for expedition against rival Turkish rulers in Anatolia; 6 *May* during his absence Andronicus abandons regency to join Murad's son Sawdji/Saudzi in rebellion with mixed Greek/Turkish army. Murad demands John's help and punishment of both the rebels similarly; Murad crosses to Europe and 25 *May* he and John defeat rebels outside Constantinople; Andronicus abandons rebellion and submits. Murad captures Sawdji, blinds him, and sends message

to John demanding that he punish Andronicus similarly and Andronicus' son John likewise.

John blinds Andronicus and his son, although imperfectly, and disinherits them; 25 *September* Manuel is crowned co-emperor.

ITALY/MOREA

Death of Philip of Taranto, cousin of Queen Joanna of Naples and titular ruler of Achaia; his sister's son Jacques de Baux, a Provençal lord, claims rule but the Achaian barons prefer indirect rule of Philip's overlord Queen Joanna; Centurione Zaccaria of Chalandritza and Leonardo Tocco of Cephallonia lead delegation to her at Naples, and she sends out Neapolitan bailli Francesco di San Severino.

FRANCE/RHODES

Pope Gregory orders an investigation into the state of the Hospitaller Order and their ability to wage war against the Turks; the results indicate that they need far more resources to succeed, but Urban does not supply any.

ARMENIA

King Constantine IV is overthrown by his barons; the throne is seized by Leo VI, son of the brother of King Guy of Ibelin (r. 1342–4).

CYPRUS

October. Thirty-six more Genoese ships arrive at the port of Famagusta. The town is blockaded and (6 *October*) seized during a visit by King Peter, who has brought his outnumbered troops to assist it but is taken hostage for a favourable treaty handing over dominance of the government to Genoa. The government in Nicosia resists under King Peter's uncle James.

December. The Genoese advance to occupy the capital, Nicosia; Prince James holds out in Kyrenia and is besieged by Genoese troops.

1374 CYPRUS

The Genoese fail to take Kyrenia, but induce their prisoner King Peter to issue Prince James with instructions to go to the Papal court to lodge a complaint against Genoa. A truce is agreed pending the Papal verdict on the dispute.

While James is en route to Avignon, he is intercepted by a Genoese ship and taken prisoner in violation of the truce. His supporters in Kyrenia are left leaderless and have to submit.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

Spring. Pope Gregory XI sends legates to Constantinople to discuss reunion and present project for Crusade to be joined by Genoa, Venice, Sicily, Hungary, and Knights Hospitallers; *October* they arrive in the capital.

June. Peace between Milan and Pope Gregory. The latter warns Queen Joanna that her enemy Louis of Hungary has resumed his legal claim that he, not her, is rightful ruler of Naples (as Louis' ancestor was older son of King Charles II than Joanna's grandfather Robert) and has betrothed his daughter Catherine to King Charles V of France's younger son Louis, duke of Orleans, to gain French help.

CYPRUS

October. Peace-treaty imposed by Genoa; Cyprus becomes its vassal, paying 40,000 florins tribute per annum plus special payments of 90,000 florins to cover the cost of the 1373 expedition and a 2 million florin indemnity spread over 12 years. Famagusta remains in Genoese hands as a pledge for payment until all is paid, and James is held hostage in Genoa. The treaty disturbs Venice and helps to raise tension with it ahead of their next war.

RHODES

Raymond Berenguer succeeded by Robert of Joilly as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1375 ITALY

Spring. Abortive Papal-organised expedition against the Visconti of Milan is prepared, but not enough troops or allied states can be mustered; *June* Pope Gregory agrees to peace with Milan.

Florence inspires a widespread revolt in the Papal States and is placed under Interdict.

CYPRUS

Queen-Mother Eleanor has the ex-regent John murdered in retaliation for Peter I's assassination, choosing the same room in the palace where he was killed to have him ambushed by her henchman while he is dining with her.

1376 FRANCE/ITALY

Cardinal Robert of Geneva, as legate, leads army for a ferocious Reconquest of the rebel-held areas of the Papal States.

MOREA/RHODES

Joanna of Naples leases control of Achaia to the Knights Hospitaller for 5 years in return for 4,000 ducats per annum; Grand Master Juan de Heredia reorganises defence, and reconquers Naupactus/Lepanto from Serb lord Boua Spata.

BYZANTIUM

March. Ten Venetian ships arrive in Constantinople to conclude arrangements to secure Tenedos in return for paying 30,000 ducats and the pawned crown jewels – Byzantium to retain flag and Patriarchal jurisdiction.

ARMENIA

Mamelukes invade the remnants of the Kingdom; *13 April* fall of Sis, the capital. King Leo VI is deported to Cairo as a Mameluke prisoner.

BYZANTIUM

Genoese decide to pre-empt loss of their hopes of the island and *July* organise Andronicus IV's escape to Galata; he makes contact with Murad who loans military aid, and besieges Constantinople.

12 August. Andronicus enters Constantinople and captures Blachernae Palace; John V and younger sons Manuel and Theodore arrested and imprisoned. Andronicus cedes Tenedos to Genoese, and Murad demands Gallipoli as price of his aid.

October. Tenedos garrison refuses to admit Genoese, and surrenders to Venice.

FRANCE/ITALY

13 September. Pope Gregory, encouraged by St. Catherine of Siena, leaves Avignon permanently to transfer his residence back to Rome; *October.*

EPIRUS

'Navarrese Company' of mercenaries, led by Pedro de la Saga, Mahiot de Coquerel, and Juan de Urtubia, occupy Dyrrachium/Durazzo in the name of Louis of Evreux, son-in-law of late ruler John of Gravina.

ITALY

2 December. Pope Gregory finally lands at Corneto in the Papal States.

1377 | ITALY

17 January. Pope Gregory arrives in Rome; start of the Papal residence at the Vatican.

RHODES

John de Fernandez of (de) Heredia succeeds Roger of Joilly as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

War between Venice and Genoa, instigated by the dispute over Tenedos, despite Papal efforts at mediation.

27 July. Death of King Frederick III of Sicily, aged 45; succeeded by his daughter Mary, aged 10, who is later married off to her cousin the Aragonese prince Martin (son of King Peter IV's younger son Martin).

BYZANTIUM

Murad reoccupies Gallipoli.

LITHUANIA

Grand Duke Olgerd (Algirdas) is succeeded by his brother Kenstutis, antagonising his passed-over son Jogaila.

1378 | MOREA

The 'Navarrese Company' (under Mahiot of Coquerel and Juan de Urtubia) leaves Dyrrachium/Durazzo on Joanna's re-marriage to enter Hospitaller service in Achaia; the Papacy encourages their move so they can fight the Turks. The Hospitaller commander of Achaia is now Gaucher of la Bastide.

ITALY

27 March. Death of Pope Gregory XI, in Rome.

28 March. At the funeral mass at the church of Santa Maria Nova, the cardinals are petitioned by the city leaders for election of an Italian Pope to secure the city's prosperity and prevent abandonment again; insistent crowds then lobby the conclave, chanting threats. The French cardinals are divided between the northern French, led by Robert of Geneva, and the 'Limousin' party of southerners, backers of the past four Popes.

8 April. Election of Bartolomeo Prignano, archbishop of Bari and head of the Papal Chancery, by those cardinals who are in Rome not Avignon,

amidst rioting by the populace against the election of a Frenchman (who will return to Avignon). His unstable character, radical proposals for reform and austerity, and threat to create enough new Italian cardinals to out-vote the French majority alarm many of his colleagues, and his outbursts against diplomats alarm their sovereigns including Queen Joanna of Naples.

30 July. Anti-Urban cardinal Orsini leads a secret mission to Naples to ask Joanna for help to replace the Pope.

9 August. The French cardinals and their allies, having retreated to Anagni, declare the election invalid due to pressure by the Roman mob; *20 September* at Fondi, under Neapolitan protection, they elect the French ‘strong-man’ and ex-general Cardinal Robert of Geneva as Pope Clement VII.

31 October. Coronation of Clement VII; opening of the ‘Great Schism’. France, Naples, Burgundy, and Scotland back Clement; England, the Empire, and most of Italy back Urban as the two rivals appeal for outside support.

November. Urban issues Crusade indulgences for his supporters against Clement’s armies. He succeeds in inviting the highly popular and moralist (and Crusading enthusiast) lobbyist (St.) Catherine of Siena to Rome to aid him by denouncing the infamy of a divided Christendom.

GERMANY/BOHEMIA

29 November. Death of Emperor Charles IV, also King of Bohemia, aged 62; succeeded by his elder son Wenceslas (IV of Bohemia), aged 14.

1379 ITALY/FRANCE

April. Pope Urban’s mercenary army wins battle over Clement’s troops near Marino; he occupies the Castel San’ Angelo in Rome and Clement has to withdraw to Naples.

April. Clement offers King Charles V of France’s brother, Duke Louis of Anjou, a ‘Kingdom of Adria’ in regions of the Papal State which he can recover from Urban; start of the involvement of the current ‘House of Anjou’ in southern Italy, on the pattern of their predecessors since the 1260s.

May. Clement flees from Fondi to Naples as Urban’s troops advance, and secures Joanna’s support but faces violent pro-Urban crowds. *22 May* he leaves for Marseilles by sea. *June.* Clement sets up his headquarters at Avignon under the protection of the French monarchy, which after initial hesitation recognises him as Pope in *November 1379*.

17 June. Urban deposes Queen Joanna in retaliation for her support of Clement, unaware that she has been alarmed by pro-Urban riots into

withdrawing her recognition of Clement once he left for France; Urban calls on her cousin Charles of Durazzo, now commanding a Hungarian army in the Veneto, to overthrow her.

SPAIN

29 May. Death of King Henry of Castile, aged 45; succeeded by his son John I (born *24 August 1358*). However his murdered half-brother King Peter's elder daughter Constance's husband, Duke John of Lancaster (in England, John 'of Gaunt'), also claims the throne and as Henry has been sending naval aid to France in the Hundred Years' War the English regency government for Richard II, headed by John, plans to invade Castile.

BYZANTIUM

June? John V, Manuel, and Theodore escape to Chrysopolis/Scutari and make their way to Murad's court; Murad lends an army and Venice lends ships; *1 July* John V and his forces fight their way into Constantinople and defeat Andronicus' Genoese troops but Andronicus escapes to Galata taking his mother, Empress Helena, her father John Cantacuzene, and her sisters as hostages; Galata blockaded.

ATHENS

The Hospitallers and Acciajuoli permit the Navarrese Company to attack and take Thebes.

ITALY

Summer. The Venetian 'home fleet' in the Adriatic is routed off Pola in northern Dalmatia by Genoa, leaving Genoa able to blockade Venice.

16 August. The Genoese take Chioggia on the Lagoon of Venice and blockade the city; the Republic seems to be on the brink of collapse but is rallied by Doge Contarini. The Genoese are surprised by a Venetian offensive before they can launch their ships on the lagoon and attack Venice, with the disgraced Venetian admiral Vettor Pisani being freed from prison to lead the defence.

December. The deep-water route across the lagoon from Chioggia to Venice is blocked by ships loaded with rubble dumped by the Venetians; the Genoese are blockaded in Chioggia.

1380 MOREA

10 April. Death of Manuel Cantacuzene, aged probably 51; succeeded as Despot by elder brother Matthew.

FRANCE

April. Pope Clement secures the military help of Duke Louis of Anjou, younger brother of King Charles V, for Joanna in Naples against Hungary in return for being named as her heir.

29 June. Joanna accepts Louis as her heir. But before he can raise an army, Charles of Durazzo moves into Tuscany and his wife Margaret, Joanna's niece, slips out of Naples to avoid arrest.

ITALY

June. Surrender of the blockaded and starved-out Genoese expedition at Chioggia; the war with Venice peters out as both powers are exhausted.

September. Charles of Durazzo arrives in Florence, Pope Urban invites him to Rome where (November) he becomes 'Senator', in the manner of the previous Papal candidate for Naples, Charles of Anjou, in 1265.

BALTIC/LITHUANIA

Teutonic Knights ally with the rebel Prince Jogaila, opponent of his uncle Grand Duke Kenstutis, who offers to become a Christian (which he does in 1386, q.v.).

1381 ITALY

Pope Urban crowns Charles of Durazzo as his vassal King of Naples in Rome.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

April. Genoese in Galata open discussions with Venice, and Andronicus negotiates with his father; *May* under peace-agreement Andronicus is restored as heir to empire and granted principality based at Selymbria; Andronicus' son John VII to succeed him, not Manuel.

John Cantacuzene, released with other hostages, returns to Morea to settle at Mistra.

MOREA

End of Hospitallers' governorship of Achaia; Joanna resumes indirect control.

ATHENS

'Navarrese Company' invade Attica and besiege Athens; the Catalans under castellan Romeo de Bellarbe, assisted by Greek minister Demetrius

Rendis, drive them off and then appeal to King Peter IV of Aragon for aid; Peter sends new Vicar-General Philip Dalmau, Viscount de Roberti, with reinforcements and encourages other Latin rulers to attack Catalans; Count of Salona (near Delphi) advances on Thebes and Navarrese negotiate their withdrawal.

MOREA

Navarrese return to Achaia, and negotiate their alliance with Jacques de Baux; they overrun Achaia and recognize him as their suzerain, with de Coquerel as bailli. The Hospitallers abandon their attempt to rule Achaia.

ITALY

1 June. Urban invests Charles of Durazzo with the kingdom of Naples – in return for the counties of Capua and Amalfi for his own nephew.

24 June. Charles defeats Joanna's husband Otto of Brunswick at Palestrina.

16 July. The two armies, both moving parallel, arrive near Naples; *17 July*, in the early hours, partisans of Pope Urban open a minor gate by the Bay to Charles' troops, who storm the city and proceed to besiege the Queen in the fortified 'Castel Nuovo' palace. The blockade forces Joanna to negotiate, and a temporary truce (*20 August*) allows her five days for Otto to relieve the palace before she surrenders.

25 August. Otto attacks the city by surprise, forces his way in, but is overwhelmed and has to surrender. *26 August* Joanna surrenders the Castel Nuovo. She is to be allowed to stay at the palace with a reduced court as a private citizen, but instead Charles soon moves her to confinement in a more secure fortress nearby. Louis of Anjou's fleet is still being fitted out at Marseilles.

1382 ITALY

Joanna is moved to a remote area of the southern Apennines, at Muro near Venosa. *23 July* murder of Joanna, aged 56, presumably at Charles' orders as Louis of Hungary is now marching into Italy; Charles seizes the throne of Naples, which thus recognises Urban not Clement as Pope.

June. Louis of Anjou commences his invasion of Naples, allied to Pope Clement and backed by Crusading privileges for his troops; he avoids Florence as Hawkwood is in command there, and marches east of the Apennines into Apulia then across to Caserta near Naples.

EGYPT

Seizure of power by senior Mameluke officer Barquq, the first of the 'Burji' dynasty (so called from the 'Burj', the 'citadel', where his regiment

is based), ends prolonged domestic instability under the weak descendants of Sultan al-Nasir Moammed (d. 1341).

BYZANTIUM

Summer/Autumn? Manuel returns to Thessalonica to resume control there as practically independent ruler.

EGYPT/ARMENIA

Ex-King Leo VI is released from internment in Cairo after Castilian mediation and is allowed to emigrate to Paris, where he dies in 1393.

HUNGARY/POLAND

17 September. Death of King Louis, aged 56. His elder daughter Mary succeeds to Hungary, with her fiancé Sigismund of Luxembourg (younger brother of Emperor-elect Wenceslas) as co-ruler. She was supposed to rule Poland instead and her sister Hewwig/Jadwiga to have Hungary and to marry William of Habsburg (of next-door Austria) under Louis' own plans, but Mary takes over Hungary instead and the Polish nobles insist on a permanently resident sovereign. Mary fails to satisfy this, staying in Hungary. They transfer allegiance during 1383 to her sister Hedwig.

ITALY

November. At Pope Urban's request, Hawkwood arrives in Naples to aid Charles III against Louis of Anjou; the latter marches out of reach to winter at Benevento.

BALTIC

The Teutonic Knights complete the conquest of Samogitia (Zemgale), western Latvia, with its main castle at Kovno, thus uniting their lands in Livonia (centred on Riga) and in Prussia in one bloc of territory.

CYPRUS

3 October. Death of King Peter II, aged 27; succeeded by his uncle James, who is still a hostage in Genoa and is forced to negotiate a new treaty with his captors in return for his freedom.

1383

PORTUGAL/SPAIN

2 April. The ailing King Ferdinand is persuaded by his ruthless wife, Leonora Telles de Menezes, to marry off their daughter and heiress Beatrice (aged 11) to young King John I of Castile in a treaty. This will

unite the two kingdoms, so it is much resisted in Portugal, but secure Leonor (as regent) and her faction against a backlash from Ferdinand's illegitimate kin when the king dies.

LOW COUNTRIES

Urban agrees to grant Crusading status to the troops of English bishop Henry Despenser of Norwich (a veteran of 1360s Papal campaigns against the Visconti) in an expedition to Flanders to attack the pro-French regime there, of Count Louis, which backs Clement VII. The war is funded by the sale of indulgences, volunteers are levied in London, and (*May*) the expedition sails to English-held Calais to march on Gravelines. This and Dunkirk are taken, and (*June–August*) the Bishop joins local rebels in besieging Ypres – whose inhabitants ironically recognise Urban not Clement as Pope. He has to retreat as King Charles VI of France leads an army to the rescue, and (*September*) sails home.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

15 June. Death of John Cantacuzene at Mistra, aged probably 88, having advised John V that his second son Prince Theodore not Matthew's sons should succeed Matthew in the Morea. Death of Matthew Cantacuzene.

September. Hayreddin Pasha advances on Thessalonica and demands surrender; Manuel refuses despite threats of massacre.

Death of Jacques de Baux, ruler of Achaia; the Navarrese Company recognises Joanna's successor Charles III of Naples (descendant of John of Gravina) as overlord.

PORTUGAL

22 October. Death of King Ferdinand, aged a few days under 38; his 12-year-old daughter Beatrice and her husband John I of Castile succeed to the throne in what amounts to a Castilian takeover, backed by Queen-Mother Leonora.

6 December. Nationalist revolt seizes Lisbon, led by John 'of Avis' (born *11 April* 1358), illegitimate son of Peter I and former Grand Master of the Knightly Order of Avis. He personally kills Leonora's chief adviser and lover, the Count of Ourem, as the palace is stormed, and he is proclaimed 'Defender and Governor of the Kingdom'. War with Castile follows.

CYPRUS/GENOA

Famagusta is permanently ceded to Genoa; in return King James is allowed to return home.

1384 | FRANCE/PORTUGAL/CASTILE

Pope Clement proclaims a Crusade on behalf of his ally King John I of Castile (acceded 1379), son of Henry II of Trastamara, as John invades Portugal. John, Master of the (Crusading) Order of Avis, new governor of Portugal, is in alliance with Castile's foe England – and a supporter of Pope Urban. The expedition marches to Santarem to assist Ferdinand's pro-Castilian widow Queen Eleanor, the 'Regent' deposed by John of Avis, but is decimated by plague and retreats.

FRANCE/ITALY

20 September. Death of Louis of Anjou, pro-Clement VII candidate for the Kingdom of Naples, of a chill at Bari; his conquest of Apulia is temporarily reversed but resumed later by his son Louis (II) of Anjou.

POLAND

October. The nobles crown Hedwig/Jadwiga as King, not Queen, of Poland; they refuse to accept her engagement to William of Habsburg and when he turns up at Cracow to demand her they lock her in her apartments and deport him. The Habsburg alliance is abandoned. Instead, talks are opened with Poland's more useful but pagan neighbour to the east – Lithuania, ruled by Grand Duke Jogaila.

HUNGARY

Autumn? As the death of Louis has saved Charles III of Naples from invasion, his partisans in Hungary can invite him to invade and overthrow the government of Queen Mary (under her mother Elizabeth).

They are furious at Elizabeth's plans to abandon the alliance with the Luxembourgs/Bohemia and marry Mary off to Louis II of Anjou in return for French aid – which Charles also sees as a threat.

1385 | PORTUGAL

A parliament/'Cortes' meets at Coimbra, and discusses who to put on the vacant throne. John of Avis is preferred to the sons of Peter I by Ines de Castro; *6 April* John proclaimed King.

BYZANTIUM

25/28 June. Death of Andronicus IV, now ruler of Selymbria, aged 37; his son John VII succeeds to rule of Selymbria.

ATHENS/MOREA

Nerio Acciajuoli invades Attica with mercenary army and occupies all except Acropolis where Catalan commander Pedro de Pau holds out; Boeotia overrun but Salona resists – foundation of Florentine principality of Athens.

PORTUGAL

14 August. John of Avis and the nationalist Portuguese forces defeat the invading Castilians under John I at Aljubarotta; the Castilian attempt to annex Portugal collapses and they retreat. The abbey of Batalha is founded to commemorate the victory.

POLAND/LITHUANIA

14 August. Preliminary agreement is reached for a ‘Union of Crowns’ under the marriage of Queen Hedwig of Poland and Grand Duke Jogaila of Lithuanua, both countries to remain fully autonomous, in the treaty of Crewo. Jogaila is to become a Catholic and convert Lithuania – which means that the neighbouring Teutonic Knights in Prussia will not be able to wage war on and seize land from Lithuania under the excuse of converting the heathen.

ITALY/HUNGARY

September. Charles III invades Dalmatia, leaving the kingdom of Naples, and heads for Buda; the snubbed Luxembourgs also invade from Bohemia.

October. Queen Mary is married to Sigismund to buy off the Luxembourgs, but they are unable to stop the Neapolitan advance; Sigismund has to flee, Mary abdicates, and Charles occupies Buda.

31 December. Charles is crowned King of Hungary.

1386 POLAND/LITHUANIA

January. The union is confirmed at Lublin – ‘Union of Lublin’. The combined armies of Poland and Lithuania may now be put together in war against incursions on either by the Teutonic Knights.

15 February. Jogaila is baptised as ‘Wladyslaw Jagiello’ at Cracow.

18 February. Wladyslaw (III) marries Hedwig and becomes King of Poland. Lithuania is governed in his absence by his brother Skirgiallo.

4 March. Coronation of Wladyslaw.

HUNGARY/ITALY

7 February. Short of troops, Charles is attacked and wounded by rebel magnates in Buda at the apparent instigation of Queen Mary's mother Elizabeth; he is taken prisoner to Visegrad and (*24 February*) dies. His partisans recognise his son Ladislas as King.

Mary is nominally restored to power in Hungary by Elizabeth's faction, but they are defeated by Charles' partisans at Gorjani (*25 July*) and both Queens are imprisoned. Elizabeth is later murdered. The Neapolitans' rivals turn to Sigismund and proclaim him regent; civil war resumes.

In Naples, Ladislas is nominally Charles' successor but faces invasion from Louis II of Anjou; *July*. Louis enters Naples and becomes King.

1387 SPAIN

5 January. Death of King Peter IV of Aragon, aged 67, after a 50-year reign; succeeded by his eldest son by Eleanor of Sicily, John I (born *27 December 1350*).

LITHUANIA

February. Returning to Lithuania, Wladyslaw Jagiello founds a cathedral at his capital, Vilna, as proof of his intention to convert his people. The Teutonic Knights continue attacking Lithuania.

HUNGARY

31 March. Sigismund is crowned King at Szekesfehervar. He defeats Ladislas' partisans.

June. Queen Mary, imprisoned in Dalmatia by the Neapolitan faction, is rescued by a Venetian force and resumes the throne as co-ruler; Sigismund is the real ruler of the country.

BYZANTIUM

6 April. Manuel leaves Thessalonica, probably due to lack of will to resist further by citizens and demands that they surrender to avoid massacre.

9 April. Surrender of Thessalonica.

1388 ATHENS/MOREA

2 May. Surrender of the Acropolis to Nerio Acciajuoli; end of Catalan presence in Duchy. Nerio rules all Attica and Thebes. Nerio's daughter Bartolomea marries Theodore Palaeologus of Mistra.

1389 | OTTOMAN EMIRATE/SULTANATE

Turkish forces invade Bulgaria and take Trnovo and Nicopolis, to ravage to the Danube; Czar John Sisman allowed to retain part of Kingdom as vassal.

Murad brings reinforcements to Europe and advances on Serbia; some Serb princes, such as Constantine Dragas, who are already vassals are required to join his army.

15 June. Battle of Kossovo; Murad killed, probably stabbed in his tent by a pretended deserter from Serb army, but son Bajezid secures victory and King Lazar among thousands of casualties; the late Sultan's 'New Army' of Islamicized Christian recruits, the 'Yeni Cheri' ('Janissaries'), back Bayezid's succession in place of his elder brother Yakub who was left in Anatolia, though some landed nobility at court are restive.

Bayezid uses the title of Sultan to mark his power.

Bajezid allows Lazar's son Stephen Lazarević to succeed as vassal, but imposes tribute of the 'haradj' ('head-tax' on non-Moslems) on all his Balkan tributaries; he has Yaqub executed as threat to throne, inaugurating Ottoman tradition of royal fratricide.

ITALY

15 October. Death of Pope Urban VI, recognised in Rome, most of northern Italy, England, and the Holy Roman Empire.

2 November. Pietro Tomacelli of Naples, a minor cardinal, is elected by the Roman cardinals as Pope Boniface IX; the 'Great Schism' continues.

ITALY/FRANCE

Genoa secures Crusade status from Popes Clement and Boniface for their proposed attack on the Tunisian port of Al-Mahdiya in 1390. Envoys go to France to secure volunteers as there is a truce with England, and King Charles VI's mother's brother, Duke Louis of Bourbon, agrees to serve as commander. The French government limits his recruits to 1,500 men.

LITHUANIA

Wladyslaw Jagiello's cousin Vitold/Vytautas rebels, aided by the Teutonic Knights who hope to keep Lithuania disunited and even to have the union with Poland nullified by deposing the joint sovereign.

1390 | BYZANTIUM/TURKISH SULTANATE

On his return from visit to Genoa to secure aid against his grandfather, John VII is summoned to Bajezid and offered help to take Constantinople;

John V recalls Manuel; *13 April* John VII attacks the city via Charisius Gate and is admitted, but John V retreats to fortress at the Golden Gate and holds out, sending to Manuel in Lemnos for aid.

FRANCE/ITALY/TUNISIA

July. The Franco-Italian fleet of 22(?) galleys and 18 transport-ships, commanded by Duke Louis of Bourbon, sails from Genoa to Tunisia. It lands at Al-Mahdiya and besieges the town for nine or ten weeks, but cannot take it. When Hafsids relief-forces arrive a treaty is negotiated and the Crusaders leave for home.

LITHUANIA

Summer. A Teutonic Knights force assists the rebel Vitold/Vytautas in unsuccessful siege of Vilna, the capital. Among the foreign visitors, knights on Crusade, is the English Earl Henry of Derby, son of John 'of Gaunt' (third son of Edward III), cousin of Richard II, and the future King Henry IV. He arrives in Prussia on campaign in August and stays until *March 1391*.

BYZANTIUM

Manuel secures two Hospitaller ships and other troops, and *September?* at third attempt reaches Constantinople to link up with John V; *17 September* John VII is driven out in surprise attack and returns to Brusa, whence Bajezid restores him to Selymbria as vassal.

SPAIN

9 October. King John of Castile, aged 32, is killed in a riding accident at Alcalá; succeeded by his elder son Henry II 'the Infirm' (born *4 October 1379*) under a regency. Henry and his brother Ferdinand are also heirs to neighbouring Aragon via their mother Eleanor, sister of King Martin, should the latter's only son not have children.

1391 SPAIN

16 January. Death of Emir Mohammed V of Granada, aged 52/3, who has completed the main palace of the Alhambra. He is succeeded by his son Mohammed VII, aged 21/2.

BYZANTIUM

16 February. Death of John V, aged 58, after the longest reign in Byzantine history (46 years, some of it titular); his second but eldest surviving son Manuel returns from Brusa without Sultan's permission to secure the city before his nephew John VII can do so as Turkish client.

Bajezid eventually accepts Manuel as emperor, but increases tribute further; he resumes conquest of fellow-rulers in western Anatolia.

BALTIC/LITHUANIA

Conrad Wollenrode succeeds Conrad Zollner as Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

Late Summer. Among the foreign volunteers on the new Grand Master's first summer campaign is the French Marshal Jean de Boucicaut, future Crusader on the Nicopolis expedition in 1396 and defender of Constantinople, after his King (Charles VI) refused him permission to join the Mahdiya expedition of 1390.

1392 FRANCE/ENGLAND

March. Crusading is on the agenda at the peace-conference between England and France at Amiens, where Richard II's uncle John 'of Gaunt', Duke of Lancaster, meets Charles VI. Charles – whose chancellor Philip de Mezieres is a leading Crusade enthusiast – encourages John to take part in a Crusade to aid Hungary and Byzantium against the Turks, and says that if there was peace with England he could take part himself.

LITHUANIA

Wladyslaw Jagiello comes to an agreement with his rebel cousin Vitold/Vytautas to end civil war. Vitold becomes Grand Duke of Lithuania as governor for Wladyslaw, and the resulting weakness of Wladyslaw's power over Lithuania serves to diminish the danger of a united state to the Teutonic Knights.

Earl Henry of Derby returns to Prussia for his second summer expedition; (*August*) he arrives to find that Jagiello's agreement with Vitold means that there is no campaign to join, and he decides to go to Jerusalem on pilgrimage instead. He proceeds to Prague (*October*), Vienna, and Venice.

1393 PALESTINE

Late January. Earl Henry of Derby visits the Holy Land, by ship from Venice – the first English sovereign (though not reigning yet) to set foot in Palestine since Edward I and the only one to actually enter Jerusalem.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/BULGARIA

John Sisman revolts against Bajezid at instigation of Hungary, but Turks invade; 17 *July* fall of Trnovo; Bulgaria annexed as Turkish province (to last for 483 years); pro-Turkish Prince Stracimir, Sisman's half-brother, temporarily retained at Vidin in north-west of country.

IRAQ/EGYPT

The Jalayrid ruler of Baghdad, Sultan Ahmed, is expelled by his overlord, the 'self-made' Turkestan Mongol conqueror Timur 'the Lame' (known in the West as 'Tamerlane') who now rules all Persia and into Afghanistan. He flees to Egypt; Mameluke Sultan Barquq refuse orders from an embassy from Timur to hand him over and executes the ambassadors.

BALTIC

Conrad of Juningen becomes Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1394 HUNGARY

England (Richard II), France (Charles VI), and Burgundy (Duke Philip 'the Bold', Charles' uncle) send embassies to Sigismund to arrange the date for a Crusade. This is now fixed at centring on Hungary rather than the Mediterranean, with a land-attack on the Ottomans.

BURGUNDY

July. Duke Philip writes of a campaign to Hungary in 1395, to be led by himself, Charles VI's brother Duke Louis of Orelans, and Richard II's uncle John 'of Gaunt', Duke of Lancaster (Derby's father).

ITALY

June and October. Pope Boniface issues bulls for Crusade preaching for the 1395 campaign. Venice agrees to supply ships.

EGYPT/IRAQ

Mameluke troops restore Ahmed the Jalayrid to power in Baghdad; his overlord Timur is too busy campaigning in the east to intervene and Timur's local viceroy, his son Miiranshah, is defeated. The incident raises Timurian-Mameluke tension ahead of their coming clash in 1400, but Afghanistan and Delhi are Timur's priorities.

ATHENS

September. Death of Nerio Acciajuoli; bastard son Antonio succeeds to Thebes and daughter Francesca and her husband Carlo Tocco of Cephallonia to Corinth, but Athens left to the Church; Venetians occupy Athens.

FRANCE

16 September. Death of Pope Clement VII.

26 September. The Avignon cardinals meet in conclave, ignoring a letter from Charles VI asking them to postpone an election so that talks can take place on ending the Schism.

28 September. Pope Benedict XIII (Pedro de Luna of Aragon), Clement's legate in Spain in 1378–89, is elected Pope and recognised by the Avignon-allied countries.

1395 MOREA

Early. Evrenos Beg leads Turkish army past Corinth to attack the Peloponnese; later Theodore Paleologus retakes territory, defeating Navarrese and capturing commander St. Superan and Grand Constable Zaccaria.

HUNGARY/TURKISH SULTANATE

7 March. Prince Mircea of Wallachia agrees at Brasov (Transylvania) to be a Hungarian vassal in return for aid against his Ottoman overlords; this causes an Ottoman invasion.

Hearing that Crusade is being prepared in Hungary, Bajezid marches to the Danube, crosses the river into Wallachia, and *17 May* at Rovine defeats Prince Mircea to occupy fortresses on both shores; Manuel II's father-in-law Constantine Dragas and his fellow-vassal Marko Kraljevic, Serbian princes, are killed in the battle fighting for Sultan.

FRANCE

May. A French delegation arrives at Avignon to ask Pope Benedict to abdicate; he refuses and prolonged talks follow (to 1397) without result.

Philip de Mezieres, senior adviser to King Charles VI, proposes setting up a new Crusading knightly Order, of the 'Passion, like the English Order of the Garter'.

SPAIN

15 May. Death of King John of Aragon after being gored by a wild boar out hunting, aged 34; succeeded by his brother Martin (born 1353), who is absent in Sicily acting as regent there for his son Martin (king-consort to Queen Mary) until 1397.

HUNGARY/TURKISH SULTANATE

July. Sigismund restores Mircea to power in Wallachia by an invasion as soon as the Ottoman army has left.

HUNGARY/France/BYZANTIUM

May. Hungarian ambassadors belatedly meet French Dukes Philip of Burgundy and Louis of Orleans at Lyons to arrange progress of Crusade into Balkans in 1396; Philip's son John 'the Fearless', Duke of Nevers, nominated as commander. Marshal Boucicaut, the Constable of France Philip of Artois, and the Admiral John de Vienne will also be involved.

Duke Louis of Orleans withdraws from leadership, as does John 'of Gaunt' who is facing revolt in his fief of Gascony; John's illegitimate son John Beaufort is to command the English contingent but the difficult Anglo-French negotiations for Richard II's marriage (to Charles VI's daughter Isabella) make co-operation between the two countries difficult.

1396 FRANCE

April. John of Nevers and 10,000 French troops set out for Hungary, joined by c. 6,000 Germans.

July. Crusade assembles under John's command at Buda; Sigismund brings around 60,000 Hungarians and Mircea about 10,000 Wallachians. Sigismund prefers defensive posture to force Bajezid to advance into Christian territory, but the French insist on attack.

Second Anglo-French contingent arrives under Enguerrand de Coucy, a prominent chivalric hero and Picardy lord who is son-in-law to the late Edward III of England.

August. The army marches to Danube, and crosses in four days due to size; they proceed to Vidin which John Stracimir surrenders, and then storm Rahova and kill inhabitants.

Nicopolis is besieged, but holds out until Bajezid arrives to relieve it; the two armies probably number around 15–20,000 each with the Turks having the advantage in heavy cavalry and experience of fighting as one unit.

25 September. The French cavalry charge uphill from siege-lines to attack smaller Turkish cavalry force, despite warnings from the locals (Hungarians etc.) who have experience of Turkish fighting that they should hold their main cavalry in reserve to meet the onslaught of the Turkish cavalry who will stay to the rear in the initial clash. The Count of Eu leads the charge, waving the banner of the Virgin, in personal impatient defiance of Sigismund's caution. The Turkish infantry front lines hold up the Christians and tire them out, though the knights eventually penetrate their lines. Other Turks and Stephen Lazarević's Serbs are in hiding behind hill and emerge to ambush the exhausted Crusaders; the Crusaders are driven back and slaughtered as the Wallachians and Transylvanians desert. The French admiral, John de Vienne, is killed.

John of Nevers, Philip of Artois, Enguerrand de Coucy, and the renowned knight Marshal John Boucicaut are among those captured; Western nobles are among those prisoners killed afterwards as Bajezid only spares richer leaders for ransom; Sigismund's Hungarians are less badly routed but have to retire, and Bajezid annexes Vidin due to Stracimir's treachery.

Sigismund sails down the Danube and on to Constantinople to hold talks with Manuel, then returns to West via Hellespont where Bajezid stations prisoners on the shores as he passes to mock him.

Autumn. Bajezid resumes blockade of Constantinople after his troops return from Nicopolis; Venice pays for new fleet to reinforce the city, and Genoa (now fief of Charles VI of France) lends assistance too.

French negotiators arrive in Bursa, Bajezid's capital, to negotiate ransoms.

RHODES

Philip of Naillac is chosen as the new Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1397 FRANCE/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

June. The joint ransom for the captured French/Burgundian leaders is set at 700,000 ducats.

Bajezid defeats the Alauddin Ali Bey, ruler of the Karamanid emirate, the main power of south-east Anatolia and successor-state to the Seljuks there, and occupies its capital, Konya.

John of Nevers and other hostages ransomed for 700,000 ducats.

1398 ITALY

Pope Boniface orders Crusade preaching to raise another army to deal with the Ottomans. He appoints a Catholic archbishop (John) for the Azerbaijan capital of Sultaniyeh, now in Timur's hands, ready to send to Timur for alliance.

FRANCE/SPAIN

March. Pope Benedict grants Crusade status to an Aragonese reprisal expedition to north Africa after a raid on Torralba in 1397.

BALTIC

Conquest of the alleged pirate base disrupting Baltic shipping, Gotland, by the Teutonic Knights (held until 1408), with the reluctant permission of hard-pressed King Albert of Sweden.

Treaty of Sallinwerde between the Knights and Lithuania sees Grand Duke Vitold/Vytautas formally cede his rights over Samogitia (Zemgale) to the Order.

SPAIN

August. The Aragonese Crusade sacks the Tunisian port of Tedelic.

CYPRUS

9 September. Death of King James, aged around 60; succeeded by his son Janus, born while his father was a hostage in Genoa and named after that city's mythical protector.

1399 FRANCE

Early. Marshal Boucicaut, ransomed, is authorised by Charles VI to bring 1,200 soldiers to defence of Constantinople; *26 June* he leaves Aigues-Mortes.

EGYPT/IRAQ

Death of Sultan Barquq; succeeded by his 10-year-old son, An-Nasir Faraj, under regency of squabbling senior generals. The lack of a strong leader encourages the selection of the Mameluke state as one of the targets of the next westwards push by Timur, who has just ended his *1398* attack on Delhi and is needed in Iraq to deal with misrule by his incompetent eldest son Miranshah.

ITALY

July. Louis II of Naples (Duke of Anjou, cousin of Charles VI of France) and his army are driven out of Naples as the Italian Papacy deserts them; Ladislas of Durazzo, son of Charles III (killed *1386*), is installed as King.

BYZANTIUM

Summer. Boucicaut breaks Turkish blockade of Hellespont and reaches Constantinople; welcomed and given rank of Grand Constable, and joins Manuel in sorties in Thrace and Asian coast.

Boucicaut advises Manuel to go to West and appeal for aid in person, and Manuel uses him as intermediary to approach John VII at Selymbria about governing the capital in his absence; John agrees and *4 December* moves to Constantinople with his family and Boucicaut's lieutenant John de Châteaumorand to remain with 100 men-at-arms.

10 December. Manuel sails from Constantinople to Modon (the main port of the Byzantine Morea principality) with his wife Helena and three sons, and leaves his family at Modon as safer than in Constantinople with his rival.

IRAQ

Autumn. Timur restores order in the region, deposing his son Miranshah, and heads north for winter campaign in Christian Georgia where his massacres and sacking of churches embellish his Islamic credentials after his earlier attacks on Moslem states.

1400 BYZANTIUM/MOREA/France/ENGLAND

January. Manuel sails on to Italy, while Theodore goes to Rhodes to meet the Hospitaller leadership about their taking over his principality; Theodore abdicates in their favour, and they occupy Kalavryta but are refused admittance to Mistra by Bishop and angry citizens; Theodore retires to Monemvasia but finds the deal collapsing.

April. Manuel in Venice; then to Padua; Boucicaut goes ahead to Paris while he travels to Milan.

May. Pope Boniface renews call for Crusade.

3 June. Manuel reaches Paris to another hospitable reception, from Charles VI who promises Boucicaut will lead new expedition; 1,200 men to be sent.

Manuel writes to Kings Henry III of Castile and Martin of Aragon, and prepares visit to England as Richard II's successor Henry IV is a former Crusader (against Lithuanian pagans) and has visited Jerusalem; *11 July* Henry Holt, prior of Hospitallers in England, promises assistance in letter.

GERMANY

August. Deposition of the incompetent Emperor Wenceslas, who however remains King of Bohemia. Election as his successor of Rupert, Elector of the Palatinate.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/IRAQ/EGYPT

Timur 'the Lame' persecutes Christians in Georgia and sacks leading cities in pursuit of 'jihad', then enters Ottoman territories and *August* sacks Sivas/Sebastea; he turns south against Mameluke Syria but Bajezid has to prepare for his likely return and sends an envoy to Cairo for alliance.

Timur sends an envoy to Cairo demanding submission, the punishment of those left alive who killed his envoys in 1393 (Sultan Barquq is dead),

and the return of a captured Mongol officer; the ambassador is seized and cut in two by Udun, the governor of Damascus, before reaching Cairo.

Late October. Timur reaches Aleppo, where the Mameluke governor Damurdash's army is defeated in a battle outside the walls where his left wing is trampled underfoot by Timur's elephants. He surrenders the city, but it is sacked for four days, the populace is massacred, and a Timurian trademark pyramid of heads is erected as a warning to other foes.

BYZANTIUM/ENGLAND

Manuel meets Holt at Calais as Charles VI insane; *December* Manuel lands at Dover after Henry IV's return from campaign in Scotland, and *13 December* proceeds to Canterbury; *21 December* Henry meets him at Blackheath and escorts him into London; he spends Christmas as Henry's guest at Eltham Palace, and writes an impressed letter to Chrysoloras on his reception and Henry's goodwill.

1401 SYRIA/EGYPT

January. Timur's army arrives at Damascus, which offers to surrender but changes its mind as he pulls back his troops from investment to find new pasture for his cavalry and troops arrive from Faraj in Egypt. The 'war party' in the city attacks the Mongol rearguard still encamped nearby, but is routed; as the wrathful Timur arrives claiming a breach of the recent agreement the Egyptians flee and the city leaders send out a delegation to apologise and disassociate themselves from the attack.

They include the veteran Tunisian traveller and historian Ibn Khaldun, who has been living in Cairo as chief qadi and is with the Egyptian military mission to Damascus.

Timur receives Ibn Khaldun with honour and enrolls him in his entourage, but after the garrison of the Damascus citadel attack his troops in the city he demands a million dinars as ransom, arbitrarily raises it to ten million, and then has the city stormed and sacked; another major massacre is perpetrated.

BYZANTIUM/ENGLAND/France

February. Manuel returns to France with 3,000 marks and expressions of goodwill but no definite promises of aid from the preoccupied Henry despite his hopes; he joins Charles VI at Paris, amidst rumours that Bajezid has been defeated or killed by Timur, and attends Mass at St. Denis. Manuel negotiates with Henry IV, Spanish rulers, and Pope Benedict at Avignon and writes home he expects to be accompanied or followed by a Crusade, but cannot secure the army he needs.

June. Possible negotiations between John VII and Bajezid, but no agreement even if it is more than rumour. Manuel's envoy Alexius Branas visits Martin of Aragon, who promises six galleys in 1402. Charles however sends Boucicaut to govern Genoa.

IRAQ

Timur returns to Iraq en route to Georgia, and sacks Baghdad for refusing to surrender; a third major Islamic city of the Levant is burnt and its population slaughtered in two years.

1402 SICILY

25 *May.* Death of Queen Mary, aged 35; her husband Martin is sole ruler.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE

Spring. Timur invades Anatolia and ravages Cappadocia, sacking Kayseri/Caesarea; Bajezid marches east. He ignores his emirs' advice to wait on chosen ground at Ankara and let the Mongols tire themselves out advancing, and advances on Tokat to save the local harvest from destruction; Timur eludes him and slips across country to take Ankara and force him to pull back. The Mongols secretly persuade Bajezid's Turcoman mercenaries to change sides in the battle.

28 *July.* Bajezid is defeated and captured in catastrophic Turkish defeat at battle of Ankara, as his mercenaries abandon his ranks and his son Prince Sulaiman's left wing breaks and flees. He is honourably treated and probably not paraded in a cage unlike legends claim, but he is deposed as his eldest son Sulaiman flees the battle with survivors and *August* reaches Thrace; Sulaiman occupies Adrianople as Sultan.

Henry II of Castile's ambassadors to Timur, Payo Sotomayor and Hernan Sanchez, witness the battle of Ankara.

Timur holds out hope of recognition and support to both Sulaiman and his rival brothers in Anatolia, Isa, Musa, and Mehmed, and in the meantime receives refugee ex-rulers of Turkish Emirates that Bajezid conquered in 1390s.

ATHENS

Summer. Antonio Acciajuoli of Thebes evicts Venetians from Athens.

BYZANTIUM

September? Manuel hears of Bajezid's defeat and captivity at Paris, and prepares to return home; Châteaumorand arrives from Constantinople to confirm situation.

Late November. Manuel sets off from Paris to Italy, escorted by Châteaumorand and 200 soldiers.

December. Timur sacks Crusader-held Smyrna and massacres the Hospitaller garrison and inhabitants; end of Latin presence in Anatolia from 1343. A relief-force arrives from Rhodes as the city is being sacked, and Timur encourages them to withdraw by having his catapults bombard them with captives' heads.

MOREA

Death of Peter of San Superan, ruler of Achaia; the local baron Centurione Zaccaria seizes control.

1403 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

February. Treaty between John VII and Suleiman's representatives, Venice, Genoa, and Hospitallers at Constantinople – Byzantium relieved of vassalage and tribute and regains Thessalonica, Mount Athos, and the Thracian coast up to Anchialus or Varna, with Skiathos, Skopelos, and Skyros in Aegean.

Sulaiman agreed to become Manuel's vassal, as 'son' to 'father'.

Manuel goes on to Venice *March* and 5 *April* sails for Morea with three Venetian ships; he collects his family from Theodore, now securely in control of Morea again, at Modon.

CYPRUS

April. Bocicaut leads a Genoese relief-expedition to drive off an attack on Famagusta by King Janus; the Cypriots are defeated and (*July*) have to recognise Genoese ownership of Famagusta again and pay another heavy indemnity for the war.

BYZANTIUM

9 *June.* Manuel and family return to Constantinople; he and John VII sign renewal of agreement with Suleiman, who marries Manuel's brother Theodore's illegitimate daughter.

Summer. John VII sent to Lemnos pending the delayed restoration of Thessalonica which Manuel promised him as his appanage.

Autumn? Thessalonica restored to Byzantium, and John rules it as governor, retaining imperial title to which his son Andronicus 'V' is now or later raised.

Mehmed son of Bayezid rules in Bithynia.

BALTIC

Ulrich of Juningen succeeds his brother Conrad as Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1404 BYZANTIUM/MOREA

5 May. Theodore buys Corinth back from the Hospitallers in treaty of Vasilopotamo.

TURKISH SULTANATE

Suleiman faces civil war in European domains from his vassal brother Musa.

ITALY

1 October. Death of Pope Boniface IX, the Pope based at Rome.

31 October. Election of Pope Innocent VII (Cosimo Gentile de' Migliorati, Archbishop of Bologna). A request for a postponement by rival Pope Benedict's envoys. The new German 'King of the Romans', Rupert of the Palatinate, however pressurises him into arranging a council on the schism for 1405, for both Popes to attend.

1405 ITALY

May. Pope Benedict lands from Avignon at Genoa en route for the autumn's planned Church Council hosted by rival Innocent VII; his safe-conduct is not judged satisfactory so he refuses to attend and the plan is abandoned.

1406 ITALY

6 November. Death of Pope Innocent VI, ruling in Rome.

30 November. Election of Pope Gregory XII (Angleo Correr, of Venice). All the cardinals at the election have to swear to abdicate in the interests of Church unity if the rival Pope Benedict does so too, and to open negotiations for reunion. Gregory writes to Benedict to invite him to negotiations and offer a joint resignation and then an election by both sides' cardinals.

SPAIN

25/6 December. Death of King Henry II, aged 27, leaving 1-year-old son John II; Henry's widow Catherine of England, daughter of John 'of Gaunt, serves as regent (to 1418) with his brother Ferdinand, major commander of the 'Reconquista, as her military leader.

1407 | **BYZANTIUM/MOREA**

Death of Theodore Palaeologus of the Morea, aged around 54; Manuel nominates his own second son Theodore, now around 13, as next ruler once he becomes adult – uncertain who is regent.

SPAIN

October. Capture of Zahara by expedition under the co-regent of Castile, Prince Ferdinand; abandonment of the siege of Setenil on the insistence of his war-weary nobles. He subsequently takes over the Masterships of the Crusading Orders of Santiago and Alcantara to co-ordinate offensive warfare against the emirate of Granada.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE

Sulaiman quarrels with Mehmed, invades Bithynia, and seizes Brusa.

1408 | **ITALY**

April–May. Failure of inter-Papal negotiations as Gregory, at Lucca, breaks his election promise by (*4 May*) starting to create new cardinals and secure a majority in his consistory for his rejectionist standpoint. Most of his cardinals flee to Pisa and join like-minded cardinals of Benedict's. They appeal to the rulers of Christendom to help set up a Church Council for reunion in *1409*; neither Pope will attend or recognise the latter.

FRANCE

May. The government abandons Pope Benedict; he flees to Perpignan.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Manuel visits the Morea to install regency government for Theodore (II) at Mistra; *September* during his visit John VII dies at Thessalonica, aged 40, and the city reverts to Manuel's rule. Manuel installs his third son, Andronicus, as nominal ruler of Thessalonica during his voyage home.

SPAIN

Death of Emir Mohammed VII of Granada, aged 37/8; succeeded by his brother Yusuf III (born *1374*), who reigns until *1417* after which the emirate falls into dynastic instability.

1409 | **ITALY**

25 March. Opening of the Church Council at Pisa, with some 500 bishops present.

5 June. Both Pope Gregory (Rome) and Pope Benedict (Avignon) are declared deposed by the Council.

26 June. Petro Philargi of Candia, Crete (Venetian Greek), Archbishop of Milan, is elected by the Council as Pope Alexander V. Neither of the other Popes will resign so Christendom now has three Popes. Gregory has to flee Rome for the Kingdom of Naples and the aid of King Ladislas, and declares his rivals deposed; Ladislas' troops hold Rome in his name. Alexander then dissolves the Council of Pisa and turns to Louis II of Anjou, deposed (1399) predecessor of Ladislas, to help regain control of the Papal States.

SICILY

25 July. Death of King Martin I; his father King Martin I of Aragon succeeds as Martin II, as by his mother (Eleanor of Aragon) he is the nearest male of the Royal Family of Aragon from whom the island's rulers are descended. The union of Aragon (thereafter Spain from 1479) and Sicily will last with short intermissions until 1714.

BALTIC

After resolving a conflict with his eastern neighbour and son-in-law Grand Duke Vassily of Moscow, Vitold/Vytautas of Lithuania resumes the struggle with the Teutonic Knights over Semigallia (Zemgale). He stirs up rebellion, and is backed by his cousin King Wladyslaw Jagiello of Poland despite the Knights' efforts to keep the two halves of the 'Union of Krewo' from combining against them. The Knights decide on war with Lithuania and summon Crusading help from the West.

1410 ITALY

January. Pro-Alexander V army under Louis of Anjou and Cardinal Baldassare Cossa, a Neapolitan general and reputed ex-pirate, occupies Rome and hands it over to Alexander.

BALTIC

Late Spring. King Sigismund of Hungary and other allies of the Knights fail to send the amount of help that the latter expected for the war with Lithuania. The latter and its ally Poland invade the Order's territories, fighting under the banner of the Virgin in the name of the Church to show up the Order's claim that they are only nominally Christian.

ITALY

3 May. Death of Pope Alexander, now resident at Bologna.

17 May. Alexander's patron and 'strongman' Cardinal Baldassore Cossa, now ruling Bologna, is elected Pope John XXIII by the pro-Pisa cardinals; with Louis of Anjou's military help he secures Rome, and is recognised by Germany and England.

SPAIN

31 May. Death of King Martin I of Aragon and Sicily (aged 57?); the ruling house is extinct in the male line so an interregnum follows. The nearest heirs are in the royal house of Castile.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE

15 June. Sulaiman defeats Musa at Cosmidion. Musa besieges Sulaiman in Adrianople; Manuel sends aid to the besieged, and unsuccessfully attacks Gallipoli.

SPAIN

April–September. Successful siege of Antequera, major town on the north-west (Castilian) frontier of Granada, by the regent of Castile, Prince Ferdinand. He assumes the title 'of Antequera'.

SPAIN/SICILY

31 May. Death of Martin, king (I) of Aragon and (II) of Sicily, aged 46/7; both thrones are vacant.

BALTIC

The Poles and Lithuanians march on the Teutonic Knights' headquarters, Marienburg.

15 June. Defeat of the Teutonic Knights by Wladyslaw of Poland and Vitold/Vytautas of Lithuania at the epic battle of Tannenburg (Grunwald); although the Lithuanians on their right wing are chased off the battlefield, the Knights pursuing them fail to wheel round to aid their centre and right which are annihilated. Grand Master Ulrich, most of his senior officers, and over 200 knights are killed, and the Order is permanently diminished. Henry of Plauen rallies the survivors to save Mairenburg, which Wladyslaw besieges.

19 September. Wladyslaw abandons the siege of Marienburg; the Order survives to rebuild its territories.

1411

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/BYZANTIUM

February. Sulaiman's troops open the gates of Adrianople to Musa, who captures and 17 February executes his fleeing brother and assumes control

of European lands; Musa denounces the treaty with Byzantium and marches on Constantinople to besiege it by land and sea; Manuel has stored provisions ready and the defenders are able to fight back strongly, and imperial ships breach Turkish naval blockade; Manuel's candidate for Turkish throne, Orhan son of Sulaiman, captured and killed.

Manuel sends to Mehmed, ruler in Anatolian dominions, and offers alliance and shipping to transport him to Europe if he will attack Musa.

BALTIC

February. First Treaty of Thorn: the Teutonic Knights, under Henry of Plauen as the new Grand Master, cede Samogitia (Zemgale) to Lithuania, supposedly only for the lifetimes of Wladyslaw and his cousin Vitold/Vytautas, and pay a heavy indemnity for the war.

EPIRUS

February. Death of Esau Buondelmonti, Italian lord of Ioannina; widow Eudocia is deposed by Carlo Tocco, lord of the Ionian islands.

ITALY

19 May. King Ladislas, returning to the side of Pope John XXIII, defeats Louis of Anjou at Rocasecca; he re-occupies Rome to restore John there. Pope Gregory flees.

GERMANY

July. Following the death of King of the Romans, Rupert of the Palatinate, ex-emperor Wenceslas IV's younger brother Sigismund (of Hungary) is elected as Emperor.

1412 TURKISH SULTANATE

Early. Mehmed meets Manuel successfully at Scutari/Chrysopolis, then comes to Constantinople; he sallies from city to attack Musa's land-forces but *July* is defeated. Manuel persuades Mehmed to collect a new, larger army; a second attack is defeated but on third attempt Mehmed drives Musa back into Thrace; he takes Adrianople.

SPAIN

31 May. Prince Ferdinand 'of Antequera', regent of Castile (born 27 *November 1380*), is chosen by the 'Cortes' at Alcaniz as the new king of Aragon – he is the son of Eleanor, the daughter of King Peter IV.

Accession of the dynasty of Castile to rule of Aragon and, by its union, Sicily.

ITALY

Pope John XXIII holds a partisan ‘Church Council’ to confirm his own legality; Pope Gregory defies him from Rimini under the protection of the Maltesata dynasty.

ITALY/BOHEMIA

John has a Crusade preached against his rivals; the misuse of the term Crusade for personal and political gain by a corrupt Papacy is condemned by the leading unorthodox theologian at Prague University, Jan Hus, a follower of the late 14th century English ‘heretic’ reformer John Wycliffe and leader of the dominant faction in the increasingly autonomous and anti-Catholic University. John excommunicates Hus, though Hus and his followers are not yet arrested due to the Bohemian government’s fear of disorder.

EGYPT

6 November. Assassination of Sultan An-Nasir Faraj, son of the ‘Burji’ dynasty founder Barquq. He is succeeded by Al-Muayyad Shaikh, the leader of the coup by his father’s old generals.

1413 TURKISH SULTANATE/BYZANTIUM

Mehmed pursues Musa west and *5 July* destroys his army at Camurlu in Serbia; Musa captured and executed; Mehmed renews Sulaiman’s treaty with Byzantium and pledges peace with the Western sovereigns and Venice.

ITALY

Summer. Ladislas abandons Pope John and drives him out of Rome; John turns to the growing demand among the European sovereigns for a ‘General Council’ to sort out the Schism and declares that he will summon one in return for support against Ladislas. Sigismund, the main supporter of a Council, agrees.

9 December. John summons a General Council to the German/Swiss city of Constance, Swabia, for *November 1414*.

1414 BALTIC

Michael Kuchmeister succeeds Henry as Grand Master of the Teutonic Order (to 1422). The Order has now stabilised its military position against

Poland/Lithuania. His rule sees the start of a decline in the amount of Crusading 'reisen' undertaken by foreign volunteers, as the Order's arguments for fighting the Lithuanians as 'recidivist pagans' are wearing thin now they are ruled by a major European Christian sovereign.

ITALY

Pope John XXIII renews call for a Crusade against King Ladislas.

6 August. Death of King Ladislas; succeeded by his sister, Joanna II.

5 November. Opening of the Council of Constance, with around 600 clerics present representing most of Europe. John is the only Pope to attend, with a large Italian contingent; voting is however divided up into four 'nations' (Italian, German/Scandinavian/eastern European, French, English/Scottish) so he is at a disadvantage.

1415 GERMANY/ITALY

15 February. The Church Council of Constance votes for all three Popes to abdicate and a new one to be elected, with the Italian 'nation' dissenting on Pope John's behalf. John pretends to go along with it and Pope Gregory agrees to abdicate if the other Popes do so.

20/21 March. John flees Constance in secret; he tries to take refuge with Duke Frederick of Austria but is pursued.

6 April. The Council declares its superiority over the legal powers of all Popes, denying the supremacy of Papal powers which has been a cornerstone of the institution's position since the 1040s.

14 May. The captured Pope John is suspended from his functions and put on trial for simony, perjury, and assorted crimes.

29 May. Pope John is deposed; he accepts the Council's verdict and right to issue one, and renounces his claim to power. He is deported to Bavaria as a prisoner.

4 July. Following agreement with Pope Gregory, his legate is allowed to formally re-convene the Council in his name so he can avoid having to accept the verdict of a Council legalised by his foe John XXIII. His representatives join the Council, his acts are ratified, and in return he abdicates and receives the cardinal-bishopric of Porto.

GERMANY/BOHEMIA

6 July. The Bohemian Hussite heretic leader Jan Hus is burnt at the stake in Constance by order of the Council, having been found guilty of denying transubstantiation. Sigismund (brother and heir to King Wenceslas IV)

persuaded him to attend under a safe-conduct but failed to protect him when this was violated. This exacerbates the rise in Czech antagonism to the rule of the Catholic government of Sigismund which will lead to revolt in 1419 and the reprisal Crusade to extirpate the Hussites.

GERMANY/BALTIC

Peter Wormditt, the proctor of Grand Master Henry, presents the main theological defence of the Order's right to wage a Crusade to the Council, against a Polish attempt to ban it from attacking the Lithuanians and order it to co-operate with them for war on the heathen Mongols in the Ukraine (and the Greek Orthodox Russians). The Polish representative, John Vladimiri, alienates the Council by denying that the Pope has the right to award pagan lands to the Order and claiming that as clerics the Order should not fight. His argument that the pagan polities have rights over their lands are countered by the reply that the pagans forfeited them by murdering missionaries. Andrew Escobar, Bishop of Ciudad Rodrigo (Castile), argues that the Pope can name any military expedition a Crusade if it will convert pagans in the process.

PORTUGAL

22 August. Fall of Ceuta, on the southern side of the Straits of Gibraltar, to an expedition led by King John and his younger sons, especially Prince Henry 'the Navigator' who is head of the Crusading 'Order of Christ' (the local successor to the Knights Templar). The expedition is granted Crusading indulgences by the Pope, and is supposed by later Portuguese writers to be the first example of the devout Henry's plan to launch a Crusade strategy of exploring and annexing Moslem and pagan lands in west Africa.

SPAIN

13 December. After Sigismund arrives in Perpignan to negotiate with Pope Benedict XIII and his cardinals on the Church Council's behalf, agreement is reached for them to join the Council and recognise its supremacy. The Aragonese and Navarrese 'nation' will send delegates to the Council in 1416; Castile holds out until 1417. Benedict and a minority of his supporters refuse to agree, and the Pope flees to the region of Valencia.

1416 SPAIN

2 April. Death of Ferdinand 'of Antequera', King of Aragon and founder of the Castilian dynasty there, aged 45; succeeded by his son Alfonso (V), aged 21.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Venetians arrange the transport to Europe of a claimant alleging he is Mehmed's younger brother Mustafa who has not been seen since 1402 Battle of Ankara; he raises revolt against Mehmed, and Manuel lends him some discreet assistance and aids him in approaches to Stephen Lazarevic of Serbia and the Karamanids; Junayd assists Mustafa.

May. Venetian Admiral Pietro Loredan comes to rescue of Negropont/Chalcis, capital of Euboea, after Turkish fleet attacks, pursues Turks back to Gallipoli, and destroys their navy in battle off the town.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE

Mustafa driven into Thessaly by Mehmed's army and flees to Thessalonica, where governor Leontaris gives him asylum in breach of Manuel's treaty; Manuel refuses to hand Mustafa over and Mehmed pays 20,000 'hyperpera' per annum for him to be kept hostage.

1417 GERMANY/ITALY

26 July. The Council of Constance reaffirms the deposition of Pope Benedict XIII, of the 'Avignon' allegiance, who has now taken refuge in the Aragonese castle of Peniscola and is refusing to abdicate.

11 November. Following legal rearrangement of the Papal election by the Council of Constance, Cardinal Odo Colonna is elected Pope (Martin V). The Schism is effectively ended, although Benedict XIII holds out in Aragon until he dies on *23 May 1423*.

1418 ITALY/BALTIC

22 April. Closure of the Council of Constance. It does not rule in favour of either the Teutonic Order or the Poles over the dispute about forced conversion of Lithuanians and what is a proper Crusade, but Poland avoids the Order's attempt to have a Crusade called against it for the battle of Tannenburg (*1410*).

16 May. Pope Martin V leaves Constance for Italy, he stays in the north until *1420* while the withdrawal of the Neapolitan garrison in Rome is arranged with Queen Joanna II.

Pope Martin empowers Cardinal John Dominici to preach a Crusade if Emperor Sigismund has to send troops to Bohemia to defeat heresy.

1419 BOHEMIA

The rising anti-Catholic and anti-clerical disorder in Bohemia, with Church property being expropriated, leads to the imposition of a new Catholic city council in Prague by King Wenceslas IV.

30 July. The leading councillors are thrown out of a window in the Prague City Hall by a Hussite mob led by Jan Zelivsky; start of the Hussite rebellion in Bohemia.

16 August. Wenceslas IV dies of shock at the 'Defenestration of Prague', aged 55; Sigismund succeeds him but is resisted by Bohemian Hussites and nationalists as the betrayer of Hus in 1415.

PORTUGAL/AFRICA

August. Pedro de Mezezes, count of Vila Real and governor of Ceuta, leads the port's successful defence against a siege by Abu Said Uthman, Marinid Sultan of Morocco; he had routed the besiegers in a surprise sally and driven them into retreat before Prince Henry's relief-fleet arrives.

1420 GERMANY

March. Sigismund holds a 'Reichstag' at Breslau to organise an expedition to Bohemia; Papal legate Bishop Ferdinand of Lucena arrives with a bull proclaiming a Crusade against the Hussites and all other heretics who resist Sigismund.

The Crusade is condemned by the rebel government in Prague, which denies and defies Papal authority in the name of reform. They call on the radical 'Taborite' military from the heretic 'colony' of 'Mount Tabor', led by the general Jan Zizka, to rally the defence of their country.

Marching on Prague, Sigismund is defeated near the city at Vitkov Hill by the Hussites (*July*).

1419 BOHEMIA

Sigismund succeeds in forcing his way into the Hradcany Castle at Prague to be crowned as King of Bohemia, but cannot enter the main city across the river. He has to retreat south.

1 November. Defeat of Sigismund's army by the 'Taborites' at Kutna Hora.

1421 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

19 January. John VIII is crowned co-Emperor, and takes over more responsibilities from his father Manuel.

21 May. Mehmed dies suddenly on return to Adrianople, in uncertain circumstances, his will entrusts two younger sons to Manuel for safety, but ministers refuse to hand them over to infidels; eldest son Murad II succeeds aged 17, but John VIII and 'war party' insist that Empire backs the more reliable Mustafa and dubious but ailing Manuel gives way.

BOHEMIA/GERMANY

Late Summer. Cardinal Branda of Castiglione, new Papal legate, and the Archbishop-Electors of Mainz, Cologne, and Trier preach a Crusade in Germany against the Hussites. An army is raised, and Bohemia is attacked from the north (Lusatia) and the west (Upper Palatinate).

September–October. Failure of the siege of Zatec by the Upper Palatinate army.

October. Sigismund invades Bohemia with an army led by the Florentine ‘condottiere’ Pipo Spano. It occupies Kután Hora.

BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

Autumn. Mustafa brought from Lemnos to make agreement with Byzantine government, and sent to Thrace to raise revolt; he seizes Gallipoli and Adrianople. Mustafa, invading Bithynia in Genoese ships, is routed by Murad near Brusa.

EGYPT

21 November. Death of Sultan Al-Muayyad Shaykh; his attempt to leave the Sultanate to his son leads to a succession of coups among his restive officers.

RHODES

Anton Fluvian succeeds Philip de Naillac as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1422 BYZANTIUM//OTTOMAN SULTANATE

January. Murad crosses into Thrace, and defeats and executes Mustafa; he spurns the Byzantine ambassadors sent to pacify him and prepares for war.

BOHEMIA

Early. Jan Žižka’s rebel army drives Sigismund out of Bohemia.

BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

10 June. Constantinople and Thessalonica both besieged; the Sultan builds massive rampart of earth along the length of land-walls and catapults bombard the city from there, but *24 August* grand assault on walls on allegedly auspicious date is driven back after fierce fighting and *6 September* the Turks retreat as Murad’s young half-brother Mustafa is proclaimed rival Sultan at Brusa at Manuel’s instigation.

BOHEMIA

The rebels invite a Polish prince, Sigismund Korybut, to replace Sigismund as King; he arrives but is little more than a puppet and is treated with defiance by the more zealous and anti-monarchic Hussites such as the ‘Taborites’.

Autumn. Another Crusade invades the rebel territory, led by Margrave Wiliam of Meissen and Elector Frederick of Brandenburg; little success despite a breach between the ‘Taborites’ and their fellow-radicals, the more moderate ‘Orebites’ (from ‘Mount Horeb’ settlement) to whom Zizka has defected.

1423 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Prince Andronicus the Despot of Thessalonica, sick and despairing as Ottoman siege of Thessalonica continues, offers it to Venice as long as they promise Greeks to respect property and Church.

Early July. Venetian Senate decides on acceptance of Andronicus’ proposal to occupy Thessalonica and informs Turks; Manuel, ill after stroke, approves of Andronicus’ actions.

September. Two Venetian representatives arrive in Thessalonica, with 6 ships full of provisions, and raise the banner of St. Mark; Andronicus leaves with infant son John for the Morea to join Theodore.

15 November. John VIII journeys to Venice to discuss military aid to Constantinople, and then goes on to Milan.

1424 BYZANTIUM/TURKISH SULTANATE

Early Manuel and Constantine negotiate peace with Murad, surrendering remaining fortresses around Thessalonica and Anchialus on Black Sea coast and paying 20,000 ‘hyperpera’ per annum tribute; *22 February* treaty signed.

BOHEMIA

Death of Jan Zizka; his followers, now called the ‘Orphans’, form a relatively moderate faction in alliance with the moderate ‘Utraquists’ in Prague against the extreme ‘Taborites’ (now led by Prokop ‘the Bald’).

1425 CYPRUS/EGYPT

Spring. King Janus’ fleet raids Syria in retaliation for the 1424 attack on Cyprus, although the Mameluke fleet is far stronger than his and it will be seen as a provocation.

BYZANTIUM

21 July. Death of Emperor Manuel II, aged 75, as the monk Matthew; John VIII sole Emperor.

1426 EGYPT/CYPRUS

June. A medium-sized Mameluke force with around 4–5,000 infantry and 500 cavalry is despatched to Cyprus to mount another attack, ready to penetrate inland as the defences are known to be weak.

3 July. Limassol is stormed. King Janus brings his army to retake the town.

7 July. Janus is heavily defeated by the superior numbers and discipline of the Mamelukes at Khirokitia. His army is destroyed and he is captured.

11 July. Nicosia is taken and sacked. Cyprus is plundered at will before the Mamelukes return to their ships. Around 6,000 prisoners are taken off to Cairo with the King, who is forced to arrange a heavy ransom. In his absence the island degenerates into anarchy, with an Italian mercenary captain seizing control of Paphos as his autonomous brigand ‘state’.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Autumn. John’s younger (third) brother Constantine, later the last Emperor, moves to the Morea to become co-‘Despot’ with Theodore II; John joins him to launch campaign against Carlo Tocco’s lordship of Clarentza. Manuel II’s youngest son Demetrius, aged around 18, takes over Constantine’s appanage at Mesembria.

1427 GERMANY

January. Frederick of Brandenburg agrees with his bishops to lead the next Crusade; against the Hussites.

BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Byzantine army under Constantine’s friend George Sphrantzes, the later historian, captures Clarentza in Achaia; Byzantine fleet defeats Carlo Tocco’s navy; Tocco’s Peloponnesian domain annexed to Empire, leaving him with Epirus (including Joannina) and the Ionian Islands.

CYPRUS/EGYPT

May. Having signed a treaty of vassalage to Egypt and promised a 5,000 ducat tribute p.a., Janus is ransomed for 200,000 ducats and returns to Cyprus. The prosperity and reputation of his kingdom is ruined, and so is his own morale.

BOHEMIA/ENGLAND

Bishop Henry Beaufort of Winchester, great-uncle of King Henry VI and younger half-brother of Henry IV, is commissioned by the Pope to be the Legate for the latest Crusade against the Hussites.

Spring. The expedition is arranged at a 'Reichstag' in Frankfurt. Four armies are to be raised, but in fact only Frederick's and Archbishop Otto of Trier's enter the field.

July. The Crusade attacks and besieges Stribro in western Bohemia; the Germans flee as a Hussite army approaches and the rebels go on to take the pro-Sigismund fortress of Tachov. The following year sees Hussite incursions into eastern Germany.

Late Autumn. Bishop Beaufort goes to Burgundy to search for recruits from Duke Philip 'the Good', England's ally against the current French King Charles VII (who has lost the north of the country to Henry VI and who Philip does not recognise as the rightful ruler).

1428 BURGUNDY/BOHEMIA

Bishop Beaufort and Duke Philip plan a joint Anglo-French-German Crusade to overwhelm Bohemia by superior numbers, but nothing comes of it. The current Anglo-French war is the main obstacle, with the English forces fighting Charles VII's men on the upper Loire and threatening the strategic crossing at Orleans.

October. The English decision to attack Orleans, which Philip claims, is objected to by Philip, reducing his willingness to assist the Crusade.

BYZANTIUM

Carlo Tocco's niece Magdalena (renamed Theodora) is married to Constantine in peace-treaty; Constantine's Despotate based at Clarentza while Theodore retains Mistra.

1429 BYZANTIUM/MOREA

Constantine and Theodore besiege Patras, where the current Archbishop is Theodore's wife Cleope's brother Pandolfo Malatesta from Rimini; he has to surrender the city, and it is restored to the Empire.

Thomas defeats Centurione Zaccaria, and forces him to surrender; he hands over his daughter Catherine to be Thomas' wife and Arcadia as her dowry; end of Frankish rule in Achaia.

Death of Carlo Tocco in Epirus; succeeded by his nephew Carlo II, Constantine's brother-in law, but Greek citizens of Joannina open secret talks with Sultan about surrender to escape Latin rule.

ENGLAND/FRANCE/BOHEMIA

Bishop Beaufort seeks support from Henry VI's English 'regency' council – led by his nephew and foe, Duke Humphrey of Gloucester – to preach and recruit for Crusade in Bohemia. Beaufort has indeed only been available to assist the Papacy in Bohemia as Humphrey has had him sacked as Lord Chancellor and driven him out of England.

18 June. On the day of the Council's agreement to recruiting, the English army in France (driven back from Orleans by Dunois and Joan 'of Arc') is defeated at Patay. Bishop Beaufort manages to raise 250 spearmen and 2,000 archers, but they are sent to France to fight Dunois instead of going to Bohemia and the Pope protests at Bishop Beaufort joining in the war and using his legatine insignia.

1430 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

26 March. As Murad leads a large army up to walls of Thessalonica, the Venetian governors refuse his order to surrender to avoid sack; Christians in Sultan's camp approach guards on walls at night to warn of intended bloodbath to no avail, and one account claims local monks advised Sultan to cut water-pipes.

29 March. Murad and Sinan Pasha, governor-general ('beglerbeg') of 'Rumelia' i.e. European dominions, lead storming of Thessalonica; inhabitants massacred and enslaved as Venetians flee to Euboea, but Murad later restores Greek quarter and ransoms some citizens.

Sinan Pasha marches into Epirus and *9 October* Bishop of Joannina leads the city's surrender.

1431 GERMANY

February–March. A 'Reichstag' is held at Nuremburg to organise a new Crusade against Bohemia, with Cardinal John Cesarini there as Papal legate. 33,000 troops are raised for a four-pronged attack, on Moravia (from Austria to the south and from Lusatia to the north) and from Bavaria and the Palatinate.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

20 February. Death of Pope Martin V; *3 March* Gabriel Condularmo, Venetian, elected (Eugenius III) and receives Byzantine ambassadors, but the Empire also faces a problem over the alternative claims to primacy in the Western Church now raised by the Council that is meeting at Basle, in *July*.

BOHEMIA

August. Defeat of Sigismund's main army, under Frederick of Brandenburg and Cardinal Cesarini, at Domazlice; the nervous Crusaders flee attackers without fighting.

ITALY

18 December. Eugenius dissolves the Council, but it refuses to disperse. He promises a new Council within 18 months.

1432 BYZANTIUM/ITALY

Conflict between Eugenius and the Council at Basle; the latter invites John VIII to send delegates to them on the grounds that they represent the Church and have support of Sigismund and other rulers; John decides to send an embassy to Basle.

CYPRUS

26 April. Death of King Janus, aged 57/8. His son John II succeeds him.

1433 ITALY/GERMANY

May. Pope Eugenius crowns Sigismund as Emperor in Rome.

PORTUGAL

14 August. Death of King John 'of Avis', founder of the dynasty that will rule the country until 1580, aged 75, after a 48-year reign, of the plague; succeeded by his eldest son Duarte (Edward), aged 41.

1434 BOHEMIA

30 May. The Bohemian Catholics and 'Utraquists' destroy the 'Taborite' and 'Orphans' radical army at Lipany; the radical commander Prokop is killed. With the radicals in retreat, negotiations follow on the moderates accepting back Sigismund as their King.

POLAND/LITHUANIA

1 June. Death of King Wladyslaw, aged around 82; succeeded by his elder son by his fourth wife Sophia Holczanskaya, the teenage Wladyslaw IV.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY/SWITZERLAND

July. Byzantine embassy arrives at the Council of Basle.

Council agrees to negotiate about reunion and sends delegation to Constantinople; Pope Eugenius sends rival delegation, from Florence where he has been driven by riots in Rome.

1435 ITALY

6 February. Death of Queen Joanna II, last of the line of Charles of Anjou (d. 1285), aged 60/1. The throne is claimed by King Alfonso of Aragon, as ruler of Sicily, and by the recently-deceased Louis of Anjou's (d. 1434) brother René 'the Good', Duke of Anjou and Count of Provence. Civil war follows in Naples.

ATHENS

Death of Duke Antonio Acciajuoli (acceded 1405); succeeded by his cousin Franco of Sykaminon's elder son Nerio II.

1436 BOHEMIA

July. The Bohemian 'Estates' ratify the 'Compacts of Prague'. The effective ending of the Bohemian war, though local disputes and occasional outbreaks continue.

1437 BYZANTIUM/ITALY/SWITZERLAND

7 May. Two rival factions at the Council of Basle issue two separate invitations to the Byzantines to meet them for the Council to accept Reunion of Churches – one (led by Cardinal Cesarini) wants the site in Italy and one at Avignon. Pope Eugenius backs the Italian idea.

July. Byzantine delegation accompanies those members of Council of Basle who accept Pope's ability to dissolve it, and inform John VIII that he should send delegation for reunion to the new Council that Pope will organise.

18 September. Eugenius announces that the relocated Council is to meet at Ferrara in January 1438.

27 November. John personally leads the Byzantine delegation of over 650 clerics to Italy for the Council; accompanied by his youngest brother Demetrius, aged Patriarch Joseph, Bessarion (titular Archbishop of Nicaea), and most of the Church hierarchy; lay delegates include the radical philosopher George Gemisthus Plethon from Mistra and the future Patriarch and academic lawyer George Scholarius, Aristotelian philosopher George of Trebizond, and Platonist philosopher George Amiroutzes.

Patriarchs of Antioch, Alexandria and Jerusalem send representatives; Metropolitan Isidore of Kiev travels overland from Russia; Wallachia, Moldavia, and Georgia send representatives with Byzantine delegation.

PORTUGAL

Prince Henry ‘the Navigator’ and his brothers King Duarte (Edward) and Prince Ferdinand lead an unsuccessful attack on Tangier. Their expedition is caught by a relief-army under the Marinid Sultan of Morocco and trapped, short of food, and they have to negotiate a safe passage to their ships. Duarte surrenders Ferdinand as a hostage for the additional handover of Ceuta, and his morale is broken.

GERMANY

9 December. Death of Emperor Sigismund, King of Hungary and Bohemia, aged around 71. The male line of the Luxembourg dynasty are now extinct; his daughter Elizabeth’s husband Duke Albert of Austria, senior among the Habsburg rulers, succeeds to Hungary (elected *18 December*) and is the favourite to be elected Emperor.

RHODES

John of Lastic succeeds Anton Fluvian as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

1438 PORTUGAL

The Portuguese ‘Cortes’ refuses to hand over Ceuta in return for the hostage Prince Ferdinand, so Duarte has to leave him in captivity and try to raise a ransom.

HUNGARY

1 January. Coronation of Albert of Habsburg; his wife’s rights to the throne are denied by the barons.

BYZANTIUM/ITALY

8 January. Cardinal Albergati opens Council at Ferrara.

8 February. John VIII and Byzantine delegation anchor off Venice; *9 February* they receive State ceremonial welcome from Doge Francesco Foscari, who sails out in his barge to escort them up the Rialto; John resides in Palace of Dukes of Ferrara. *4 March* John arrives at Ferrara; Patriarch Joseph follows but refuses to meet Pope until latter gives way on insistence that Patriarch kiss his foot.

EGYPT

March. Death of Sultan Barsbay; succeeded by his son Jamal ud-Din Yusuf.

GERMANY

March. Albert of Habsburg, Duke of Austria and King of Hungary, is elected Emperor; in *June* he is elected King of Bohemia.

EGYPT

7 *June.* Jamal ud-Din Yusuf is deposed by another veteran officer of Barquq's, Jaqmaq.

ITALY/BYZANTIUM

9 *April.* Council begins deliberations; Cardinal John Cesarini leads Western debaters over contentious issues, particularly 'filioque' clause, and Byzantines divided between more accommodating Bessarion and Isidore and the rigid stance of theologians such as Mark Eugenicus, Archbishop of Ephesus; John presses for agreement and instructs his delegates to avoid contentious issues like Divine 'Energies' that cannot be precisely translated and mutually understood.

Procession of Holy Ghost (i.e. 'filioque' question), bread's place in Sacrament, Purgatory, and Papal position are debated; Byzantines agree to include Latin 'Fathers' of Church among the theologians whose writings are to be used as reference but do not understand them adequately. Byzantines agree to allow use of leavened or unleavened bread in Sacrament, but 'filioque' dispute rages on as many texts are contradictory or not properly translatable.

Late. Due to plague, Council transferred to Florence.

PORTUGAL

18 *September.* Death of King Duarte, aged 57, of the plague; succeeded by his son Afonso/Alfonso IV.

1439 ITALY/BYZANTIUM

January. Council reopens in Florence; Bessarion and Isidore are won over to Latin view on 'filioque' as are all lay delegates except George Gemisthus Plethon. Agreement reached on the contentious clause – that the Holy Spirit proceeds 'from the Father through the Son', i.e. not defined if it proceeds 'from' the Son too. Document of reunion drawn up.

25 *June.* Those delegates at the Council of Basle who refused to come to Ferrara and Florence in 1438 declare Pope Eugenius deposed for defying their authority.

Sunday, 5 July. Byzantine clerical delegates sign the Union, except for Mark; John signs on behalf of lay delegates but Plethon disassociates himself.

Monday, 6 July. Union of Churches proclaimed and celebrated with public holiday, and Pope says Mass in Cathedral before Cesarini reads the Latin text and Bessarion the Greek text.

Late July. Main part of Byzantine delegation leaves Florence, Demetrius and Plethon having left earlier; *August* John follows but is held up by bad weather en route.

October. Pope announces his plans for Crusade to aid the Empire. Indulgences are to be sold for funds to defend Constantinople, and the Pope will send galleys there and expects Emperor Albert to use German and Hungarian troops to invade the Balkans and link up with the Albanians there.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/SERBIA

September. Fall of Smederevo to Murad; the route is open for the Turks to attack Belgrade and then Hungary.

GERMANY/HUNGARY

27 October. Death of Albert of dysentery ends the hope of a Crusade in the Balkans for 1440; his cousin Frederick, head of the junior line of Habsburgs of Tyrol and Styria, succeeds to (most of) Austria but his pregnant wife's child has a claim on at least part of his dominions.

SWITZERLAND

5 November. One cardinal and a special commission of electors at Basle choose Duke Amadeo VIII of Savoy, a spiritual-minded semi-hermit ruler, as their new Pope. He accepts a few weeks later, becomes Pope Felix V, and abdicates his Duchy.

ATHENS

Duke Nerio II overthrown by his brother, Antonio (II).

1440 BYZANTIUM

February. John VIII returns to Constantinople to find substantial resistance to reunion, led by his brother Demetrius at Mesembria and by Mark of Ephesus.

HUNGARY/POLAND/BOHEMIA

May. In response to an invitation from the main faction of the Hungarian magnates in the Estates, the young King Wladyslaw IV of Poland arrives

in Buda to be crowned King. But the Crown of St. Stephen cannot be found, and has been taken to Szekesfehervar for (15 May) the coronation of his rival, Emperor and King Albert's posthumous son Ladislas 'Postumus'. The latter ceremony is declared invalid by the Estates, Hungary needing an adult king to fight the Turks, and (17 July) Wladyslaw is crowned. Civil war follows.

Ladislas 'Postumus' becomes titular King of Bohemia, under the guardianship of his cousin Frederick of Habsburg, but the real power in the country lies with the powerful politico-religious factions, the 'Utraquists' versus the remnants of the 'Taborites'. The main military leader of the former is George Podebrady, aided by the 'Utraquist' cleric Archbishop Jan Rokycana (whose 'election' and theological credentials for office are denounced by the Papacy).

1441 ATHENS

Nerio II deposes his brother Antonio II to regain Duchy.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/HUNGARY

The Hungarian general John Hunyadi, lord of Severin and co-governor of Transylvania for Wladyslaw assists Wladyslaw to secure the upper hand in the Hungarian civil war, and takes over the defence of Belgrade.

BURGUNDY/RHODES

May. Duke Philip 'the Good' of Burgundy, latest European enthusiast for Crusade and founder (1430) of the 'Order of the Golden Fleece', uses his substantial revenues to assist the Hospitallers by sending four ships to defend Rhodes, commanded by the Crusading enthusiast Geoffrey de Choisy.

1442 ITALY

February. Pope Eugenius appoints Cesarini as legate to organise Crusading force in Central Europe, led by King Wladyslaw of Hungary and Poland, which is to march across Hungary into Balkans; Venice delays fitting-out the Papal fleet which was supposed to be in action in *Summer 1443.*

HUNGARY/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

Cardinal Cesarini arrives in Hungary to hold peace-talks between Wladyslaw and Ladislas 'Postumus' partisans; armistice is arranged, leaving Wladyslaw in possession of most of Hungary.

ITALY/SPAIN

2 *July*. King Alfonso of Aragon and Sicily enters Naples at the end of the civil war, having driven out his rival Rene of Anjou. The union of Aragon and Naples/Sicily under one dynasty (though not always one man) will last until 1714.

1443 BYZANTIUM/MOREA

John VIII comes to an arrangement with his next brothers whereby Theodore moves from Mistra to Selymbria and hands over his lands in the Morea to Constantine.

HUNGARY/SERBIA/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

John Hunyadi's Hungarian army, reinforced by Papally-sponsored contingent under Cesarini, heavily defeats Ottoman invasion of Transylvania and *July* pursues Turks over the Danube back into Serbia; refugee George Branković of Serbia returns with him to liberate his territories, and *November* Nis and Serdica/Sofia are captured. Bad weather holds up the midwinter advance over the Balkan mountains.

Murad faces war against the Karamanids in south-east Anatolia under Ibrahim Beg, and revolt in Albania which is soon joined by the refugee lord George Castriota ('Scanderbeg', 'Lord Alexander'), a skilled general and a former Turkish soldier, in alliance with the advancing Westerners.

12 *December*. The Crusading army receives first check from Turkish general Kasim Beg at Zlatitsa in Sredra Gore Mountains; Crusaders retreat but 24 *December* defeat pursuers near Serdica/Sofia.

1444 OTTOMAN SULTANATE/BYZANTIUM/HUNGARY

2 *January*. Turks defeated by Crusaders at Mount Kunavica.

Murad sends Greek monk as his envoy to Hungary as bad weather forces the Crusaders to retire to Belgrade *January*; the envoy reaches Wladyslaw, Branković and other leaders who are planning next campaign at Buda and offers Branković return of all his lands and of two blinded sons, Stephen and Lazar, who are currently Ottoman hostages.

John VIII sends envoys to congratulate Crusaders, but *April* Branković puts Murad's truce-proposals to Hungarian Diet; 25 *April* Wladyslaw authorities the despatch of envoys to Adrianople, led by his representative Stojko Gizdavic and by Hunyadi's representative Vitislaus and Branković's Bishop Athanasius of Smederevo.

February–June. The traveller and author Cyriacus of Ancona, on second tour of Greece, is in the Ottoman capital Adrianople and 12 *June* witnesses Murad's reception of Crusader ambassadors; that day the treaty

is signed. There is a ten-year truce, the return of Serb lands, and freeing Wallachia from tribute as proposed by Sultan, who will pay Hungary 100,000 florins tribute. Sulaiman Pasha goes to Buda to secure ratification from Wladyslaw and Brankovic.

Murad leaves 12-year-old son Mehmed in control in Adrianople with Grand Vizier Halil Candarli and marches into Anatolia to fight Ibrahim Beg the Karamanid.

Castriota seizes ancestral fortress at Kroia and evicts Turks from most of Albania.

MOREA

Constantine marches from Corinth into Attica, and forces Nerio II to transfer allegiance and tribute to him; he secures control of lands up to Thermopylae.

BURGUNDY/ITALY

July. A small Burgundian flotilla, and other ships hired en route at Venice, sets sail from Italy to Constantinople as Duke Philip's contribution to the Crusade.

HUNGARY/OTTOMAN SULTANATE

25 July. Wladyslaw leaves Buda for Szeged to meet Turkish envoys, after apparently promising Cesarini not to agree with the infidel. Hunyadi prefers a peace-treaty.

1 August. Wladyslaw meets Sulaiman and Vranas the Greek at Szeged and is assumed to have approved of agreement, but definite signature is debatable (Turkish version of events claimed he swore to it then broke oath).

4 August. Wladyslaw, Hunyadi, and nobles swear to cross Danube by *1 September* and try to drive Turks out of Balkans that year.

15 August. George Branković signs peace with Turks in negotiations at Oradea: Smederevo, Novo, Esrdo, and Golubac fortresses returned with principality. Hunyadi signs for Wladyslaw. The negotiations have not been at the more convenient Szeged, possibly to hide military preparations from the Turkish delegates.

22 August. Branković enters Smederevo.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/BYZANTIUM/HUNGARY

Alvise Loredan and legate Cardinal Francesco Condulmer, Papal relative, lead Venetian/Crusader fleet to Hellespont too late to stop Murad crossing to Anatolia. Branković and Serbs boycott campaign.

22 September. The Hungarian army reaches the Danube to enter Turkish territory, breaking the treaty. Wladyslaw has apparently offered Hunyadi the kingdom of a restored Bulgaria in return for his participation.

October. Crusaders fight way through Bulgaria; having concluded peace with Ibrahim Beg, Murad crosses back to Europe over Bosphorus near Anadolu Hisar to avoid Western fleet near Gallipoli.

Crusaders arrive at Black Sea coast near Varna to await their fleet; Murad arrives first.

10 November. The Crusaders are destroyed in battle by a Turkish army under Murad of around 80,000 men, probably four times their size; Wladyslaw is killed leading cavalry charge against Sultan's 'Janissaries', and many Turks are killed and generals flee before victory is assured. Cesarini is also killed.

The Turks are too exhausted to attack the Crusaders, but the latter are disheartened by their losses and lack leaders. They take flight back to Danube abandoning camp; Hunyadi reaches Wallachia to be captured by Prince Vlad 'Dracul', and after initial hesitation that the enemy has retired in orderly fashion Murad organises pursuit and killings.

Wladyslaw's head is sent to Brusa; *December?* Murad decides to abdicate and retire to Magnesia/Manisa, retaining lands of Aydin, Saruhan, and Monteshe, while Grand Vizier Halil Pasha governs in name of young Mehmed at Adrianople. Omar Beg, commander in Thessaly, raids Boeotia.

Crusader fleet raids up Black Sea ports.

1445 BURGUNDY/HUNGARY

De Thoisy's flotilla sails from Constantinople to raid around the Black Sea; Wavrin's fleet sails to the Danube and up-river to Nicopolis, where (*September*) Hunyadi arrives via Transylvania for discussions on future plans. In the winter both Thoisy and Wavrin return home.

The Venetian fleet remains in the Bosphorus menacing Turkish shipping.

POLAND

The throne is kept vacant (until 1447) in case Wladyslaw returns alive; his brother Casimir acts as regent and eventually becomes King.

1446 OTTOMAN SULTANATE

February. Albobrandino di Zusti signs Venetian/Turkish treaty with Mohammed at Adrianople.

17 April. Cyriacus and his friend Francesco Draperio from Phocaea meet Murad at Magnesia and 5 May accompany him as he leads 4,000 troops

towards Adrianople in response to plea from Halil to reassume power after disturbances in the capital.

HUNGARY

6 *June*. Hunyadi is officially appointed 'Regent' by a 'Diet' held near Pecs.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/BYZANTIUM/MOREA

August. Murad at Brusa; *September* he returns to Adrianople and Halil carries out coup with support of 'Janissary' corps. Mehmed is deposed as Sultan for alleged incompetence as the majority of ministers and senior officers at Adrianople want his father to rule instead.

Mehmed is sent to Magnesia; Murad orders campaign against the Morea, confirms Venetian treaty, and refuses Constantine's request to recognise his rule as far as Thermopylae.

Murad leads large army from Serres to abandoned Thermopylae; Nerio joins him at Thebes; *November* he reaches the 'Hexamilion' across Isthmus, and fierce fighting with Constantine and Thomas until Turkish cannons breach walls; *10 December* the Turks storm the walls and the Byzantine army retreats ahead of them.

Murad devastates countryside and burns Corinth, Sicyon and Aigion en route to Patras, where citadel holds out but most inhabitants flee before he arrives and sacks city; Omar Beg invades Laconia as Constantine and Thomas avoid battle.

1447 BYZANTIUM/OTTOMAN SULTANATE/MOREA

Early. Murad retires from devastated Peloponnese with allegedly 60,000 prisoners to be enslaved; 'Hexamilion' demolished.

At Thebes, Constantine's and Thomas' ambassadors meet Murad and promise to pay tribute and the 'haradj' as vassals; they are allowed to retain lands to Corinth but 'Hexamilion' not to be restored.

ITALY

23 *February*. Death of Pope Eugenius; 6 *March* Tommaso Paruntucelli, theologian and Papal diplomat from near La Spezia, elected (Nicholas V) as the favourite, a Colonna, is blocked by enemies.

One of the Pope's rivals Felix V's senior advisers, the poet and diplomat Aeneas Silvius Piccolomini (future Crusading Pope Pius II), 'defects' to Nicholas and persuades the German Church and its patron Frederick III to follow suit; he is rewarded with the Bishopric of Trieste.

HUNGARY

Nicholas sends Cardinal Carvajal to Hungary to organise a new campaign against the Turks.

1448 HUNGARY/OTTOMAN SULTANATE/EPIRUS

Hunyadi plans to resume Turkish war despite refusal of George Branković of Serbia to participate.

July. Murad campaigns in Albania against Castriota, and captures Svetigrad; he assembles army at Sofia to meet Hungarian attack.

September. Hunyadi marches into Serbia with an army of Hungarians, Germans, and Bohemians and around 8,000 Wallachians under new ruler, Dan; they ravage countryside as enemy territory and move south-west towards Albania; *17 October* they reach Kossovo, where Murad has preceded them with a much larger army.

18 October. Murad attacks but driven back; artillery duel follows, and the Wallachians agree to desert Hunyadi; *19 October* Hunyadi decides he cannot win and organises retreat, but cannot save heavy cannons which German and Bohemian troops defend; *20 October* cannons and defenders are overwhelmed by Turks, but Hunyadi retires safely; around 17,000 Christians killed, but Turkish losses are too severe to enable pursuit; Murad massacres the Wallachians.

BYZANTIUM

31 October. Death of John VIII at Constantinople, aged 55; he nominates Constantine as successor, so when their youngest brother Demetrius arrives from Selymbria to claim throne he is refused entry to city and Empress Helena Dragases mediates.

Demetrius sends envoys to Sultan to obtain recognition; Constantine sends rival embassy from Mistra, headed by Sphrantzes; *December* Murad decides in Constantine's favour and imperial officials are sent from capital to recognise Constantine.

EPIRUS

Death of Carlo II Tocco; Murad occupies Arta and mainland, letting son Leonardo keep Zante and Cephallonia.

1449 BYZANTIUM/MOREA

6 January. Constantine XI is crowned at Mistra by imperial officials – the final Byzantine coronation and only one not in capital.

12 March. Constantine arrives at Constantinople on Catalan ship; he is not re-crowned, probably due to concern over anti-Unionist opposition to current Patriarch Gregory.

Constantine reaches agreement with Demetrius and Thomas – Demetrius to have Constantine's old dominions, based at Mistra, and Thomas to have Achaia, Patras, Clarentza, and Messenia; they swear oaths to Helena, Constantine, and each other to keep peace.

Murad renews peace-treaty with Constantine.

ITALY/FRANCE

7 April. Abdication of Pope Felix V, Pope Nicholas' Savoyard rival, as mediated by his main backer Charles VII of France; in return he receives the cardinal-bishopric of Santa Sabina. End of the 'Pope vs. Council' schism.

1451 OTTOMAN SULTANATE

3 February. Death of Murad II aged 47; Mehmed II succeeds as Sultan.

1452 EGYPT

17 February. Death of Sultan Jaqmaq; power is seized by another senior general, Saif ud-Din Inal.

1453 BYZANTIUM

Constantine organises defences of city: Grand Duke Lucas Notaras to command along Golden Horn; Demetrius Cantacuzene with 700 men as reserves at Church of Holy Apostles; John Cantacuzene and Theophilus Palaeologus at land-walls.

26 January. Genoese galleys from Chios arrive with 700 men; commander Giovanni Giustiniani-Longo appointed commander-in-chief of land-forces and 'protostrator'.

Mehmed 'test-fires' a cannon, twice the size of original one designed by Urban, at Adrianople; ball allegedly travels a mile.

26 February. 6 Cretan and 1 Venetian ship flee the Golden Horn; 5 Genoese, 5 Venetian, 3 Cretan, 1 Ancona, 1 Spanish, 1 French, and 7 Byzantine vessels left to defend the harbour as giant chain constructed to block it; around 6,000 Byzantine and 3,000 foreign troops in city.

Karadja Beg, commander in Thrace, takes Therapia on Bosphorus; *23 March* Mehmed leaves Adrianople, and while he leads main army on the capital Karadja Beg reduces Heraclea, Selymbria and Eпитabai on the Propontis.

Mehmed's huge artillery-train arrives outside the city; *Easter Monday, 2 April* Mehmed arrives with army of around 80–100,000 men, and the chain is raised to shut Golden Horn.

Mehmed encamps opposite St. Romanus Gate; Anatolian army to his south along walls to Propontis, European army to his north to the Golden Horn; Zaganos Pasha and Karadja Beg across the Horn facing Galata.

Friday 6 April. The Turkish army advances to walls and commences siege; Constantine and Grustiniani take up positions at Gate of St. Romanus.

20 April. 3 Genoese ships from Chios and 1 Byzantine Moreot ship break Turkish naval blockade in battle in Bosphorus, and Mehmed rides into sea shouting at his sailors; Admiral Baltaoglu narrowly escapes impalement for defeat and is replaced by Hamza Beg.

Council-of-war in Sultan's camp; Halil Pasha, apparently in touch with city, says the Byzantines will pay 70,000 gold pieces for peace but the other viziers under Zaganos Pasha are more belligerent and Mehmed backs them.

Mehmed organises construction of a 'slipway' around outside of Galata and rollers on which to move his ships from the Bosphorus across the land into the Golden Horn; *22 April* the first Turkish ships are moved along the slipway into the Horn, and the stunned Constantinopolitans make no effort to prevent their launching; 72 ships are duly floated inside the Horn.

(Before or after transfer to Horn?) Venetian captain Jacob Cocco leads night-time raid on Turkish galleys to try to burn them, but they are discovered and defeated; 33 captured raiders are impaled along the Horn and the Turkish prisoners in city are executed on walls in retaliation.

Venetian fleet leaves Venice, far too late; a Venetian ship sent out from Constantinople sent to search for aid reports back that none coming and it adds to the gloom as supplies dwindle.

5 May. Turkish cannons start firing on ships in harbours at Galata; Genoese protest to no avail; cannons set up on temporary bridge across the upper Horn above Blachernae.

18 May. Giant siege-tower is wheeled up to walls across a part of moat which Turks have filled in, but is set alight.

Mehmed sends brother-in-law, Ismail Beg of Sinope, into city to demand surrender; Constantine replies that they will only pay tribute and are willing to die defending city, refusing offer of rule over another city if he will leave peacefully.

26 May. Fires start burning continuously in Turkish camp as engines are prepared for attack, and army is incited to enthusiasm for religious duty by preachers.

28 May. Constantine spends the night at the Great Palace after final service at Hagia Sophia; the populace return to their cathedral in hour of extremity to await outcome of battle, even though Isidore conducts a Unionist service.

Tuesday 29 May. Final assault on Constantinople, centring on the most damaged area of walls between St. Romanus Gate and Blachernae; battle rages in the early hours, while simultaneous attack on sea-walls from Horn; after several hours, at around dawn, Giustiniani is wounded by arrow in arm or leg and withdraws to Galata for treatment despite Constantine's pleas; the outer wall near Gate is taken and held, and then around 50 Janissaries hack way through blocked Kerkopoporta postern-gate near the Xylokerkos Gate and climb tower to hoist banners.

The sight of Turkish banners on tower causes panic, and Christians start to retreat; as the Turks gain more of walls and open gates Constantine removes identifying insignia and charges into the advancing army where he is killed unrecognised, aged 48, and Italians try to escape to their ships at Galata; Turks gain the sea-walls too and advance through city; Angelo Lomellino, 'Podesta' of Galata, surrenders.

Antonio Diedo leads Venetian and Genoese ships in breaking out of Galata harbour, and some inhabitants are on the fleet that escapes to Aegean safely; Isidore escapes in disguise via Galata and Giustiniani reaches Chios but dies there of injuries.

The Constantinopolitans, betrayed by trust in prophecy that Turks will be thrown back from the Forum of Constantine by arrival of an angel, gather in Hagia Sophia; the Turks hack the doors down and round them up as slaves; according to legend the officiating priest escapes through secret door (and will return when Christian services resume); according to later verbal recollections from participants in the attack, Greek residents succeed in surrendering some districts of city to Turkish officers.

The city is pillaged, and that afternoon Mehmed enters to ride into the centre and inspect Hagia Sophia, which he orders preserved as a mosque; he spends the night at Franciscan monastery and 30 May tours the city, reputedly quoting poetry on impermanence of glory either at the Cathedral or Blachernae Palace.

Notaras is ordered to send his youngest son to Sultan's harem but refuses so Mehmed has him, sons, and son-in-law all executed and seizes wealth; 1 June Sultan confirms existence and privileges of Genoese Galata; Venetian 'bailio' Girolamo Minotto and Catalan Consul Pere Julia among other victims of purge of captured defenders.

2 June. Three-day looting halted, and army and navy ordered to leave capital; 21 June Mehmed leads expedition back to Adrianople with train of slaves but permits some extortionate ransoms.

Byzantine Lemnos is mostly evacuated and remnants of population hand over control to Dorino Gattilusio of Mytilene; on Byzantine Imbros, Critoboulus (historian), judge, successfully obtains Sultan's permission for transfer of control to the Gattilusio family under Palamedes, lord of Aenus on the mainland.

Karistan Sulaiman Bay made governor of Constantinople, with garrison of 1,500 Janissaries; walls to be repaired and new settlers brought in to restore size of decimated population – Greeks, mainly from Morea, concentrated in the 'Phanar' quarter along Golden Horn where the inhabitants are later able to prove that local residents on 29 May delivered keys to Sultan so they are entitled to privileges (and churches) as surrendered under Islamic Law to avoid pillage and confiscation.

10 July. Halil the Grand Vizier is executed.

Thomas and Demetrius Palaeologus in the Morea secure lands for 12,000 ducats per annum, as does August George Branković.

Mehmed decides to install a new anti-Unionistic Byzantine Patriarch in Constantinople to lead the Greek population in the new order; he sends envoys to look for Scholarius, finds him enslaved at Adrianople, and ransoms him as his choice.

ITALY

30 September. Pope Nicholas issues the Crusading bull 'Etsi ecclesia Christi' – a major call for all the European rulers to act together to stop the Turks for self-preservation as well as duty.

1454 BURGUNDY

Having put down a distracting rebellion in Ghent (July), Philip concentrates on arranging a Crusading project and his government circulates useful literature such as the polemic account of the fall of Constantinople by the eye-witness James Tedaldi of Florence.

BURGUNDY

February. At the 'Feast of the Pheasant' at Lille, Philip assembles the leading nobles for a ceremony where he swears on a live pheasant to lead a Crusade if at least one other European ruler will join him. Over 200 nobles join in the vow, and preparations for an expedition begin.

GERMANY

April. Duke Philip of Burgundy attends an Imperial 'Diet' at Regensburg to further the Crusade. However the discussions are postponed to the Autumn.

RHODES

James of Mailly succeeds John of Lastic as Grand Master of the Hospitallers.

ITALY

9 *April*. Peace of Lodi between Venice and the Duchy of Milan, as arranged by the Papacy. The two main belligerent powers in northern Italy are now free to take part in Pope Nicholas' Crusade, and his envoys proceed to bring Florence to agreement with them too.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/SERBIA

Summer. Mehmed besieges Smederevo.

SPAIN

22 *July*. Death of King John II, after 48-year reign, aged 49; succeeded by his elder son Henry IV. (His daughter by his second marriage is Isabella, who will unify Spain; her full brother Alfonso is Henry's heir until the birth of his putative daughter Juana.)

MOREA

Thomas and Demetrius decide to abandon Despotate sooner than pay more tribute and to embark for Italy, but their Albanian mercenaries refuse to go and revolt over lack of pay, led by chieftain Peter Boua; local Greek 'archons' join in under Manuel Cantacuzene and try to overthrow the Paleologi, and Centurione Zaccaria's son John Asen Zaccaria escapes from prison at Chloumitza to try to regain his father's lands in Achaia.

The Despots appeal to Mehmed, and *October* he sends aged Turahan Beg into Morea with army; Turahan summons the Despots and tells them to rule in harmony together in future, and puts down rising.

GERMANY

Autumn. Diet of Frankfurt arranges preparations for Crusade, as urged by Burgundy.

ITALY

Autumn. Negotiations for a general peace to enable all the states to take part in a Crusade, arranged by the Papacy.

1455 ITALY

24 March. Death of Pope Nicholas of gout.

8 April. Alfonso de Borja (Borgia), founder of the notorious dynasty and an émigré from Valencia to Rome, is elected as Pope (Calixtus III). The defeated candidates include a Colonna protégé and the Greek 'Unionist' leader and Crusade enthusiast Cardinal John Bessarion of Trebizond.

Calixtus takes on the Crusade with enthusiasm, and sells Papal treasures to help build a fleet of galleys; he sends preachers across Europe and sets *1 March 1456* as the date for the expedition. There is however a problem with Burgundy, over Duke Philip's occupation of the lands of the late Bishop of Utrecht.

SPAIN

King Henry IV of Castile takes the Cross and attacks the Moslem emirate of Granada, his contribution to the current Crusade. There are rumours of an expedition to north Africa to follow.

RHODES

June. Ottoman naval 'probe' by a fleet under Admiral Hamza Bey, from Gallipoli via Chios to land on Rhodes, after the Knights reject an order to pay annual tribute to the Sultan. Grand Master de Mailly claims that they are subject to the Pope alone, not to infidels. Hamza decides the defences are too strong for an assault and retires.

ATHENS

Protests to Sultan from Athenian opponents of Duchess Chiara and her unpopular second husband Bartolommeo Contarini are taken up at Adrianople by the late Duke Nerio II's nephew Franco, son of Antonio II (usurper *1439–41*); Mehmed appoints him to rule Athens, but he proceeds to murder Chiara in prison at Megara; Contarini confesses to Mehmed that he murdered his previous wife to make way for Chiara.

ITALY/HUNGARY

Autumn. The Pope sends Cardinal John Carvajal to preach the Crusade in Hungary at Diet and arrange an army for the *1456* expedition in the Balkans.

SPAIN/ITALY

1 November. King Alfonso of Aragon, Naples and Sicily takes the Cross for an expedition – but he proposes to sail in *1457* not *1456*, as he tells the Papal envoy, Bishop Aeneas Sylvius Piccolomini of Siena (a former diplomat and adviser to Anti-Pope Felix V).

17 December. Cardinal Ludovico Scarampo is made Captain-General of the Papal fleet being built on the Tiber, and legate for the eastern Mediterranean.

GERMANY

Autumn. Emperor Frederick takes the Cross.

1456 HUNGARY

February. Diet of Buda. Cardinal Carvajal gives a commission to the inspirational septuagenarian Franciscan preacher Friar John of Capistrano to preach the Crusade, and he tours Hungary and nearer parts of Germany rousing thousands to join his expedition to the Danube to meet the immanent Turkish invasion.

OTTOMAN SULTANATE/ATHENS

Mehmed orders Omar Beg to occupy Athens; *June* as he enters the city the garrison on Acropolis holds out, but Franco surrenders and is allowed to keep Thebes.

HUNGARY

June. John of Capistrano leads an army of thousands of ill-armed and untrained but enthusiastic volunteers to Belgrade to assist Hunyadi's garrison.

7 July. Mehmed arrives at Belgrade to open siege with around 60,000 professional soldiers, far outnumbering the defence, and over 100 cannon.

King Ladislas 'Postumus' and his court retire north from Buda rather than fighting, leaving the latter to Hunyadi. He leads the defence of Belgrade, which is cut off from relief-ships up the Danube by Turkish shipping on the river, but is short of troops and supplies and is inclined to negotiate surrender to avoid a massacre. Friar John persuaded him to fight on. In Buda, Cardinal Carvajal tries to assemble a relief-army.

15 July. The defenders of Belgrade break the Turkish naval blockade.

21–2 July. In an overnight assault, the Turks scale the walls of Belgrade despite the loss of their commander Dayi Karaca Bey, governor-general of 'Rumelia', to a cannon-ball. They are driven back by the defenders; Hunyadi lures them into abandoned streets within the city and then ambushes them.

22 July. Mehmed decides to retreat; as preparations are being made Capistrano and Hunyadi lead a sortie, defeat the exhausted Turks, and

overrun their cannons which are captured. Mehmed is wounded, possibly in the thigh, and has to leave the battlefield.

The Turks retreat to Sofia and the victory is hailed across Europe.

ITALY

6 *August*. Ludovico Scarampo's Papal fleet leaves Naples for the Aegean after having to wait for the arrival of Aragonese galleys.

The same day, the 'Feast of the Transfiguration', the news of the victory at Belgrade reached Rome and the Pope declares it a day of celebration across Christendom.

RHODES

October. The Papal fleet arrives en route to attack the Ottomans.

HUNGARY

11 *August*. Hunyadi dies in epidemic of plague. He is succeeded in his lands by his elder son Ladislás, but the latter is distrusted by King Ladislás and the latter's adviser, the prominent Slovenian baron Count Cilly. Cilly is appointed as the new Captain-General and marches to Belgrade with the King to order Ladislás Hunyadi to hand it over to him.

23 *October*. Capistrano dies of the plague; he is later canonised.

9 *November*. Ladislás Hunyadi has Count Cilly murdered by his men and seize control of the King.

SERBIA

24 *December*. Death of George Branković, aged c. 81; succeeded by son Lazar, son-in-law of Thomas Palaeologus.

ITALY

The Pope appeals to the Christian King of Abyssinia, 'Negus' Zara Yacob, for troops; he sends him the travelled Minorite friar Fra Ludovico of Bologna, former envoy to Abyssinia and India for Pope Nicholas

Sources

1291–5

Italy/Byzantine Empire: A. Laiou, *Constantinople and the Latins: the Foreign Policy of Andronicus II 1282–1328* (Cambridge MA: Harvard UP, 1982); Runciman, pp. 267–71.

Greece: Aragonese Chronicle, *Libro de los Fechos et Conquistas del Principaute de la Moree*, ed. A Morel-Fatso (Geneva: Publications du Societe de l'Orient Latin, 1885) pp. 483–503.

Chronicle of the Morea: French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 243, 264–96, 300–20; Greek version, ed. Schmitt, lines 8480–9235.

1296–1300

Italy/Byzantine Empire: Gregoras, pp. 207–10; Pacymer, vol. ii, pp. 232–44; Runciman, pp. 271–3; Nicholas Specialis, *Historia Sicula* (in RIS, vol. x, Muratori) pp. 961–6, 985–6, 995–1001, 1015–35.

Greece: Chronicle of the Morea: French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 329–33, 338–43, 363–73.

1301–05

Italy/Byzantine Empire: Pachymer, vol. ii, pp. 286–7, 322–7.

Byzantine Empire and the Catalans: Gregoras, vol. i, pp. 223–4; Pachymer, vol. ii, pp. 393–400, 415–27, 428–42, 445–8, 450–1, 480–9, 489–515.

Greece: Chronicle of the Morea: French version, ed. Longnon, pp. 345–61, 381–99.

1306–10

Byzantine Empire/Catalans: Gergoaras vol. i, pp. 224–45; Ramon Muntaner, *Cronica o Descriptio fets e hazanyes dell Rey Don Jaime*, tr. Lady Goodenough (London: Hakluyt Society, 1921) vol. ii, pp. 533–53, 575–6; Pachymer, vol. ii, pp. 556–608, 651–2. Miller, *The Latins in the Levant*, pp. 216–19.

1311–20

Catalans in Greece: Aragonese Chronicle, pp. 559–623; Gregoras, vol. i, pp. 249–53; Muntaner, tr. Lady Goodenough, p. 577.

Latin Achaia: Bon, *La Moree Franque*, pp. 193–226.

1321–30

Byzantine Empire: Ursula Bloch, *Kaiser Anronikos III Palaiologus* (Amsterdam: Verlag Adolf M. Hakkert, 1965) pp. 19–26, 39–52; John Cantacuzene, *Historiae*, ed. L. Schopen, 3 vols (CHSB, 1828–32) vol. i, pp. 13–206; Gregoras, vol. i, pp. 283–438; Short Chronicle of 1352, ed. R. J. Loenertz in OCP, vol. xxx (1964), part ii, pp. 40, 54.

1331–4

Italy: Bosch, op. cit., pp. 91–6, 119–28; Cantacuzene, pp. 310–494; Gregoras, vol. i, pp. 430–510; A Laiou, 'Marino Sanudo Torsello, Byzantium and the Turks: The Background to the Anti-Turkish League of 1334' in *Speculum* vol. xl (1970), pp. 374–92; D. Nicol, *The Reluctant Emperor: A Biography of John VI Cantacuzene, Byzantine Emperor and monk, c. 1295–1383* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1996), pp. 29–38.

1334–40

Byzantine Empire: Bosch, *Andronikos III Palaiologus*, pp. 159–71; Cantacuzene, vol. i, pp. 495–560; Gregoras, vol. i, pp. 500–68; Laiou, *Marno Torsello*, pp. 374–92, concluding section; Nicol, *John VI Cantacuzene*, pp. 38–44; Short Chronicle of 1352, vol. ii, pp. 50–4.

1341–50

Byzantine Empire: Cantacuzene, vol. ii, pp. 11–615; Gregoras, vol. ii, pp. 576–779; N. Iorga, ‘Latins et Grecs d’Orient et l’établissement des Turcs en Europe (1342–62)’ in *Byzantine Zeitschrift* vol. xv (1906), pp. 185–9; E. Werner, ‘Johannes Kantacuzenos, Umur Pasha und Orhan’ in *Byzantine Studies* vol. xxvi (1965), pp. 255–66.

1351–60

Byzantine Empire: Cantacuzene, vol. iii, pp. 8–65; Gregoras vol. ii, pp. 780–809 and vol. iii, pp. 3–567; O. Halecki, *Un Emperuer de Byzance a Rome: Vingt Ans de travail pour l’union des Eglises et pur la defense de l’empire s’Orieny, 1355–1375* (Warsaw, 1930); Nicol, *John VI Cantacuzene*, pp. 113–37.

Bibliography

Primary sources

- Ambroise, *L'Histoire de la Guerre Sainte*, ed. G. Paris (Paris: Leroux, 1897).
- Annales Monastici*, ed. H. R. Luard, 5 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1864–9).
- Baba ad-Din*, tr. C. W. Wilson (London: Palestine Pilgrims Text Society, 1897).
- Benedict of Peterborough, *Chronicle of the Reigns of Henry II and Richard I*, ed. W. Stubbs, vol. xlix (London: Rolls Series, 1867).
- La Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. S. Duparc-Quoioc, 2 vols (Paris: Guethner, 1982).
- Nicetas Choniates, *History*, tr. Harry Magoulias (Detroit: Wayne State UP, 1984).
- The Chronicle of Fulcher of Chartres and Other Source Materials*, ed. E. Peters, 2nd edition (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1998).
- ‘The Chronicle of Ibn Al-Athir for the Crusading Period, from “Al-Kamil fi’l Ta ‘rikh”, part 1: 1097–1146,’ tr. D. S. Richards in *Crusades Texts in Translation* (Aldershot: Ashgate, 2006).
- ‘The Chronicle of Ibn Al-Athir for the Crusading Period, from “Al-Kamil fi’l Ta ‘rikh”, part 2, tr. D. S. Richards in *Crusades Texts in Translation* (Aldershot: Ashgate, 2007).
- ‘The Chronicle of Ibn Al-Athir for the Crusading Period, from “Al-Kamil fi’l Ta ‘rikh”, part 3, tr. D. S. Richards in *Crusades Texts in Translation* (Aldershot: Ashgate 2008).
- Chronique de Michel le Syrien, 1166–1199*, tr. and ed. J. Chabot (Paris: E. Leroux, 1902); vol. ii, Paris 1963 (original 1901); vol. iii, Paris 1965 (original 1899); vol. iv, Paris 1965 (original 1905).
- The Chronography of Gregory Abdul Faraj, the son of Aaron, the Hebrew physician commonly known as Bar Hebraeus*, ed. and tr. E. A. Wallis Budge, 2 vols (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1932).
- Gesta Francorum*, ed. and tr. by Rosalind Hill (London: Nelson, 1962).
- Die Kreuzzugsbriefe aus das Jahren 1088–1100*, ed. H. Hagenmeyer (Innsbruck: publisher unknown, 1902).
- Ibn al-Athir, *Historiens Orientaux* in *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades*, vol. ii, part I (Paris: Imprimeur National, 1887)
- A. Chroust, ‘Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzuges Kaiser Friedrichs I’, in *Monumenta Germanica Historica Series* (Berlin: Weidmann, 1928).
- Corpus Scriptorum Historiae Byzantinae* (Bonn: Weber, 1828–97)
- Fulcher of Chartres, *Historia Hierosolymitana (1095–1127)*, ed. G. Hagenmayer (Heidelberg: Winter, 1913).
- Geoffrey de Villehardouin, *The Conquest of Constantinople*, ed. Faral, 2 vols (Paris: Les Belles Lettres, 1938–9)
- ‘Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesti Regis Richardi (IRR)’, in *Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard I*, ed. W. Stubbs (London: Rolls Series, 1864).

- John Skylitzes, *Ioannis Skylitzae Synopsis Historiarum*, ed. J. Hunt, in *Corpus Historiae Scriptores Byzantinae* (Berlin/New York: Thurn, 1973).
- Maqrisi, *Histoire des Sultans Mamelukes*, tr. (into French) Quatremere, 2 vols (Paris: Oriental Translation Fund, 1837–45).
- Matthew of Edessa, *Chronicle*, tr. (into French) E. Delaurier (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1858).
- Michael the Syrian, *Chronicle*, ed. and tr. (into French) J. Chabot, 4 vols (Paris: Leroux, 1899–1910).
- Monumenta Germaniae Historica*, ed. G. Pertz and T. Mommsen. (Hanover: Monumenta Germaniae Historiae, 1826).
- Orderic Vitalis, *Historia Ecclesiastica*, ed. H. Le Prevost and L. Delisle, 5 vols (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1838–55).
- Oeuvres de Rigord et de Guillaume le Breton*, ed. H. Delaborde, 2 vols (Paris: Societe de l'Histoire de la France, 1882–5).
- Ralph of Coggeshall, *Chronicon Anglicanum*, ed. Joseph Stevenson (London: Rolls Series, 1875).
- Ralph of Diceto, *Radulfi de Diceto Decani Londoniensis Opera Historica*, ed. W. Stubbs, 2 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1876).
- Recueil des Historiens des Croisades: Documents Armeniens*, 2 vols (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1869–1906); *Historiens Occidentaux*, 5 vols (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1844–95); *Historiens Orientaux*, 5 vols (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1872–96).
- Rigord, *Gesta Philippi Augusti*, ed. H. Delaborde (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1882).
- Robert of Clary, *La Conquete de Constantinople*, ed. Lauer (Paris: Bourgeois, 1924).
- Roger of Hoveden/Howden, *Chronicon*, ed. W. Stubbs, 4 vols (London: Rolls Series, 1868–71).
- Roger of Wendover, *Chronica*, ed. Hewlett, 3 vols (London Rolls: Series, 1886–9).
- R. Rohricht, *Regesta Regni Hierosolymitani*, 2 vols (Innsbruck: Libreria Academica Wageriana, 1893–1924).
- Shihab-ad-Din Abu Sharma, *Book of the Two Gardens*, tr. (into French) in *RHC Orient*, vols iv and v (Paris: Imprimeur Nationale, 1809–6).
- Villehardouin, *Chronicles of the Crusades*, tr. M. R. B. Shaw (London: Penguin, 1963).
- Walter the Chancellor's "The Antiochene Wars"*, tr. and commentary T. Ashbridge and S. Edington (Aldershot: Ashgate Publishing, 1999).
- William of Tyre, *History*, ed. R. B. C. Huygens, 2 vols, in *Corpus Christianorum* (Turnhout: Brepols, 1986).

Secondary sources

- J. M. Abu Nasr, *A History of the Maghrib* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1971).
- David Abulafia, *Frederick II: a medieval emperor* (London: Penguin, 1988).
- W. Aird, *Robert "Curthose", Duke of Normandy (c. 1050–1134)* (Woodbridge UK: Boydell, 2008).
- M. Amouroux-Mourad, *Le Comte d'Edesse, 1098–1150* (Paris: Guethner, 1988).
- Michael Angold, *The Byzantine Empire 1025–1204: a Political History* (London: Longman, 1984).
- Michael Angold, *A Byzantine Government in Exile: Government and Society under the Lascaris of Nicaea (1204–1261)* (London: OUP, 1975).
- T. Asbridge, *The Creation of the principality of Antioch* (Woodbridge UK: Boydell and Brewer, 2000).
- T. Asbridge, *The First Crusade: A New History* (London: Free Press, 2005).
- T. Asbridge, 'The holy lance of Antioch: power, devotion, memory', *Reading Medieval Studies*, vol. xxxiii (2007), p. 3–36.

- A. S. Atiya, *The Crusade of Nicopolis* (London: Methuen, 1934).
- Pierre Aube, *Godefroy de Bouillon* (Paris: Fayard, 1985).
- B. Bachrach, 'The siege of Antioch: a study in military demography', *War in History*, vol. vi (1999), pp. 127–46.
- M. Balard, *Autour de la Première Croisade* (Paris: Sorbonne, 1996).
- M. Baldwin, *Raymond III of Tripoli and the fall of Jerusalem (1140–1187)* (Princeton: PUP, 1936).
- M. Barber, 'James of Molay: the last Grand Master of the Order of the Temple', *Studia Monastica*, vol. xiv (1972), pp. 91–124.
- M. Barber, *The Trial of the Templars* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1978).
- M. Barber, 'The Pastoureaux of 1320', *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, vol. xxxii (1981), pp. 143–66.
- M. Barber, *The New Knighthood: a History of the Order of the Temple* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1994).
- J. W. Barker, *Manuel II Paleologus (1391–1425): a study in late Byzantine statesmanship* (New Brunswick NJ: Rutgers UP, 1969).
- Mark Bartusis, *The Late Byzantine Army and Society, 1204–1453* (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1992).
- Alfons Becker, *Papst Urban II*, 2 vols (Stuttgart: MGH Shriften, 1964–88).
- E. Blake and C. Morris: 'A hermit goes to war: Peter the Hermit and the Origins of the First Crusade', *Studies in Church History*, vol. xxiii (1985) pp. 79–107.
- T. S. Boase, *Pope Boniface VIII* (London: Constable, 1933).
- T. S. Boase, *The Cilician Kingdom of Armenia* (Edinburgh: Edinburgh UP, 1971).
- J. Boyle, ed., *The Cambridge History of Iran: vol. v, The Saljuk and Mongol Periods* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1968).
- Charles Brand, *Byzantium Confronts the West, 1180–1204* (Cambridge MA: Harvard UP, 1968).
- J. Bromley, 'Philip of Novara's account of the war between Frederick II of Hohenstaufen and the Ibelins', *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. iii (1977), pp. 325–37.
- J. A. Brundage, 'Adhemar of Le Puy: the Bishop and his Critics', *Speculum*, vol. xxxiv (1959), pp. 201–2.
- Robert Browning, 'The death of John II Comnenus', *Byzantion*, vol. xxxi (1961), pp. 229–35.
- Claude Cahen, 'La campagne de Mantzikert d'après des sources musulmans', *Byzantion*, vol. ix (1930).
- Claude Cahen, *Pre-Ottoman Turkey* (London: Sidgwick and Jackson, 1968).
- Claude Cahen, *The Seljukid Sultanate of Rum, Eleventh to Fourteenth Centuries* (London: Longman, 1988).
- F. Chalandon, *Essai sur la regne d'Alexis I Comnène* (Paris: A. Picard, 1900).
- Ferdinand Chalandon, *Les Comnènes: Etudes sur l'empire byzantin au XI et au XII siècles*, 2 vols (Paris: Picard, 1900–12).
- Robert Chazan, *European Jewry and the First Crusade* (Berkeley CA: University of California Press, 1987).
- Nicholas Cheetham, *Medieval Greece* (New Haven CT: Yale UP, 1981).
- J.-C. Cheynet, 'Manzikert: un désastre militaire?', *Byzantion*, vol. l (1980), pp. 410–31.
- J.-C. Cheynet, 'La résistance au Turcs en Asie Mineure entre Manzikert et la Première Croisade', *Eupsykhia: Mélanges Offerts à Hélène Ahrweiler* (Paris: Sorbonne Publishers, 1998).
- Penny Cole, *The Preaching of the Crusades to the Holy Land* (Cambridge MA: Medieval Academy Books, 1992).
- G. Constable, 'The Second Crusade as seen by contemporaries', *Traditio*, vol. ix (1953).

- J. E. Cowdrey, 'Pope Urban's Preaching of the First Crusade', *History*, vol. lv (1970), pp. 177–88.
- E. L. Cox, *The Green Count of Savoy: Amadeus VI and Transalpine Savoy in the Fourteenth Century* (Princeton NJ: Princeton UP, 1967).
- G. W. Day, 'Byzantino-Genoese Diplomacy and the Collapse of Emperor Manuel I's Western policy, 1168–71', *Byzantion*, vol. xlviii (1961), pp. 393–405.
- G. W. Day, *Genoa's response to Byzantium, 1155–1204* (Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1978).
- Joseph Donovan, *Pelagius and the Fifth Crusade* (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1950).
- Pierre Dubois, *The Recovery of the Holy Land*, tr. W. I. Brandt (New York: Columbia UP, 1956).
- J. Dunbabin, *Charles I of Anjou: power, kingship and state-making in thirteenth-century Europe* (London: Longman, 1998).
- P. Edbury, *The Kingdom of Cyprus and the Crusades, 1191–1374* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1991).
- P. Edbury, 'The disputed regency of the Kingdom of Jerusalem, 1264–6 and 1268', *Camden Miscellany*, vol. xxvii (1979), pp. 1–47.
- P. Edbury, ed., *Crusade and Settlement: Papers Read at the First Conference of the Society for the Study of the Crusades and the Latin East and Presented to R C Samil* (Cardiff: Cardiff UP, 1985) especially N. Housley, 'Crusades against Christians: their Origins and Development, c. 1000–1216', pp. 17–36 and 'Philip IV and the Crusade: a Reconsideration', pp. 121–6.
- A. M. Edde, 'Ridwan, prince d'Alep de 1095 a 1113', *Revue des Etudes Islamiques*, vol. xlix (1981), pp. 43–57.
- S. Fassoulakis, *The Byzantine family of Raoul-Ral(l)es* (Athens: the author, 1973).
- Jean Flori, *Bohemund d'Antioche: chevalier d'aventure* (Paris: Payot, 2007).
- A. J. Forey, 'The Military Orders in the Crusading Proposals of the Late Thirteenth and Early Fourteenth Centuries', *Traditio*, vol. xxxvi (1980), pp. 317–45.
- J. France, 'The use of the anonymous Gesta Francorum in the early twelfth century sources for the First Crusade', in J. Phillips, ed., *The First Crusade*, pp. 29–42.
- J. France, 'The Crisis of the First Crusade from the defeat of Kerbogha to the departure from Arqa', *Byzantion*, vol. xl (1970), pp. 276–308.
- J. France, 'The departure of Tatikios from the army of the First Crusade', *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, vol. xlv (1971), pp. 131–47.
- Peter Frankopan, *The First Crusade: the Call from the East* (London: The Bodley Head, 2012).
- Alice Gardner, *The Lascarids of Nicaea: The Story of an Empire in Exile* (London: Methuen, 1912).
- D. Geanakopoulous, 'Michael VIII Paleologus and the Union of Lyons (1274)', *Harvard Theological Review*, vol. xi (1953), p.16–24.
- D. Geanakopoulous, 'Greco-Latin Relations on the eve of the Byzantine restoration: the battle of Pelagonia 1259', *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. vii (1957), pp. 99–143.
- D. Geanakopoulous, *Emperor Michael VIII Paleologus and the West, 1258–1282: a study in Byzantine-Latin Relations* (Cambridge MA: Harvard UP, 1959).
- H. Gibbs, 'The Arabic Sources for the Life of Saladin', *Speculum*, vol. xxv (1950).
- Joseph Gill, *The Council of Florence* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1959).
- Joseph Gill, *Byzantium and the Papacy 1198–1400* (New Brunswick NJ: Rutgers UP, 1979).
- John Gillingham, *Richard I* (New Haven and London: Yale UP, 1999).
- John Godfrey, *1204: The Unholy Crusade* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1980).

- A. Grabois, 'The Crusade of King Louis VII: a reconsideration' in P. W. Edbury, ed., *Crusade and Settlement* (Cardiff: Cardiff UP, 1985).
- H. Hagenmeyer, *Chronologie de la Première Croisade* (Paris: E. Leroux, 1902).
- O. Halecki, *The Crusade of Varna* (New York: Polish Institute of Arts and Sciences, 1943).
- O. Halecki, *Un Empereur de Byzance a Rome: Vingt ans du travail pur l'union des eglises et pour la defence de l'empire d'orient 1355-1375* (Warsaw, 1930; published London: Variorum Reprints, 1972).
- Elizabeth Hallam, *Capetian France 987-1328* (London: Longmans, 1980).
- B. Hamilton, 'The elephant of Christ: Reynald of Chatillon', *Studies in Church History*, vol. xv (1978).
- B. Hamilton, 'Manuel Comnenus and Baldwin IV of Jerusalem', in J. Chrysostomides, ed., *Essays Presented to Joan Hussey for her Eightieth Birthday* (London: Tauris Park Paperbacks, 1988).
- B. Hamilton, *The Leper King and his Heirs: Baldwin IV and the Kingdom of Jerusalem* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 2000).
- Benjamin Hendricks, 'Regestes des empereurs latins de Constantinople', *Byzantina*, vol. xiv (1988), pp. 7-221.
- Michael Hendy, 'Catalogue of the Byzantine Coins', *Dumbarton Oaks Collection and Whittemore Collection*, vol. IV (Washington DC, 1999).
- G. Hill, *History of Cyprus*, vols 1 and 2 (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1940).
- J. and L. Hill, *Raymond IV, Count of Toulouse* (Syracuse NY: Syracuse UP, 1982).
- L. L. Hill, 'Contemporary accounts and the later reputation of Adhemar, Bishop of Le Puy', *Medievalia et Humanistica*, vol. ix (1955), pp. 30-8.
- P. M. Holt, ed., *The Eastern Mediterranean Lands in the Age of the Crusades* (Warminster: Aris and Phillips, 1977) especially P. W. Edbury, 'The Crusading Policy of King Peter of Cyprus, 1359-1369', pp. 90-105.
- P. M. Holt, 'Qalawun's treaty with Acre in 1283', *E H R*, vol. xci (1976), pp. 802-12.
- P. M. Holt, 'The treaties of the early Mamluke Sultans with the Frankish states', *BSOAS*, vol. xlv (1980), pp. 67-76.
- P. M. Holt, 'Mamluke-Frankish Relations in the Reign of Bybars (658-76/1260-77)', *Nottingham Medieval Studies*, vol. xxxii (1988), pp.180-95.
- Norman Housley, 'The Mercenary Companies, the Papacy and the Crusades 1356-1378', *Traditio*, vol. xxxviii (1982), pp. 253-80.
- Norman Housley, *The Italian Crusades: the Papal-Angevin Alliance and the Crusades against Christian Lay Powers, 1254-1343* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1982).
- Norman Housley, *The Avignon Papacy and the Crusades, 1305-1378* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1986).
- Norman Housley, 'Pope Clement V and the Crusades of 1309-10', *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. viii (1982), pp. 29-43.
- Norman Housley, *The Later Crusades: from Lyons to Alcazar, 1274-1580* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1992).
- H. Inalcik, *The History of the Ottoman Empire and Modern Turkey: vol. I, Empire of the Ghazis: the Rise and Decline of the Ottoman Empire, 1280-1808* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1976).
- H. Inalcik, 'The Rise of the Turcoman Maritime Principalities in Anatolia, Byzantium and the Crusades', *Byzantinische Forschungen*, vol. ix (1985), pp. 179-217.
- Peter Jackson, 'The crisis in the Holy Land in 1260', *E H R*, vol. xcv (1980), pp. 481-513.
- Peter Jackson, 'The crusades of 1238-41 and their aftermath', *BSOAS*, vol. l (1987), pp. 52-60.

- D. Jacoby, 'The kingdom of Jerusalem and the collapse of Hohenstaufen power in the Levant', *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. xl (1986), pp. 83–101.
- E. Janssen, *Trebizond en Colchide* (Brussels: Brussels UP, 1969).
- W. Jordan, *Louis IX and the Challenge of the Crusade: a study in leadership* (Princeton NJ: Princeton UP, 1979).
- H. Kaminsky, *A History of the Hussite Revolution* (Berkeley CA: University of California Press, 1967).
- B. Z. Kedar and S. Schein, 'Un Projet de "Passage Particulier" propose par l'Ordre de l'Hopital, 1306–7', *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des Chartes*, vol. cxxxvii (1979), pp. 211–26.
- B. Z. Kedar, H. E. Mayer and R. Smail, eds, *Outremer: Studies in the History of the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem Presented to Joshua Prawer* (Jerusalem: Yad Izhak Ben-Zvi Institute, 1982).
- E. Kennan, 'Innocent III and the First Political Crusade: a Comment on the Limitations of Papal Power', *Traditio*, vol. xvii (1971), pp. 231–49.
- H. Kennedy, *Muslim Spain and Portugal: A Political History of Al-Andalus* (London: Longman, 1996).
- L. La Monte, 'The lords of Le Puiset on the Crusades', *Speculum* vol. xvii (1942), pp. 100–18.
- L. La Monte, 'The lords of Caesarea in the period of the Crusades', *Speculum* vol. xxii (1947), pp. 143–61.
- J. Lamonte, 'To what extent was Byzantium the suzerain of the Crusading states?', *Byzantion*, vol. 2 (1932), pp. 253–64.
- J. Laurent, 'Des Grecs aux Croises: l'Estoire d'Edesse entre 1071 et 1098', *Byzantion*, vol. I, (1924).
- B. Lewis, *The Assassins* (London: Princeton UP, 1997).
- A. Laiou, 'Marino Sanudo Torsello, Byzantium and the Turks: The background to the anti-Turkish League of 1332–1334', *Speculum*, vol. xlv (1970), pp. 374–92.
- A. Laiou, *Constantinople and the Latins: The Foreign Policy of Andronicus II 1282–1328* (Cambridge MA: Harvard UP, 1982).
- R. J. Lilie, *Byzantium and the Crusader States, 1096–1204* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1993).
- R. J. Loenertz, 'Aux origins du despotat d'Epire et de la principaute d'Achaie', *Byzantina*, vol. xliii (1975), pp. 377–489.
- Jean Longnon, *L'empire latin de Constantinople et la principaute de Moree* (Paris: Payot, 1949).
- D. W. Lomax, *The Reconquest of Spain* (London: Longman, 1978).
- Anthony Luttrell, 'The Crusade in the Fourteenth Century' in J. Hale *et al.*, eds, *Europe in the Late Middle Ages* (London and Evanston: Northwestern UP, 1965).
- Anthony Luttrell, *The Hospitallers in Cyprus, Rhodes, Greece and the West, 1291–1440* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1978).
- Anthony Luttrell, 'The Hospitallers of Rhodes Confront the Turks 1306–1421', in P. F. Gallagher, ed., *Christians, Jews and Other Worlds: Patterns of Conflict and Accommodation* (Lanham MD: UP of America, 1988), pp. 80–116.
- A. MacKay, *Spain in the Middle Ages; From Frontier to Empire, 1000–1500* (London: The Macmillan Press, 1977).
- W. B. McQueen, 'Relations between the Normans and Byzantium, 1071–1112', *Byzantion*, vol. 56 (1986), pp. 427–76.
- Paul Magdalino, *The Empire of Manuel I Komnenos, 1143–1180* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1993).
- M. Markowski, 'Richard the Lionheart: Bad King, Bad Crusader?' *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. xxiii (1997).

- Justin Marozzi, *Tamerlance: Sword of Islam, Conqueror of the World* (London: Harper Perennial, 2004).
- H. Mayer, 'Studies in the History of Queen Melissende of Jerusalem', *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. xxvi (1972), pp. 93–182.
- H. Mayer, 'Ibelin versus Ibelin: the struggle for the regency of Jerusalem, 1253–1258', *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, vol. xxii (1978), pp. 25–57.
- H. Mayer, 'The succession to Baldwin II of Jerusalem: English impact on the East', *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. xxix (1985), pp. 139–47.
- S. Menache, 'Contemporary Attitudes concerning the Templars Affair: Propaganda's Fiasco?', *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. viii (1982), pp. 135–47.
- W. Miller, *The Latins in the Levant: a History of Frankish Greece, 1204–1566* (London: John Murray, 1908).
- W. Miller, *Trebizond. The Last Greek Empire* (London: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge (SPCK), 1926).
- C. Morris, 'The Gesta Francorum as narrative history', *Reading Medieval Studies*, vol. xix (1997), pp. 55–71.
- C. Morris, 'Peter the Hermit and the Chroniclers' in J. Phillips, ed., *The First Crusade* (Manchester: Manchester UP, 1997).
- Margaret Mullett and Dion Smythe, *Alexius I Komnenos* (Belfast: Byzantine Texts and Translations, 1995) especially article by James Howard-Johnstone on the confusing chronology in the 'Alexiad'.
- A. V. Murray, ed., *From Clermont to Jerusalem: Crusades and Crusader Societies, 1095–1500* (Turnhout: Brepols, 1998) especially Sue Edgington, 'Albert of Aachen reappraised', pp. 55–67.
- A. V. Murray, *The Crusader Kingdom of Jerusalem: a Dynastic History 1099–1125* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 2000).
- R. Nicholson, 'Joscelin I, Prince of Edessa', *Illinois Studies in the Social Sciences*, vol. xxxiv, part iv, (Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1934).
- R. Nicholson, *Tancred: a study of his career and work* (Chicago IL: Chicago UP, 1940).
- R. Nicholson, *Joscelin III and the Fall of the Crusader States* (Leyden: Brill, 1973).
- Donald Nicol, 'The date of the battle of Pelagonia', *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, vol. xlix (1956), pp. 68–71.
- Donald Nicol, *The Despotate of Epirus 1204–1261* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1957).
- Donald Nicol, *Byzantium and Venice* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1988).
- Donald Nicol, *The Last Centuries of Byzantium 1261–1453* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1993).
- John Julius Norwich, *The Kingdom in the Sun* (London: Longmans, 1970).
- J. F. O'Callaghan, *A History of Medieval Spain* (Ithaca NY: Cornell UP, 1975).
- Roland Oliver, ed., *The Cambridge History of Africa: vol. iii, c. 1050–1600* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1977) especially Chapter 5, N. Levtzion, 'The Western Maghreb and Sudan', pp. 331–462.
- F. Pall, 'Un moment décisif de l'histoire du Sud-Est européen: La Croisade de Varna (1444)', *Balkanica*, vol. vii (1944), pp. 102–20.
- James Powell, 'Honorius III and the leadership of the Crusade', *Catholic History Review*, vol. lxiii (1986).
- James Powell, *Anatomy of a Crusade 1213–1221* (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1986).
- J. Phillips, ed., *The First Crusade: Origins and Impact* (Manchester: MUP, 1997) especially Sue Edgington, 'The First Crusade: reappraising the evidence', pp. 57–77 and Hillenbrand, 'The First Crusade: the Moslem perspective', pp. 130–41.
- J. Polemis, *The Doukai. A contribution to Byzantine prosography* (London: The Athlone Press, 1968).

- Maureen Purcell, *Papal Crusading Policy 1244–91* (Leyden: Brill, 1975).
- J. Pryor, 'The oath of the leaders of the First Crusade to the Emperor Alexius: fealty, homage', *Parergon*, vol. ii (1984), pp. iii–41.
- D. E. Queller, *The Fourth Crusade* (Leicester: Leicester UP, 1978).
- Peter Raedes, 'The Children's Crusade of 1212', *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. iii (1977), pp. 45–57.
- G. Regan, *Lionhearts: Richard I and Saladin* (London: Constable, 1998).
- James Reston, *Warriors of God: Richard I and Saladin in the Third Crusade* (London: Pearson Education, 2002).
- Geoffrey Rice, 'A note on the battle of Antioch, 28 June 1098: Bohemund as tactical innovator', *Parergon*, vol. xxv (1979), pp. 3–8.
- Jean Richard, *Le Comte de Tripoli sous la dynastie toulousaine (1102–87)* (Paris: P. Geuthner, 1949).
- Jean Richard, 'The Mongols and the Franks', *Journal of Asian History*, vol. iii (1969), pp. 45–57.
- Jean Richard, *The Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem*, tr. J. Shirley in Richard Vaughn, ed., *Europe in the Middle Ages; Selected Studies*, vols 11A/11B (Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1979).
- Jean Richard, *St. Louis: Crusader King of France* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1992).
- J. Riley-Smith, *The First Crusade and the Idea of Crusading* (London: Athlone, 1986).
- J. Riley-Smith, *The First Crusaders: 1095–1131* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1997).
- J. Riley-Smith, 'The motives of the earliest Crusaders and the settlement of Latin Palestine, 1095–1100'. *E H R.* xcvi (1983), pp. 721–36.
- R. Rodd, *The Princes of the Morea and the Chronicles of the Morea* (London: Arnold, 1907).
- C. Roth, *The Dukes of Naxos* (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1946).
- John Rowe, 'Paschal II, Bohemund of Antioch and the Byzantine Empire', *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, vol. xlix (1966), pp. 165–202.
- J. Rubenstein, 'What is the Gesta Francorum and who is Peter Tuldebone?' *Revue Mabillon*, vol. xvi (2005), pp. 179–204.
- Steven Runciman, *History of the Crusades: vol. II, The Kingdom of Jerusalem* (London: Cambridge UP, 1952).
- Steven Runciman, *A History of the Crusades: vol. III, The Kingdom of Acre* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1954).
- Steven Runciman, *The Eastern Schism* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1955).
- Steven Runciman, *The Sicilian Vespers: a History of the Mediterranean World in the Thirteenth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1958).
- Steven Runciman, *The Fall of Constantinople 1453* (London: Cambridge UP, 1965).
- Sylvia Schein, 'Philip IV and the crusade: a reconsideration' in P. Edbury, ed., *Crusade and Settlement* (Cardiff, Cardiff UP, 1985), pp. 121–6.
- K. M. Setton, ed., *A History of the Crusades*, vol. iii (Madison WI: University of Wisconsin Press, 1969–) especially C. J. Bishko, 'The Spanish and Portuguese Reconquest, 109–1492', pp. 39–456; D. Geanakopoulos, 'Byzantium and the Crusades, 1261–1354', pp. 27–68; P. Topping, 'The Morea, 1311–64', pp. 103–40; K. M. Setton, 'The Catalans in Greece, 1311–1380', pp. 167–224; D. Luttrell, 'The Hospitallers at Rhodes, 1306–1421', pp. 278–313; M. M. Ziada, 'The Mameluke Sultans 1291–1517', pp. 237–49.
- K. M. Setton, ed., *A History of the Crusades*, vol. ii (Madison WI: University of Wisconsin Press, 1969–) especially J. Longnon, 'The Frankish States in Greece, 1204–1311', pp. 235–74; E. C. Ferber, 'The Kingdom of Cyprus 1191–1291', pp. 599–629; S. D. Nersessian, 'The Kingdom of Cilician Armenia' pp. 630–59.
- K. M. Setton, 'The Latins in Greece from the Fourth Crusade to the end of the Middle Ages', *Cambridge Medieval History*, vol. iv (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1968).

- K. M. Setton, *The Papacy and the Levant (1204–1570)* (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1976).
- J. Shepard, 'When Greek meets Greek: Alexius Comnenus and Bohemund in 1097–8', *Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. xii (1988), pp. 185–277.
- J. Shepard, 'Cross purposes: Alexius Comnenus and the First Crusade', in J. Phillips, ed., *The First Crusade* (Manchester: Manchester UP, 1997), pp. 107–29.
- Robert Somerville, 'The council of Clermont and the First Crusade', *Studia Gratiana*, vol. xx (1976), pp. 7–32.
- R. C. Smail, 'Latin Syria and the West, 1149–1187', in *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5th series, vol. xix (1969) pp. 1–20.
- R. C. Smail, 'The predicaments of Guy of Lusignan, 1183–1187', in B. Kedar, H. Mayer and R. C. Smail, eds, *Outremer: Studies on the History of the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem Presented to J. Prawer* (Jerusalem, 1982).
- M. Shatzmiller, ed., *Crusaders and Muslims in Twelfth-Century Syria* (Leiden: Brill, 1993).
- L. Stiernon, 'Les origines du despotat d'Épire', *Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. xiv (1959), pp. 91–126.
- C. J. Tyerman, 'Sed nihil fecit? The Last Capetians and the Recovery of the Holy Land', in J. Gillingham and J. C. Holt, eds, *War and Government in the Middle Ages* (Woodbridge UK: Boydell, 1984).
- C. J. Tyerman, 'Philip VI and the Recovery of the Holy Land', *E H R*, vol. c (1985), pp. 25–51.
- C. J. Tyerman, *England and the Crusades 1095–588* (Chicago: University of Chicago, 1988).
- A.A. Vasiliev, 'The Foundation of the Empire of Trebizond (1204–1222)', *Speculum*, vol. xi (1946), pp. 3–37.
- Andre Vauchez, ed., *Le Concil de Clermont en 1095 et l'appel du Croisade: Actes du Colloque Universitaire International de Clermont-Ferrand* (Rome: Conseil de l'Ecole Francaise de Rome, 1997).
- Michel de Waha, 'La letter d'Alexis Comnen a Robert Premier Frison', *Byzantion*, vol. xlvii (1977), pp. 113–25.
- D. Waley, *The Papal State in the Thirteenth Century* (London: Macmillan, 1961).
- Paul Wittek, *The Rise of the Ottoman Empire* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1938).
- K. B. Wolf, 'Crusade and narrative: Bohemund and the Gesta Francorum', *Journal of Medieval History*, vol. xvii (1991), pp. 207–16.
- Robert Lee Wolff, 'Politics in the Latin Patriarchate of Constantinople, 1204–1261', *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* (1954), pp. 225–304.
- R. Wolff, *Studies in the Latin Empire of Constantinople* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1976).
- R. B. Yewdale, *Bohemond I, Prince of Antioch* (Princeton: Princeton UP, 1924).

Index

- Abagha, Ilkhan 360–3, 372, 377–8, 381, 384, 388–91
Abelard, Apulian prince 10, 17
Abu'l Askir Sultan ibn Munqidh, emir of Shaizar 107
Abu'l Fath Ismail ibn Buri, emir of Damascus 98, 101
Abu'l Hassan Ali. Almoravid Sultan 63, 111
Abu'l Qasim, emir of Nicaea 19–20, 22–5
Abu Yaqub Yusuf (I), Almohad Caliph 151, 177
Abu Yaqub Yusuf (II), Almohad Caliph 258, 275
Abu Yusuf Yaqub, Almohad Sultan 177, 207, 225–6
Abd al Mumin, Almohad Sultan 96, 100, 109, 151
Abdallah al-Abayyasi, ruler of al-Andalus 275–80
Acciajuoli, Antonio, Duke of Athens 493, 500, 518
Acciajuoli, Nerio (I), Duke of Athens 468, 471, 488–93
Acciajuoli, Nerio (II), Duke of Athens 518, 524, 533
Acciajuoli, Niccolo, Naples minister 461, 466, 468, 471
Acre, siege of (1189–91) 199–208
Adela of England, Countess of Blois 50, 93
Adelaide, Queen of Jerusalem/ Countess of Sicily 53, 74–9
Adhemar, Bishop of Le Puy and legate 27–8, 31–9, 42
Agnes/ Anna of France, Byzantine Empress 160, 163, 242
Agnes of Courtenay, wife of king Amalric of Jerusalem 133, 136–7, 145, 150–1, 160, 165, 170–2, 176
Aibek, Mameluke general 329, 333, 338–9
Aimery, Patriarch of Antioch 129, 133, 146–8, 160
Aimery, Patriarch of Jerusalem 150–1, 155, 158, 160, 165, 172
Aimery (II), Patriarch of Antioch 187
Ain al-Daula, Danishmend prince 101
Ain Jalut, battle of (1260) 349
Al-Adid, Fatimid Caliph 148, 150, 157–9, 161–2
Al-Adil, Ayyubid Sultan (brother of Saladin) 186–9, 207, 209–14, 221, 223–31, 238, 259, 262–4
Al-Adil (II), Ayyubid Sultan 299–303
Al-Adil Abdallah, Almohad Caliph 275–8, 282
Al-Afdal, Ayyubid Sultan 183, 221–6, 229–30, 263
Al-Afdal, vizier of Egypt 36, 43, 55, 60–1, 65, 84
Al-Amir, Fatimid Caliph 54, 96
Al-Ashraf, Ayyubid emir 231, 263, 267, 284–5, 296–7
Al-Ashraf Khalil, Mameluke Sultan 404–20
Al-Aziz of Egypt, Ayyubid Sultan 221–6, 228, 230, 263
Al-Faiz, Fatimid Caliph 142, 149
Al-Hafiz, Fatimid Caliph 96, 102, 133
Al-Kamil, Ayyubid Sultan 230–1, 256, 264–72, 283–7, 291, 294–9
Al-Mu'ayyad Shaikh, Mameluke Sultan 507, 512
Al-Mu'azzam, Ayyubid emir of Damascus 231, 262–9, 271–2, 281–3
Al-Muqtadi, Abbasid Caliph 12, 24
Al-Mustadi, Abbasid Caliph 148, 161
Al-Musta'li, Abbasid Caliph 161, 170
Al-Musta'li, Fatimid Caliph 25, 54
Al-Mustansir, Abbasid Caliph 24
Al-Mustansir, Fatimid Caliph 25
Al-Mustanzir, Abbasid Caliph 69–70, 80
Al-Mustashid, Abbasid Caliph 80, 90, 97, 100–03

- Al-Nasir, Abbasid Caliph 170, 175, 265, 279
 Al-Qaim, Abbasid Caliph 12
 Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad (I), Seljuk Sultan 252, 270, 290–1, 294, 299
 Alaine of Flanders, Countess of Apulia 69
 Alarcos, battle of (1195) 225
 Alberic, legate 110
 Albert I of Habsburg, German king 424, 432
 Albert II of Habsburg, Holy Roman Emperor 519–22
 Albert ‘the Bear’, Margrave of Brandenburg 125
 Albert, Patriarch of Antioch 312, 318
 Albert, Patriarch of Jerusalem 247, 263
 Albert, founding Bishop of Livonia/ Riga 229, 231–3
 ‘Albigensian Crusade’, the 245–65, 279–81, 288.
 Albornoz, Gil, Papal strongman 463, 466, 469
 Alexander II, Pope 6
 Alexander III, Pope 147, 150, 153, 156, 160, 166, 171–4
 Alexander IV, Pope 336–51
 Alexander V, Pope 504
 Alexander ‘Nevsky’, prince of Novgorod 306–7
 Alexander, Count of Gravina 140, 156–68
 Alexandria, capture of (1365) 470
 Alexius I Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor 12, 14–80
 Alexius II Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor 158, 163, 171–6
 Alexius III Angelus, Byzantine Emperor 225–8, 231–4, 237, 241, 252
 Alexius IV Angelus, Byzantine Emperor 231–6
 Alexius V Ducas Murtzurphlus, Byzantine Emperor 235–7
 Alexius, son/ co-ruler of Emperor John II 110
 Alexius the ‘protosebastos’, Byzantine chief minister 172–4
 Alfonso I, king of Aragon 68, 75, 80, 101
 Alfonso II, King of Portugal 252, 274
 Alfonso III, King of Aragon 397, 401–2, 405–7
 Alfonso III, King of Portugal 319, 363, 386
 Alfonso IV, King of Portugal 444, 453, 464–6
 Alfonso V, King of Aragon/ Sicily 509
 Alfonso VI, King of Castile/Leon 6, 9, 10, 11, 14, 16, 19, 20, 22, 24, 54, 69, 96
 Alfonso VIII, King of Castile 146, 225–6, 254–5, 258
 Alfonso IX, King of Leon 193, 261, 290
 Alfonso X, King of Castile 332, 348, 363, 370, 379, 395
 Alfonso XI, King of Castile 438, 444, 447–50, 452–3, 461–2
 Alfonso of Portugal, Grand Master of Hospitallers 235, 243
 Alfonso Jordan, Count of Toulouse 6, 67, 121, 130
 Alice of Champagne, Princess of Jerusalem 224, 247, 263, 269, 283–4, 288, 308, 320
 Alice of France, fiancée of Richard I 196, 201, 205
 Alice of Jerusalem, Princess of Antioch 90, 95–8, 102–3
 Almos, prince of Hungary 78, 92, 96
 Alp Arslan (Mohammed), Seljuk Sultan 6–10
 Alp Arslan, emir of Mosul 119
 Alphonso, Count of Poitou/ Toulouse 281, 288, 330
 Altuntash, emir of Bosra 123–4
 Amalric I, King of Jerusalem 139, 141, 145, 150–65
 Amalric I/II, King of Cyprus and Jerusalem 170–1, 195, 224, 227, 228, 233, 238, 248
 An-Nasir Dawud, Ayyubid emir 283–6, 302, 311–12
 An-Nasir Faraj, Mameluke Sultan 497, 507
 An-Nasir Mohammed, Mameluke Sultan 414, 419, 453
 An-Nasir Yusuf, Ayyubid emir 296–7, 323, 330, 333–4, 345–7
 Anacletus II, anti-Pope 95–6, 99–100, 119
 Anastasius IV, Pope 140–2
 Andrew II, King of Hungary 261–2, 295
 Andrew III, King of Hungary 420
 Andrew of Montbard, Grand Master of Templars 141
 Andrew of Rupecanino, Apulian lord 145, 149
 Andronicus I Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor 113 `38, 151, 154–6, 172–80, 242
 Andronicus II Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 351, 377, 385, 387, 392–4, 401, 417–18, 423–8, 444–6
 Andronicus III Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 445–54

- Andronicus IV Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 465, 471–7, 479–83, 487
 Andronicus, son of Emperor John II 110
 Angelus, Andronicus, cousin of Manuel I 168, 174
 Anne of Savoy, Empress of Byzantium 454, 459
 Anseau of Cahieu, Latin Empire baron 298–9
 Antioch, battle of (1098) 37–8, falls to Mamelukes (1268) 365
 Aqsonqor, governor of Aleppo 24
 Aqsonqor al-Burzuqi, Iraqi emir 74–8, 88–90
 Arab, Seljuk (Konya) prince 90–1
 Arghun, Ilkhan 396–400, 402, 416
 Ariqboga, brother of Kubilai Khan 345–8, 359
 Armengard of Asp, Grand Master of Hospitallers 189, 204
 Arnauld Aimery, abbot of Citeaux 246–9, 254–5
 Arnold of Tonoja, Grand Master of Templars 171, 178
 Arnulf of Rohes, Patriarch of Jerusalem 42–3, 56–7, 75–9
 Arnulf (II), Patriarch of Jerusalem 98–9
 Arsenius, Patriarch of Nicaea/ Constantinople 343–5, 353
 Arsuf, battle of (1191) 209
 As-Salih Ayyub, Ayyubid Sultan 291, 299–304, 310–11, 322, 325–7
 As-Salih Ismail, Zengid emir of Damascus 164–5, 167, 174
 As-Salih Ismail, Ayyubid emir 297, 301–4, 310, 318–20
 Ascalon, battle of (1099) 43, capture of (1153) 140–1
 ‘Assassins’, Islamic order of the 62, 74, 90, 94, 138, 164, 167, 213, 215, 257, 332, 337–40, 370, 375
 Athanasius, Greek Orthodox Patriarch of Antioch 150–3, 160
 Atziz, Seljuk general 8
 Aubrey of Grantmesnil 37–8
 Ayaz ibn Ilghazi, Ortoqid emir 70, 73–5
 Aybak, grandson of Buri, emir of Damascus 109
 Axuch, Byzantine commander-in-chief 81, 111–12, 129
 Axuch, John, general and son of above 129, 132
 Ayyub, Zirid ruler 7
 Az-Zahir of Aleppo, Ayyubid emir 221, 224, 229–31, 247
 Baghdad, sack of (1258) 341
 Baha ad-Din ibn Shaddad, biographer 194, 201, 295
 Baibars, Mameluke Sultan 301, 312, 338, 349–84
 Baichu, Mongol general 308–9, 339–41
 Balak, Iraqi emir 84–7
 Balduq of Samosata, emir 35–7
 Baldwin I, King of Jerusalem/ Count of Edessa 31–79
 Baldwin I, Latin Emperor / Count of Flanders 230–1, 234, 237–8, 241–2
 Baldwin II, Latin Emperor 263, 283, 290, 297–300, 310, 318, 326, 348–9, 351, 355
 Baldwin II, King of Jerusalem/ Count of Edessa 31–97
 Baldwin III, King of Jerusalem 112, 130–2, 136–50, 156
 Baldwin IV, King of Jerusalem 151, 160, 165–79
 Baldwin V, King of Jerusalem 168, 177–82
 Baldwin of Ford, Archbishop of Canterbury 194, 197, 202–3
 Baldwin of Ibelin, brother of Balian (II) 170–2, 177, 183
 Baldwin of Mar’ash, lord 103, 122
 Baldwin of Ramleh, lord 182–3
 Balian (I) of Ibelin, lord 98, 165
 Balian (II) of Ibelin, lord and royal consort 165, 170, 177, 182–8, 203, 212, 224, 227, 238
 Balian (III) of Ibelin, lord of Sidon 284–6, 291–4, 308–9, 320–2
 Barqiyaruq, Seljuk Sultan 23–6, 40, 58, 60
 Barlais, Amalric 276, 287, 292–3
 Barlais, Reynald 227
 Barquq, Mameluke Sultan 484–5, 497
 Basil II, Byzantine Emperor 5
 Batu, Khan of ‘Golden Horde’ 305–6 320, 338
 Baux, James/ Jacques de 477
 Bayezid I, Ottoman Sultan 490–2, 494–500
 Beatrice, Queen of Portugal/ Castile 485–6
 Beaufort, Cardinal/ Bishop Henry 515–16
 Beccus, John, Patriarch of Constantinople 376, 379, 381, 392–3
 Bela II, King of Hungary 78, 96–7, 110
 Bela III, King of Hungary 151, 194, 198, 226
 Bela IV, King of Hungary 295, 305, 344
 Belgrade, siege of (1456) 534–5
 Benedict XI, Pope 424–5
 Benedict XII, Pope 450–5
 Benedict XIII, rival Pope 494–504, 510

- Benevento, battle of (1266) 361
 Berengaria of Navarre, Queen of England 201, 205–7, 215
 Bernard of Blanquefort, Templar Grand Master 144, 147
 Bernard of Clairvaux (St), abbot of Cîteaux 93, 107, 120–3, 132, 141, 155
 Bernard of Tremelay, Templar Grand Master 139–40
 Bernard of Valence, Patriarch of Antioch 49, 54, 59, 82–5, 92, 102
 Bertha of Sulzbach, Byzantine Empress 110, 119, 120, 126, 138
 Bertrand, Prince of Tripoli 66–72
 Bertrand, Count of Toulouse 130–2
 Bessarion, Cardinal 517, 520–1
 Beziers, massacre at (1209) 249
 Biandrate, regent of Thessalonica 244–9, 277
 Blanche of Castile, Queen of France 281, 288, 332
 ‘Blondel’, minstrel 220
 Bohemund I, Prince of Antioch/ Taranto 5, 16–19, 30–66, 70, 102
 Bohemund II, Prince of Antioch 82, 87, 90–5
 Bohemund III, Prince of Antioch 133, 149, 153, 156, 160, 169, 173
 176, 187–9, 195, 206, 22–6, 229–30
 Bohemund IV, Prince of Antioch 223, 226, 229–30, 242, 245, 257–63, 269–70, 272, 277–8, 284, 292–4
 Bohemund V, Prince of Antioch 280, 294, 325, 331–2
 Bohemund VI, Prince of Antioch 332, 334, 342, 347, 348, 352, 357, 361, 365–6, 372–3, 380
 Bohemund VII, Prince of (Antioch and) Tripoli 380, 384, 389–90, 400
 Boniface VIII, Pope 402, 416–24
 Boniface IX, Pope 490–502
 Boniface of Montferrat, King of Thessalonica 230–7, 241–7, 363
 Boniface of Savoy, Archbishop of Canterbury 370
 Boril, Czar of Bulgaria 244–6, 251, 254, 257
 Boucicaud, Marshal Jean de 492, 496–9, 501
 Boutumites, Manuel, Byzantine admiral 31, 41, 57–8, 70–1
 Brisebarre, Guy, lord of Beirut 93–4
 Bryennius, Nicephorus, Byzantine rebel 13–14
 Bryennius, Nicephorus, ?grandson of above 66, 80, 107
 Bryennius Comnenus, Alexius 107, 143–5, 150
 Buri ibn Toghtekin, emir of Damascus 65, 69, 92–4, 98
 Bursuq, Nicaean Turkish general 20, 24
 Buzan, Seljuk general 21–3
 Cabra, battle of (1079) 14
 Callistus/ Calixtus II, Pope 81, 88, 95
 Callistus/ Calixtus III, Pope 533–5
 Camaterus, John, Patriarch of Constantinople 236, 243
 Cantacuzene, Manuel, Byzantine general 168
 Cantacuzene, Manuel, Despot of Morea 461, 482
 Cantacuzene, Matthew, co-Emperor/ Despot of Morea 464–5, 482
 Cantacuzene, Theodora, married Emir Orhan 457–8
 Capece, Conrad, Sicilian rebel 365–9
 Carceri, Ravano delle, lord of Euboea 249, 260
 Carvajal, Cardinal John 533–4
 Casimir I, King of Poland 453, 456, 475
 Castro, Ines de 464, 466
 Catherine of Courtenay, Latin Empress (titular) 401, 414, 417, 421, 428
 Catherine (II) of Valois/ Courtenay, Latin Empress (titular) 438, 448, 452, 466
 Caupo, Estonian chief 247, 262
 Celestine III, Pope 207, 217, 228
 Celestine V, Pope/ St. 415–17
 Cephissus, Battle of the River (1311) 436
 Cesarini, Cardinal John 516–18, 520–4
 Champlitte, William de, lord of Morea 241–5
 Charles of Anjou, King of Naples/ Sicily 323, 328–30, 347, 357, 360–96
 Charles II of Anjou, King of Naples 389, 393–404, 408, 413–23
 Charles III (of Durazzo), King of Naples/ Hungary 483–9
 Charles IV, Holy Roman Emperor/ (I) King of Bohemia 458, 464, 481
 Charles IV, King of France 437–8, 443–5
 Charles V, King of France 470–2, 478
 Charles VI, King of France 486, 494–500
 Charles Martel, King of Hungary 389, 396, 415
 Charles Robert, King of Hungary 420–1, 428, 455
 Charles, Count of Valois 394, 403, 421–2, 426–9, 432
 ‘Children’s Crusade’, the (1212) 255–6
 Choniates, Nicetas, historian 198, 235

- Christian, Bishop of Oliva 259–61, 273, 280
 ‘Cid, El’ (Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar) 11, 14–16, 22, 24, 42, 54–5.
 Clement III, Pope 205–7
 Clement IV, Pope 360–7
 Clement V, Pope 425–39
 Clement VI, Pope 455–62
 Clement VII (Robert of Geneva), rival Pope 481–94
 Clement, anti-Pope (1083) 17–21
 Clermont, Council of (1095) 28–9
 Coloman, King of Hungary 26, 30–1, 58, 78
 Comnena, Anna, historian 29, 36, 77, 80–1, 107, 143
 Comnena, Theodora, Queen of Jerusalem 144–6, 150, 156, 166.
 Comnena, Theodora, Duchess of Austria 128, 131
 Comnenus, Alexius, nephew of Alexius I 62–3
 Comnenus, Alexius ‘the cupbearer’ 178–80
 Comnenus, David, governor of Thessalonica 178–80
 Comnenus, Isaac, brother of Alexius I 11–12, 15
 Comnenus, Isaac, brother of John II 81, 95, 99, 144
 Comnenus, Isaac, brother of Manuel I 110–12
 Comnenus, Manuel, brother of Alexius I 7–11
 Comnenus, Manuel, son of Andronicus I 173, 180
 Conan of Bethune, Latin Empire regent 268–9
 Conrad IV, Holy Roman Emperor/ King of Jerusalem 283, 288, 294, 308, 329–35
 Conrad of Montferrat, King of Jerusalem 186, 189, 195, 200–7, 211–16
 Conrad, Duke of Mazovia 273, 288–90
 Conradin, King of Jerusalem 335 342–3, 356, 366–7
 Constance of Sicily, Holy Roman Empress 141, 188, 200, 207, 217, 224, 227, 229
 Constance of Sicily, Queen of Aragon/ Sicily 393–7, 418
 Constance/ Cecilia of France, Princess of Antioch and
 Countess of Tripoli 62, 72, 98–100.
 Constance of Antioch, Princess 95, 102–3, 133, 136–8, 140, 148, 151
 Constantine I of Gargar, Armenian prince 26
 Constantine II, Armenian prince 79, 93–4
 Constantine III, King of Armenia 457, 470
 Constantine IV, King of Armenia 470, 477
 Constantine X, Byzantine Emperor 6–7
 Constantine XI Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 513–15, 523–30
 Constantine of Lampron, Armenian regent 273–8
 Constantinople, siege of (1203) 234, fall to Crusaders (1204) 236, reconquest of (1261) 351, fall of (1453) 528–30
 Contostephanus, Andronicus, Byzantine admiral 158–9, 174
 Daimbert of Pisa, Patriarch of Jerusalem 40, 44, 49–56, 59, 63
 D’Aulps, Peter, Sicilian/ Byzantine general 34
 Danishmend, ‘Malik’, founding emir of dynasty 19, 49, 51–6, 60
 D’Assailly, Gilbert, Grand Master of Hospitallers 161
 David II, King of Scots 450, 469
 David III, King of Georgia 83–5, 89
 Dandolo, Doge Enrico 232–3, 236–8, 241–2
 Demetrius of Montferrat, King of Thessalonica 244, 248, 272
 Demetrius (Angelus Ducas), Despot of Thessalonica 310, 320–1
 Dhu’l Nun, Danishmend emir 110
 Dinis, King of Portugal 386, 444
 Dokuz Khatun, wife of ‘Ilkhan’ Hulagu 359–60
 Dominic, St. 244, 248
 Dorylaeum, battle of (1097) 33
 Duarte (Edward), King of Portugal 517–20
 Ducas, Andronicus, nephew of Constantine X 9–12
 Ducas, ‘Caesar’ John, brother of Constantine X 9–16
 Ducas, John, brother-in-law of Alexius I 24, 33–4
 Ducas, John, general of Manuel I 143–5, 150
 Ducas Comnenus, Isaac, rebel Emperor of Cyprus 178, 206–7, 233
 Duqaq, Seljuk emir of Damascus 27, 33, 49, 58, 60
 Dyrrachium, battle of (1081) 16, siege of (1107–8) 64–5.
 Edgar ‘Atheling’, rightful King of England 36, 39
 Edmund, Duke of Lancaster and (titular) King of Sicily 334–5, 337, 339, 345, 373

- Edward 'the Confessor', King of England 6, 31
- Edward I, King of England 366, 370–7, 377, 392–3, 399–400, 426, 428
- Edward II, King of England 428, 434
- Edward III, King of England 450, 458, 469
- Edward ('Black Prince'), Prince of Wales 472–3
- Eleanor of Aquitaine, Queen of England and France 50, 120, 124, 128–32, 138, 205–6, 223
- Eleanor, Queen of Cyprus 474–8
- Eleanor of Provence, Queen of England 323
- Eleanor of Castile, Queen of England 370–2, 375
- Eleanor of Brittany, Duchess 225
- Elizabeth, Queen of Hungary/ Poland 487–9
- Enteca, Berenguer d' 425, 428
- Eschiva, Lady of Galilee 165, 183–6
- Estanol, Berenguer 436
- Eudocia Macrembolitissa, Byzantine Empress 6–9
- Eugenius II, Pope 119–25, 140
- Eugenius III, Pope 516–26
- Eulogia Paleologina, sister of Michael VIII 351, 376
- Euphrosyne (Ducaena Camatera), Byzantine Empress 225, 236
- Eustace (III), Count of Boulogne 31, 79
- Everard of Barres, Grand Master of Templars 133, 139
- Evremar, Patriarch of Jerusalem 56, 61, 65, 71
- Fakhr ad-Din, Ayyubid general 325–7
- Fakhr al-Din Ali, Turk emir of Phrygia 384
- Faruk Shah, nephew of Saladin 170, 173–5
- Felix V, anti-Pope (Amadeo VIII of Savoy) 521, 526
- Ferdinand I, King of Castile/ Leon 6
- Ferdinand I, King of Portugal 485–6
- Ferdinand I 'of Antequera', King of Aragon 491, 506, 509
- Ferdinand II, King of Leon 144, 193
- Ferdinand III, King of Castile 261, 271, 276, 283, 290, 297, 322–4, 332
- Ferdinand IV, King of Castile 416, 431–2
- 'Field of Blood', battle of (1119) 81–2
- Filangeri, Richard, Hohenstaufen minister 283, 291–3, 296, 302–4, 308–9
- Flor, Roger de, mercenary 406, 423–5
- Florent d'Avesnes, Prince of Achaia 403, 408, 418
- 'Fountains of Murad', battle of (1149) 133
- Frederick I 'Barbarossa', Holy Roman Emperor 125–6, 138, 140, 143–7, 149, 161, 169–71, 193, 197–202
- Frederick II, Holy Roman Emperor / (I) King of Sicily 224, 227, 229, 243, 253, 256–7, 269, 274, 276, 279–330
- Frederick II, King of Sicily 417, 421–4, 436, 439, 451
- Frederick III, Holy Roman Emperor 521, 526, 534
- Frederick III, King of Sicily 464, 480
- Frederick of Swabia, son of Frederick I 197, 201–3, 205–6
- Fulcher, Patriarch of Jerusalem 139
- Fulcher of Chartres, historian 34, 37
- Fulk, Count of Anjou/ King of Jerusalem 92, 94–112, 179
- Fulk of Neuilly, preacher 232, 248
- Garnier, Emma, lady of Sidon 86, 98
- Garnier, Eustace (I), lord of Sidon 85–6
- Garnier, Eustace (II), lord of Sidon 86, 98
- Garnier, Walter, lord of Caesarea 86, 98
- Garnier of Naples, Grand Master of Templars 204
- Gaudin, Theobald, Grand Master of Templars 407, 413
- Gelasius II, Pope 79, 81
- Gemistus Plethon, George, Byzantine philosopher 517, 520–1
- Genghis Khan 265 268–9, 272–3, 282, 323
- Geoffrey 'the Monk', lord of Mar'ash 85–7
- Geoffrey of Lusignan, brother of King Guy 193, 199, 206, 224
- Geoffrey of Sargines, minister of Louis IX 328, 333, 335, 345, 352, 359, 363, 369
- Gerald, Patriarch of Jerusalem 282, 289
- Gerald of Wales (Giraldus Cambrensis), historian 194
- Gerard, Brother, co-founder of Hospitallers 83
- Gerard of Ridefort, Grand Master of Templars 179, 182–7, 199
- Gervase of Basoches, lord of Galilee 61, 65
- Ghazan, 'Ilkhan' 416, 419–20, 424
- Gibelin of Sabran, Patriarch of Jerusalem 65, 71
- Godfrey of Bouillon, 'King' of Jerusalem/ Defender of Holy Sepulchre 31–49, 124
- Gormond, Patriarch of Jerusalem 79, 83–6
- Gottschalk, First Crusade leader 29–30

- Giustiniani, Giovanni 528–30
 Grailly, Jean de 403–4
 Grandson, Otto de 375, 405
 Gregory VII, Pope 15–19
 Gregory VIII, Pope 189
 Gregory IX, Pope 281, 287, 289–90, 295–7, 300–06
 Gregory X, Pope 374–80.
 Gregory XI, Pope 475–80
 Gregory XII, Pope 502–7
 Gruffydd ap Rhys, lord of Deheubarth 194
 Gumushtekin, ‘Ghazi’, Danishmend emir 60, 63, 87–91, 97–9, 101
 Gumushtekin, Zengid emir of Aleppo 164–6
 Guy of Lusignan, King of Jerusalem and Cyprus 171, 176, 179–88, 193, 195–6, 199, 201–3, 206–9, 212–13, 224
 Guyuk, Mongol Khan 320–3

 Hadrian IV, Pope 142–7
 Halil Pasha, Ottoman Vizier 524–5, 529, 531
 Hassan, regent of Konya 64–5
 Hastings, battle of (1066) 6
 Hawkwood, Sir John, mercenary 467, 484–5
 Hedwig/ Jadwiga, Queen of Poland 485–8
 Helena Dragases, Byzantine Empress 498, 527
 Helena of Epirus, Queen of Sicily 345, 361
 Henry of Flanders, Latin Emperor 230, 235–8, 241–61
 Henry I, King of England 62, 102
 Henry of Champagne, King of Jerusalem 202, 205, 209, 212–14, 222–4, 227, 320
 Henry I, King of Castile 258–9
 Henry I, King of Cyprus 263, 280, 283–4, 287–92, 299, 320–1, 325–6, 331, 333
 Henry II, King of England/ Count of Anjou 138, 158, 178–9, 187, 189, 193–7
 Henry II, King of Castile 472–4, 48
 Henry II, King of Cyprus 396–8, 402–6, 419, 427, 435, 444
 Henry III, King of England 264, 281, 324, 328, 337, 340, 334–5, 341, 358, 371, 375
 Henry IV, Holy Roman Emperor 17
 Henry IV (Earl of Derby), King of England 491–2, 498–500, 515
 Henry IV, King of Castile 523–3
 Henry V, Holy Roman Emperor 70, 221
 Henry VI, Holy Roman Emperor 161, 181, 200, 205, 207, 216–27, 232

 Henry VII, Holy Roman Emperor 426, 43, 435–9
 Henry, prince of Antioch, father of Hugh III 352, 357
 Henry ‘of Almain’, prince of England 366, 372
 Henry ‘the Lion’, Duke of Saxony 125, 162–3
 Heraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem 172–9, 182, 184, 188, 203, 224
 Hethoum I, King of Armenia 299, 347–8, 361–2, 366, 371
 Hethoum II, King of Armenia 403, 417–19, 428
 Hodierna of Jerusalem, Countess of Tripoli 100, 112, 138, 183
 ‘Holy Lance’, discovery of (1098) 38
 Honorius II, Pope 91–5
 Honorius III, Pope 260–2, 276, 279, 281
 Honorius IV, Pope 396–8
 ‘Horns of Hattin’, battle of (1187) 185–6
 Hugh I, King of Cyprus 241, 247, 251, 262–3
 Hugh II, King of Cyprus 333, 342, 352, 360, 365
 Hugh III, King of Cyprus/ (I) King of Jerusalem 352, 360, 36–8, 372–6, 380–3, 394–5
 Hugh IV, King of Cyprus 444, 455–6, 467
 Hugh, Count of Vermandois 31–2, 39, 53
 Hugh of St. Omer 52, 55, 61
 Hugh, lord of Caesarea 154–5
 Hugh (I) of Le Puiset 86
 Hugh (II) of Le Puiset, son of above 86, 98–9
 Hugh of Lusignan, claimant to Achaia 472–3
 Hugh of Payens, founder of Templars 82, 92, 104
 Hulagu, ‘Ilkhan’ 337–42, 345–7, 358–9
 Humbert, lord of Dauphinois 457–9
 Humphrey (II), lord of Toron 164, 170, 172
 Humphrey (III), lord of Toron 172, 178, 203, 206, 210–11
 Hunyadi, John, regent of Hungary 523–7, 534–5

 Ibn al-Muqaddam, Zengid general 164–7
 Ibn Khaldun, historian 499–500
 Ibn Munquidh dynasty of Shaizar 40, 74, 107, 145
 Ibrahim ibn Soqman, Iraqi emir 62, 67
 Ida of Austria, Margravine and Crusader 50, 53

- Idris al-Mamun, Almohad Caliph 282–4, 287, 293
 Ilghazi ibn Ortoq, Iraqi emir 62, 64, 70–5, 78, 80–5
 Imad ed-Din, emir of Mosul 160, 174–6
 Innocent II, Pope 95, 99–100, 107–08, 112
 Innocent III, Pope 228–32, 238, 241, 244–6, 249–52, 256–60
 Innocent IV, Pope 306, 309–12, 318, 321–3, 326, 331, 334–6
 Innocent V, Pope 380–1
 Innocent VI, Pope 462–9
 Innocent VII, Pope 502
 Ioannitsa, Czar of Bulgaria 238, 241–4
 Irene Ducaena, Byzantine Empress 13, 80
 Irene of Hungary (Pirosaka), Byzantine Empress 58, 101
 Irene (Angela), Queen of Sicily and Duchess of Swabia 222, 224, 231–2, 246
 Isaac I Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor 5–6
 Isaac II Angelus, Byzantine Emperor 180, 198–200, 215, 225, 231–6, 252
 Isabella (I), Queen of Jerusalem and Cyprus 165, 168, 179, 182, 203, 213, 224, 227, 241, 263, 283, 320, 367
 Isabella/ Yolande (II), Queen of Jerusalem/ Holy Roman Empress 256, 258, 274, 279, 283
 Isabella, Queen of Armenia 273–8
 Isabella, Queen of Cyprus 356–9
 Isabella of France, Queen of England 450
 Isabella of Villehardouin, Duchess of Achaia 383, 403, 418–20, 428
 Izz ed-Din Kaykavus (I), Seljuk Sultan 252, 261–3, 270
 Izz ed-Din Kaykavus (II), Seljuk Sultan 323, 326, 342, 339–40, 342, 352, 358, 362, 387
 Izz ed-Din, emir of Mosul 172, 174–5, 179, 181, 221, sons of 221

 Jaffa, falls to Saladin and immediately recaptured by
 Richard I (1192) 214
 Jamal al-Din Yusuf, Mameluke Sultan 519–20
 James I, King of Aragon 258, 284, 364, 368–9
 James I, King of Majorca 394, 404–5, 417
 James I, King of Sicily and (II) Aragon 397, 401, 404–8, 413–19, 429–32, 444–5
 James, King of Cyprus 476–7, 485, 497
 James III, King of Majorca 461
 James IV, King of Majorca/ consort of Naples 461, 469, 474
 James of Molay, Grand Master of Templars 413–16, 427–39
 Jagiello/ Jogaila (Wladyslaw III), Grand Duke of Lithuania and King of Poland 480, 483, 487–8, 492, 505–66, 517
 Janus, King of Cyprus 497, 513–17
 Jaqmaq, Mameluke Sultan 520, 527
 Jawali, governor of Mosul 63–6
 Jean/ John de Joinville, historian 330, 334
 Jekermish, governor of Mosul 57–63
 Jelal-al-Din, Shah of Khwarezm 267, 270, 272, 275, 278, 281, 285, 290–1, 295
 Jerusalem, captured by Crusaders (1099) 42–3, falls to Saladin (1187) 187–8 recovered by Frederick II (1229) 285–6, falls to Khwarizmians (1244) 311–12.
 Joan of England, Queen of Sicily 166–7, 202–7, 210, 215
 Joanna I, Queen of Naples 455–84
 Jobert, Grand Master of Templars 163, 169
 John XXI, Pope 381–3
 John XXII, Pope 440–5, 450
 John XXIII, disputed Pope 505–8
 John II Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor 58, 80–111, 119
 John III Vatatzes, Emperor of Nicaea 273–336.
 John IV Lascaris, Emperor of Nicaea 343–5, 353
 John V Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 454–91
 John VI Cantacuzene, Byzantine Emperor 446–7, 453–64, 482–3, 486
 John VII Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 483, 487, 490–1, 497, 500–03
 John VIII Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 511–27
 John, King of England 211–13, 220, 222–3, 229–30, 256
 John I, King of Aragon 489
 John I, King of Bohemia 435, 446, 458
 John I, King of Castile 482, 485–7
 John I, King of Cyprus 395–6
 John I, King of Portugal 486–7, 509, 517
 John II, King of Castile 502, 532
 John II, King of France 462, 469–70
 John Sisman, Czar of Bulgaria 492
 John of Brienne, King of Jerusalem/ Latin Empire regent 250–1, 252, 256, 258–9, 262–80, 286, 290–8
 John (Angelus Ducas), ruler of Thessalonica 298, 307, 310

- John (Angelus Ducas), ruler of Thessaly 345–6, 369, 378, 381, 392, 422
 John (Angelus Ducas) II, ruler of Thessaly 422, 432, 442
 John of Capistrano, preacher 534–5
 John of Ibelin, son of Balian (II) and Queen Maria 224, 227, 251, 275–6, 282–9, 322
 John of Ibelin, lord of Arsuf 322, 337, 345, 352
 John of Ibelin, lord of Beirut 348, 352
 John of Ibelin, lord of Caesarea 292–4, 296
 John of Ibelin, lord of Jaffa 337, 355, 361
 John of Montfort, lord of Tyre 383
 John of Pian del Carpine, Papal envoy 318–22
 John of Procida, Sicilian nationalist leader 387, 390, 393, 415, 417
 John Alexander, Czar of Bulgaria 454, 471–3
 John Asen (I), Czar of Bulgaria 244, 254, 278, 288, 296–8
 John Roger, brother-in-law of Manuel I 112, 138
 Joscelin (I) of Courtenay, Count of Edessa 57–9, 64–6, 71–3, 79, 81, 84–8, 90–3, 97, 119
 Joscelin (II) of Courtenay, Count of Edessa 87, 97–8, 103–7, 113, 122, 133, 136, 145
 Joseph (I), Patriarch of Constantinople 377, 379, 386, 392–3
 Joseph (II), Patriarch of Constantinople 518–19
 Josias, archbishop of Tyre 183–4, 187–9, 193, 224
 Jovieta, princess of Jerusalem/ abbess of Bethany 87, 89, 112
 Julian, lord of Sidon 347–8, 352
- Kaikhusraw I (Ghiyath al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 237, 243, 252
 Kaikhusraw II (Ghiyath al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 299–302, 307–9
 Kaikhusraw III (Ghiyath al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 362, 382, 387, 394–5
 Kamil, cousin of Saladin 154–7
 Kenstutis, Grand Duke of Lithuania 480, 483
 Kerbogha, emir of Mosul 36–8, 57
 Khabur, battle of the River (1107) 64
 Kharsay (Rukn al-Din), Grand Master of ‘Assassins’ 339–40
 Khirkan, emir of Homs 78–80
- Kilij Arslan I, Seljuk Sultan 27, 33, 38, 52, 54, 58, 63–4
 Kilij Arslan II (Rukn al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 142, 167–8, 170–2, 179, 190, 194, 200–01, 211, 217
 Kilij Arslan III (Rukn al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 237
 Kilij Arslan IV (Rukn al-Din), Seljuk Sultan 323, 326, 339–42, 352
 Kitbugha, Mongol general 341–2, 347–8
 Klokotnitsa, battle of (1230) 288
 Koenig, Ludolf, Grand Master of Teutonic Knights 455, 458
 Kogh Vasil, Armenian lord 34, 57, 65, 71–2
 Kopek, Seljuk general 300–02
 Kose Dag, battle of (1243) 309
 Kosso, battle of (1389) 490, battle of (1448) 527
 Krak des Chevaliers, siege of by Baibars (1271) 372
 Kubilai Khan 345, 348, 358–9, 369
 Kuchmeister, Michael, Grand Master of Teutonic Knights 508
 Kukkuri, Saladin’s general 174–5, 179, 181, 184
- Lachin al-Mansur, Mameluke Sultan 417, 419
 Ladislav, King of Naples 489, 504, 507–8
 Ladislav Postumus, King of Bohemia/Hungary 522, 534
 Lake Peipus, battle of (1242) 306–7
 Landulph, Byzantine admiral 58, 64
 Las Navas de Tolosa, battle of (1212) 255
 Lazar, Despot of Serbia 474, 490
 Leignitz, battle of (1241) 305
 Leo I, prince of Armenia 94–7, 103, 105–6, 110
 Leo II, King of Armenia 181, 201, 205–6, 222–4, 228, 230, 243–4, 247, 254, 258, 260–1, 265
 Leo III, King of Armenia 366, 371, 389–90, 403
 Leo IV, King of Armenia 443, 454
 Leo VI, King of Armenia 477, 479, 485
 Leopold V, Duke of Austria 259–60, 266–7, 274–5 279–81
 Leopold VI, Duke of Austria 262–3, 266
 Lewis of Bavaria, (IV) Holy Roman Emperor 445–7, 458–9
 Lisbon, capture of (1147) 124–7
 Longchamp, William, Bisop of Ely/ regent of England 200, 210, 212, 221
 Lothar III, Holy Roman Emperor 99–100, 104

- Louis (I) 'the Great', King of Hungary/
Poland 455, 458–61, 472, 475, 478,
485
- Louis, King of Sicily 464
- Louis VI, King of France 86, 93
- Louis VII, King of France 120–32, 138,
158, 160, 163, 168, 171–2, 205
- Louis VIII, King of France 259–60, 266–7,
274–5, 279–81
- Louis IX, King of France/ St. 281, 288,
300, 312, 318, 323–36, 351, 359,
363–4, 368–71, 418, 470–1
- Louis X, King of France 437–40
- Louis (I), Count of Anjou/ King of Naples
478, 482–5, 487
- Louis (II), Count of Anjou/ King of Naples
489, 504
- Louis, Prince of Taranto 459, 461, 463,
468
- Louis, Duke of Bavaria (1220s) 271–2
- Louis, Duke of Orleans, brother of Charles
VI 493, 495
- Louis, Count of Clermont 441–2, 450
- Louis, Count of Evreux 472–3
- Lucia, Countess of Tripoli 400–02
- Lucienne, Princess of Antioch 332
- Lucius II, Pope 113, 119
- Lull, Raymond 426, 434
- Lu'lu, chief minister of Aleppo 76–8
- Mahaut, Lady of Achaia 439, 441
- Mahmud, rival Seljuk Sultan of Iraq 23–4
- Mahmud (II), Seljuk Sultan of Iraq 75, 80,
90, 97, 140
- Mahmud ibn Buri, emir of Damascus
104–8
- Malik Shah (I), Seljuk Sultan 10, 13, 19,
22–3
- Malik Shah (II), Seljuk Sultan (Konya) 71,
77
- Malik Shah (III), Seljuk co-Sultan (Konya)
194, 201, 211
- Manfred, king of Naples/Sicily 330–61
- Manfred of Sicily, Duke of Athens 436,
441
- Mansurah, battle of (1250) 327–8
- Manuel I Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor
102, 110–172, 178
- Manuel II Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor
465, 471, 474–6, 479–80, 489,
491–514
- Manuel (Angelus Ducas), Despot of
Thessalonica 278, 288, 293, 298, 300
- Manzikert, battle of (1071) 9
- Margaret of Hungary, Byzantine Empress
198, 236, 244, 247, 274
- Margaret of Provence, Queen of France
323, 327, 389
- Margaret, Queen of Sicily 154, 158
- Margaret of Akova, lady of Achaia 439
- Maria 'the Alan', Byzantine Empress 15,
25
- Maria (Comnena), Queen of Jerusalem
155, 161, 165, 169, 183, 224, 238,
247
- Maria Comnena, daughter of Manuel I
138, 161, 163, 165, 169–73, 176
- Maria Paleologina (Despina Khatun)
363–4
- Maria of Antioch, wife of Joscelin I of
Edessa 91
- Maria of Antioch, daughter of Bohemund
IV 367, 382–3
- Maria of Naples, sister of Joanna I 460,
463, 475
- Marie of Montferrat, Queen of Jerusalem
224, 228, 243, 247, 250–1, 367
- Marj Ayun, battle of (1179) 170
- Mark Eugenicus, archbishop of Nicaea
520–1
- Martin IV, Pope 388–96
- Martin V, Pope 510–16
- Martin I of Sicily, King 480, 504
- Martin II of Sicily/ I of Aragon, King 480,
491, 501–5
- Mary, Queen of Hungary 485–8
- Mary, Queen of Sicily 480, 504
- Masson, Roland 340–1
- Masu'd (I) (Ghiyath al-Din), Seljuk Sultan
387, 394–5, 418
- Mas'ud, Seljuk prince of Aleppo 91
- Matilda of Dammartin, Queen of Portugal
319
- Mawdud, Seljuk general 64–5, 69–73
- Mazdaghani, al-, vizier of Damascus 90,
94
- Mehmed I, Ottoman Sultan 501, 506–11
- Mehmed II, Ottoman Sultan 524–6,
528–35
- Meinhard, Count of Gorizia 216, 220
- Melissende, Queen of Jerusalem 94,
97–100, 112, 119, 130, 138–9, 150,
182–3
- Melissende, sister of Raymond III of
Tripoli 149–50
- Mersivan, battle of (1101) 52
- Michael VI, Byzantine Emperor 5
- Michael VII Ducas, Byzantine Emperor
6–14, pretender to
identity of 15–16
- Michael VIII Paleologus, Byzantine
Emperor 343–393

- Michael IX Paleologus, Byzantine Emperor 401, 414, 417, 422–6
- Michael (I)(Angelus Ducas), Despot of Epirus 200, 237, 241–5, 249–51, 254, 258, 290
- Michael (II) (Angelus Ducas), Despot of Epirus 290, 319, 340, 343–6, 358, 361, 369
- Michael Asen, Czar of Bulgaria 320, 341.
- Michiel, Domenico, Doge 93
- Michiel, Vitale, Doge 28
- Michiel, Vitale (II), Doge 142, 163
- Miles of Plancy, seneschal of Jerusalem 157–8, 160, 163–5
- Milo, Papal legate 249–50
- Mleh, prince of Armenia 106, 156, 163–5
- Mohammed, Seljuk Sultan (Iran/ Iraq)40, 58, 60, 63–7, 70, 74–5
- Mohammed (II), Seljuk Sultan of Iraq 140, 147
- Mohammed IV, emir of Granada 449
- Mohammed V, emir of Granada 463, 467–8, 491
- Mohammed VII, emir of Granada 491, 503
- Mohammed ‘al-Faqih’, emir of Granada 375, 385, 421
- Mohammed an-Nasr, Almohad Caliph 229, 249–50, 255, 258
- Mohammed ibn Ghalib, founding emir of Granada 289, 298, 375
- Mohammed ibn Gumushtekin, Danishmend emir 90, 101, 107, 110
- Mohammed ibn Tumart, Almohad founder 79, 84, 88, 95–6
- Mohammed, Shah of Khwarezm 265, 270
- Mongke, Mongol Great Khan 331, 340, 342, 345
- Montfort, Count Amaury de 275, 281, 302, 306
- Montfort, Guy de 368, 372
- Montfort, Count Simon de (I), Albigensian Crusader 231, 248–64
- Montfort, Simon de (II), Earl of Leicester 248, 305, 345, 358, 366–8, 372
- Montfort, Simon de (III) 368, 372
- Montsegur, siege of ‘heretics’ at 307–11
- Morosini, Domenico, Doge 130, 142
- Morosini, Thomas, Latin Patriarch of Constantinople 237, 241, 243, 252
- Morphia of Melitene, wife of Baldwin II 56, 79, 81–2
- Muin al-Din Sulaiman, chief minister of Konya 362, 382, 384
- Mujir ed-Din, emir of Damascus 136–42
- Murad I, Ottoman emir 466, 468, 476–7, 482, 490
- Murad II, Ottoman Sultan 511–28
- Muret, battle of (1213) 257–8
- Murols, Cast de, Grand Master of Hospitallers 161–3
- Musa, Ottoman Sultan 504–7
- Muzalon, George, chief minister of Nicaea 336, 343
- Myriocephalum, battle of (1176) 167–8
- Naillac, Jean de, Grand Master of Hospitallers 496
- Naillac, Philip de, *ibid* 512
- Nasr ed-Din, emir of Harran 127, 144–5, 181
- Nicaea, falls to First Crusade (1097)33
- Nicephoritzes, Byzantine treasurer 12–14
- Nicephorus III Botaneites, Byzantine Emperor 13–16
- Nicephorus (Angelus Ducas), Despot of Epirus 345, 369, 381, 386, 388, 408, 413, 415–17
- Nicephorus (II) (Orsini), Despot of Epirus 451–3, 465–7
- Nicetas, governor of Naissus 30–1
- Nicholas III, Pope 384–7
- Nicholas IV, Pope 400
- Nicholas V, anti-Pope 445–7
- Nicholas V, Pope 526–8, 531–5
- Nicholas, leader of ‘Children’s Crusade’ 255–6
- Nicopolis, battle of (1396) 495
- Nizam al-Mulk, Seljuk Vizier 10
- Nogaret, William 423, 429, 435
- Nur ed-Din, emir of Iraq and Syria 122–64
- Odo of St. Amand, Grand Master of Templars 153, 161
- Odo of Montbeliard 273, 286, 304
- Odo, Grand Master of Templars 170–1
- Oghul Qamish, wife of Khan Guyuk 323
- Ogodai, Mongol Great Khan 305–6, 320
- Order of Avis (Portugal), founded 121
- Order of Calatrava (Spain),founded 145
- Order of Santiago (Spain), founded 162, 166
- Orhan, Ottoman emir 444–9, 458, 460, 463, 466, 468
- Orsini, John (I) 423–5
- Orsini, John (II) 444, 448, 451
- Orsini, Nicholas 413, 444
- Orsini, Richard, Count of Cephallonia 413, 419, 423–5
- Oshin, Byzantine general 67–8
- Osman, Ottoman founder 444

- Otto IV, Holy Roman Emperor 227, 246, 248–9, 253, 256
- Otto of Brunswick, consort of Naples 484–5
- Ottobuono, Papal legate 362–3
- Paleologus, Andronicus, Despot of Thessalonica 503, 513
- Paleologus, Andronicus, Nicaean general 307
- Paleologus, Demetrius, Despot of Morea 514, 527–8, 531–2
- Paleologus, John, brother of Michael VIII 344–5, 378
- Paleologus, Theodore (I), Despot of Morea 486, 489, 494, 498, 501–3
- Paleologus, Theodore (II), Despot of Morea 503, 514–15, 523
- Paschal II, Pope 43, 61, 7079
- Patrick, Earl of Salisbury 324, 327
- Pelagius, Cardinal, legate 258, 264–73
- Pelagonia, battle of (1259) 345
- Peter of Courtenay, Latin Emperor 261–3, 266
- Peter I ‘the Cruel’, King of Castile 462, 468, 470–2, 477
- Peter I, King of Cyprus 467–74
- Peter I, King of Portugal 464, 466
- Peter II, King of Aragon/ I of Sicily 226, 251–8
- Peter II, King of Cyprus 474, 476–7, 485
- Peter II, King of Sicily 451
- Peter IV, King of Aragon 451, 480, 484, 489
- Peter, Duke of Brittany 301, 323, 327
- Peter, Patriarch of Antioch 243–5
- Peter, Bishop of Apamea 81–2
- Peter, Abbot of Cluny 123, 132
- Peter ‘the Hermit’, Crusade leader 22, 28–31, 35, 42
- Peter Bartholomew, visionary 38–41
- Peter of Castelnau, preacher 242, 45–6, 251
- Petronilla, Queen of Aragon 106, 113, 152
- Philaretus, Armenian leader 13, 18, 22
- Philip I, King of France 62
- Philip II, King of France 172, 179, 193–208, 21, 213–16, 220, 222, 225, 228, 246–7, 250, 255, 259, 264, 266, 271, 274
- Philip III, King of France 371–2, 377, 379, 391, 393–7
- Philip IV, King of France 397, 4000, 401–4, 415, 421–40
- Philip V, King of France 437–41, 443
- Philip VI, King of France 446–62
- Philip, Prince of Antioch, consort of Armenia 273–8
- Philip of Savoy, Prince of Achaia 420, 428
- Philip (I), Prince of Taranto 413, 415, 428, 438, 448
- Philip ‘the Bold’, Duke of Burgundy 493–5
- Philip ‘the Good’, Duke of Burgundy 515, 522–4, 531, 533
- Philip of Hohenstaufen, Duke of Swabia 224, 227, 232, 246, 332
- Philip, Count of Flanders 168–9
- Philip of Ibelin, son of Balian (II) 269, 275–6, 280–2, 291–2
- Philip of Mailly, Grand Master of Templars 161–2
- Philip of Montfort, lord of Tyre 308–9, 312, 328, 334, 356, 368, 370
- Philip of Novara, historian 287–8, 308
- Philippa of Armenia, Empress of Nicaea 254, 266, 273
- Philocalas, Eumathius, Byzantine admiral 43, 50, 60, 68
- Plaisance, Queen of Cyprus 331, 333, 342, 345, 352
- Pollichien, Odo 394, 397
- Polani, Peter, Doge 93, 130
- Polo, Maffeo 359, 369
- Polo, Niccolo 359, 369
- Pons, Count of Tripoli 72–104
- Premysl Ottakar II, King of Bohemia 334, 364, 377
- ‘Prester John’, legendary king 110, 120, 169, 268
- Psellus, Constatnine/ Michael 6–7, 9
- Qalavun, Mameluke Sultan 386–404
- Qaward, emir of Kerman 10
- Qutb ed-Din, emir of Mosul 133, 152–3, 158
- Qutuz, Mameluke Sultan 346–9
- Rabban Sauma, Chinese ambassador 398–401
- Radulph of Domfront, Patriarch of Antioch 102–3
- Ramiro ‘the Monk’, King of Aragon 101, 106
- Ramleh, battle of (1101) 53, battle of (1102) 55
- Rashid ed-Din Sinan, leader of Syrian ‘Assassins’ 164, 167, 213
- Raymond of Poitou, Prince of Antioch 102–3, 111–33
- Raymond (IV), Count of Toulouse/ (I) of Tripoli 27–60

- Raymond II, Count of Tripoli 100, 104–38
- Raymond III, Count of Tripoli 138, 149–53, 159, 165–71, 173–9, 182–6, 189
- Raymond V, Count of Toulouse 194, 216
- Raymond VI, Count of Toulouse 244–60, 273
- Raymond VII, Count of Toulouse 252–4, 260–7, 273, 275, 279–85, 288, 307
- Raymond of Antioch, (IV) Count of Tripoli, son of Bohemund III 189, 195, 206, 223–6
- Raymond of Le Puy, second Grand Master of Hospitallers 83
- Raymond-Rupen, Prince of Antioch 226, 243, 260–1
- Renier of Montferrat 169–72, 176, 237
- Reynald of Chatillon, regent of Antioch 140, 145–8, 153, 167–8, 173–8, 182–6
- Richard I, King of England/ Duke of Aquitaine 185, 189, 193–225, 227, 229–30, 262
- Richard II, King of England 491–3, 498
- Richard, Count of Cornwall and elected Holy Roman Emperor 304–5, 366
- Richard ‘of the Principate’ 72–82, 91
- Ridwan, Seljuk emir of Aleppo 27, 33–6, 59–60, 66, 70–2
- Rienzo, Coa di 459–64
- Robert, Latin Emperor 270, 275–83
- Robert I., King of Naples 408, 415, 418, 421, 440–7, 455
- Robert I, King of Scots 428, 447
- Robert (II), prince of Capua, rebel 92, 100–04, 143
- Robert ‘Guiscard’, Duke of Apulia 5–19, 30
- Robert ‘Curthose’, Duke of Normandy 31–49
- Robert, Count of Artois 323, 327
- Rocafort, Berenguer de 425–8
- Robert, Prince of Taranto 449, 452, 460, 470–2
- Robert (I), Count of Flanders 21–3
- Robert (II), Count of Flanders 31–43
- Roger I, Count of Sicily 7, 10, 19, 21, 28, 39, 53
- Roger II, Count/ King of Sicily 28, 52, 72, 78, 86, 91–104, 107–9, 113, 119, 121–2, 126, 128, 132–3, 137, 141, 144, 165, 200
- Roger ‘Borsa’, Duke of Apulia 5, 18–19, 31, 69
- Roger, Duke of Apulia, son of Roger II 94, 102–4, 108–9, 144
- Roger des Moulins, Grand Master of Hospitallers 169, 179, 182–6
- Roger of Lauria, Sicilian admiral 394–9
- Romanus IV Diogenes, Byzantine Emperor 7–11, 25
- Rudolf of Habsburg, Holy Roman Emperor 380, 389
- Saif ed-Din of Mosul, Zengid emir 122, 127, 133, 160, 164–6, 172
- Saladin (Salah ad-Din Yusuf), Ayyubid Sultan 152–218, 221
- Salza, Hermann von, Grand Master of Templars 280, 289
- Sancho I, King of Castile 6–11
- Sancho I, King of Portugal 181, 197, 200, 252
- Sancho II, King of Castile 144–5
- Sancho II, King of Portugal 274, 319
- Sancho IV, King of Castile 395, 413–16
- Sanjar, Seljuk Sultan of Iran 80, 110
- Sanudo, Marco, Duke of Naxos 238, 244, 282
- Sarajas/ Zallaca, battle of (1086) 20
- Sartaq, Mongol Khan 333, 338
- ‘Scanderbeg’ (George Castriota) 523
- Sgurus, Leo, lord of Corinth 237, 245
- Shams al-Din Khilafa, Fatimid general 69–70
- Sharaf al-Daula, governor of Tripoli 65–7
- Sharja al-Durr, Sultana of Egypt 329, 339
- Shawar, Fatimid Vizier 151–7
- Shirkuh, Zengid general 133, 142–4, 152–7, 181
- Sibylla, Queen of Jerusalem 151, 161–2, 168–71, 176–9, 182, 187–8, 195–6, 203
- Sibylla, Queen of Sicily 223
- Sibylla (I), Princess of Antioch 222–3
- Sibylla of Armenia, Princess of Antioch 334, 380, 400
- Sichelgaita, Duchess of Apulia 5, 16
- ‘Sicilian Vespers’, the (1282) 391
- Sigismund, Holy Roman Emperor/ King of Hungary 489, 493–7, 504–6, 509–13, 517, 519
- Simeon, Greek Orthodox Patriarch of Jerusalem 3–5
- Smyrna, capture of (1344)/456, loss to Timur (1402) 501
- Stephanie of Armenia, wife of John of Brienne 258–9, 266–9
- Stephanie, lady of Jebail 226
- Stephen Dusan, Emperor of Serbia 458, 465
- Stephen, Count of Blois 28, 31, 37–8, 50–5, 93

- Stephen, Count of Burgundy 52–5
 Stephen, Count of Sancerre 202–5
 Stephen of Cloyes, leader of ‘Childen’s Crusade’ 255–6
 Soqman ibn Ortoq, emir of Mardin 56–62
 Soqman II, Ortoqid emir 70–1
 Stephanie, lady of Oultrejordan 165, 172–3, 188
 Sulaiman ibn Kutlumish, Seljuk Sultan (Nicaea/ Konya) 13–19
 Sulaiman I, Ottoman Sultan 500–04
 Sulaiman, son of Emir Orhan 460, 463 466
 Sully, Hugues de, Angevin general 388–90
 Tagliacozzo, battle of (1268) 367
 Taki ed-Din, nephew of Saladin 184–5, 199, 202–3
 Talleyrand de Perigord, Cardinal 462–3, 469
 Tancred of Lecce, King of Sicily 144, 149, 165, 178, 180, 200–7, 216–17, 221–3, 250
 Tancred, Prince of Antioch 31–72, 98
 Tannenburg, battle of (1410) 505
 Taticius, Byzantine minister 16, 33–6
 Teguder, ‘Ilkhan’ 391, 394–6
 Templars, foundation of Order of 32–3, dissolution of Order of (1307–14) 429–39
 Teresa, Countess of Portugal 25, 68, 72, 96
 Thamar, Princess of Epirus 413–15, 423
 Theobald, Count of Champagne, planned Fourth Crusade 230–1
 Theodore I Lascaris, Emperor of Nicaea 236, 241–7
 Theodore II Lascaris, Emperor of Nicaea 296, 336–43
 Theodore (Angelus Ducas), Emperor of Thessalonica 245, 250–1, 258–88, 298, 300, 307, 310, 320
 Thomas (Angelus Ducas), Despot of Epirus 413, 417
 Thoros I, prince of Armenia 106, 110, 113, 137, 140, 147, 151, 153, 156
 Thoros, ruler of Edessa 35–6
 Toghtekin, atabeg/ emir of Damascus 27, 58, 65–79, 82–7, 89, 92
 Toghtekin, brother of Saladin 165, 221
 Trikkala battle of (1082) 17–18
 Tripoli, falls to Mamelukes (1289) 401–2
 Tuctush, brother of Malik Shah I 13, 19–26
 Tughril ibn Mohammed, Seljuk Sultan of Iraq 80, 97, 100
 Turan Shah, Ayyubid Sultan 302–3, 325–9
 Tzachas (Chaka), emir of Smyrna 19, 22–4, 33
 Umur, emir of Aydin 431, 456, 460–1
 Unur, emir of Damascus 108–9, 123–4, 130–1
 Urban II, Pope 21–4, 27–8, 39–40, 43
 Urban III, Pope 181, 189
 Urban IV, Pope 342, 347, 351–9
 Urban VI, Pope 480–90
 Usama ibn Munqidh, historian 136, 145
 Varna, battle of (1444) 525
 Vasil Dgha, Armenian lord 74–7
 Victor III, Pope 20–1
 Victor IV, anti-Pope 107, 150
 Visconti, Bernabo 466, 476
 Villehardouin, Geoffrey de, Prince of Achaia 241–6, 248, 250, 320
 Villehardouin, Geoffrey de, historian 233–4
 Villehardouin, William de, Prince of Achaia 320, 325, 337, 342–7, 351, 357, 363, 367, 379
 Vytautas, Grand Duke of Lithuania 490, 492, 504–5
 Walter of Brienne, Duke of Athens 431–6
 Walter, lord of Caesarea 177
 Walter, Count of Jaffa 301, 312
 Walter ‘the Penniless’, First Crusade leader 29–30
 Walter, Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury 215, 220
 Welf, Duke of Bavaria 50–3
 Wenceslas III, King of Bohemia / Hungary 420–1, 427
 William I, King of England 6, 50, 197
 William I, King of Sicily 137, 141–5, 149, 154
 William II, King of Sicily 149, 154, 161, 163, 165–7, 178–81, 189, 194, 200–02
 William, Duke of Apulia 69–70, 91
 William, Count of Nevers 50–4
 William, Patriarch of Jerusalem 94, 98, 104, 112, 129
 William of Beaujeu, Grand Master of Templars 378, 383–4, 401, 404, 406
 William of Bures, Jerusalem official 81–3, 86–7, 93–4
 William of Chateaufort, Grand Master of Hospitallers 307, 311, 342
 William VII, Count of Montferrat 169
 William of Montferrat (son), husband of Princess Isabella 168–9, 176

- William of Montferrat, claimant to
Thessalonica 248, 277
- William of Tyre, archbishop and historian
71, 160, 171–3
- William-Jordan, Count of Cerdagne 60,
65–8
- Wladyslaw IV, King of Poland/ Hungary
517, 521–5
- Yaghi-Basan, Danishmend emir 101, 110
- Yaghi-Siyan, governor of Antioch 33–8
- Yaqub Arslan, Danishmend emir 110, 147
- Yolande, Latin Empress 263–8
- Yusuf ibn Tashufin, founder of Almoravid
dynasty 20, 67
- Zaccaria brothers, lords of Phocaea 379,
390
- Zaccaria, Centurione, lord of Achaia 477,
515, 532
- Zengi, emir of Iraq and Syria 74, 90–122
- Ziani, Pietro, Doge 242
- Ziani, Sebastiano, Doge 163
- Zumurrud, wife of emir Buri 101, 107



eBooks

from Taylor & Francis

Helping you to choose the right eBooks for your Library

Add to your library's digital collection today with Taylor & Francis eBooks.

We have over 50,000 eBooks in the Humanities, Social Sciences, Behavioural Sciences, Built Environment and Law, from leading imprints, including Routledge, Focal Press and Psychology Press.



Free Trials Available

We offer free trials to qualifying academic, corporate and government customers.

Choose from a range of subject packages or create your own!

Benefits for you

- Free MARC records
- COUNTER-compliant usage statistics
- Flexible purchase and pricing options
- All titles DRM-free.

Benefits for your user

- Off-site, anytime access via Athens or referring URL
- Print or copy pages or chapters
- Full content search
- Bookmark, highlight and annotate text
- Access to thousands of pages of quality research at the click of a button.

eCollections

Choose from over 30 subject eCollections, including:

Archaeology

Architecture

Asian Studies

Business & Management

Classical Studies

Construction

Creative & Media Arts

Criminology & Criminal Justice

Economics

Education

Energy

Engineering

English Language & Linguistics

Environment & Sustainability

Geography

Health Studies

History

Language Learning

Law

Literature

Media & Communication

Middle East Studies

Music

Philosophy

Planning

Politics

Psychology & Mental Health

Religion

Security

Social Work

Sociology

Sport

Theatre & Performance

Tourism, Hospitality & Events

For more information, pricing enquiries or to order a free trial, please contact your local sales team:
www.tandfebooks.com/page/sales

www.tandfebooks.com